



---

# **TASKalfa 420i**

# **TASKalfa 520i**



## **SERVICE MANUAL**

Published in February 2010  
842KS112  
2KSSM062  
Rev. 2

## **CAUTION**

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

## **ATTENTION**

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACÉE PAR UN MODÈLE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISÉES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNÉES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

## Revision history

Revision	Date	Replaced pages	Remarks
1	December 14, 2009	1-3-4, 1-3-5, 1-3-10, 1-3-12 to 1-3-16, 1-3-22, 1-3-23, 1-3-38, 1-3-41 to 1-3-43, 1-3-58, 1-3-59, 1-3-60, 1-3-74, 1-3-81, 1-3-84, 1-3-94 to 1-3-97, 1-3-100, 1-3-101, 1-4-3, 1-4-4, 1-4-8, 1-5-24, 1-5-25, 1-5-28, 1-6-1, 2-3-6, 2-3-7, 2-3-15 to 2-3-17, 2-4-1, 2-4-3 to 2-4-6	-
2	February 4, 2010	1-2-4, 1-2-11, 1-3-2, 1-3-3, 1-3-5, 1-3-25, 1-3-26, 1-3-50 to 1-3-53, 1-3-74, 1-3-95, 1-4-8, 1-4-11, 2-1-11	-

This page is intentionally left blank.

---


# Safety precautions


---


This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

## Safety warnings and precautions


Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

 **DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

### Symbols

The triangle () symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.



General warning.



Warning of risk of electric shock.



Warning of high temperature.

 indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.



General prohibited action.



Disassembly prohibited.

 indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.



General action required.





Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.





Always ground the copier.


## 1. Installation Precautions


### WARNING



- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current. .... 
- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities. .... 


### CAUTION:


- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury. .... 
- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock. .... 
- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material.

This may cause fire. .... 

- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance. .... 











- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it. .... 
- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury. .... 

- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention. .... 





- Advise customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook. .... 

## 2.Precautions for Maintenance

### WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. .... 
- Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. .... 
- Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. .... 
- Always use parts having the correct specifications. .... 
- Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. .... 
- When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. .... 
- Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. .... 
- Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. .... 
- Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. .... 
- Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. .... 

### CAUTION

- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. .... 
- Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. .... 
- Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. .... 
- Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. .... 

• Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement. ....



• Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself. ....



• Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item. ....



• Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks. ....



• Remove toner completely from electronic components. ....



• Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged. ....



• After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws. ....



• Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary. ....



• Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below: ....



- Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.
- Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.
- Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.
- Always wash hands afterwards.

• Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc. ....



• Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately. ....



### 3.Miscellaneous

#### WARNING

• Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas. ....



This page is intentionally left blank.

# CONTENTS

## 1-1 Specifications

1-1-1 Specifications .....	1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names .....	1-1-4
(1) Machine .....	1-1-4
(2) Operation panel .....	1-1-7
1-1-3 Machine cross section .....	1-1-8

## 1-2 Installation

1-2-1 Installation environment .....	1-2-1
1-2-2 Unpacking and installation .....	1-2-2
(1) Installation procedure .....	1-2-2
(2) Setting initial copy modes .....	1-2-10
1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option) .....	1-2-11
1-2-4 Replacing the expanded memory .....	1-2-16

## 1-3 Maintenance Mode

1-3-1 Maintenance mode .....	1-3-1
(1) Executing a maintenance item .....	1-3-1
(2) Maintenance modes item list .....	1-3-2
(3) Contents of the maintenance mode items .....	1-3-6
1-3-2 Management mode .....	1-3-107
(1) Using the management mode .....	1-3-107
(2) Common Settings .....	1-3-108
(3) Copy Settings .....	1-3-111
(4) Sending Settings .....	1-3-111
(5) Document Box Settings .....	1-3-111
(6) Printer Settings .....	1-3-112
(7) Printing Reports/Sending Notice .....	1-3-112
(8) Adjustment/Maintenance .....	1-3-113
(9) Date/Timer .....	1-3-113
(10) Editing Destination (Address Book/Adding One Touch Keys) .....	1-3-114
(11) Internet Browser Setup .....	1-3-115
(12) Applications .....	1-3-116
(13) System Settings .....	1-3-116
(14) User Login Administration .....	1-3-118
(15) Job accounting .....	1-3-119

## 1-4 Troubleshooting

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection .....	1-4-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication .....	1-4-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions .....	1-4-2
(3) Paper misfeeds .....	1-4-12
1-4-2 Self-diagnosis .....	1-4-24
(1) Self-diagnostic function .....	1-4-24
(2) Self diagnostic codes .....	1-4-26
1-4-3 Image formation problems .....	1-4-48
(1) No image appears (entirely white) .....	1-4-49
(2) No image appears (entirely black) .....	1-4-49
(3) Image is too light .....	1-4-50
(4) Background is visible .....	1-4-50
(5) A white line appears longitudinally .....	1-4-50
(6) A black line appears longitudinally .....	1-4-51
(7) A black line appears laterally .....	1-4-51
(8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other .....	1-4-51
(9) Black dots appear on the image .....	1-4-51
(10) Image is blurred .....	1-4-52
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original .....	1-4-52
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original .....	1-4-52
(13) Paper creases .....	1-4-52
(14) Offset occurs .....	1-4-53

(15) Image is partly missing.....	1-4-53
(16) Fusing is poor.....	1-4-53
(17) Image is out of focus.....	1-4-53
(18) Image center does not align with the original center.....	1-4-54
(19) Image is not square.....	1-4-54
1-4-4 Electric problems.....	1-4-55
1-4-5 Mechanical problems.....	1-4-60
1-4-6 Send error code.....	1-4-62
(1) Scan to SMB error codes.....	1-4-62
(2) Scan to FTP error codes.....	1-4-63
(3) Scan to E-mail error codes.....	1-4-64
(4) Network Twain error codes.....	1-4-65
(5) Software trouble error codes.....	1-4-65

## 1-5 Assembly and Disassembly

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly.....	1-5-1
(1) Precautions.....	1-5-1
(2) Drum.....	1-5-1
(3) Toner.....	1-5-1
(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container.....	1-5-2
1-5-2 Paper feed section.....	1-5-3
(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.....	1-5-3
(2) Detaching and refitting the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys.....	1-5-5
(3) Detaching and refitting the left and right registration cleaner.....	1-5-10
1-5-3 Optical section.....	1-5-12
(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp.....	1-5-12
(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires.....	1-5-16
(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference).....	1-5-20
(4) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit.....	1-5-22
(5) Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit (reference).....	1-5-24
1-5-4 Drum section.....	1-5-25
(1) Detaching and refitting the drum unit.....	1-5-25
(2) Detaching and refitting the main charger unit.....	1-5-26
(3) Detaching and refitting the drum separation claws.....	1-5-27
1-5-5 Developing section.....	1-5-28
(1) Detaching and refitting the developing unit.....	1-5-28
1-5-6 Transfer section.....	1-5-29
(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller unit.....	1-5-29
1-5-7 Fuser section.....	1-5-30
(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit.....	1-5-30
(2) Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws.....	1-5-31
(3) Detaching and refitting the press roller.....	1-5-32
(4) Detaching and refitting the fuser heater.....	1-5-33
(5) Detaching and refitting the heat roller.....	1-5-34
(6) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermistor 1 and 2.....	1-5-35
(7) Adjusting front position of the fuser unit (adjusting lateral squareness).....	1-5-36
1-5-8 Others.....	1-5-37
(1) Detaching and refitting the ozone filter 1 and 2.....	1-5-37
(2) Detaching and refitting the dust filter 1 and 2.....	1-5-38
(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU filter.....	1-5-39
(4) Detaching and refitting the hard disk.....	1-5-40
(5) Direction of installing the principal fan motors.....	1-5-43

## 1-6 Requirements on PWB Replacement

1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware.....	1-6-1
1-6-2 Adjustment-free variable resistors (VR).....	1-6-1
1-6-3 Remarks on main PWB replacement.....	1-6-2
1-6-4 Remarks on engine PWB replacement.....	1-6-3

## 2-1 Mechanical construction

2-1-1 Paper feed section.....	2-1-1
(1) Cassette paper feed section.....	2-1-1
(2) MP tray paper feed section.....	2-1-3

2-1-2	Optical section .....	2-1-5
	(1) Image scanner section .....	2-1-5
	(2) Laser scanner section .....	2-1-7
2-1-3	Drum section .....	2-1-9
2-1-4	Developing section .....	2-1-11
	(1) Single component developing system .....	2-1-13
2-1-5	Transfer and separation sections .....	2-1-14
2-1-6	Fuser section .....	2-1-15
2-1-7	Eject and switchback sections .....	2-1-17
2-1-8	Duplex section .....	2-1-19
 <b>2-2 Electrical Parts Layout</b>		
2-2-1	Electrical parts layout .....	2-2-1
	(1) PWBs .....	2-2-1
	(2) Switches and sensors .....	2-2-3
	(3) Motors .....	2-2-5
	(4) Others .....	2-2-6
 <b>2-3 Operation of the PWBs</b>		
2-3-1	Power source PWB .....	2-3-1
2-3-2	Engine PWB .....	2-3-5
2-3-3	Main PWB .....	2-3-14
2-3-4	ISM PWB .....	2-3-23
2-3-5	Main operation PWB .....	2-3-26
 <b>2-4 Appendixes</b>		
	Maintenance parts list .....	2-4-1
	Maintenance kits .....	2-4-2
	Periodic maintenance procedures .....	2-4-3
	Chart of image adjustment procedures .....	2-4-7
	Wiring diagram No.1 .....	2-4-9
	Wiring diagram No.2 .....	2-4-10
	Wiring diagram No.3 .....	2-4-11
	Wiring diagram No.4 .....	2-4-12
	Wiring diagram No.5 .....	2-4-13
 <b>INSTALLATION GUIDE</b>		
	DOCUMENT PROCESSOR	
	PAPER FEEDER	
	3000 SHEETS PAPER FEEDER	
	DOCUMENT FINISHER	
	3000 SHEETS DOCUMENT FINISHER	
	CENTER-FOLDING UNIT	
	MAILBOX	
	HOLE PUNCH UNIT	
	BUILT-IN FINISHER	
	JOB SEPARATOR	
	FAX System	

This page is intentionally left blank.

## 1-1-1 Specifications

### Machine

Type .....	Desktop
Printing method.....	Electrophotography by semiconductor laser, tandem drum system
Supported original types .....	Sheets, books and three-dimensional objects
	Maximum original size: A3/Ledger
Original feed system .....	Fixed
Paper weight.....	Cassette : 60 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> MP tray : 45 to 160 g/m <sup>2</sup>
Paper type .....	Cassette: Plain, Rough, Vellum, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8 (Duplex: Same as Simplex) MP tray: Plain, Transparency (OHP film), Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock (Hagaki), Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Envelope, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8
Paper size .....	Cassette: A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Ledger, Legal, Letter, LetterR, Statement, Oficio II, 8.5 x 13.5", Folio, 8K, 16K, 16KR MP tray: A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, B6R, A6R, Ledger, Legal, Letter, LetterR, ExecutiveR, Statement, Oficio II, 8.5 x 13.5", Folio, 8K, 16K, 16KR, Postcards (100 x 148 mm), Return postcard (148 x 200 mm), Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Envelope #10 (Commercial #10), Envelope #9 (Commercial #9), Envelope #6 (Commercial #6 3/4), Monarch, ISO B5, Youkei 2, Youkei 4
Zoom level .....	Manual mode: 25 to 400%, 1% increments Auto mode: Preset zoom
Printing speed .....	42 ppm model A4/Letter: 42 sheets/min. A4R/LetterR: 27 sheets/min. A3/Ledger: 23 sheets/min. B4/Legal: 23 sheets/min. B5: 42 sheets/min. B5R: 22 sheets/min. A5R: 16 sheets/min. 52 ppm model A4/Letter: 52 sheets/min. A4R/LetterR: 31 sheets/min. A3/Ledger: 26 sheets/min. B4/Legal: 26 sheets/min. B5: 52 sheets/min. B5R: 24 sheets/min. A5R: 18 sheets/min.
First copy time .....	3.9 s or less
Warm-up time .....	Room temperature 22°C/71.6°F, 60% RH Power on: 30 s or less Sleep mode: 15 s or less
Paper capacity .....	Cassette : 500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) MP tray : 200 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Output tray capacity .....	Top tray : 250 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) When built-in finisher installed: 150 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) When job separator installed: 250 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Continuous copying .....	1 to 999 sheets
Light source .....	Inert gas lamp
Scanning system .....	Flat bed scanning by CCD image sensor
Photoconductor .....	a-Si (drum diameter 40 mm)
Image write system .....	Semiconductor laser and electrophotography
Charging system .....	Single positive corona charging
Developing system .....	Dry, reverse developing (single component system) Developer: 1-component, magnetism toner Toner replenishing: automatic from a toner container

## 2KR/2KS

Transfer system .....	Transfer roller
Separation system .....	Curvature separation and separation electrode
Cleaning system .....	Cleaning blade and roller
Charge erasing system .....	Exposure by cleaning lamp
Fusing system .....	Heat roller
	Heat source: halogen heaters
	Abnormally high temperature protection devices: thermostats
Main memory .....	Standard : 2048 MB
	Maximum: 2048 MB
Hard disk .....	160 GB
Interface .....	USB interface connector: 1 (USB Hi-speed)
	USB memory slot: 2 (Full-speed USB)
	Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX)
	Optional interface: 2 (KUIO/W)
Resolution .....	600 x 600 dpi
Operating environment .....	Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
	Humidity: 15 to 80% RH
	Altitude: 2500 m/8,202 ft maximum
	Brightness: 1500 lux maximum
Dimensions .....	599 (W) x 646 (D) x 745 (H) mm (main unit only)
	23 9/16" (W) x 25 7/16" (D) x 29 5/16" (H) (main unit only)
Weight .....	85 kg/187 lbs
Space required .....	753 (W) x 646 (D) mm (using MP tray)
	29 5/8" (W) x 25 7/16" (D) (using MP tray)
Power source .....	120 V AC, 60 Hz, 12 A
	220 to 240 V AC, 50 Hz, 6.3 A
Options .....	Document processor, paper feeder, 3000-sheet paper feeder, document finisher, 3000-sheet document finisher, centerfold unit, mailbox, punch unit, built-in finisher, job separator, key counter, fax kit, expansion memory, data security kit and printed document guard kit

### Printer functions

Printing speed .....	Same as copying speed
First print time .....	4.8 s or less
Resolution .....	600 dpi
Operating system .....	Windows 2000 (Service Pack 2 or later), Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Apple Macintosh OS 10.x
Interface .....	USB interface connector: 1 (USB Hi-speed)
	Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX)
PDL .....	PRESCRIBE

**Scanner functions**

Operating system.....	Windows 2000 (Service Pack 2 or later), Windows XP, Windows Vista		
System requirements .....	CPU 600 MHz or higher		
	RAM 128 MB or more		
Resolution .....	600 dpi, 400 dpi, 300 dpi, 200 dpi, 200 x 100 dpi, 200 x 400 dpi		
File format.....	TIFF (MMR/JPEG compression), JPEG, XPS, PDF (MMR/JPEG compression), PDF (high compression)		
Scanning speed .....	A4, 600 dpi, Image quality: Text/Photo original, B/W		
	Single scanning: 52 images/min		
Interface .....	Ethernet (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX)		
Network protocol .....	TCP/IP		
Transmission system .....	PC transmission	SMB	Scan to SMB
		FTP	Scan to FTP, FTP over SSL
	E-mail transmission	SMTP	Scan to E-mail
	Twain scan		
	WIA scan		

NOTE: These specifications are subject to change without notice.

## 1-1-2 Parts names

### (1) Machine

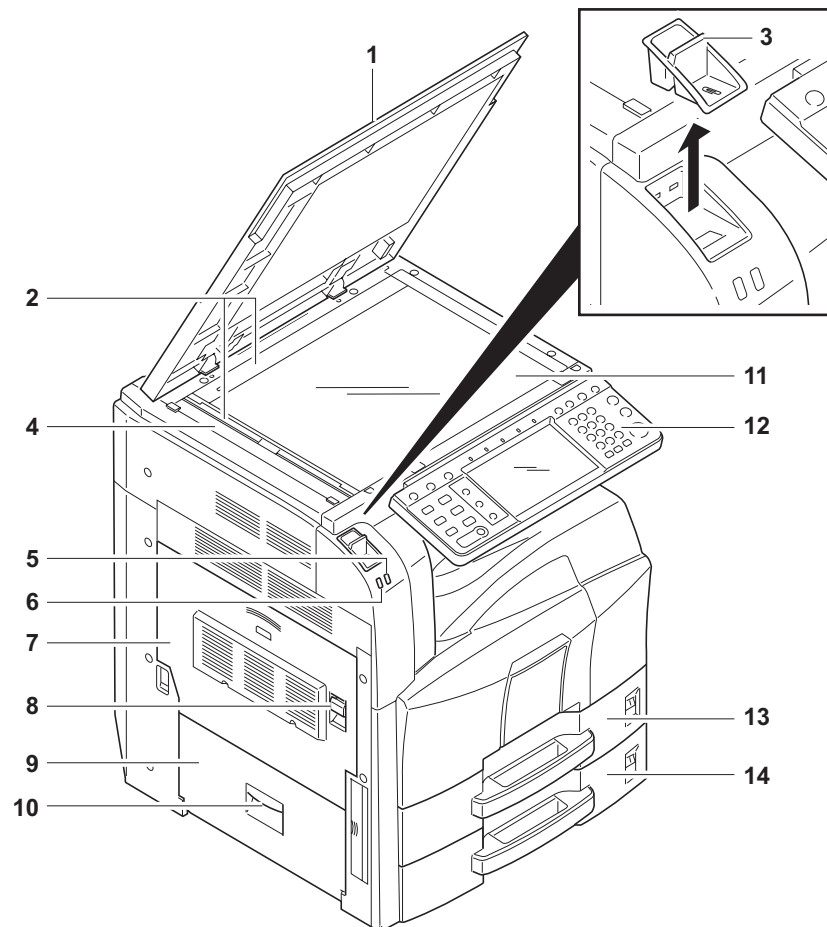
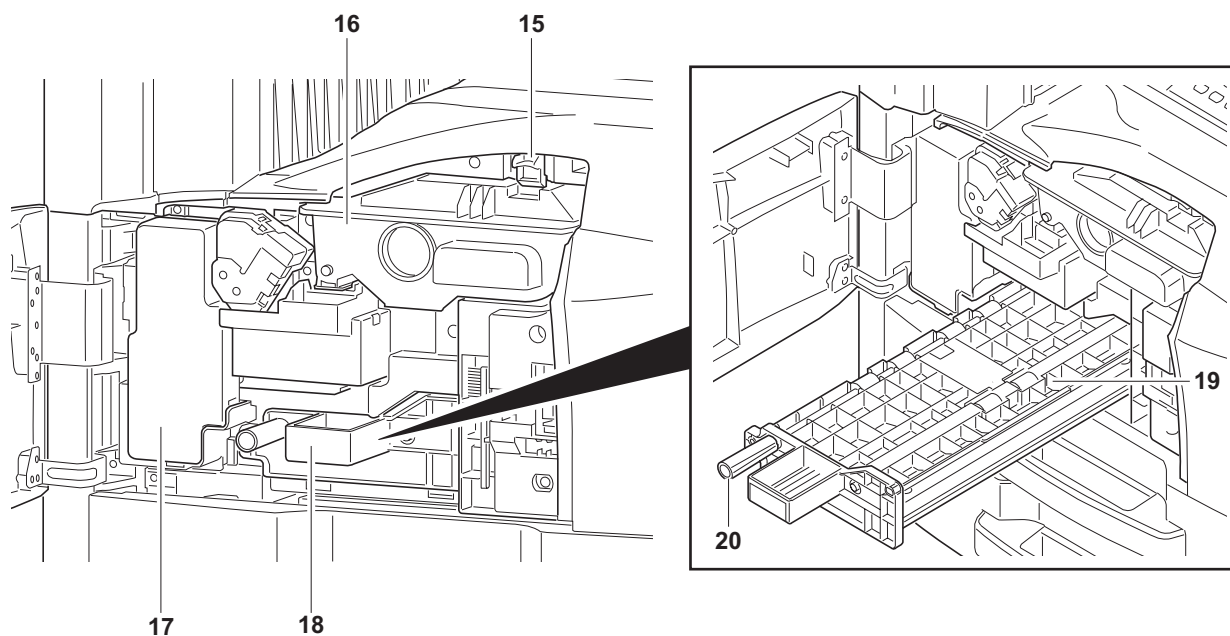


Figure 1-1-1

1. Original cover (option)
2. Original size indicator plates
3. Clip holder
4. Slit glass
5. Attention indicator
6. Receive indicator
7. Left cover 1
8. Left cover 1 lever
9. Left cover 2
10. Left cover 2 handle
11. Contact glass
12. Operation panel
13. Cassette 1
14. Cassette 2

**Figure 1-1-2**

- 15. Toner container stopper
- 16. Toner container
- 17. Waste toner box
- 18. Paper feed unit (A2)
- 19. Paper feed unit cover (A3)
- 20. Knob

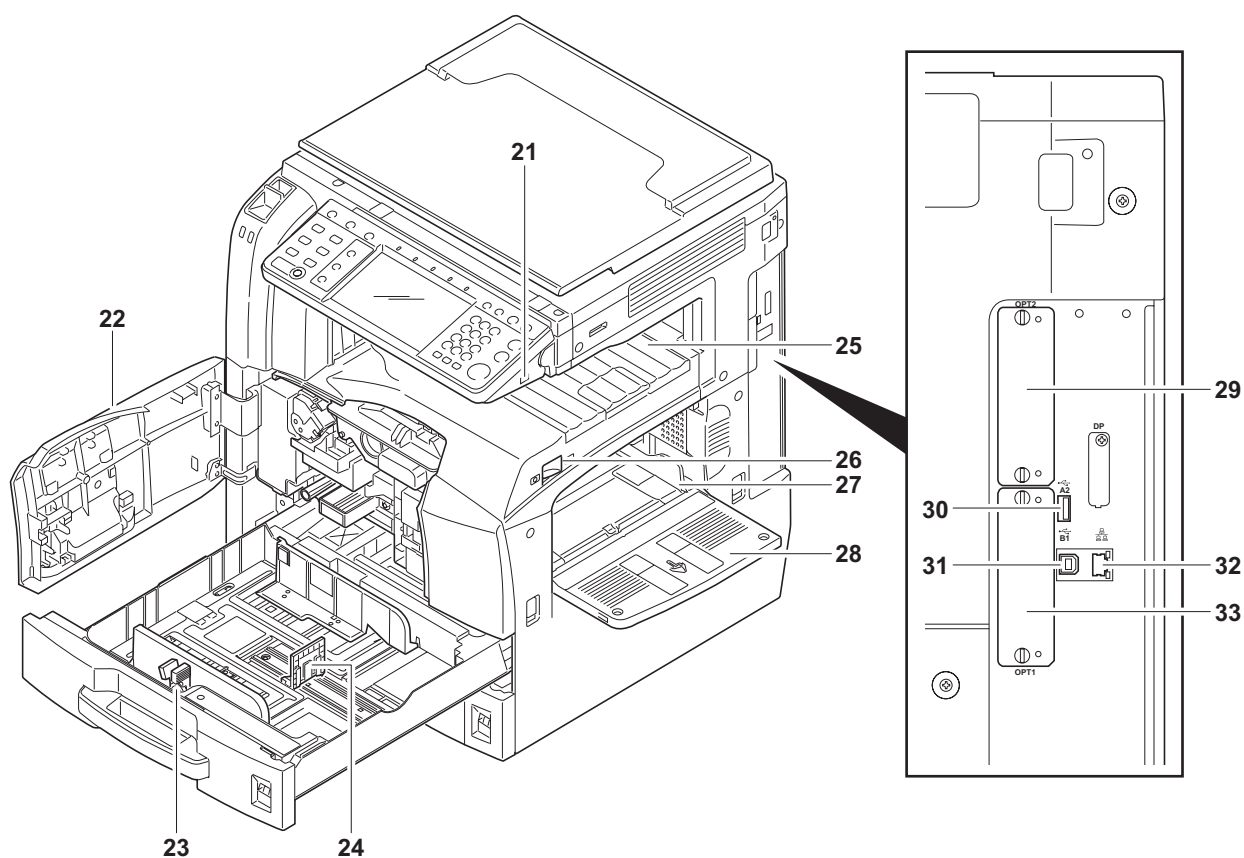


Figure 1-1-3

- 21. USB memory slot (A1)
- 22. Front cover
- 23. Paper width adjusting tab
- 24. Paper length guide
- 25. Top tray
- 26. Main power switch
- 27. Paper width guide
- 28. MP tray (multi purpose tray)
- 29. Optional interface slot (OPT2)
- 30. USB memory slot (A2)
- 31. USB interface connector (B1)
- 32. Network interface connector
- 33. Optional interface slot (OPT1)

## (2) Operation panel

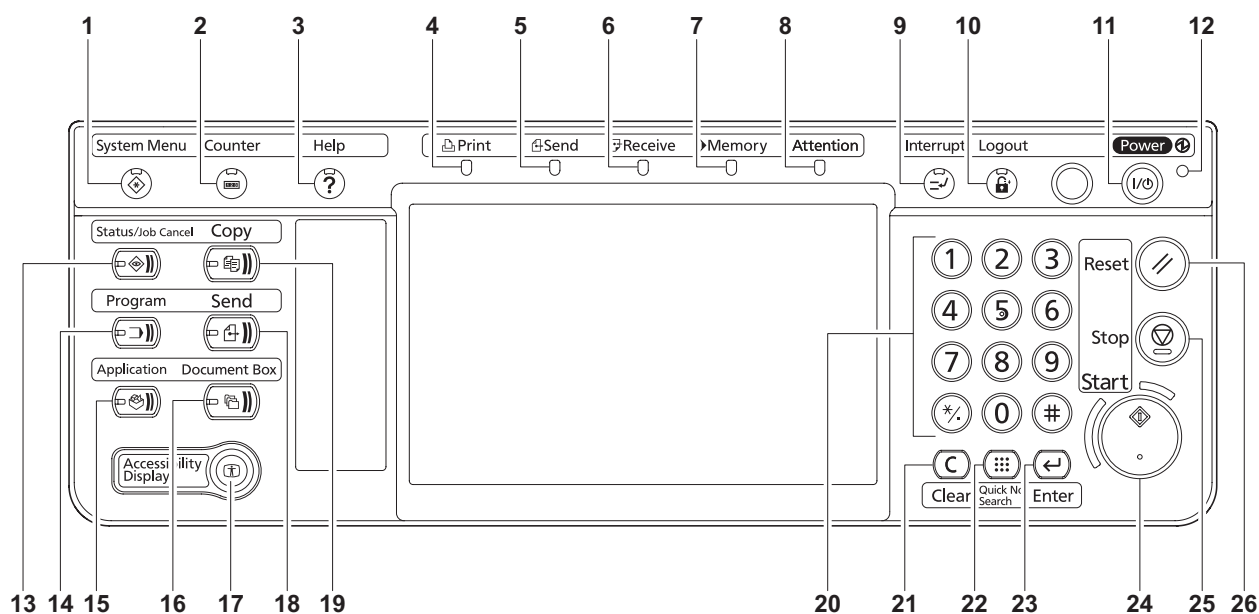


Figure 1-1-4

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. System menu key/indicator        | 14. Program key/indicator       |
| 2. Counter key/indicator            | 15. Application key/indicator   |
| 3. Help key/indicator               | 16. Document box key/indicator  |
| 4. Print indicator                  | 17. Accessibility key/indicator |
| 5. Send indicator                   | 18. Send key/indicator          |
| 6. Receive indicator                | 19. Copy key/indicator          |
| 7. Memory indicator                 | 20. Numeric keys                |
| 8. Attention indicator              | 21. Clear key                   |
| 9. Interrupt key/indicator          | 22. Quick No. search key        |
| 10. Logout key/indicator            | 23. Enter key                   |
| 11. Power key/indicator             | 24. Start key/indicator         |
| 12. Main power indicator            | 25. Stop key                    |
| 13. Status/Job cancel key/indicator | 26. Reset key                   |

## 1-1-3 Machine cross section

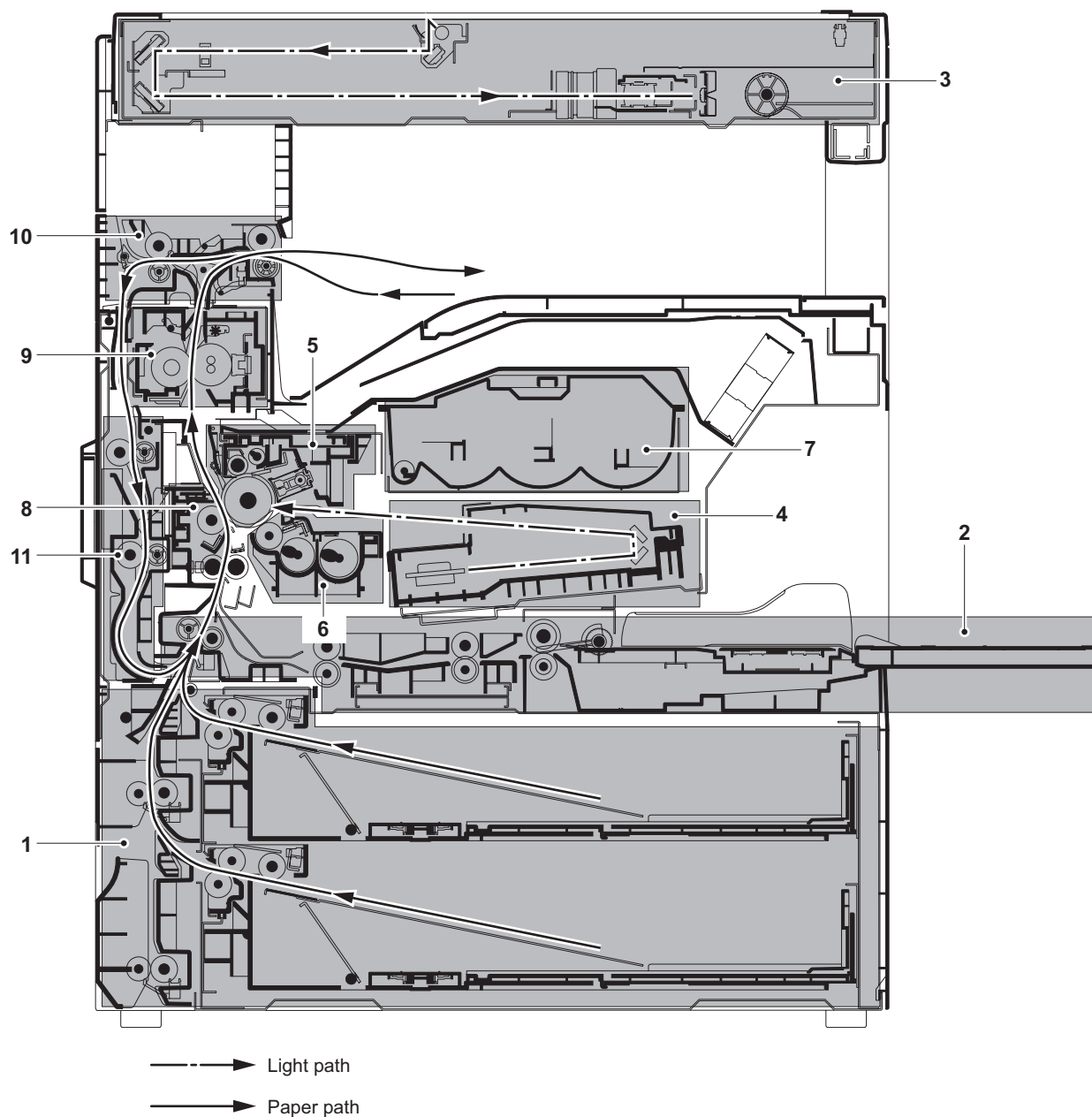


Figure 1-1-5 Machine cross section

- |                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Cassette paper feed section | 7. Toner container section          |
| 2. MP tray paper feed section  | 8. Transfer and separation sections |
| 3. Image scanner section       | 9. Fuser section                    |
| 4. Laser scanner section       | 10. Eject and switchback sections   |
| 5. Drum section                | 11. Duplex section                  |
| 6. Developing section          |                                     |

### 1-2-1 Installation environment

1. Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
2. Humidity: 15 to 80%RH
3. Power supply: 120 V AC, 12 A  
220 to 240 V AC, 6.3 A
4. Power source frequency: 50 Hz  $\pm$  0.3%/60 Hz  $\pm$  0.3%
5. Installation location  
 Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photoconductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.  
 Avoid locations subject to high temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity; an abrupt change in the environmental temperature; and cool or hot, direct air.  
 Avoid places subject to dust and vibrations.  
 Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.  
 Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).  
 Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photoconductor, such as mercury, acidic or alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NOx, SOx gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.  
 Select a well-ventilated location.
6. Allow sufficient access for proper operation and maintenance of the machine.  
 Machine front: 1000 mm/39 3/8"    Machine rear: 100 mm/3 15/16"  
 Machine right: 300 mm/11 13/16"    Machine left: 300 mm/11 13/16"

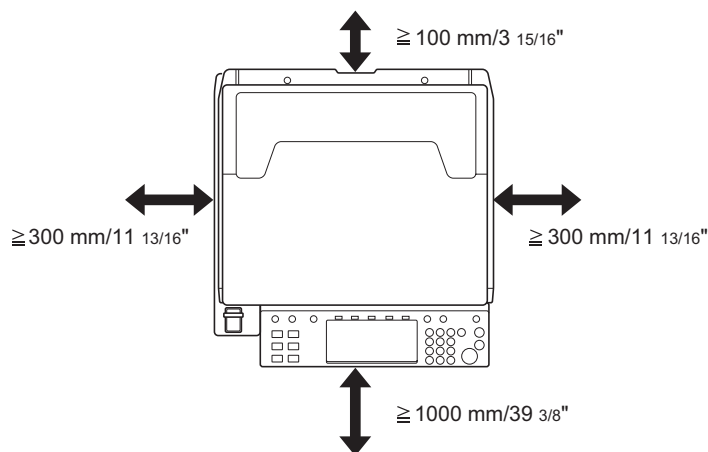
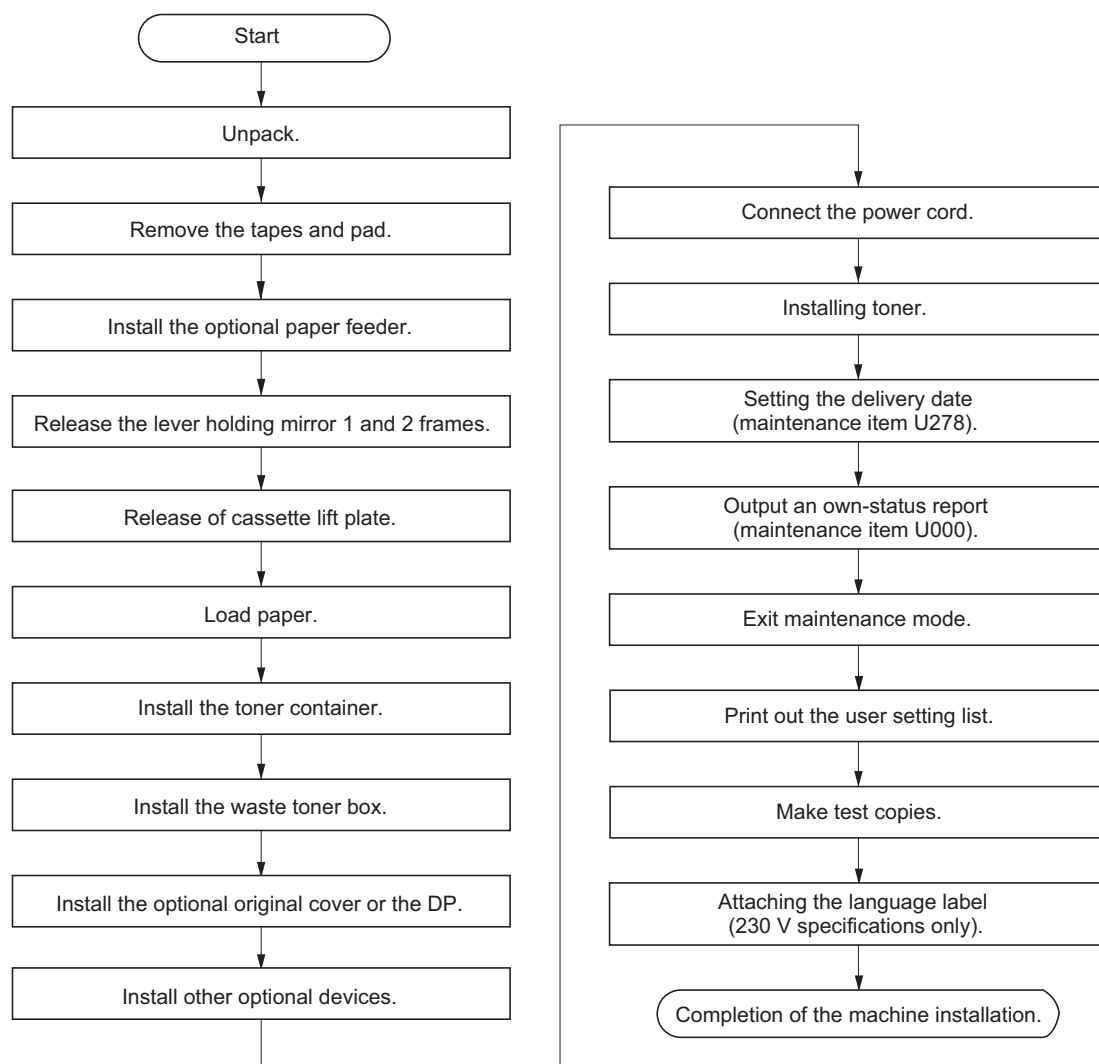


Figure 1-2-1 Installation dimensions

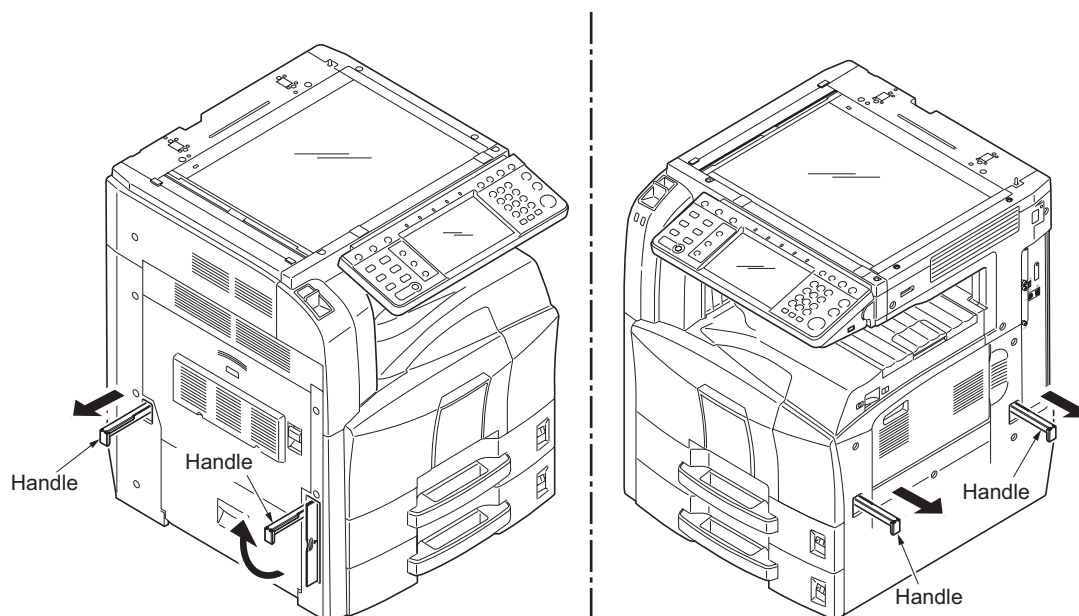
## 1-2-2 Unpacking and installation

### (1) Installation procedure



**Moving the machine**

When moving the machine, pull out the four handles on the right and left sides and hold them.



**Figure 1-2-2**

## Unpacking.

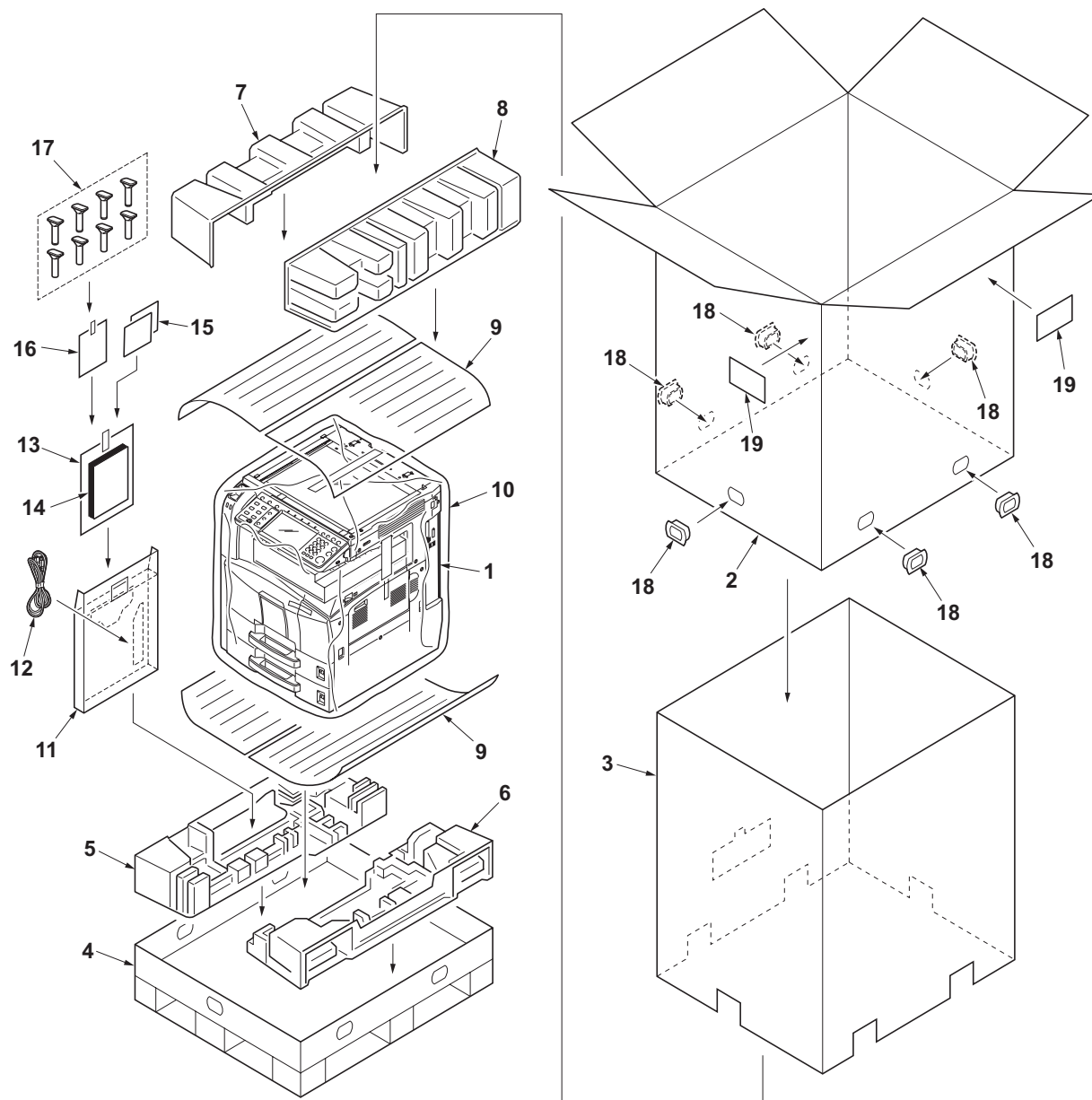


Figure 1-2-3 Unpacking

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Machine          | 11. Document tray     |
| 2. Outer case       | 12. Power cord        |
| 3. Inner frame      | 13. Plastic bag       |
| 4. Skid             | 14. Operation guide   |
| 5. Bottom left pad  | 15. Paper size plates |
| 6. Bottom right pad | 16. Plastic bag       |
| 7. Upper left pad   | 17. Cursor pins       |
| 8. Upper right pad  | 18. Hinge joints      |
| 9. Sheets           | 19. Bar code labels   |
| 10. Machine cover   |                       |

Caution: Place the machine on a level surface.

Remove the tapes and pad.

1. Remove two tapes.
2. Remove the pad.

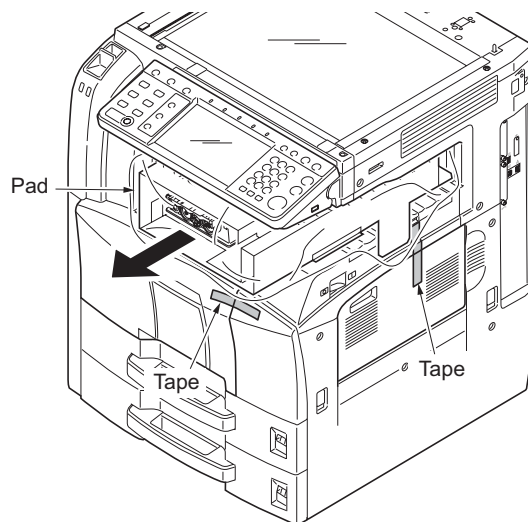


Figure 1-2-4

Install the optional paper feeder.

1. Install the optional paper feeder as necessary.
2. Verify levelness at the four corners of the platen using a level gauge, and adjust the level bolts at the bottom of the machine to optimize levelness.

Release the lever holding mirror 1 and 2 frames.

1. Turn the lever of the machine rear side with the tool to release the lever holding the mirror 1 and 2 frames.

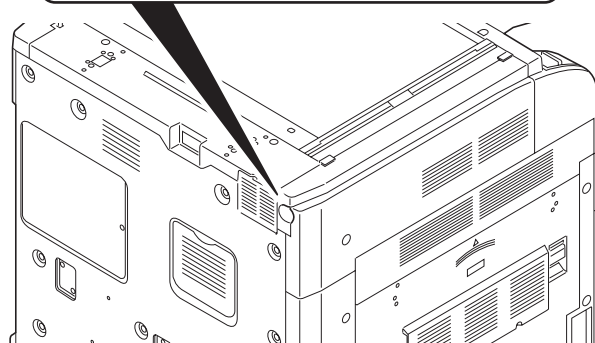
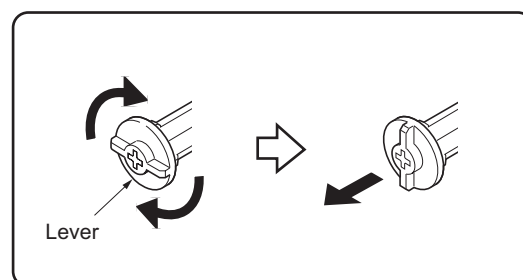


Figure 1-2-5

### Release of cassette lift plate.

1. Pull cassette 1 and 2 out.  
Remove the lift plate stopper from each cassette and attach it to the storage location. When moving the machine, attach the lift plate in original position.

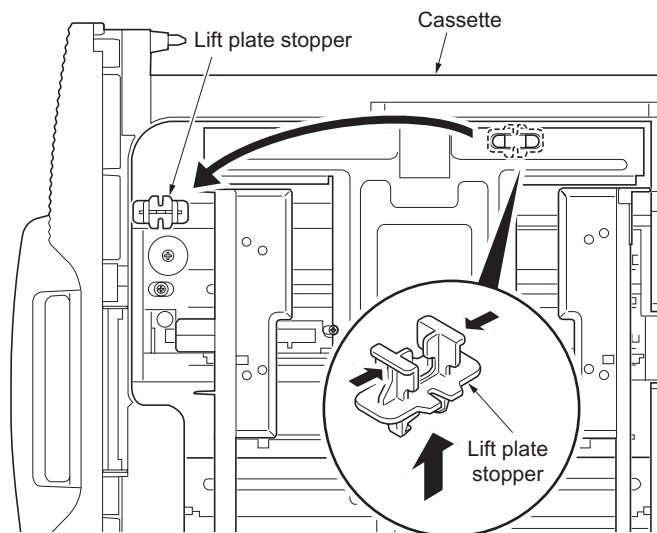


Figure 1-2-6

### Load paper.

1. Pull the cassette out.
2. Holding the paper width adjusting tab both ends, move the paper width guides to fit the paper size.

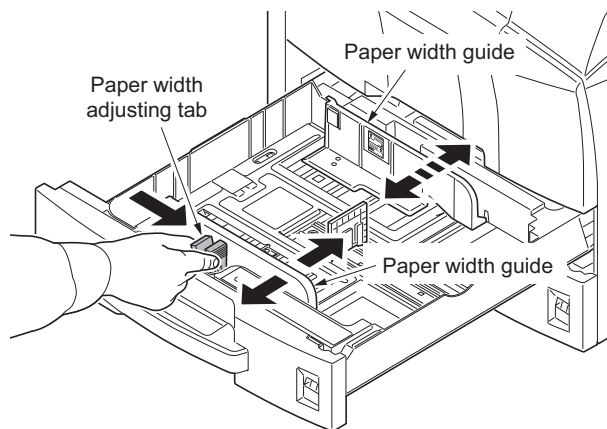


Figure 1-2-7

3. Adjust the length adjustment plate to fit the paper size.

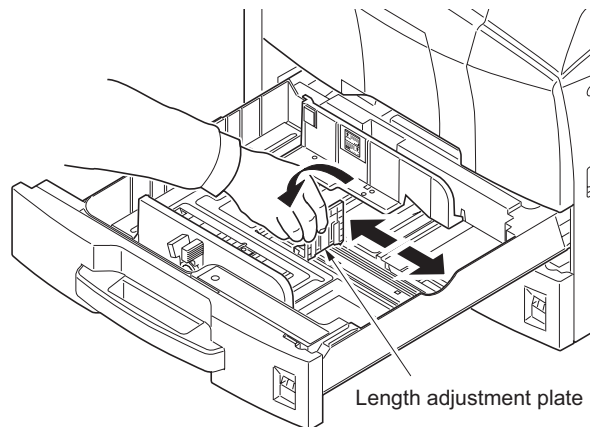


Figure 1-2-8

4. Align the paper flush against the left side of the cassette.

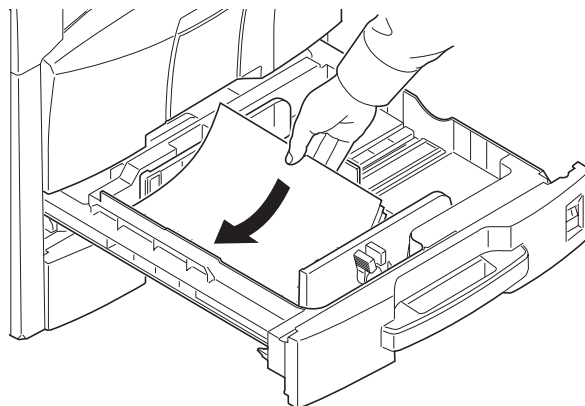


Figure 1-2-9

Install the toner container.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Tap the top of the toner container five to six times.

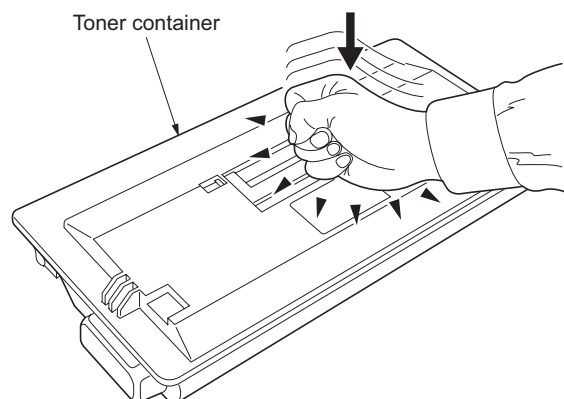


Figure 1-2-10

3. Shake the toner container approximately 10 times in the horizontal direction to stir toner.

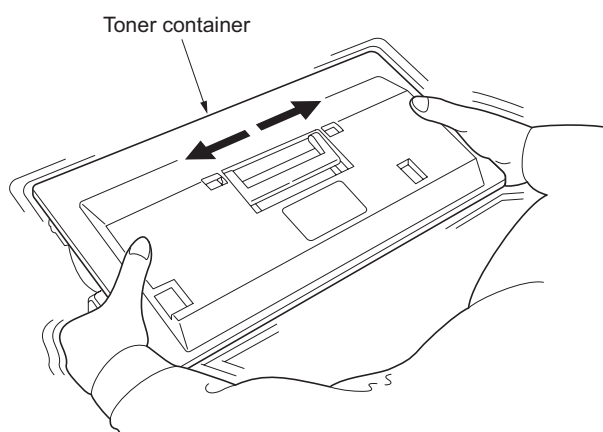


Figure 1-2-11

4. Gently push the toner container into the machine along the rails. Push the container all the way into the machine until it locks in place.

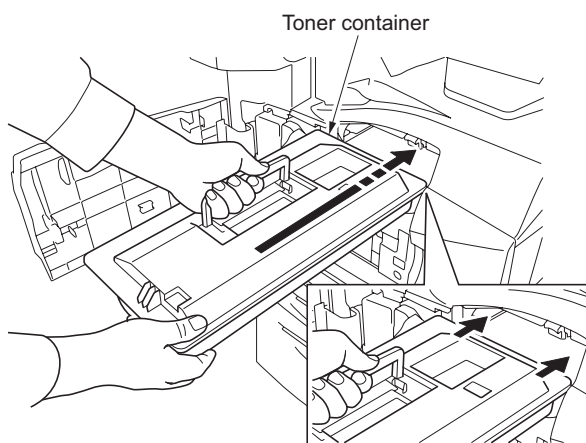


Figure 1-2-12

Install the waste toner box.

1. Install the waste toner box in the machine.
2. Close the front cover.

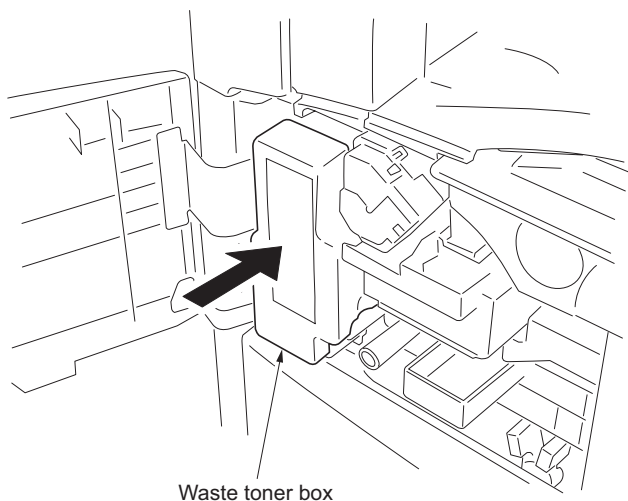


Figure 1-2-13

Install the optional original cover or the DP.

1. Install the optional original cover or DP.

Install other optional devices.

1. Install the optional devices (job separator, built-in finisher, document finisher and/or fax kit etc.) as necessary.

Connect the power cord.

1. Connect the power cord to the connector on the machine.
2. Insert the power plug into the wall outlet.

#### Installing toner.

1. Turn the main power switch on. Toner installation is started.
2. The drive chain is disengaged when toner installation is completed.  
Run maintenance mode U130 if [Add Toner] remains displayed even after the drive chain is disengaged.

#### Setting the delivery date (maintenance item U278).

1. Enter the maintenance mode by entering 10871087 using the numeric keys.
2. Enter 278 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
3. Select [TODAY] and press the start key. The delivery date is set.
4. Press the stop key.

#### Output an own-status report (maintenance item U000).

1. Enter 000 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
2. Select [MAINTENANCE] and press the start key to output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items.
3. Press the stop key.

#### Exit maintenance mode.

1. Enter 001 using the numeric keys and press the start key. The machine exits the maintenance mode.

#### Print out the user setting list.

1. Select [Report Print] to output the user various setting reports.

#### Make test copies.

1. Place an original and make test copies.

#### Attaching the language label (230 V specifications only).

1. According to need, attach the correspond language label.

#### Completion of the machine installation.

**(2) Setting initial copy modes**

Factory settings are as follows:

Maintenance item No.	Contents	Factory setting
U253	Switching between double and single counts	DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)
U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	After ejection
U285	Setting service status page	ON
U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON/8
U328	Side ejection setting	OFF
U342	Setting the ejection restriction	ON
U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF

### 1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option)

Installing the key counter requires the following component:

Key counter (P/N 3025418011)

Key counter set (P/N 302A369708)

#### Supplied parts of key counter set:

Key counter socket assembly (P/N 3029236241)

Key counter cover (P/N 3066060011)

Key counter mount (P/N 3066060041)

Key counter retainer (P/N 302GR03020)

Key counter cover retainer (P/N 302GR03010)

Two (2) Edgings (P/N 7YZM210006++H01)

One (1) Band (P/N M21AH010)

One (1) M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (P/N 5MBTPB3008PW++R)

Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight P screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010PW++R)

Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight S screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010TW++R)

Two (2) M3 × 6 bronze flat-head screws (P/N 7BB003306H)

One (1) M4 × 20 tap-tight S screw (P/N 7BB100420H)

One (1) M3 bronze nut (P/N 7BC1003055++H01)

One (1) M3 × 8 bronze binding screw (P/N B1B03080)

One (1) M4 × 30 tap-tight S screw (P/N B1B54300)

Five (5) M4 × 6 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04060)

Two (2) M4 × 10 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04100)

#### Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the main power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Fit the key counter socket assembly to the key counter retainer using two screws and nut.
3. Fit the key counter mount to the key counter cover using two screws.
4. Fit the key counter retainer to the key counter mount using two screws.

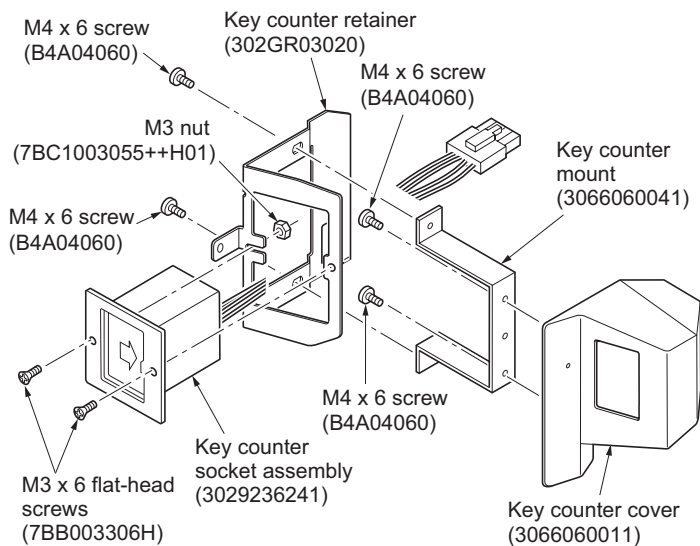


Figure 1-2-14

5. Remove the ISU filter cover.
6. Remove ten screws and then remove the rear cover.

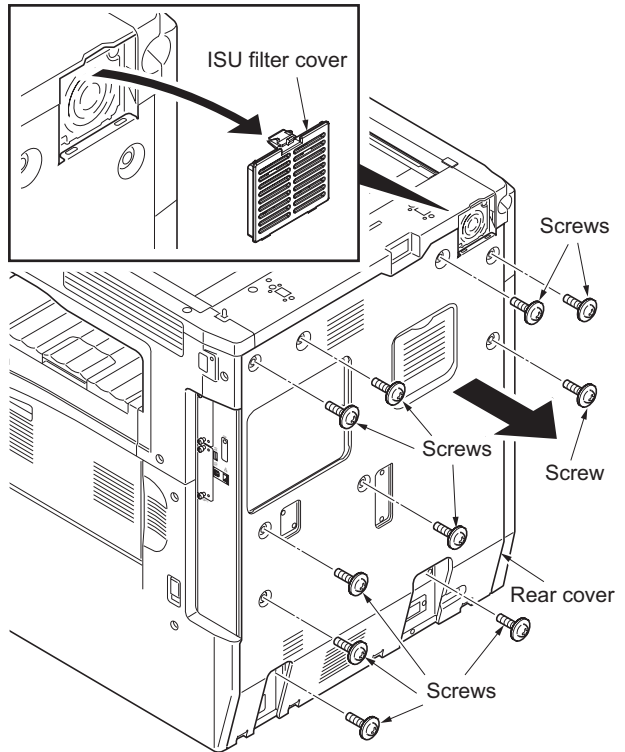


Figure 1-2-15

7. Remove two screws and then remove the scanner right cover.

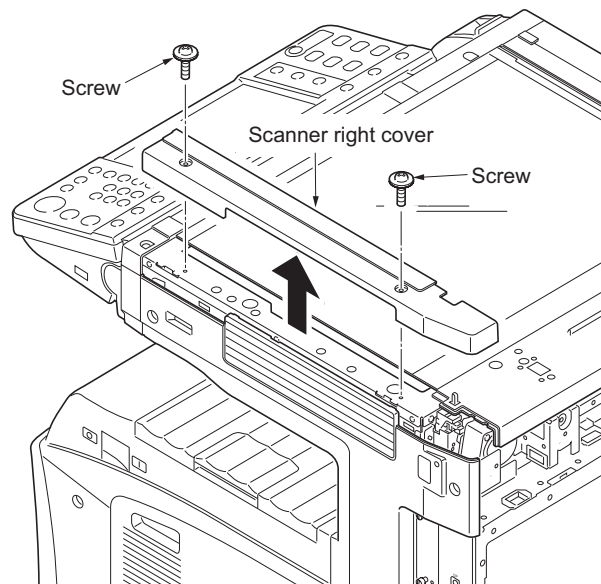


Figure 1-2-16

8. Remove three screws and then remove the right upper cover.
9. Cut out the aperture plate on the right upper cover using nippers.

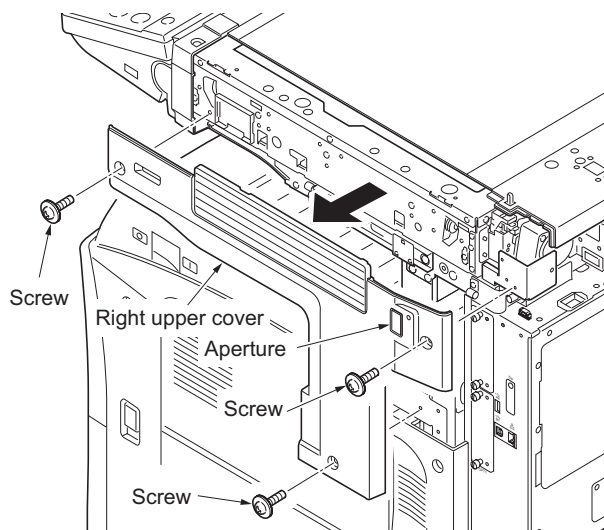


Figure 1-2-17

10. Release the wire saddle and then stretch the key counter wire.
11. Close the wire saddle.

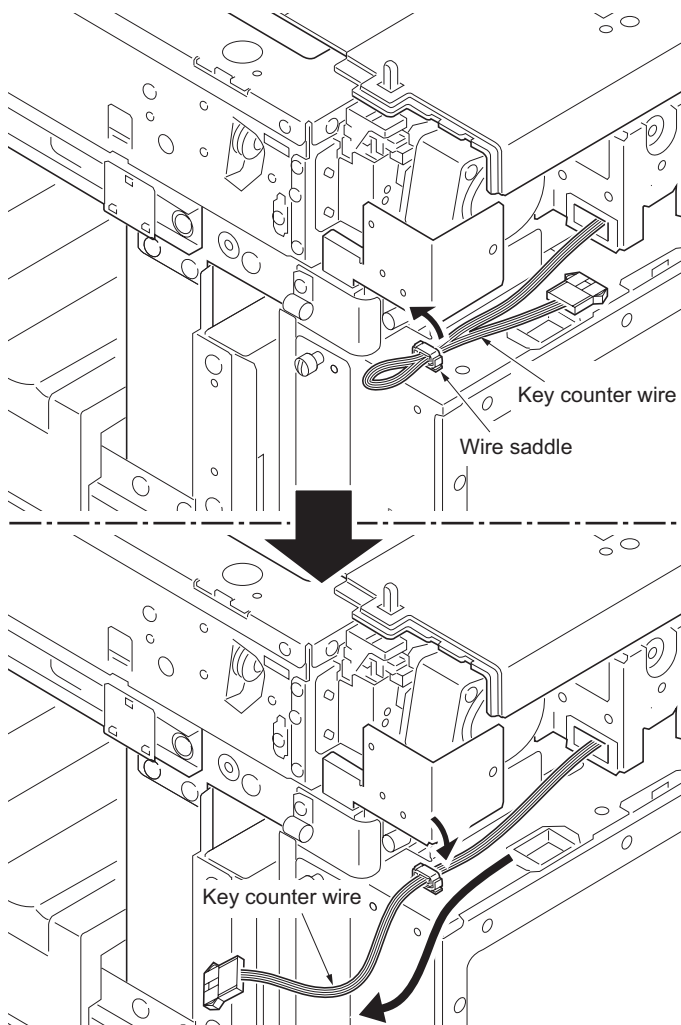


Figure 1-2-18

12. Refit the rear cover and ISU filter cover.
13. Pass the key counter wire through the aperture and then refit the upper right cover.

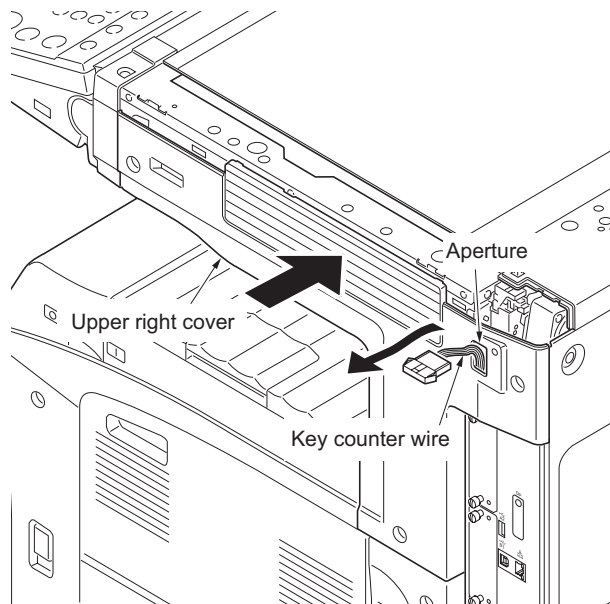


Figure 1-2-19

14. Pass the connector of the key counter wire through the aperture in the key counter cover retainer.
15. Insert the hook of the key counter cover retainer in the slit of the right upper cover.
16. Fit the key counter cover retainer to the machine using the M4 x 20 screw.
17. Refit the scanner right cover.

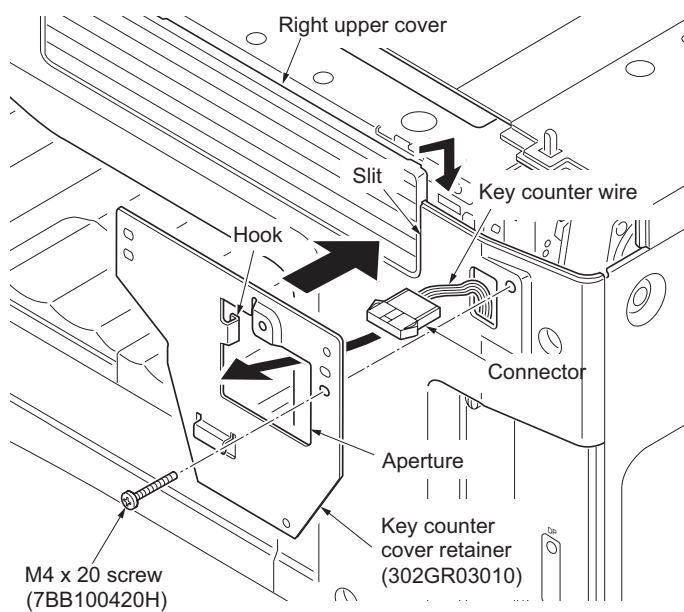


Figure 1-2-20

18. Connect the connector of the key counter signal cable to the connector of the key counter wire.
19. Fit the key counter cover with the key counter socket assembly inserted to the key counter cover retainer using the M4 x 6 screw.
20. Insert the key counter into the key counter socket assembly.

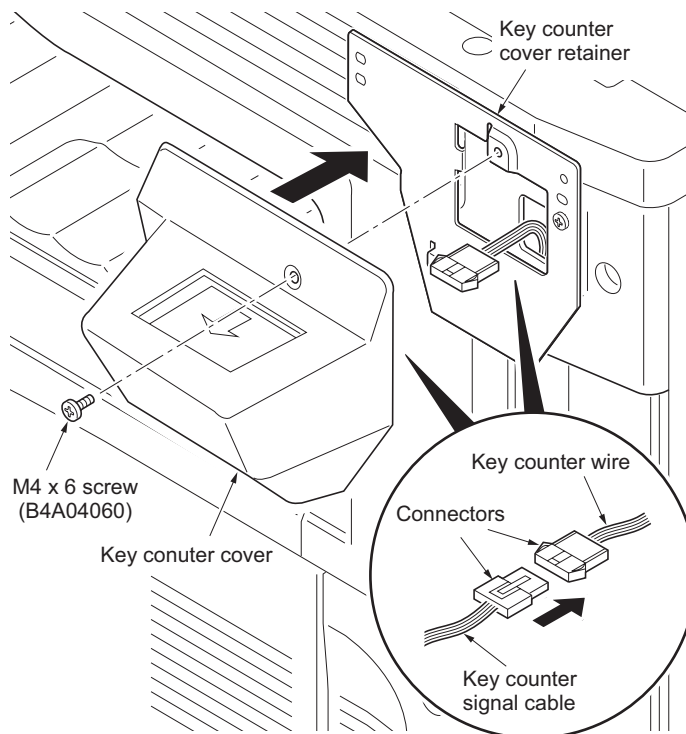


Figure 1-2-21

21. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
22. Run maintenance item U204 and select [KEY COUNTER].
23. Exit the maintenance mode.
24. Check that the message requesting the key counter to be inserted is displayed on the touch panel when the key counter is pulled out.
25. Check that the counter counts up as prints are made.

## 1-2-4 Replacing the expanded memory

### Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the main power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
  2. Remove the screw and remove the main PWB lid.
  3. Open clamps on both ends of the memory socket on the main PWB.
  4. Remove the expanded memory.
  5. Insert the expanded memory into the memory socket so that the notch on the memory align with the corresponding protrusion in the slot.
- The memory module is secured to the memory socket with the clamps.
6. Refit the main PWB lid.
  7. Print a status page to check the expanded memory (See page 1-3-6).

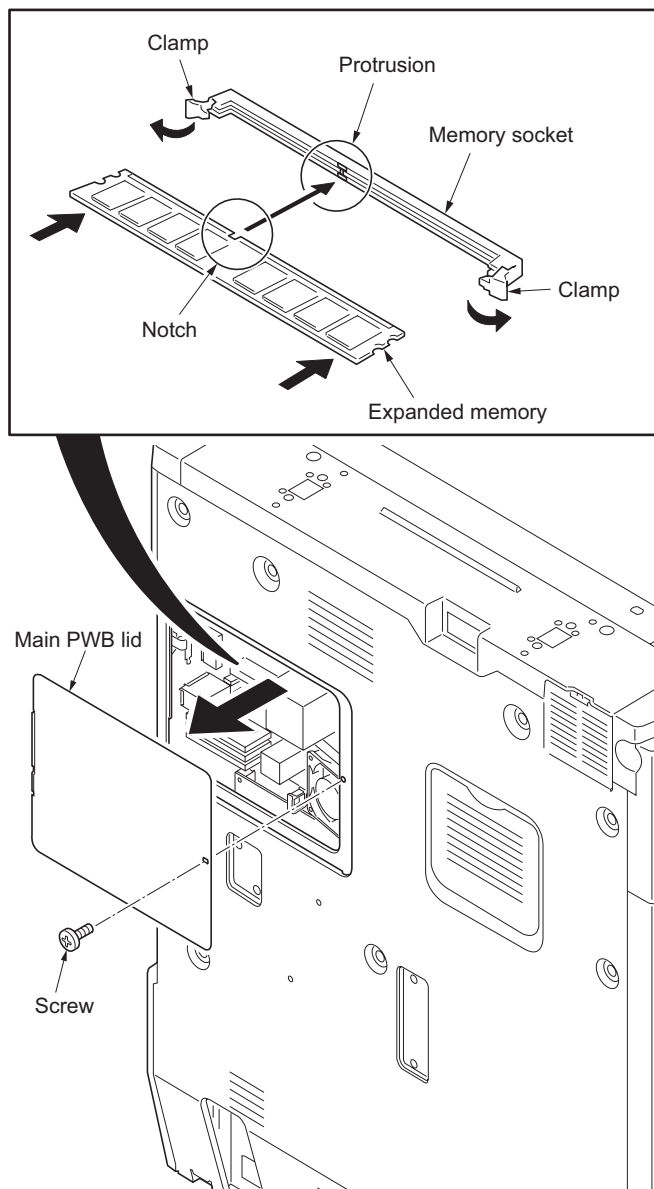
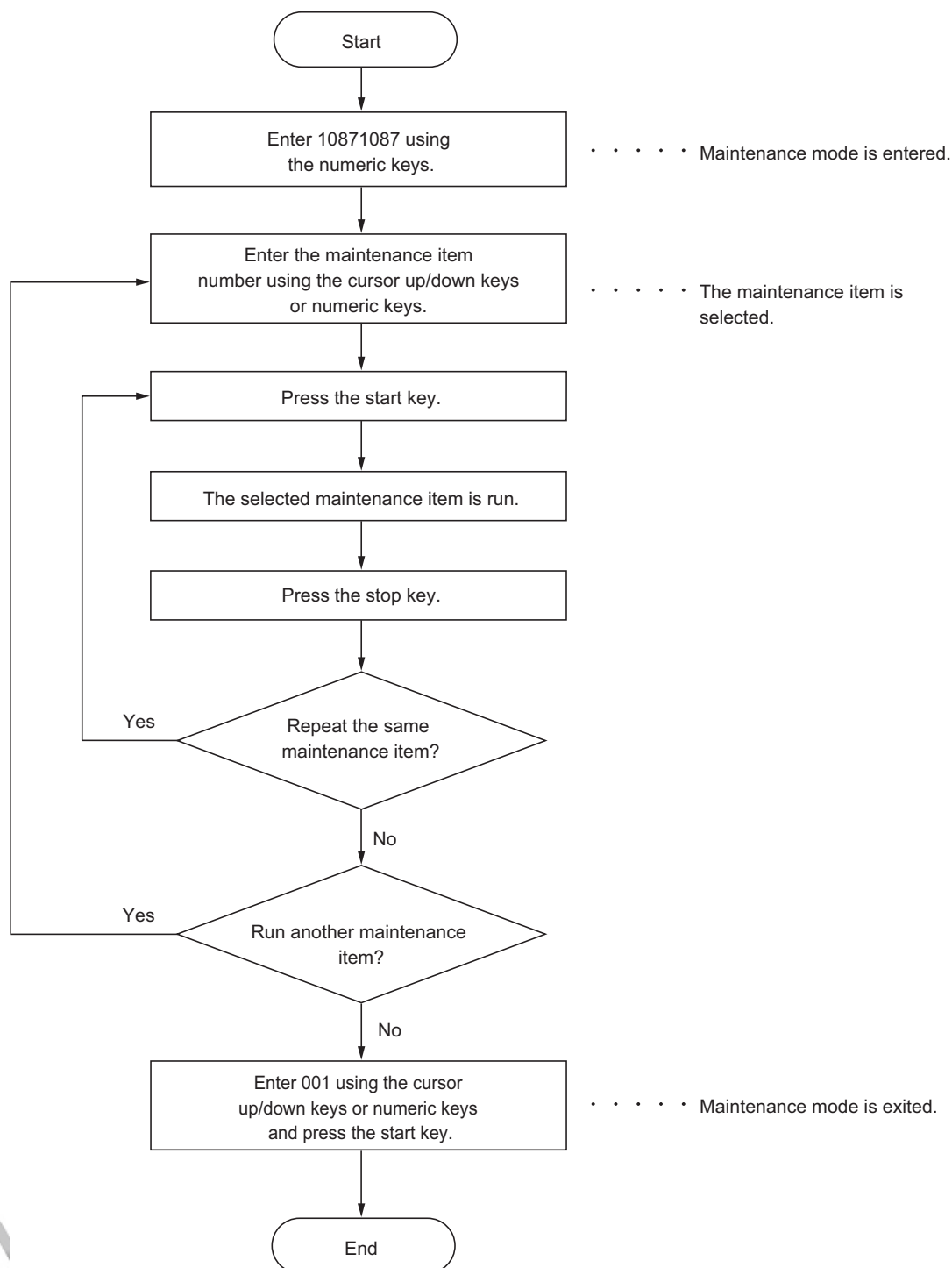


Figure 1-2-22

### 1-3-1 Maintenance mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

#### (1) Executing a maintenance item



## (2) Maintenance modes item list

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
General	U000	Outputting an own-status report	-
	U001	Exiting the maintenance mode	-
	U002	Setting the factory default data	-
	U003	Setting the service telephone number	*****
	U004	Displaying the machine number	-
	U019	Displaying the ROM version	-
Initialization	U021	Initializing counters and mode settings	-
	U024	HDD formatting	-
Drive, paper feed, paper conveying and cooling system	U030	Checking motor operation	-
	U031	Checking switches for paper conveying	-
	U032	Checking clutch operation	-
	U033	Checking solenoid operation	-
	U034	Adjusting the print start timing Adjusting the leading edge registration Adjusting the center line	0/0/0/0/0/0 0/0/0/0/0/0
	U035	Setting the printing area for folio paper Length/Width	330/210
	U037	Checking the operation of the fan motors	-
	U051	Adjusting the deflection in the paper	0/0/0/0
	U053	Setting the adjustment of the motor speed Drive motor Eject motor Polygon motor Paper feed motor	0 0 0 0
	U059	Setting fan mode	MODE1
Optical	U061	Turning the exposure lamp on	-
	U063	Adjusting the shading position	0
	U065	Adjusting the scanner magnification Main scanning direction/Auxiliary scanning direction	0/0
	U066	Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration	0/0
	U067	Adjusting the scanner center line	0/0
	U068	Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP	0/0
	U070	Adjusting the DP magnification	0/0/0/0
	U071	Adjusting the DP scanning timing	0/0/0/0/0/0
	U072	Adjusting the DP center line	0/0/0
	U073	Checking scanner operation	-
	U074	Adjusting the DP input light luminosity	0
	U080	Setting the economy mode	60
	U081	Adjusting the correct exposure	0/0/0
	U087	Setting DP reading position modification operation	145/145/145
	U089	Outputting a MIP-PG pattern	-
	U091	Setting the white line correction	75/0
	U093	Setting the exposure density gradient	0/0/0/0/0

\*: Factory initial setting, \*1: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
Optical	U099	Adjusting original size detection	40/30/20/40/30/20/40/30/20/ 19/19/19/150 (DP not installed) 50/50/50/50/50/50/50/50/50/ 49/49/49/150 (DP installed)
High voltage	U100	Setting the main high voltage	-
	U101	Setting the other high voltages Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation Developing shift bias potential at image formation Developing bias AC component duty at image formation Transfer control voltage Separation control voltage	28 1 50 130 20
	U102	Setting the cleaning interval for the main charger	5 <sup>*1</sup>
	U109	Displaying the drum type	-
	U110	Checking the drum count	-
	U111	Checking the drum drive time	-
	U112	Setting toner refresh operation Time of toner refreshment Developing bias on time	120 540
	U114	Setting separation charger mode	MODE3
	U117	Checking the drum number	-
	U118	Displaying the drum history	-
	U127	Checking the transfer count	-
Developing	U130	Initial setting for the developing unit	-
	U136	Setting toner near end mode	OFF
	U139	Displaying the temperature and humidity	-
	U144	Setting toner disposal operation	MODE2
	U155	Checking sensors for toner	-
	U157	Checking the developing drive time	-
	U158	Checking the developing count	-
Fuser and cleaning	U161	Setting the fuser control temperature Driving start temperature when warm-up starts Control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.] Control temperature during printing Printing speed control at over-hearing on the fuser ends	185 <sup>*1</sup> 200 <sup>*1</sup> 200 <sup>*1</sup> MODE1
	U163	Resetting the fuser problem data	-
	U167	Checking/clearing the fuser counts	-
	U196	Turning the fuser heater on	-
	U198	Setting the fuser phase control	ON
	U199	Checking the fuser temperature	-
Operation panel and support equipment	U200	Turning all LEDs on	-
	U201	Initializing the touch panel	-
	U202	Setting the KMAS host monitoring system	-
	U203	Checking DP operation	-
	U204	Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter	OFF/KEY-DEVICE <sup>*1</sup>
	U206	Setting the presence or absence of the coin vender	-
	U207	Checking the operation panel keys	-

\*: Factory initial setting, \*1: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
Operation panel and support equipment	U208	Setting the paper size for the paper feeder	Inch specifications: Letter* <sup>1</sup> Metric specifications: A4* <sup>1</sup>
	U221	Setting the USB host lock function	OFF* <sup>1</sup>
	U222	Setting the IC card type	-
	U223	Operation panel lock	Unlock* <sup>1</sup>
	U224	Panel sheet extension	-
	U234	Setting punch destination	AUTO
	U236	Setting the limit for the ejection section of the built-in finisher	OFF* <sup>1</sup>
	U237	Setting finisher stack quantity	0/0* <sup>1</sup>
	U240	Checking the operation of the finisher	-
	U241	Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher	-
	U243	Checking the operation of the DP motors	-
	U244	Checking the DP switches	-
	U245	Checking messages	-
	U246	Setting the finisher 3000-sheet document finisher Centerfold unit Built-in finisher	0/0/0/0/0/0* <sup>1</sup> 0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0* <sup>1</sup> 0/0/0* <sup>1</sup>
	U247	Setting the paper feed device	-
Mode setting	U250	Setting the maintenance cycle	-
	U251	Checking/clearing the maintenance count	-
	U252	Setting the destination	-
	U253	Switching between double and single counts	DOUBLE COUNT (A3/LEDGER)* <sup>1</sup>
	U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	After ejection* <sup>1</sup>
	U265	Setting OEM purchaser code	-
	U278	Setting the delivery date	-
	U285	Setting service status page	ON
	U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON/8* <sup>1</sup>
	U328	Side ejection setting	OFF* <sup>1</sup>
	U332	Setting the size conversion factor	1.0* <sup>1</sup>
	U341	Specific paper feed location setting for printing function	-
	U342	Setting the ejection restriction	ON* <sup>1</sup>
	U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF* <sup>1</sup>
	U345	Setting the value for maintenance due indication	0* <sup>1</sup>
Image processing	U402	Adjusting margins of image printing	4.0/3.0/3.0/3.9/4.0/4.0
	U403	Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the platen	2.0/2.0/2.0/2.0
	U404	Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP	3.0/2.5/3.0/4.0/ 3.0/2.5/3.0/4.0
	U407	Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing	0
	U410	Adjusting the halftone automatically	-
	U411	Adjusting the scanner automatically	-

\*: Factory initial setting, \*1: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
Image processing	U425	Setting the target	-
	U470	Setting the JPEG compression ratio System Copy Send	90/90*1 90/90/90/90*1 30/40/51/70/90*1 30/40/51/70/90*1 30/40/51/70/90*1 30/40/51/70/90*1 15/25/60*1 15/25/60*1
	U473	Adjusting laser power output	0
	U485	Setting the image processing mode	1/0*1
Network scanner	U510	Setting the enterprise mode	-
Others	U901	Checking/clearing copy counts by paper feed locations	-
	U902	Checking/clearing the punch-hole scrap counter	35000/0
	U903	Checking/clearing the paper jam counts	-
	U904	Checking/clearing the service call counts	-
	U905	Checking/clearing counts by optional devices	-
	U906	Resetting partial operation control	-
	U908	Checking the total counter value	-
	U910	Clearing the black ratio data	-
	U911	Checking copy counts by paper sizes	-
	U917	Setting backup data reading/writing	-
	U920	Checking the copy counts	-
	U927	Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)	-
	U928	Checking machine life counts	-
	U931	Setting the automatic toner install	OFF
	U935	Relay board maintenance	MODE0*1
	U942	Setting of deflection for feeding from DP	0/0/0
	U964	Checking of log	-
	U969	Checking of toner area code	-
	U977	Data capture mode	-
	U984	Checking the developing unit number	-
	U985	Displaying the developing unit history	-
	U989	HDD scandisk	-
	U990	Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light	-
	U991	Checking the scanner count	-

\*: Factory initial setting, \*1: The item initialized for executing U021

## (3) Contents of the maintenance mode items

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U000	<p><b>Outputting an own-status report</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Outputs lists of the current settings of the maintenance items, and paper jam and service call occurrences. Outputs the event log or service status page. Also sends output data to the USB memory. Printing a report is disabled either when a job is remaining in the buffer or when [Pause All Print Jobs] is pressed to halt printing.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the current setting of the maintenance items, or paper jam or service call occurrences. Before initializing or replacing the backup RAM, output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items to reenter the settings after initialization or replacement.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select the item to be output.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Output list</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAINTENANCE</td><td>List of the current settings of the maintenance modes</td></tr> <tr> <td>USER STATUS</td><td>Outputs the user status page</td></tr> <tr> <td>SERVICE STATUS</td><td>Outputs the service status page</td></tr> <tr> <td>EVENT</td><td>Outputs the event log</td></tr> <tr> <td>NETWORK STATUS</td><td>Outputs the network status page</td></tr> <tr> <td>ALL</td><td>Outputs the all reports</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The interrupt print mode is entered and a list is output. When A4/Letter paper is available, a report of this size is output. If not, specify the paper feed location. When output is complete, the screen for selecting an item is displayed. The output status is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>READY</td><td>Standing by for output (including while outputting other reports)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ACTIVE</td><td>Performing output processing</td></tr> <tr> <td>COMPLETE</td><td>Output processing completed normally</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR</td><td>Output processing terminated with an error</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: Send to the USB memory</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the main power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.</li> <li>Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.</li> <li>Turn the main power switch on.</li> <li>Enter the maintenance item.</li> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select the item to be send.</li> <li>Select [TEXT] or [HTML].</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Output list</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Print</td><td>Outputs the report</td></tr> <tr> <td>To USB (TEXT)</td><td>Sends output data to the USB memory (text type)</td></tr> <tr> <td>To USB (HTML)</td><td>Sends output data to the USB memory (HTML type)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. Output will be sent to the USB memory.</li> </ol>	Display	Output list	MAINTENANCE	List of the current settings of the maintenance modes	USER STATUS	Outputs the user status page	SERVICE STATUS	Outputs the service status page	EVENT	Outputs the event log	NETWORK STATUS	Outputs the network status page	ALL	Outputs the all reports	Display	Description	READY	Standing by for output (including while outputting other reports)	ACTIVE	Performing output processing	COMPLETE	Output processing completed normally	ERROR	Output processing terminated with an error	Display	Output list	Print	Outputs the report	To USB (TEXT)	Sends output data to the USB memory (text type)	To USB (HTML)	Sends output data to the USB memory (HTML type)
Display	Output list																																
MAINTENANCE	List of the current settings of the maintenance modes																																
USER STATUS	Outputs the user status page																																
SERVICE STATUS	Outputs the service status page																																
EVENT	Outputs the event log																																
NETWORK STATUS	Outputs the network status page																																
ALL	Outputs the all reports																																
Display	Description																																
READY	Standing by for output (including while outputting other reports)																																
ACTIVE	Performing output processing																																
COMPLETE	Output processing completed normally																																
ERROR	Output processing terminated with an error																																
Display	Output list																																
Print	Outputs the report																																
To USB (TEXT)	Sends output data to the USB memory (text type)																																
To USB (HTML)	Sends output data to the USB memory (HTML type)																																

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	Event log

Event Log

MFP

Firmware version 2KS\_2000.001.001    2009.06.17

(1)                      (2)

(3) Paper Jam Log

#	Count.	Event Descriptions
16	1876543	10.01.08.01.01
15	166554	10.01.08.01.02
14	4988	10.01.08.01.01
13	4988	10.01.08.01.02
12	4988	
11	4988	
10	1103	10.01.08.01.01
9	1103	
8	1103	12.03.08.01.01
7	1103	12.03.08.01.01
6	1027	12.03.08.01.01
5	1027	12.03.0A.01.01
4	1027	12.03.08.01.01
3	1027	12.03.08.01.02
2	406	12.03.0A.01.01
1	36	12.03.08.01.01

(4) Service Call Log

#	Count.	Service Code
8	1881214	F0.0030
7	178944	01.1010
6	5296	F0.4000
5	5295	F0.3100
4	2099	01.2000
3	1054	01.2000
2	809	01.2500
1	30	01.2500

(5) Maintenance Log

#	Count.	Item
8	1045571	01.00
7	104511	01.00
6	7045	01.00
5	3454	01.00
4	3454	02.00
3	3454	02.00
2	417	02.00
1	34	02.20

(6) Unknown toner Log

#	Count.	Item
5	3454	01.00
4	3454	01.00
3	3454	01.00
2	406	01.00
1	32	01.00

(7) Counter Log

(f)	J04:000	J20:000	J70:000	J93:002	(g)	C0100:001	C4000:001	C8020:001	(h)	M00:01
	J05:000	J21:000	J71:000	J94:000		C1010:001	C4010:001	C8030:001		M00:01
	J09:000	J22:000	J72:000	J95:000		C1020:001	C4100:001	C8040:001		
	J10:000	J23:000	J73:000	J96:000		C1030:001	C6000:001	C8050:001		
	J11:002	J30:002	J74:002			C1040:001	C6020:001	C8060:001		
	J12:000	J40:002	J75:002			C2000:001	C6030:001	C8070:001		
	J13:000	J41:000	J76:000			C2250:001	C6040:001	C8140:001		
	J14:000	J42:000	J78:000			C2500:001	C6050:001	C8170:001		
	J15:000	J43:000	J80:000			C2600:001	C6100:001	C8180:001		
		J44:000	J81:000			C3100:001				
		J45:000	J82:000							

Figure 1-3-1

ONER

tonerplus.com.ua

Figure 1-3-1

Maintenance item No.	Description			
U000	Detail of event log			
	No.	Items	Description	
	(1)	System version		
	(2)	System date		
	(3)	Paper Jam Log	#	Count. Event
			Remembers 1 to 16 of occurrence. If the occurrence of the previous paper jam is less than 16, all of the paper jams are logged. When the occurrence exceeds 16, the oldest occurrence is removed.	The total page count at the time of the paper jam.  Log code (2 digit, hexadecimal, 5 categories)  (a) Cause of a paper jam (b) Paper source (c) Paper size (d) Paper type (e) Paper eject
			(a) Cause of paper jam (Hexadecimal)	
			04: Cover open 05: Secondary paper feed does not start 09: 3000-sheet paper feeder sequence error jam 10: No paper feed from cassette 1 11: No paper feed from cassette 2 12: No paper feed from optional cassette 3 13: No paper feed from optional cassette 4 14: No paper feed from MP tray 15: Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 1 16: Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 2 17: Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 3 18: Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section 19: Misfeed in paper feeder vertical paper conveying section 20: Misfeed in MP tray vertical paper conveying section 21: Multiple sheets in paper feed section 22: Multiple sheets in vertical conveying section 23: Multiple sheets in MP tray conveying section 30: Misfeed in registration/transfer section 40: Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray) 41: Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 1) 42: Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 2) 43: Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 3) 44: Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 4) 46: Misfeed in fuser section (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder) 47: Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section) 50: Misfeed in eject section 51: Misfeed in job separator eject section 52: Misfeed in feedshift section 60: Duplex paper conveying section 1 61: Duplex paper conveying section 2 70: No original feed 71: An original jam in the original feed/conveying section 1 72: An original jam in the original feed/conveying section 2 73: An original jam in the original conveying section 74: An original jam in the original registration section 75: An original jam in the original registration section 76: An original jam in the original feed/conveying section 78: Document processor top cover open 80: Jam between the finisher and machine (3000-sheet document finisher) 81: Paper entry sensor nonarrival jam	

Maintenance item No.	Description				
U000	(3) cont.	Paper Jam Log	82: Jam in stapler 83: Exit sensor stay jam 84: Jam in eject section of right sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher) 85: Jam in eject section of left sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher) 86: Jam in eject section of internal tray 1 (3000-sheet document finisher) 87: Jam in eject section of internal tray 2 (3000-sheet document finisher) 88: Jam in eject section of main tray (3000-sheet document finisher) 89: Jam in centerfold unit (3000-sheet document finisher) 90: Jam in mailbox (3000-sheet document finisher) 91: Finisher cover open 92: Exit sensor non-arrival jam (document finisher) 93: Reverse sensor jam (document finisher) 94: Paper entry sensor stay/remaining jam (document finisher) 95: Paper conveying sensor jam (document finisher) 96: Jam between the built-in finisher and machine (built-in finisher)		
			(b) Detail of paper source (Hexadecimal)		
			00: MP tray 01: Cassette 1 02: Cassette 2 03: Cassette 3 (paper feeder) 04: Cassette 4 (paper feeder) 08: 3000-sheet paper feeder 05/06/07/09: Reserved		
			(c) Detail of paper size (Hexadecimal)		
			01: Monarch 02: Business 03: International DL 04: International C5 05: Executive 06: Letter-R 86: Letter-E 07: Legal 08: A4R 88: A4E 09: B5R 89: B5E 0A: A3 0B: B4	0C: Ledger 0D: A5 0E: A6 0F: B6 10: Commercial #9 11: Commercial #6 12: ISO B5 13: Custom size 1E: C4 1F: Postcard 20: Reply-paid postcard 21: Oficio II 22: Special 1 23: Special 2	24: A3 wide 25: Ledger wide 26: Full bleed paper (12 x 8) 27: 8K 28: 16K-R A8: 16K-E 32: Statement-R B2: Statement-E 33: Folio 34: Western type 2 35: Western type 4
			(d) Detail of paper type (Hexadecimal)		
			01: Plain 02: Transparency 03: Preprinted 04: Labels 05: Bond 06: Recycled 07: Vellum 08: Rough 09: Letterhead	0A: Color 0B: Prepunched 0C: Envelope 0D: Cardstock 0E: Coated 0F: 2nd side 10: Media 16 11: High quality	15: Custom 1 16: Custom 2 17: Custom 3 18: Custom 4 19: Custom 5 1A: Custom 6 1B: Custom 7 1C: Custom 8

ONER

tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description			
U000				
	<b>No.</b>	<b>Items</b>	<b>Description</b>	
	(3) cont.	Paper Jam Log	(e) Detail of paper exit location (Hexadecimal)	
			01: Face down (FD) 02: Face up (FU)/ Document finisher face up (FU)/ 3000-sheet document finisher left sub tray (FU) 03: Document finisher face down (FD) 04: Reserved 05: Reserved 06: 3000-sheet document finisher right sub tray (FU) 07: 3000-sheet document finisher left sub tray (FD) 09: 3000-sheet document finisher right sub tray (FD) 0A: Center-folding unit tray 0B: Mailbox tray 1 (FD) 0C: Mailbox tray 1 (FU) 0D: Reserved 0E: Reserved 15: Mailbox tray 2 (FD) 16: Mailbox tray 2 (FU) 1F: Mailbox tray 3 (FD) 20: Mailbox tray 3 (FU) 29: Mailbox tray 4 (FD) 2A: Mailbox tray 4 (FU) 33: Mailbox tray 5 (FD) 34: Mailbox tray 5 (FU) 3D: Mailbox tray 6 (FD) 3E: Mailbox tray 6 (FU) 47: Mailbox tray 7 (FD) 48: Mailbox tray 7 (FU)	
	(4)	Service Call Log	#	Count.
			Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of self diagnostics error. If the occurrence of the previous diagnostics error is less than 8, all of the diagnostics errors are logged.	The total page count at the time of the self diagnostics error.  Self diagnostic error code (See page 1-4-26)  Example: 01.6000  01: Self diagnostic error 6000: Self diagnostic error code number
	(5)	Maintenance Log	#	Count.
			Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of replacement. If the occurrence of the previous replacement of toner container is less than 8, all of the occurrences of replacement are logged.	The total page count at the time of the replacement of the toner container.  Code of maintenance replacing item (1 byte, 2 categories)  First byte (Replacing item) 01: Toner container 02: Maintenance kit  Second byte (Type of replacing item) 00: Fixed

Maintenance item No.	Description				
U000					
	<b>No.</b>	<b>Items</b>	<b>Description</b>		
	(6)	Unknown Toner Log	#	Count.	Item
			Remembers 1 to 5 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 5, all of the unknown toner detection are logged.	The total page count at the time of the [Toner Empty] error with using an unknown toner container.	Unknown toner log code (1 byte, 2 categories)  First byte 01: Fixed (Toner container)  Second byte 00: Fixed (Black)
(7)	Counter Log	Comprised of three log counters including paper jams, self diagnostics errors, and replacement of the toner container.	(f) Paper jam	(g) Self diagnostic error	(h) Maintenance item replacing
			Indicates the log counter of paper jams depending on location.  Refer to Paper Jam Log.  All instances including those are not occurred are displayed.	Indicates the log counter of self diagnostics errors depending on cause. (See page 1-4-26)  Example: C6000: 4  Self diagnostics error 6000 has happened four times.	Indicates the log counter depending on the maintenance item for maintenance.  T: Toner container 00: Black M: Maintenance kit 00: MK-726  Example: T00: 1 The toner container has been replaced once.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	<p><b>Service status page (1)</b></p> <div> <h3>Service Status Page</h3> <p>MFP</p> <p>(2) 17/06/2009 08:40</p> <p>(1) Firmware version 2KS_2000.000.000 2009.06.17</p> <p>(3) [XXXXXXXX] (4) [XXXXXXXX] (5) [XXXXXXXX]</p> <h4>Controller Information</h4> <p>Memory status</p> <p>(6) Total Size 1.0 GB</p> <p>Time</p> <p>(7) Local Time Zone +01:00 Tokio</p> <p>(8) Date and Time 17/06/2009 08:40</p> <p>(9) Time Server 10.183.53.13</p> <p>Installed Options</p> <p>(10) Document Processor Installed</p> <p>(11) Paper feeder Cassette</p> <p>(12) Finisher 3000-Finisher</p> <p>(13) Mail Box Not Installed</p> <p>(14) Job Sparator Installed</p> <p>(15) Security Kit</p> <p>Data Security Kit (E) Software Type II</p> <p>Digital Dot Coverage</p> <p>(16) Average(%) / Usage Page(A4/Letter Conversion)</p> <p>(17) Total</p> <p>K: 1.10 / 1111111.11</p> <p>(18) Copy</p> <p>K: 1.10 / 1111111.11</p> <p>(19) Printer</p> <p>K: 1.10 / 1111111.11</p> <p>(20) FAX</p> <p>K: 1.10 / 1111111.11</p> <p>(21) Period (03/11/2009 - 27/10/2009 08:40)</p> <p>(22) Last Page (%) 1.00</p> <p>(23) FAX Information Slot1/Slot2</p> <p>(24) Rings (Normal) 3</p> <p>(25) Rings (FAX/TEL) 3</p> <p>(26) Rings (TAD) 3</p> <p>(27) Option DIMM Size 16 MB</p> <p>(28) FRPO Status</p> <p>Default Pattern Switch B8 0</p> <p>Default Font Number C5*10000+C2*100+C3 00000</p> <p>(29) [XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX]</p> <p>1</p> </div>

Figure 1-3-2

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	<div><div>Service status page (2)</div><div><div><div>Service Status Page</div><div>MFP</div><div>17/06/2009 08:40</div><div>Firmware version 2KS_2000.000.000 2009.06.17 [XXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXX]</div><div><div>Engine Information</div><div><div><div>(30) NVRAM Version</div><div>Bb04B29_Bb04B29</div></div><div><div>(31) Scanner Version</div><div>2KS_1200.001.089</div></div><div><div>(32) FAX Slot1</div><div><div>FAX BOOT Version</div><div>5JP_5000.001.001</div><div>FAX APL Version</div><div>5JP_5100.001.001</div><div>FAX IPL Version</div><div>5JP_5200.001.001</div></div><div><div>(33) MAC Address</div><div>00:C0:EE:D0:01:0D</div></div></div><div><div>Send Information</div><div><div>(34) Date and Time</div><div>09/06/17</div><div>(35) Address</div><div></div></div></div></div><div><div>(36) 1/2</div><div>(37) 100/100</div><div>(38) 0/0/0/0/0/0/0/</div><div>(39) 0000000/000000</div></div></div></div></div></div>

Figure 1-3-3

Maintenance item No.	Description	
U000	<b>Detail of service status page</b>	
	<b>No.</b>	<b>Description</b>
		<b>Supplement</b>
	(1)	System version
	(2)	System date
	(3)	Engine soft version
	(4)	Engine boot version
	(5)	Operation panel mask version
	(6)	Total RAM size
	(7)	Local time zone
	(8)	Report output date
	(9)	NTP server name
	(10)	Presence or absence of the optional DP
	(11)	Presence or absence of the optional paper feeder
	(12)	Presence or absence of the optional document finisher
	(13)	Presence or absence of the optional mailbox
	(14)	Presence or absence of the optional job separator
	(15)	Presence or absence of the optional data security kit
	(16)	Page of relation to the A4/Letter
	(17)	Average coverage for total
	(18)	Average coverage for copy
	(19)	Average coverage for printer
	(20)	Average coverage for fax
	(21)	Cleared date and output date
	(22)	Coverage on the final output page
	(23)	Fax kit information
	(24)	Number of rings
	(25)	Number of rings before automatic switching
	(26)	Number of rings before connecting to answering machine
	(27)	Optional DIMM size
	(28)	FRPO setting
	(29)	Machine serial number

Maintenance item No.	Description	
U000		
	<b>No.</b>	<b>Description</b>
	<b>Description</b>	<b>Supplement</b>
	(30)	NV RAM version
		_ Bb 04B29 _ Bb 04B29 (a) (b) (c) (d) (e) (f)  (a) Consistency of the present software version and the database _ (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (b) Database version (c) The oldest time stamp of database version (d) Consistency of the present software version and the ME firmware version _ (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (e) ME firmware version (f) The oldest time stamp of the ME database version  Normal if (a) and (d) are underscored, and (b) and (e) are identical with (c) and (f).
	(31)	Scanner firmware version
	(32)	Fax firmware version
		This item is printed only when the fax kit is installed.
	(33)	Mac address
	(34)	Send date
	(35)	Send address
	(36)	Destination information/Area information
	(37)	Margin settings
		Top margin/Left margin
	(38)	Margin/Page length/Page width settings
		Top margin integer part/Top margin decimal part/ Left margin integer part/Left margin decimal part/ Page length integer part/Page length decimal part/ Page width integer part/Page width decimal part
	(39)	Life counter (The first line)
		Machine life counter/MP tray counter/ Cassette 1 counter/Cassette 2 counter/ Cassette 3 counter/Cassette 4 counter/Duplex counter
		Life counter (The second line)
		Drum unit counter/Developing unit counter/ Maintenance kit counter/
	(40)	Panel lock information
		0: OFF/1: Partial lock/2: Full lock
	(41)	USB information
		0: Not installed/1: Full speed/2: Hi speed
	(42)	Paper handling information
		0: Paper source unit select/1: Paper source unit
	(43)	Black and white printing double count mode
		0: All single counts 3: Folio, Single count, Less the 330 mm (length)
	(44)	Billing counting timing
	(45)	Temperature (machine inside)
	(46)	Temperature (machine outside)
	(47)	Relative temperature (machine outside)
	(48)	Absolute temperature (machine outside)

Maintenance item No.	Description																										
U000	<table><tr><th>No.</th><th>Description</th><th>Supplement</th></tr><tr><td>(49)</td><td>Fixed assets number</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(50)</td><td>Job complete judgment timeout time setting for local interface</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(51)</td><td>Media type attributes 1 to 28 (Not used: 18, 19, 20)</td><td>Weight settings 0: Light/1: Normal 1 / 2: Normal 2 / 3: Normal 3/ 4: Heavy 1 / 5: Heavy 2 / 6: Heavy 3 / 7: Extra Heavy Fuser settings 0: High / 1: Middle / 2: Low / 3: Vellum Duplex settings 0: Disable / 1: Enable</td></tr><tr><td>(52)</td><td>RFID information</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(53)</td><td>RFID reader/writer version information</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(54)</td><td>Maintenance information</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>(55)</td><td>Drum serial number</td><td>Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow</td></tr></table>			No.	Description	Supplement	(49)	Fixed assets number		(50)	Job complete judgment timeout time setting for local interface		(51)	Media type attributes 1 to 28 (Not used: 18, 19, 20)	Weight settings 0: Light/1: Normal 1 / 2: Normal 2 / 3: Normal 3/ 4: Heavy 1 / 5: Heavy 2 / 6: Heavy 3 / 7: Extra Heavy Fuser settings 0: High / 1: Middle / 2: Low / 3: Vellum Duplex settings 0: Disable / 1: Enable	(52)	RFID information		(53)	RFID reader/writer version information		(54)	Maintenance information		(55)	Drum serial number	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow
	No.	Description	Supplement																								
	(49)	Fixed assets number																									
	(50)	Job complete judgment timeout time setting for local interface																									
	(51)	Media type attributes 1 to 28 (Not used: 18, 19, 20)	Weight settings 0: Light/1: Normal 1 / 2: Normal 2 / 3: Normal 3/ 4: Heavy 1 / 5: Heavy 2 / 6: Heavy 3 / 7: Extra Heavy Fuser settings 0: High / 1: Middle / 2: Low / 3: Vellum Duplex settings 0: Disable / 1: Enable																								
	(52)	RFID information																									
	(53)	RFID reader/writer version information																									
	(54)	Maintenance information																									
	(55)	Drum serial number	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow																								
	<b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.																										
U001	<b>Exiting the maintenance mode</b> <b>Description</b> Exits the maintenance mode and returns to the normal copy mode. <b>Purpose</b> To exit the maintenance mode. <b>Method</b> Press the start key. The normal copy mode is entered.																										
	<b>U002</b> <b>Setting the factory default data</b> <b>Description</b> Restores the machine conditions to the factory default settings. <b>Purpose</b> To move the mirror frame of the scanner to the position for transport (position in which the frame can be fixed). <b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [MODE1(ALL)] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner returns to the position for transport. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on.  An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. Refer to the table of the error codes on P.1-3-19. When ERROR 09 occurred, turn main power switch off then on, format the hard disk using maintenance item U024, and execute initialization using maintenance item U002. For other errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U002.																										

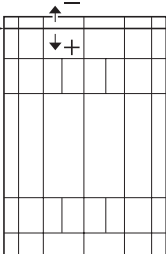
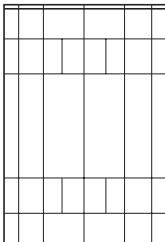
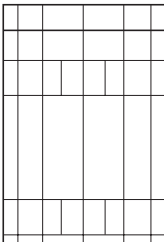
Maintenance item No.	Description										
U003	<p><b>Setting the service telephone number</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the telephone number to be displayed when a service call code is detected.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To set the telephone number to call service when installing the machine.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The currently set telephone number is displayed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The keys to enter the number are displayed on the touch panel.</li> <li>2. Enter a telephone number (up to 15 digits).</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>										
U004	<p><b>Displaying the machine number</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets or displays the machine number.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check or set the machine number.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. If the machine serial number of engine PWB matches with that of main PWB</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MACHINE No.</td><td>Displays the machine serial number</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If the machine serial number of engine PWB does not match with that of main PWB</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MACHINE No. (MAIN)</td><td>Displays the machine serial number of main</td></tr> <tr> <td>MACHINE No. (ENGINE)</td><td>Displays the machine serial number of engine</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting</b> Carry out if the machine serial number does not match.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press [EXECUTE].</li> <li>2. Press the start key. Writing of serial No. starts.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	MACHINE No.	Displays the machine serial number	Display	Operation	MACHINE No. (MAIN)	Displays the machine serial number of main	MACHINE No. (ENGINE)	Displays the machine serial number of engine
Display	Operation										
MACHINE No.	Displays the machine serial number										
Display	Operation										
MACHINE No. (MAIN)	Displays the machine serial number of main										
MACHINE No. (ENGINE)	Displays the machine serial number of engine										

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																				
U019	<p><b>Displaying the ROM version</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the part number of the ROM fitted to each PWB.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the part number or to decide, if the newest version of ROM is installed.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The ROM version are displayed.</li> <li>2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>MAIN</td><td>Main ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>MMI</td><td>Operation ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>ENGINE</td><td>Engine ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>ENGINE BOOT</td><td>Engine booting</td></tr> <tr><td>SCANNER</td><td>Scanner ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>BROWSER</td><td>Browser ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>OPTION LANGUAGE</td><td>Optional language ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>DICTIONARY</td><td>-</td></tr> <tr><td>DBA</td><td>Database connection</td></tr> <tr><td>Solution Framework</td><td>Solution framework</td></tr> <tr><td>DP</td><td>Optional DP ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>500x2PF</td><td>Optional paper feeder ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>3000PF</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>1000DF</td><td>Optional document finisher ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>3000DF MAIN</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet document finisher main ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>3000DF MIDDLE</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet document finisher Inner tray ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>MAIL BOX</td><td>Optional mailbox ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>BOOKLET</td><td>Optional center-folding unit ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>INNER DF</td><td>Optional built-in finisher ROM</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX BOOT1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX APL1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX IPL1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX BOOT2</td><td>Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX APL2</td><td>Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> <tr><td>FAX IPL2</td><td>Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Main ROM	MMI	Operation ROM	ENGINE	Engine ROM	ENGINE BOOT	Engine booting	SCANNER	Scanner ROM	BROWSER	Browser ROM	OPTION LANGUAGE	Optional language ROM	DICTIONARY	-	DBA	Database connection	Solution Framework	Solution framework	DP	Optional DP ROM	500x2PF	Optional paper feeder ROM	3000PF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder ROM	1000DF	Optional document finisher ROM	3000DF MAIN	Optional 3000-sheet document finisher main ROM	3000DF MIDDLE	Optional 3000-sheet document finisher Inner tray ROM	MAIL BOX	Optional mailbox ROM	BOOKLET	Optional center-folding unit ROM	INNER DF	Optional built-in finisher ROM	FAX BOOT1	Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)	FAX APL1	Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)	FAX IPL1	Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)	FAX BOOT2	Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)	FAX APL2	Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)	FAX IPL2	Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)
Display	Description																																																				
MAIN	Main ROM																																																				
MMI	Operation ROM																																																				
ENGINE	Engine ROM																																																				
ENGINE BOOT	Engine booting																																																				
SCANNER	Scanner ROM																																																				
BROWSER	Browser ROM																																																				
OPTION LANGUAGE	Optional language ROM																																																				
DICTIONARY	-																																																				
DBA	Database connection																																																				
Solution Framework	Solution framework																																																				
DP	Optional DP ROM																																																				
500x2PF	Optional paper feeder ROM																																																				
3000PF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder ROM																																																				
1000DF	Optional document finisher ROM																																																				
3000DF MAIN	Optional 3000-sheet document finisher main ROM																																																				
3000DF MIDDLE	Optional 3000-sheet document finisher Inner tray ROM																																																				
MAIL BOX	Optional mailbox ROM																																																				
BOOKLET	Optional center-folding unit ROM																																																				
INNER DF	Optional built-in finisher ROM																																																				
FAX BOOT1	Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)																																																				
FAX APL1	Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)																																																				
FAX IPL1	Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)																																																				
FAX BOOT2	Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																																				
FAX APL2	Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																																				
FAX IPL2	Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																												
U021	<p><b>Initializing counters and mode settings</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Initializes all settings, except those pertinent to the type of machine, namely each counter, service call history and mode setting. Also initializes backup RAM according to region specification selected in maintenance item U252 Setting the destination. Refer to *1 of the maintenance mode item list about the item initialized.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To return the machine settings to their factory default.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. All data other than that for adjustments due to variations between machines is initialized based on the destination setting.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol> <p>An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. When ERROR 09 occurred, turn main power switch off then on, format the hard disk using maintenance item U024, and execute initialization using maintenance item U021. For other errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U021.</p> <p><b>Error codes</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Codes</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>ERROR 01</td><td>Configuration initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 02</td><td>Counter initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 03</td><td>One-touch initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 04</td><td>Panel program initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 05</td><td>Event log initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 06</td><td>Account initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 07</td><td>Address book initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 08</td><td>Department initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 09</td><td>Document box initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0a</td><td>Permissibility initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0b</td><td>Job log initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 20</td><td>Engine initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 40</td><td>Scanner initialization error</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Codes	Description	ERROR 01	Configuration initialization error	ERROR 02	Counter initialization error	ERROR 03	One-touch initialization error	ERROR 04	Panel program initialization error	ERROR 05	Event log initialization error	ERROR 06	Account initialization error	ERROR 07	Address book initialization error	ERROR 08	Department initialization error	ERROR 09	Document box initialization error	ERROR 0a	Permissibility initialization error	ERROR 0b	Job log initialization error	ERROR 20	Engine initialization error	ERROR 40	Scanner initialization error
Codes	Description																												
ERROR 01	Configuration initialization error																												
ERROR 02	Counter initialization error																												
ERROR 03	One-touch initialization error																												
ERROR 04	Panel program initialization error																												
ERROR 05	Event log initialization error																												
ERROR 06	Account initialization error																												
ERROR 07	Address book initialization error																												
ERROR 08	Department initialization error																												
ERROR 09	Document box initialization error																												
ERROR 0a	Permissibility initialization error																												
ERROR 0b	Job log initialization error																												
ERROR 20	Engine initialization error																												
ERROR 40	Scanner initialization error																												
U024	<p><b>HDD formatting</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Initializes the HDD. In addition, the following settings are also initialized by initializing the HDD. System menu (user login administration, job accounting, address book, one-touch keys and document box etc.), shortcuts and panel programs Initializing the HDD will cause installed applications to be deleted. Reinstall applications as necessary after initializing the HDD.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To initialize the HDD when replacing the HDD after shipping.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel.</li> <li>3. Press the start key to initialize the hard disk.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>																												



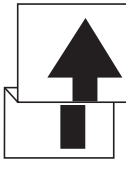
Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U030	<p><b>Checking motor operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Drives each motor.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each motor.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the motor to be operated.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The operation starts.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>Drive motor (DM) is turned ON</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED</td><td>Paper feed motor (PFM) is turned ON</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT(FW)</td><td>Eject motor (EM) is turned on clockwise</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT(REV)</td><td>Eject motor (EM) is turned on counterclockwise</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. To stop operation, press the stop key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	MAIN	Drive motor (DM) is turned ON	FEED	Paper feed motor (PFM) is turned ON	EJECT(FW)	Eject motor (EM) is turned on clockwise	EJECT(REV)	Eject motor (EM) is turned on counterclockwise										
Display	Operation																				
MAIN	Drive motor (DM) is turned ON																				
FEED	Paper feed motor (PFM) is turned ON																				
EJECT(FW)	Eject motor (EM) is turned on clockwise																				
EJECT(REV)	Eject motor (EM) is turned on counterclockwise																				
U031	<p><b>Checking switches for paper conveying</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the on-off status of each paper detection switch on the paper path.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check if the switches for paper conveying operate correctly.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status.</li> </ol> <p>When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED1</td><td>Feed switch 1 (FSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED2</td><td>Feed switch 2 (FSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED3</td><td>Feed switch 3 (FSW3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MP TRAY</td><td>MP feed switch (MPFSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>REGIST</td><td>Registration switch (RSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT</td><td>Eject switch (ESW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH</td><td>Feedshift switch (FSSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>JOB SEPARATOR</td><td>Job separator eject switch (JESW)*</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Optional.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	FEED1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)	FEED2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)	FEED3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)	MP TRAY	MP feed switch (MPFSW)	REGIST	Registration switch (RSW)	EJECT	Eject switch (ESW)	BRANCH	Feedshift switch (FSSW)	DUPLEX	Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)	JOB SEPARATOR	Job separator eject switch (JESW)*
Display	Switches																				
FEED1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)																				
FEED2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)																				
FEED3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)																				
MP TRAY	MP feed switch (MPFSW)																				
REGIST	Registration switch (RSW)																				
EJECT	Eject switch (ESW)																				
BRANCH	Feedshift switch (FSSW)																				
DUPLEX	Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)																				
JOB SEPARATOR	Job separator eject switch (JESW)*																				

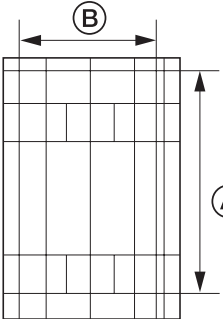
Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U032	<p><b>Checking clutch operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns each clutch on.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each clutch.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the clutch to be operated.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The clutch turns on for 1 s.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Clutches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PF1</td><td>Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PF2</td><td>Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PF MP TRAY</td><td>MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED1</td><td>Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED2</td><td>Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED3</td><td>Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED MP TRAY</td><td>MP feed clutch (MPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>REGIST</td><td>Registration clutch (RCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MOTOR ON</td><td>The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned ON.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Clutches	PF1	Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1)	PF2	Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2)	PF MP TRAY	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)	FEED1	Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)	FEED2	Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)	FEED3	Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)	FEED MP TRAY	MP feed clutch (MPFCL)	REGIST	Registration clutch (RCL)	DUPLEX	Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)	MOTOR ON	The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned ON.
Display	Clutches																						
PF1	Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1)																						
PF2	Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2)																						
PF MP TRAY	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)																						
FEED1	Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)																						
FEED2	Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)																						
FEED3	Feed clutch 3 (FCL3)																						
FEED MP TRAY	MP feed clutch (MPFCL)																						
REGIST	Registration clutch (RCL)																						
DUPLEX	Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)																						
MOTOR ON	The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned ON.																						
U033	<p><b>Checking solenoid operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Applies current to each solenoid in order to check its ON status.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each solenoid.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the solenoid to be operated.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The solenoid turns on for 1 s.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Solenoids</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TONER</td><td>Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH1</td><td>Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH2</td><td>Job feedshift solenoid (JFSSOL)*</td></tr> <tr> <td>MOTOR ON</td><td>The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*Optional.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Solenoids	TONER	Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL)	BRANCH1	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)	BRANCH2	Job feedshift solenoid (JFSSOL)*	MOTOR ON	The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.												
Display	Solenoids																						
TONER	Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL)																						
BRANCH1	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)																						
BRANCH2	Job feedshift solenoid (JFSSOL)*																						
MOTOR ON	The drive motor (DM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																									
U034	<p><b>Adjusting the print start timing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the leading edge registration or center line.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original. Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key.</li><li>Select the item to be adjusted. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>LSU OUT TOP</td><td>Leading edge registration adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>LSU OUT LEFT</td><td>Center line adjustment</td></tr></table> <p><b>Adjustment: Leading edge registration adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Select the item to be adjusted.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT TOP MPT (L)</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray (when large size paper is used)</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT TOP CAS (L)</td><td>Paper feed from cassette (when large size paper is used)</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT TOP DUP (L)</td><td>Duplex mode (second) (when large size paper is used)</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT TOP MPT (S)</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray (when small size paper is used)</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT TOP CAS (S)</td><td>Paper feed from cassette (when small size paper is used)</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT TOP DUP (S)</td><td>Duplex mode (second) (when small size paper is used)</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr></table> <p>Large size: 218 mm or more in width of paper.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the system menu key.</li><li>Press the start key to output a test pattern.</li><li>Press the system menu key.</li><li>Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <p>For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value.</p> <div><div>Leading edge registration (20 ± 1.0 mm)</div><div></div><div>Correct image</div><div></div><div>Output example 1</div><div></div><div>Output example 2</div></div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-4</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Remark</b> When changing the setting value of [Large] each item is modified, equal to amount of the value which is changed adds also the value of [Small] each item and is pulled.</p>	Display	Description	LSU OUT TOP	Leading edge registration adjustment	LSU OUT LEFT	Center line adjustment	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	LSUOUT TOP MPT (L)	Paper feed from MP tray (when large size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm	LSUOUT TOP CAS (L)	Paper feed from cassette (when large size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm	LSUOUT TOP DUP (L)	Duplex mode (second) (when large size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm	LSUOUT TOP MPT (S)	Paper feed from MP tray (when small size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm	LSUOUT TOP CAS (S)	Paper feed from cassette (when small size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm	LSUOUT TOP DUP (S)	Duplex mode (second) (when small size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm
Display	Description																																									
LSU OUT TOP	Leading edge registration adjustment																																									
LSU OUT LEFT	Center line adjustment																																									
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																						
LSUOUT TOP MPT (L)	Paper feed from MP tray (when large size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																						
LSUOUT TOP CAS (L)	Paper feed from cassette (when large size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																						
LSUOUT TOP DUP (L)	Duplex mode (second) (when large size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																						
LSUOUT TOP MPT (S)	Paper feed from MP tray (when small size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																						
LSUOUT TOP CAS (S)	Paper feed from cassette (when small size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																						
LSUOUT TOP DUP (S)	Duplex mode (second) (when small size paper is used)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																						







Maintenance item No.	Description																																			
U034	<div><div><b>Caution</b></div><div>Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</div><div><div>U034</div><div>→</div><div>U066 (P.1-3-29)</div><div>→</div><div>U071 (P.1-3-34)</div></div><div><div><b>Adjustment: Center line adjustment</b></div><div><div>1. Select the item to be adjusted.</div><table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>LSUOUT LEFT (MPT)</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 1)</td><td>Paper feed from cassette 1</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 2)</td><td>Paper feed from cassette 2</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 3)</td><td>Paper feed from optional cassette 3</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 4)</td><td>Paper feed from optional cassette 4</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>LSUOUT LEFT (DUP)</td><td>Duplex mode (second)</td><td>-10.0 to 10.0</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr></tbody></table><div><div>2. Press the system menu key.</div><div>3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.</div><div>4. Press the system menu key.</div><div>5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</div><div>For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value.</div></div><div><div>Center line of printing (within ± 0.5 mm)</div><div><div><div><div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div></div></div></div></div></div></div></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	LSUOUT LEFT (MPT)	Paper feed from MP tray	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm	LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 1)	Paper feed from cassette 1	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm	LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 2)	Paper feed from cassette 2	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm	LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 3)	Paper feed from optional cassette 3	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm	LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 4)	Paper feed from optional cassette 4	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm	LSUOUT LEFT (DUP)	Duplex mode (second)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																
LSUOUT LEFT (MPT)	Paper feed from MP tray	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																
LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 1)	Paper feed from cassette 1	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																
LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 2)	Paper feed from cassette 2	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																
LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 3)	Paper feed from optional cassette 3	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																
LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 4)	Paper feed from optional cassette 4	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																
LSUOUT LEFT (DUP)	Duplex mode (second)	-10.0 to 10.0	0	0.1 mm																																

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U034	<p><b>Caution</b></p> <p>Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U034</div><div>→</div><div>U067 (P.1-3-30)</div><div>→</div><div>U072 (P.1-3-36)</div></div> <p><b>Completion</b></p> <p>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																				
U035	<p><b>Setting the printing area for folio paper</b></p> <p><b>Description</b></p> <p>Changes the printing area for copying on folio paper.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b></p> <p>To prevent cropped images on the trailing edge or left/right side of copy paper by setting the actual printing area for folio paper.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be set.</div><div>3. Change the setting using the +/- keys.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Setting</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>LENGTH DATA</td><td>Length</td><td>330 to 356 mm</td><td>330</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH DATA</td><td>Width</td><td>200 to 220 mm</td><td>210</td></tr></table><div><div>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div></div> <p><b>Completion</b></p> <p>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Setting	Setting range	Initial setting	LENGTH DATA	Length	330 to 356 mm	330	WIDTH DATA	Width	200 to 220 mm	210								
Display	Setting	Setting range	Initial setting																		
LENGTH DATA	Length	330 to 356 mm	330																		
WIDTH DATA	Width	200 to 220 mm	210																		
U037	<p><b>Checking the operation of the fan motors</b></p> <p><b>Description</b></p> <p>Drives the fan motors.</p> <p><b>Description</b></p> <p>To check the operation of the fan motors.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the fan motor to be operated.</div><div>3. Press the start key. The operation starts.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr><tr><td>Fixing Fan</td><td>Fuser fan motor (FUFM) is turned on</td></tr><tr><td>Developing Fan</td><td>Developing fan motor (DEVFM) is turned on</td></tr><tr><td>Controller Box Fan</td><td>Controller fan motor (CONFM) is turned on</td></tr><tr><td>Internal Fan</td><td>LSU fan motor (LSUFM) is turned on</td></tr><tr><td>Conveying Fan</td><td>Paper conveying fan motor 1, 2, 3 (PCFM1, 2, 3) are turned on</td></tr><tr><td>Power Source Fan</td><td>Power source fan motor 1, 2 (PSFM1, 2) are turned on</td></tr><tr><td>Triple Fan</td><td>Duplex fan motor 1, 2, 3 (DUPFM1, 2, 3) are turned on</td></tr><tr><td>ISU Fan</td><td>Scanner fan motor (SFM) is turned on</td></tr><tr><td>ALL</td><td>All fan motor are turned on</td></tr></table><div><div>4. To stop operation, press the stop key.</div></div></div> <p><b>Completion</b></p> <p>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	Fixing Fan	Fuser fan motor (FUFM) is turned on	Developing Fan	Developing fan motor (DEVFM) is turned on	Controller Box Fan	Controller fan motor (CONFM) is turned on	Internal Fan	LSU fan motor (LSUFM) is turned on	Conveying Fan	Paper conveying fan motor 1, 2, 3 (PCFM1, 2, 3) are turned on	Power Source Fan	Power source fan motor 1, 2 (PSFM1, 2) are turned on	Triple Fan	Duplex fan motor 1, 2, 3 (DUPFM1, 2, 3) are turned on	ISU Fan	Scanner fan motor (SFM) is turned on	ALL	All fan motor are turned on
Display	Operation																				
Fixing Fan	Fuser fan motor (FUFM) is turned on																				
Developing Fan	Developing fan motor (DEVFM) is turned on																				
Controller Box Fan	Controller fan motor (CONFM) is turned on																				
Internal Fan	LSU fan motor (LSUFM) is turned on																				
Conveying Fan	Paper conveying fan motor 1, 2, 3 (PCFM1, 2, 3) are turned on																				
Power Source Fan	Power source fan motor 1, 2 (PSFM1, 2) are turned on																				
Triple Fan	Duplex fan motor 1, 2, 3 (DUPFM1, 2, 3) are turned on																				
ISU Fan	Scanner fan motor (SFM) is turned on																				
ALL	All fan motor are turned on																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U051	<p><b>Adjusting the deflection in the paper</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the deflection in the paper.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MPT</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE</td><td>Paper feed from cassette</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex mode (second)</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>MPT (THICK)</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray (thick paper)</td><td>-30 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the system menu key.</li><li>4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</li><li>5. Press the system menu key.</li><li>6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value. The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection.</li></ol> <div><div><p>Original</p></div><div><p>Copy example 1</p></div><div><p>Copy example 2</p></div></div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-6</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MPT	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	CASSETTE	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	0	DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	0	MPT (THICK)	Paper feed from MP tray (thick paper)	-30 to 20	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																		
MPT	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0																		
CASSETTE	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	0																		
DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	0																		
MPT (THICK)	Paper feed from MP tray (thick paper)	-30 to 20	0																		
U053	<p><b>Setting the adjustment of the motor speed</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Performs fine adjustment of the speeds of the motors.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To adjust the speed of the respective motors when the magnification is not correct.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MAIN MOTOR</td><td>Drive motor (DM) speed adjustment</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>EJECT MOTOR</td><td>Eject motor (EM) speed adjustment</td><td>-7 to 15</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>POLYGON MOTOR</td><td>Polygon motor (PM) speed adjustment</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>FEED MOTOR</td><td>Paper feed motor (PFM) speed adjustment</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MAIN MOTOR	Drive motor (DM) speed adjustment	-40 to 40	0	EJECT MOTOR	Eject motor (EM) speed adjustment	-7 to 15	0	POLYGON MOTOR	Polygon motor (PM) speed adjustment	-20 to 20	0	FEED MOTOR	Paper feed motor (PFM) speed adjustment	-40 to 40	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																		
MAIN MOTOR	Drive motor (DM) speed adjustment	-40 to 40	0																		
EJECT MOTOR	Eject motor (EM) speed adjustment	-7 to 15	0																		
POLYGON MOTOR	Polygon motor (PM) speed adjustment	-20 to 20	0																		
FEED MOTOR	Paper feed motor (PFM) speed adjustment	-40 to 40	0																		

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U053	<p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the system menu key.</li> <li>Press the start key to output an A3/Ledger VTC pattern.</li> </ol>  <p>Correct values for an A3/Ledger output are:  A = <math>350 \pm 1.4</math> mm  B = <math>250 \pm 1.0</math> mm</p> <p><b>Figure 1-3-7</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the system menu key.</li> <li>Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. <p>A: Drive motor speed adjustment  Increasing the setting makes the image longer in the auxiliary scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image shorter in the auxiliary scanning direction.</p> <p>B: Polygon motor speed adjustment  Increasing the setting makes the image shorter in the main scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image longer in the main scanning direction.</p> </li> <li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b>  Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</p>						
U059	<p><b>Setting fan mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b>  Specifies mode for paper conveying fan motors during conveying paper.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b>  To prevent contamination caused by paper conveying fan motors scattering toner, select MODE2.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select the mode.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MODE1</td><td>Paper conveying motors are not deactivated in printing on paper with a width of less than 220 mm or less</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE2</td><td>Paper conveying motors are deactivated in printing on paper with a width of less than 220 mm or less</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: MODE1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b>  Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MODE1	Paper conveying motors are not deactivated in printing on paper with a width of less than 220 mm or less	MODE2	Paper conveying motors are deactivated in printing on paper with a width of less than 220 mm or less
Display	Description						
MODE1	Paper conveying motors are not deactivated in printing on paper with a width of less than 220 mm or less						
MODE2	Paper conveying motors are deactivated in printing on paper with a width of less than 220 mm or less						

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U061	<p><b>Turning the exposure lamp on</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns the exposure lamp on.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the exposure lamp.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>CCD</td><td>The exposure lamp lights</td></tr><tr><td>CIS</td><td>The CIS lights (when dual scan DP is installed)</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The lamp lights.</li><li>4. To turn the lamp off, press the stop key.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	CCD	The exposure lamp lights	CIS	The CIS lights (when dual scan DP is installed)				
Display	Description										
CCD	The exposure lamp lights										
CIS	The CIS lights (when dual scan DP is installed)										
U063	<p><b>Adjusting the shading position</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the shading position of the scanner.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Used when white lines continue to appear longitudinally on the image after the shading plate is cleaned. This is due to flaws or stains inside the shading plate. To prevent this problem, the shading position should be changed so that shading is possible without being affected by the flaws or stains.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>SHADING POSITION</td><td>Shading position</td><td>0 to 24</td><td>0</td><td>0.11 mm</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting moves the shading position toward the machine left, and decreasing it moves the position toward the machine right.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	SHADING POSITION	Shading position	0 to 24	0	0.11 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step							
SHADING POSITION	Shading position	0 to 24	0	0.11 mm							

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U065	<p><b>Adjusting the scanner magnification</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the magnification of the original scanning.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if the magnification in the main scanning direction is incorrect. Make the adjustment if the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction is incorrect.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> Adjust the magnification of the scanner in the following order.</p> <div><div>U053 (P.1-3-25)</div>→<div>U065 (main scanning direction)</div>→<div>U065 (auxiliary scanning direction)</div>→<div>U067 (P.1-3-30)</div>→<div>U070 (P.1-3-32)</div></div> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key.</li><li>Select the item to be adjusted.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Y SCAN ZOOM</td><td>Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction</td><td>-15 to 15</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 %</td></tr><tr><td>X SCAN ZOOM</td><td>Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction</td><td>-25 to 25</td><td>0</td><td>0.05 %</td></tr></table> <p><b>Adjustment: Main scanning direction</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the system menu key.</li><li>Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</li><li>Press the system menu key.</li><li>Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li></ol> <div><div> Original</div><div> Copy example 1</div><div> Copy example 2</div></div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-8</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Adjustment: Auxiliary scanning direction</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the system menu key.</li><li>Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</li><li>Press the system menu key.</li><li>Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li></ol> <div><div> Original</div><div> Copy example 1</div><div> Copy example 2</div></div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-9</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Y SCAN ZOOM	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-15 to 15	0	0.1 %	X SCAN ZOOM	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-25 to 25	0	0.05 %
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
Y SCAN ZOOM	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-15 to 15	0	0.1 %												
X SCAN ZOOM	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-25 to 25	0	0.05 %												




Maintenance item No.	Description																			
U065	<b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.																			
U066	<b>Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration</b> <b>Description</b> Adjusts the scanner leading edge registration of the original scanning. <b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original. <b>Adjustment</b> <div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>FRONT</td><td>Scanner leading edge registration</td><td>-45 to 45</td><td>0</td><td>0.11 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TAIL</td><td>Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)</td><td>-45 to 45</td><td>0</td><td>0.11 mm</td></tr></table> <div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</div></div> <div>For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</div> <div><div>Scanner leading edge registration</div><div><div><div></div><div></div></div><div><div></div><div></div></div><div><div></div><div></div></div></div><div><div>Original</div><div>Copy example 1</div><div>Copy example 2</div></div></div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-10</b></p> <div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div> <div><div><b>Caution</b></div><div>Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</div><div><div><div>U066</div><div>→</div><div>U403 (P.1-3-82)</div><div>→</div><div>U071 (P.1-3-34)</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-83)</div></div></div><div><div><b>Completion</b></div><div>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</div></div></div>					Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	FRONT	Scanner leading edge registration	-45 to 45	0	0.11 mm	TAIL	Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-45 to 45	0	0.11 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																
FRONT	Scanner leading edge registration	-45 to 45	0	0.11 mm																
TAIL	Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-45 to 45	0	0.11 mm																

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U067	<p><b>Adjusting the scanner center line</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the scanner center line of the original scanning.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>FRONT</td><td>Scanner center line</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ROTATE</td><td>Scanner center line (rotate copying)</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the system menu key.</li><li>4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</li><li>5. Press the system menu key.</li><li>6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li></ol> <div><p>Scanner center line</p><p>Original      Copy example 1      Copy example 2</p></div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-11</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Caution</b> Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U067</div>→<div>U403 (P.1-3-82)</div>→<div>U072 (P.1-3-36)</div>→<div>U404 (P.1-3-83)</div></div> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	FRONT	Scanner center line	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm	ROTATE	Scanner center line (rotate copying)	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
FRONT	Scanner center line	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm												
ROTATE	Scanner center line (rotate copying)	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm												




Maintenance item No.	Description															
U068	<p><b>Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the position for scanning originals from the DP. Performs the test copy at the four scanning positions after adjusting.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Used when the image fogging occurs because the scanning position is not proper when the DP is used. Run U071 to adjust the timing of DP leading edge when the scanning position is changed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <p>1. Press the start key.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>DP READ</td><td>Starting position adjustment for scanning originals</td><td>-55 to 55</td><td>0</td><td>0.11 mm</td></tr><tr><td>BLACK LINE</td><td>Scanning position for the test copy originals</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td><td>-</td></tr></table> <p>2. Select [DP READ] of the screen for selecting an item.</p> <p>3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. When the setting value is increased, the scanning position moves to the right and it moves to the left when the setting value is decreased.</p> <p>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>5. Select [BLACK LINE] of the screen for selecting an item.</p> <p>6. Select the scanning position using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <p>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>8. Set the original (the one which density is known) in the DP and press the system menu key. The screen for the test copy mode is displayed.</p> <p>9. Press the start key. Test copy is executed.</p> <p>10. Perform the test copy at each scanning position with the setting value from 0 to 3 and check that no black line appears and the image is normally scanned.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	DP READ	Starting position adjustment for scanning originals	-55 to 55	0	0.11 mm	BLACK LINE	Scanning position for the test copy originals	0 to 3	0	-
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
DP READ	Starting position adjustment for scanning originals	-55 to 55	0	0.11 mm												
BLACK LINE	Scanning position for the test copy originals	0 to 3	0	-												

TONER


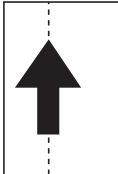
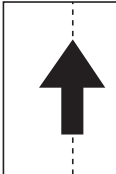
tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U070	<p><b>Adjusting the DP magnification</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the DP original scanning speed.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if the magnification is incorrect in the main scanning direction or auxiliary scanning direction when the DP is used.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>MOTOR ADJ (FRONT)</td><td>Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD (first side)</td><td>-25 to 25</td><td>0</td><td>0.05 %</td></tr><tr><td>MOTOR ADJ (BACK)</td><td>Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD (second side)</td><td>-25 to 25</td><td>0</td><td>0.05 %</td></tr><tr><td>Y SCAN ZOOM (CIS)*</td><td>Magnification in the main scanning direction of CIS</td><td>-15 to 15</td><td>0</td><td>0.01 %</td></tr><tr><td>X SCAN ZOOM (CIS)*</td><td>Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CIS</td><td>-50 to 50</td><td>0</td><td>0.05 %</td></tr></table> <p>*: Dual scan DP only.</p> <p><b>Adjustment: Main scanning direction of CIS</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the system menu key.</li><li>2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</li><li>3. Press the system menu key.</li><li>4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li></ol> <div><div></div><div>Original</div><div></div><div>Copy example 1</div><div></div><div>Copy example 2</div></div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-12</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>5. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Caution</b> Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U070</div><div>→</div><div>U071 (P.1-3-34)</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-83)</div></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	MOTOR ADJ (FRONT)	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD (first side)	-25 to 25	0	0.05 %	MOTOR ADJ (BACK)	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD (second side)	-25 to 25	0	0.05 %	Y SCAN ZOOM (CIS)*	Magnification in the main scanning direction of CIS	-15 to 15	0	0.01 %	X SCAN ZOOM (CIS)*	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CIS	-50 to 50	0	0.05 %
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																						
MOTOR ADJ (FRONT)	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD (first side)	-25 to 25	0	0.05 %																						
MOTOR ADJ (BACK)	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD (second side)	-25 to 25	0	0.05 %																						
Y SCAN ZOOM (CIS)*	Magnification in the main scanning direction of CIS	-15 to 15	0	0.01 %																						
X SCAN ZOOM (CIS)*	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CIS	-50 to 50	0	0.05 %																						

Maintenance item No.	Description
U070	<p><b>Adjustment: Auxiliary scanning direction of CCD/CIS</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the system menu key.</li> <li>2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> <li>3. Press the system menu key.</li> <li>4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li> </ol> <div> <p style="text-align: center;">Original      Copy example 1      Copy example 2</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-13</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Caution</b> Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div> <pre> graph LR     U070[U070] --&gt; U071["U071 (P.1-3-34)"]     U071 --&gt; U404["U404 (P.1-3-83)"]   </pre> </div> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																																			
U071	<p><b>Adjusting the DP scanning timing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the DP original scanning timing.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading or trailing edges of the original and the copy image when the DP is used.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>FRONT HEAD</td><td>Leading edge registration of CCD (first side)</td><td>-66 to 66</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr><tr><td>FRONT TAIL</td><td>Trailing edge registration of CCD (first side)</td><td>-66 to 66</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr><tr><td>BACK HEAD</td><td>Leading edge registration of CCD (second side)</td><td>-66 to 66</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr><tr><td>BACK TAIL</td><td>Trailing edge registration of CCD (second side)</td><td>-66 to 66</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr><tr><td>HEAD (CIS)*</td><td>Leading edge registration of CIS</td><td>-66 to 66</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TAIL (CIS)*</td><td>Trailing edge registration of CIS</td><td>-66 to 66</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr></table> <p>*: Dual scan DP only.</p> <p><b>Adjustment: Leading edge registration</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the system menu key.</li><li>2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</li><li>3. Press the system menu key.</li><li>4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li></ol> <div><div><p>Original</p></div><div><p>Copy example 1</p></div><div><p>Copy example 2</p></div></div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-14</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>5. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Caution</b> If the CCD first side is adjusted, check the CCD second side and if adjustment is required, carry out the adjustment. Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U071</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-83)</div></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	FRONT HEAD	Leading edge registration of CCD (first side)	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm	FRONT TAIL	Trailing edge registration of CCD (first side)	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm	BACK HEAD	Leading edge registration of CCD (second side)	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm	BACK TAIL	Trailing edge registration of CCD (second side)	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm	HEAD (CIS)*	Leading edge registration of CIS	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm	TAIL (CIS)*	Trailing edge registration of CIS	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																
FRONT HEAD	Leading edge registration of CCD (first side)	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm																																
FRONT TAIL	Trailing edge registration of CCD (first side)	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm																																
BACK HEAD	Leading edge registration of CCD (second side)	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm																																
BACK TAIL	Trailing edge registration of CCD (second side)	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm																																
HEAD (CIS)*	Leading edge registration of CIS	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm																																
TAIL (CIS)*	Trailing edge registration of CIS	-66 to 66	0	0.08 mm																																

Maintenance item No.	Description
U071	<p><b>Adjustment: Trailing edge registration</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the system menu key.</li> <li>2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> <li>3. Press the system menu key.</li> <li>4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li> </ol> <div> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-15</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Caution</b> If the CCD first side is adjusted, check the CCD second side and if adjustment is required, carry out the adjustment. Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div> <pre> graph LR     U071[U071] --&gt; U404[U404 (P.1-3-83)]   </pre> </div> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U072	<p><b>Adjusting the DP center line</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the scanning start position for the DP original.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the centers of the original and the copy image when the DP is used.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</li></ol> <table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>FRONT</td><td>DP center line of CCD (first side)</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr><tr><td>BACK</td><td>DP center line of CCD (second side)</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CIS*</td><td>DP center line of CIS</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td><td>0.08 mm</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>*: Dual scan DP only.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the system menu key.</li><li>4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</li><li>5. Press the system menu key.</li><li>6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li></ol> <div><div><p>Original</p></div><div><p>Copy example 1</p></div><div><p>Copy example 2</p></div></div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-16</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Caution</b> If the CCD first side is adjusted, check the CCD second side and if adjustment is required, carry out the adjustment. Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U072</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-83)</div></div> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	FRONT	DP center line of CCD (first side)	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm	BACK	DP center line of CCD (second side)	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm	CIS*	DP center line of CIS	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																	
FRONT	DP center line of CCD (first side)	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm																	
BACK	DP center line of CCD (second side)	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm																	
CIS*	DP center line of CIS	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm																	

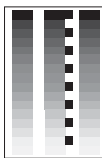



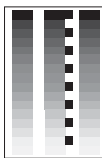



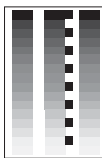



Maintenance item No.	Description																																																						
U073	<p><b>Checking scanner operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Simulates the scanner operation under arbitrary conditions.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check scanner operation.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be operated.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>SCANNER MOTOR</td><td>Scanner operation</td></tr><tr><td>HOME POSITION</td><td>Home position operation</td></tr><tr><td>DUST CHECK</td><td>Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on</td></tr><tr><td>DP READING</td><td>DP scanning position operation</td></tr></table> <p><b>Setting: [SCANNER MOTOR]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select [SCANNER MOTOR].</li><li>2. Select the item.</li><li>3. Change the setting using the +/- keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Operating conditions</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>ZOOM</td><td>Magnification</td><td>25 to 400 %</td></tr><tr><td>SIZE</td><td>Original size</td><td>See below.</td></tr><tr><td>LAMP</td><td>On and off of the exposure lamp</td><td>0 (off) or 1 (on)</td></tr></table> <p>Original sizes for each setting in SIZE</p> <table><tr><th>Setting</th><th>Paper size</th><th>Setting</th><th>Paper size</th></tr><tr><td>5000</td><td>A4</td><td>5000</td><td>A5R</td></tr><tr><td>4300</td><td>B5</td><td>7800</td><td>Folio</td></tr><tr><td>5100</td><td>11" x 8 1/2"</td><td>10200</td><td>11" x 17"</td></tr><tr><td>10000</td><td>A3</td><td>9000</td><td>11" x 15"</td></tr><tr><td>8600</td><td>B4</td><td>8400</td><td>8 1/2" x 14"</td></tr><tr><td>7100</td><td>A4R</td><td>6600</td><td>8 1/2" x 11"</td></tr><tr><td>6100</td><td>B5R</td><td>5100</td><td>5 1/2" x 8 1/2"</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the start key. Scanning starts under the selected conditions.</li><li>5. To stop operation, press the stop key.</li></ol> <p><b>Method: [HOME POSITION]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select [HOME POSITION].</li><li>2. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner moves to the home position.</li></ol> <p><b>Method: [DUST CHECK]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select [DUST CHECK].</li><li>2. Press the start key. The exposure lamp lights.</li><li>3. To turn the exposure lamp off, press the stop key.</li></ol> <p><b>Method: [DP READING]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select [DP READING].</li><li>2. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner moves to the reading position.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key when scanning stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	SCANNER MOTOR	Scanner operation	HOME POSITION	Home position operation	DUST CHECK	Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on	DP READING	DP scanning position operation	Display	Operating conditions	Setting range	ZOOM	Magnification	25 to 400 %	SIZE	Original size	See below.	LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)	Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size	5000	A4	5000	A5R	4300	B5	7800	Folio	5100	11" x 8 1/2"	10200	11" x 17"	10000	A3	9000	11" x 15"	8600	B4	8400	8 1/2" x 14"	7100	A4R	6600	8 1/2" x 11"	6100	B5R	5100	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"
Display	Description																																																						
SCANNER MOTOR	Scanner operation																																																						
HOME POSITION	Home position operation																																																						
DUST CHECK	Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on																																																						
DP READING	DP scanning position operation																																																						
Display	Operating conditions	Setting range																																																					
ZOOM	Magnification	25 to 400 %																																																					
SIZE	Original size	See below.																																																					
LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)																																																					
Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size																																																				
5000	A4	5000	A5R																																																				
4300	B5	7800	Folio																																																				
5100	11" x 8 1/2"	10200	11" x 17"																																																				
10000	A3	9000	11" x 15"																																																				
8600	B4	8400	8 1/2" x 14"																																																				
7100	A4R	6600	8 1/2" x 11"																																																				
6100	B5R	5100	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"																																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U074	<p><b>Adjusting the DP input light luminosity</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the luminosity correction for scanning originals from the DP.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Modify the setting only if a spotted background appears when a bluish original is scanned from the DP.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>INPUT DATA</td><td>DP input light luminosity correction</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Settings 0: No correction / 1: Slight correction / 2: Medium correction / 3: Strong correction</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	INPUT DATA	DP input light luminosity correction	0 to 3	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting						
INPUT DATA	DP input light luminosity correction	0 to 3	0						
U080	<p><b>Setting the economy mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the level in the economy mode.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To increase or decrease the image density in the eco-print mode.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>ECO MODE</td><td>Exposure is toner economy mode</td><td>0 to 100</td><td>60</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	ECO MODE	Exposure is toner economy mode	0 to 100	60
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting						
ECO MODE	Exposure is toner economy mode	0 to 100	60						

ONER

tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U081	<p><b>Adjusting the correct exposure</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode, text mode or photo mode.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be executed as required.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be set.</li><li>3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MIX ADJ</td><td>Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode</td><td>-3 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>TEXT ADJ</td><td>Adjusts the correct exposure in text mode</td><td>-3 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PHOTO ADJ</td><td>Adjusts the correct exposure in photo mode</td><td>-3 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MIX ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode	-3 to 3	0	TEXT ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text mode	-3 to 3	0	PHOTO ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in photo mode	-3 to 3	0						
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																				
MIX ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode	-3 to 3	0																				
TEXT ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text mode	-3 to 3	0																				
PHOTO ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in photo mode	-3 to 3	0																				
U087	<p><b>Setting DP reading position modification operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> The presence or absence of dust is determined by comparing the scan data of the original trailing edge and that taken after the original is conveyed past the DP original scanning position. If dust is identified, the DP original scanning position is adjusted for the following originals.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> When using DP, to solve the problem when black lines occurs due to the dust with respect to original reading position.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>CCD</td><td>Setting of standard data when dust is detected</td></tr><tr><td>BLACK LINE</td><td>Initialization of original reading position</td></tr></table> <p><b>Setting: Standard data when dust is detected</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select the item to be set.</li><li>2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>CCD R</td><td>Lowest density of the R regard as the dust</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>145</td></tr><tr><td>CCD G</td><td>Lowest density of the G regard as the dust</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>145</td></tr><tr><td>CCD B</td><td>Lowest density of the B regard as the dust</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>145</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Setting: Initialization of original reading position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select [CLEAR].</li><li>2. Press the start key. The setting is cleared.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	CCD	Setting of standard data when dust is detected	BLACK LINE	Initialization of original reading position	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	CCD R	Lowest density of the R regard as the dust	0 to 255	145	CCD G	Lowest density of the G regard as the dust	0 to 255	145	CCD B	Lowest density of the B regard as the dust	0 to 255	145
Display	Description																						
CCD	Setting of standard data when dust is detected																						
BLACK LINE	Initialization of original reading position																						
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																				
CCD R	Lowest density of the R regard as the dust	0 to 255	145																				
CCD G	Lowest density of the G regard as the dust	0 to 255	145																				
CCD B	Lowest density of the B regard as the dust	0 to 255	145																				

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U089	<p><b>Outputting a MIP-PG pattern</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Selects and outputs the MIP-PG pattern created in the machine.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check copier status other than scanner when adjusting image printing, using MIP-PG pattern output (without scanning).</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the MIP-PG pattern to be output and press the start key.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>PG pattern to be output</th><th>Purpose</th></tr><tr><td>GRAYSCALE</td><td></td><td>To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics</td></tr><tr><td>MONO1 (Output density: 0)</td><td></td><td>To check the drum quality</td></tr><tr><td>MONO4 (Output density: 70)</td><td></td><td>To check the drum quality</td></tr><tr><td>256-LEVEL</td><td></td><td>To check resolution reproducibility in printing</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the system menu key.</li><li>4. Press the start key. A MIP-PG pattern is output.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose	GRAYSCALE		To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics	MONO1 (Output density: 0)		To check the drum quality	MONO4 (Output density: 70)		To check the drum quality	256-LEVEL		To check resolution reproducibility in printing
Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose														
GRAYSCALE		To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics														
MONO1 (Output density: 0)		To check the drum quality														
MONO4 (Output density: 70)		To check the drum quality														
256-LEVEL		To check resolution reproducibility in printing														

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																				
U091	<p><b>Setting the white line correction</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the error detection threshold value for white line correction and displays the count result of abnormal pixels.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To perform when replacing the CIS, DP driver PWB or CIS roller.</p> <p><b>Method: white line correction</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Press [EXECUTE].</li><li>3. Press the start key. Holding of white reference data is started.</li><li>4. The count result of abnormal pixels is displayed.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Calculation(R)</td><td>Abnormal pixel count result for color R</td></tr><tr><td>Calculation(G)</td><td>Abnormal pixel count result for color G</td></tr><tr><td>Calculation(B)</td><td>Abnormal pixel count result for color B</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>5. Press the system menu key.</li><li>6. Place a gray original on the DP with the gray side down. Load paper in the cassette. The paper should be the same size as the original.</li><li>7. Press the start key. Two test pattern sheets will be printed. (1st sheet: blank sheet, 2nd sheet: Approx. 60 mm black band)</li><li>8. If no vertical lines appear on either sheet, the setting has been completed normally. If vertical black lines appear on the blank sheet and vertical white lines appear in the black band in the same position, clean the CIS roller and the CIS glass and then repeat white line correction. If vertical black lines or vertical white lines appear on both sheets, white line correction has been completed normally. However, the cause of the vertical lines lies in the engine, and thus the engine must be checked.</li></ol> <p><b>How to view test copies</b></p> <table><tr><th>blank sheet</th><th>black band</th><th>Causes</th><th>Corrective measures</th></tr><tr><td>No lines</td><td>No lines</td><td>-</td><td>Complete</td></tr><tr><td>Black lines</td><td>White lines</td><td>Dirty CIS roller or CIS glass</td><td>Clean CIS roller or CIS glass and then perform U091 again</td></tr><tr><td>Black lines</td><td>No lines</td><td>Engine side</td><td>U091 ends, check engine</td></tr><tr><td>No lines</td><td>White lines</td><td>Engine side</td><td>U091 ends, check engine</td></tr></table> <p><b>Setting: Threshold value setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select the item to be set.</li><li>2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Threshold(R)</td><td>Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color R</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>Threshold(G)</td><td>Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color G</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>Threshold(Com)*</td><td>Setting of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color</td><td>0 to 1023</td><td>112</td></tr><tr><td>Abnorm Pixel Threshold</td><td>Abnormal pixel threshold value setting</td><td>0 to 8191</td><td>75</td></tr><tr><td>MODE</td><td>Switching between white line correction mode ON/OFF</td><td>0: OFF/1: ON/2: Test mode</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>*: Normally the Threshold (Com) value should not be changed from 112, the initial setting. If white lines appear even though the CIS roller and glass are not dirty, raise the set value. If fine lines in some originals disappear, lower the set value. Set within the range 50 to 200. (If set outside this range, the image may be affected.)</p>	Display	Description	Calculation(R)	Abnormal pixel count result for color R	Calculation(G)	Abnormal pixel count result for color G	Calculation(B)	Abnormal pixel count result for color B	blank sheet	black band	Causes	Corrective measures	No lines	No lines	-	Complete	Black lines	White lines	Dirty CIS roller or CIS glass	Clean CIS roller or CIS glass and then perform U091 again	Black lines	No lines	Engine side	U091 ends, check engine	No lines	White lines	Engine side	U091 ends, check engine	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Threshold(R)	Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color R	-	-	Threshold(G)	Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color G	-	-	Threshold(Com)*	Setting of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color	0 to 1023	112	Abnorm Pixel Threshold	Abnormal pixel threshold value setting	0 to 8191	75	MODE	Switching between white line correction mode ON/OFF	0: OFF/1: ON/2: Test mode	0
Display	Description																																																				
Calculation(R)	Abnormal pixel count result for color R																																																				
Calculation(G)	Abnormal pixel count result for color G																																																				
Calculation(B)	Abnormal pixel count result for color B																																																				
blank sheet	black band	Causes	Corrective measures																																																		
No lines	No lines	-	Complete																																																		
Black lines	White lines	Dirty CIS roller or CIS glass	Clean CIS roller or CIS glass and then perform U091 again																																																		
Black lines	No lines	Engine side	U091 ends, check engine																																																		
No lines	White lines	Engine side	U091 ends, check engine																																																		
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																		
Threshold(R)	Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color R	-	-																																																		
Threshold(G)	Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color G	-	-																																																		
Threshold(Com)*	Setting of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color	0 to 1023	112																																																		
Abnorm Pixel Threshold	Abnormal pixel threshold value setting	0 to 8191	75																																																		
MODE	Switching between white line correction mode ON/OFF	0: OFF/1: ON/2: Test mode	0																																																		

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U091	<div>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</div> <div>4. After changing the Threshold(Com) value, turn the main power switch off and on.</div> <div>Completion</div> <div>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</div>																								
U093	<div>Setting the exposure density gradient</div> <div>Description</div> <div>Changes the exposure density gradient in the manual density mode, depending on respective image quality modes.</div> <div>Purpose</div> <div>To set how the image density is altered by a change of one step in the manual density adjustment for respective image quality modes. Also used to make copy images darker or lighter.</div> <div>Method</div> <div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the image quality mode. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>TEXT</td><td>Density in the text mode</td></tr><tr><td>MIXED</td><td>Density in the text and photo mode</td></tr><tr><td>OTHER</td><td>Density in modes other than the text mode or the text and photo mode</td></tr><tr><td>FAX TEXT</td><td>Density in the text in fax mode</td></tr><tr><td>FAX PHOTO</td><td>Density in the photo in fax mode</td></tr></table> <div>Setting: [TEXT]</div> <div><div>1. Select the item to be set.</div><div>2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>TEXT DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>TEXT LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <div>Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.</div> <div></div> <div>Figure 1-3-17</div> <div>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</div>	Display	Description	TEXT	Density in the text mode	MIXED	Density in the text and photo mode	OTHER	Density in modes other than the text mode or the text and photo mode	FAX TEXT	Density in the text in fax mode	FAX PHOTO	Density in the photo in fax mode	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0
Display	Description																								
TEXT	Density in the text mode																								
MIXED	Density in the text and photo mode																								
OTHER	Density in modes other than the text mode or the text and photo mode																								
FAX TEXT	Density in the text in fax mode																								
FAX PHOTO	Density in the photo in fax mode																								
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																						
TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																						
TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																						

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U093	<b>Setting: [MIXED]</b> 1. Select the item to be set. 2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.												
	<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MIXED DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>MIXED LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MIXED DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	MIXED LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0
	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting									
	MIXED DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0									
	MIXED LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0									
	Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.												
	3. Press the start key. The value is set.												
	<b>Setting: [OTHER]</b> 1. Select the item to be set. 2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.												
	<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>OTHER DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>OTHER LIGTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	OTHER DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	OTHER LIGTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0
	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting									
OTHER DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0										
OTHER LIGTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0										
Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.													
3. Press the start key. The value is set.													
<b>Setting: [FAX TEXT]</b> 1. Select the item to be set. 2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.													
<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>FAX TEXT DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>FAX TEXT LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	FAX TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	FAX TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0	
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting										
FAX TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0										
FAX TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0										
Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.													
3. Press the start key. The value is set.													
<b>Setting: [FAX PHOTO]</b> 1. Select the item to be set. 2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.													
<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>FAX PHOTO DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>FAX PHOTO LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	FAX PHOTO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	FAX PHOTO LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0	
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting										
FAX PHOTO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0										
FAX PHOTO LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0										
Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.													
3. Press the start key. The value is set.													
<b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).													
<b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.													

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																														
U099	<p><b>Adjusting original size detection</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Checks the operation of the original size sensor and sets the sensing threshold value.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To adjust the sensitiveness of the sensor and size judgement time if the original size sensor malfunctions frequently due to incident light or the like.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key.</li><li>Select the item. The screen for executing each item is displayed.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>DATA1</td><td>Displaying original size sensor transmission data</td></tr><tr><td>B/W LEVEL1</td><td>B/W LEVEL setting original size sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time</td></tr><tr><td>DATA2</td><td>Displaying original size sensor transmission data (when DP is installed)</td></tr></table> <p><b>Method: Display the data for the sensor</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Place the original and close the original cover or DP. The detection sensor transmission data is displayed.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA R</td><td>Detected original width size (R)</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA G</td><td>Detected original width size (G)</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA B</td><td>Detected original width size (B)</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA</td><td>Detected original width size</td></tr><tr><td>SIZE SW L</td><td>Displays the original size sensor (OSS) ON/OFF</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.</li></ol> <p><b>Setting: Detection sensor threshold value</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Select an item to be set.</li><li>Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr><tr><th>DP not installed</th><th>DP installed</th></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL R1 - 3</td><td>Original threshold value for color R</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>40/30/20</td><td>50/50/50</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL G1 - 3</td><td>Original threshold value for color G</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>40/30/20</td><td>50/50/50</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL B1 - 3</td><td>Original threshold value for color B</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>40/30/20</td><td>50/50/50</td></tr><tr><td>LIGHT SOURCE R</td><td>Light source threshold value for color R</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>19</td><td>49</td></tr><tr><td>LIGHT SOURCE G</td><td>Light source threshold value for color G</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>19</td><td>49</td></tr><tr><td>LIGHT SOURCE B</td><td>Light source threshold value for color B</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>19</td><td>49</td></tr><tr><td>WAIT TIME</td><td>Time from activation of the original detection switch (ODSW) to original size judgment</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>150</td><td>150</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	DATA1	Displaying original size sensor transmission data	B/W LEVEL1	B/W LEVEL setting original size sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time	DATA2	Displaying original size sensor transmission data (when DP is installed)	Display	Description	ORIGINAL AREA R	Detected original width size (R)	ORIGINAL AREA G	Detected original width size (G)	ORIGINAL AREA B	Detected original width size (B)	ORIGINAL AREA	Detected original width size	SIZE SW L	Displays the original size sensor (OSS) ON/OFF	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting		DP not installed	DP installed	ORIGINAL R1 - 3	Original threshold value for color R	0 to 255	40/30/20	50/50/50	ORIGINAL G1 - 3	Original threshold value for color G	0 to 255	40/30/20	50/50/50	ORIGINAL B1 - 3	Original threshold value for color B	0 to 255	40/30/20	50/50/50	LIGHT SOURCE R	Light source threshold value for color R	0 to 255	19	49	LIGHT SOURCE G	Light source threshold value for color G	0 to 255	19	49	LIGHT SOURCE B	Light source threshold value for color B	0 to 255	19	49	WAIT TIME	Time from activation of the original detection switch (ODSW) to original size judgment	0 to 255	150	150
Display	Description																																																														
DATA1	Displaying original size sensor transmission data																																																														
B/W LEVEL1	B/W LEVEL setting original size sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time																																																														
DATA2	Displaying original size sensor transmission data (when DP is installed)																																																														
Display	Description																																																														
ORIGINAL AREA R	Detected original width size (R)																																																														
ORIGINAL AREA G	Detected original width size (G)																																																														
ORIGINAL AREA B	Detected original width size (B)																																																														
ORIGINAL AREA	Detected original width size																																																														
SIZE SW L	Displays the original size sensor (OSS) ON/OFF																																																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																												
			DP not installed	DP installed																																																											
ORIGINAL R1 - 3	Original threshold value for color R	0 to 255	40/30/20	50/50/50																																																											
ORIGINAL G1 - 3	Original threshold value for color G	0 to 255	40/30/20	50/50/50																																																											
ORIGINAL B1 - 3	Original threshold value for color B	0 to 255	40/30/20	50/50/50																																																											
LIGHT SOURCE R	Light source threshold value for color R	0 to 255	19	49																																																											
LIGHT SOURCE G	Light source threshold value for color G	0 to 255	19	49																																																											
LIGHT SOURCE B	Light source threshold value for color B	0 to 255	19	49																																																											
WAIT TIME	Time from activation of the original detection switch (ODSW) to original size judgment	0 to 255	150	150																																																											

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U100	<p><b>Setting the main high voltage</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Performs main charging.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check main charging.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be operated.</li><li>3. Press the start key. The selected operation starts.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MC</td><td>Turning the main charger on</td></tr><tr><td>LASER</td><td>Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. To stop operation, press the stop key.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key when main charger output stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MC	Turning the main charger on	LASER	Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off																		
Display	Description																								
MC	Turning the main charger on																								
LASER	Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off																								
U101	<p><b>Setting the other high voltages</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the developing bias control voltage, the transfer control voltage, and the separation control voltage or checks the output of these voltages.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the developing bias, the transfer voltage and the separation voltage or to take measures against drop of image density or background fog.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be set.</li><li>3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>DEV BIAS</td><td>Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation</td><td>20 to 32</td><td>28</td></tr><tr><td>DEV SBIAS</td><td>Developing shift bias potential at image formation</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>DEV DUTY</td><td>Developing bias AC component duty at image formation</td><td>0 to 100</td><td>50</td></tr><tr><td>TC DATA</td><td>Transfer control voltage</td><td>0 to 300</td><td>130</td></tr><tr><td>SC DATA</td><td>Separation control voltage</td><td>0 to 60</td><td>20</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the DEV BIAS setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter. Increasing the DEV SBIAS setting makes the image darker. Increasing the DEV DUTY setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker. Increasing the TC DATA setting makes the transfer voltage higher, and decreasing it makes the voltage lower. Increasing the SC DATA setting makes the separation voltage higher, and decreasing it makes the voltage lower.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	DEV BIAS	Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation	20 to 32	28	DEV SBIAS	Developing shift bias potential at image formation	0 to 3	1	DEV DUTY	Developing bias AC component duty at image formation	0 to 100	50	TC DATA	Transfer control voltage	0 to 300	130	SC DATA	Separation control voltage	0 to 60	20
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																						
DEV BIAS	Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation	20 to 32	28																						
DEV SBIAS	Developing shift bias potential at image formation	0 to 3	1																						
DEV DUTY	Developing bias AC component duty at image formation	0 to 100	50																						
TC DATA	Transfer control voltage	0 to 300	130																						
SC DATA	Separation control voltage	0 to 60	20																						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U102	<p><b>Setting the cleaning interval for the main charger</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the intervals at which the main charger is cleaned.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when the background is visible.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>IINTERVAL</td><td>Main charger cleaning operation intervals</td><td>0 to 20 (unit: 1000 sheets)</td><td>5</td></tr></table> <p>When set to 0, the cleaning for the main charger is not operated.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	IINTERVAL	Main charger cleaning operation intervals	0 to 20 (unit: 1000 sheets)	5
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting						
IINTERVAL	Main charger cleaning operation intervals	0 to 20 (unit: 1000 sheets)	5						
U109	<p><b>Displaying the drum type</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the drum surface potential set as EEPROM of the drum unit.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the drum surface potential.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key. Drum surface potential (V) is displayed.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
U110	<p><b>Checking the drum count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the drum counts for checking.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the drum status.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key. The drum counter count is displayed.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
U111	<p><b>Checking the drum drive time</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the drum drive time for checking a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the high voltage based on time.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the drum status.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key. The drum drive time is displayed.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								

ONER

tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U112	<p><b>Setting toner refresh operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the toner refresh operation time and the developing bias on time at power on and after copying.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the toner refresh operation time and the developing bias on time at power on and after copying if image flow level is low.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be set.</li><li>3. Change the setting using the +/- keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>ON TIME(SEC)</td><td>Toner refresh operation time</td><td>50 to 150 (sec)</td><td>120</td></tr><tr><td>BIAS TIME(MSEC)</td><td>Developing bias on time</td><td>500 to 1000 (msec)</td><td>540</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	ON TIME(SEC)	Toner refresh operation time	50 to 150 (sec)	120	BIAS TIME(MSEC)	Developing bias on time	500 to 1000 (msec)	540						
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																
ON TIME(SEC)	Toner refresh operation time	50 to 150 (sec)	120																
BIAS TIME(MSEC)	Developing bias on time	500 to 1000 (msec)	540																
U114	<p><b>Setting separation charger mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the separation charger mode.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting if the fuser offset or carrier leaking occurs.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MODE</td><td>Separation charger mode</td><td>0 to 8 (0 to 3)*</td><td>3</td></tr></table> <p>*: Entering a value other than 0 to 3 will engage the MODE3 (value 3) separation mode.</p> <p><b>Details on the modes</b></p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MODE0 (Value 0)</td><td>Full page separation for both first and second pages</td></tr><tr><td>MODE1 (Value 1)</td><td>First page: Separation on leading and trailing edges Second page: Full page separation</td></tr><tr><td>MODE2 (Value 2)</td><td>Full page separation is activated for both first and second pages provided the ambient temperature is less than 19°C/66.2°F. First page: Separation is activated for both leading and trailing edges, second page: Full page separation, provided the ambient temperature is more than 20°C/68°F.</td></tr><tr><td>MODE3 (Value 3)</td><td>Separation is activated on both leading and trailing edges for both first and second pages</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MODE	Separation charger mode	0 to 8 (0 to 3)*	3	Display	Description	MODE0 (Value 0)	Full page separation for both first and second pages	MODE1 (Value 1)	First page: Separation on leading and trailing edges Second page: Full page separation	MODE2 (Value 2)	Full page separation is activated for both first and second pages provided the ambient temperature is less than 19°C/66.2°F. First page: Separation is activated for both leading and trailing edges, second page: Full page separation, provided the ambient temperature is more than 20°C/68°F.	MODE3 (Value 3)	Separation is activated on both leading and trailing edges for both first and second pages
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																
MODE	Separation charger mode	0 to 8 (0 to 3)*	3																
Display	Description																		
MODE0 (Value 0)	Full page separation for both first and second pages																		
MODE1 (Value 1)	First page: Separation on leading and trailing edges Second page: Full page separation																		
MODE2 (Value 2)	Full page separation is activated for both first and second pages provided the ambient temperature is less than 19°C/66.2°F. First page: Separation is activated for both leading and trailing edges, second page: Full page separation, provided the ambient temperature is more than 20°C/68°F.																		
MODE3 (Value 3)	Separation is activated on both leading and trailing edges for both first and second pages																		

ONER

tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U117	<p><b>Checking the drum number</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the drum number.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the drum number.</p> <p><b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. The drum number is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U118	<p><b>Displaying the drum history</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the past record of machine number and the drum counter.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the count value of machine number and the drum counter.</p> <p><b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. Past record of 5 cases is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MACHINE No.1 to 5</td><td>Past record of machine number</td></tr> <tr> <td>COUNT 1 to 5</td><td>Past record of drum counter</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MACHINE No.1 to 5	Past record of machine number	COUNT 1 to 5	Past record of drum counter
Display	Description						
MACHINE No.1 to 5	Past record of machine number						
COUNT 1 to 5	Past record of drum counter						
U127	<p><b>Checking the transfer count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays and clears the counts of the transfer counter.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the fuser count after replacement of the transfer roller. Also to clear the counts after replacing roller.</p> <p><b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. The current counts of the transfer counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>Clearing</b> 1. Select [CLEAR]. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.</p> <p><b>Setting</b> 1. Change the count using the +/- or numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The count is set.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U130	<p><b>Initial setting for the developing unit</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Replenishes toner to the developing unit to a certain level from the toner container that has been installed.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To operate when installing the machine or replacing the developing unit.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. Toner installation is started and the output value of the sensor and execution time are displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TONER SENSOR</td><td>Output value of the sensor</td></tr> <tr> <td>TIME(SEC)</td><td>Execution time</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key after initial setting is complete. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	TONER SENSOR	Output value of the sensor	TIME(SEC)	Execution time		
Display	Description								
TONER SENSOR	Output value of the sensor								
TIME(SEC)	Execution time								
U136	<p><b>Setting toner near end mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether to restrict printing operation when the toner is empty.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To set to ON to remove restrictions on printing operation when toner empty is detected.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select [ON] or [OFF].</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Do not display an error or restrict printing operation when the toner is empty</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Display an error and restrict printing operation when the toner is empty</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Do not display an error or restrict printing operation when the toner is empty	OFF	Display an error and restrict printing operation when the toner is empty		
Display	Description								
ON	Do not display an error or restrict printing operation when the toner is empty								
OFF	Display an error and restrict printing operation when the toner is empty								
U139	<p><b>Displaying the temperature and humidity</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the detected external temperature and humidity.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the external temperature and humidity.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The detected external temperature (°C/°F) and humidity (%) are displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Temperature</td><td>External temperature (°C/°F)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Humidity</td><td>External humidity (%)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Absolute Humidity</td><td>External absolute humidity (%)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Temperature	External temperature (°C/°F)	Humidity	External humidity (%)	Absolute Humidity	External absolute humidity (%)
Display	Description								
Temperature	External temperature (°C/°F)								
Humidity	External humidity (%)								
Absolute Humidity	External absolute humidity (%)								

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U144	<p><b>Setting toner disposal operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets toner disposal operation after completion of copying.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To set whether or not toner is disposal on the drum after low density copying. Normally no change is necessary from the initial setting.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MODE0</td><td>Toner not disposal</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE1</td><td>Toner disposal after simplex or duplex copying</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE2</td><td>Toner disposal after simplex copying</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE3</td><td>Executes toner disposal every after 52 pages of printing (simplex and duplex copying)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE4</td><td>Executes toner disposal every after 52 pages of printing (simplex only)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: MODE2</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MODE0	Toner not disposal	MODE1	Toner disposal after simplex or duplex copying	MODE2	Toner disposal after simplex copying	MODE3	Executes toner disposal every after 52 pages of printing (simplex and duplex copying)	MODE4	Executes toner disposal every after 52 pages of printing (simplex only)		
Display	Description														
MODE0	Toner not disposal														
MODE1	Toner disposal after simplex or duplex copying														
MODE2	Toner disposal after simplex copying														
MODE3	Executes toner disposal every after 52 pages of printing (simplex and duplex copying)														
MODE4	Executes toner disposal every after 52 pages of printing (simplex only)														
U155	<p><b>Checking sensors for toner</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the on-off status of each sensor or switch related to toner.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check if the sensors and switches operate correctly.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch is detected, that switch is displayed in reverse.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches and sensors</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DEVELOPER SENSOR</td><td>Toner sensor (TNS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONTAINER SET</td><td>Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONTAINER SENSOR</td><td>Toner container sensor (TCS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DISPOSAL TANK SET</td><td>Waste toner detection switch (WTDSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DISPOSAL TANK SENSOR</td><td>Overflow sensor (OFS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MOTOR</td><td>The toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches and sensors	DEVELOPER SENSOR	Toner sensor (TNS)	CONTAINER SET	Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)	CONTAINER SENSOR	Toner container sensor (TCS)	DISPOSAL TANK SET	Waste toner detection switch (WTDSW)	DISPOSAL TANK SENSOR	Overflow sensor (OFS)	MOTOR	The toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on
Display	Switches and sensors														
DEVELOPER SENSOR	Toner sensor (TNS)														
CONTAINER SET	Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)														
CONTAINER SENSOR	Toner container sensor (TCS)														
DISPOSAL TANK SET	Waste toner detection switch (WTDSW)														
DISPOSAL TANK SENSOR	Overflow sensor (OFS)														
MOTOR	The toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on														

Maintenance item No.	Description			
U157	<b>Checking the developing drive time</b>			
	<b>Description</b> Displays the developing drive time for checking, which is used as a reference when correcting the toner control.			
	<b>Purpose</b> To check the developing drive time after replacing the developing unit.			
	<b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. The developing drive time is displayed in minutes.			
U158	<b>Checking the developing count</b>			
	<b>Description</b> Displays the developing count for checking.			
	<b>Purpose</b> To check the developing count after replacing the developing unit.			
	<b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. The developing counter count is displayed.			
U161	<b>Setting the fuser control temperature</b>			
	<b>Description</b> Changes the fuser control temperature.			
	<b>Purpose</b> Normally no change is necessary. However, can be used to prevent curling or creasing of paper, or solve a fuser problem on thick paper. MODE changes printing speed control at over-heating on the fuser ends.			
	<b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. 3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.			
	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
	DRIVE START TEMP	Driving start temperature when warm-up starts	0 to 255 (°C)	185
	READY CONTROL T	Control temperature for displaying [Ready for printing.]	0 to 255 (°C)	200
	PRINT CONTROL T	Control temperature during printing	0 to 255 (°C)	200
	MODE	Printing speed control at over-heating on the fuser ends	1/2	1
	4. Press the start key. The value is set.			
	<b>Setting: [MODE]</b> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the mode.			
	Display	Description		
	MODE1	Printing halts for approximately 24 s provided the temperature on the fuser ends reaches 235°C/455°F before printing is resumed		
	MODE2	Printing speed is decelerated by 75% with a fuser-end temperature greater than 228°C/442°F		
	Initial setting: MODE1 3. Press the start key. The setting is set.			

Maintenance item No.	Description						
<b>U161</b>	<b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.						
<b>U163</b>	<b>Resetting the fuser problem data</b> <b>Description</b> Resets the detection of a service call code indicating a problem in the fuser section. <b>Purpose</b> To prevent accidents due to an abnormally high fuser temperature. <b>Method</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The fuser problem data is initialized.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>						
<b>U167</b>	<b>Checking/clearing the fuser counts</b> <b>Description</b> Displays and clears the fuser counts for checking. <b>Purpose</b> To check the fuser count after replacement of the fuser unit. Also to clear the counts after replacing unit. <b>Method</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The fuser counts is displayed.</li> </ol> <b>Clearing</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [CLEAR].</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.</li> </ol> <b>Setting</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the count using the +/- or numeric keys.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The count is set.</li> </ol> <b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.						
<b>U196</b>	<b>Turning the fuser heater on</b> <b>Description</b> Turns the fuser heater 1 or 2 on. <b>Purpose</b> To check fuser heaters turning on. <b>Method</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the heater to be turned on.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The selected heater turns on for 2 s and then turns off.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>Fuser heater 1 (FH1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB</td><td>Fuser heater 2 (FH2)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <b>Completion</b> Press the stop key when fuser heaters 1 and 2 are off. The screen for selecting the maintenance item No. is displayed.	Display	Description	MAIN	Fuser heater 1 (FH1)	SUB	Fuser heater 2 (FH2)
Display	Description						
MAIN	Fuser heater 1 (FH1)						
SUB	Fuser heater 2 (FH2)						

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U198	<p><b>Setting the fuser phase control</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Enables or disables fuser-phase control.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Turn to OFF to reduce the audible sound that may be generated by the power source PWB. Depending on the environment of installation, this may cause a voltage drop, potentially resulting in flickering fluorescent tubes, etc.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Fuser phase control present</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Fuser phase control absent</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Fuser phase control present	OFF	Fuser phase control absent				
Display	Description										
ON	Fuser phase control present										
OFF	Fuser phase control absent										
U199	<p><b>Checking the fuser temperature</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the fuser temperature, the external temperature and the absolute humidity.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the fuser temperature, the external temperature and the absolute humidity.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The fuser temperature (°C/°F), external temperature (°C/°F) and the absolute humidity (%) are displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FIX CENTER TEMP</td><td>Fuser center temperature (°C/°F)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FIX EDGE TEMP</td><td>Fuser edge temperature (°C/°F)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SURROUND TEMP</td><td>External temperature (°C/°F)</td></tr> <tr> <td>HUMIDITY</td><td>Absolute humidity (%)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FIX CENTER TEMP	Fuser center temperature (°C/°F)	FIX EDGE TEMP	Fuser edge temperature (°C/°F)	SURROUND TEMP	External temperature (°C/°F)	HUMIDITY	Absolute humidity (%)
Display	Description										
FIX CENTER TEMP	Fuser center temperature (°C/°F)										
FIX EDGE TEMP	Fuser edge temperature (°C/°F)										
SURROUND TEMP	External temperature (°C/°F)										
HUMIDITY	Absolute humidity (%)										
U200	<p><b>Turning all LEDs on</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns all the LEDs on the operation panel on.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check if all the LEDs on the operation panel light.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. All the LEDs on the operation panel light.</li> <li>2. Press the stop key. The LEDs turns off.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>										

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U201	<p><b>Initializing the touch panel</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Automatically correct the positions of the X- and Y-axes of the touch panel.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To automatically correct the display positions on the touch panel after it is replaced.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the [INITIALIZE] or [CHECK].</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INITIALIZE</td><td>Adjusts the display on the panel automatically.</td></tr> <tr> <td>CHECK</td><td>Checks the display on the touch panel.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: [INITIALIZE]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press the center of the + keys. Be sure to press three + keys displayed in order. The touch panel is adjusted automatically.</li> <li>3. Press the indicated three + keys, and then check the display.</li> <li>4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method: [CHECK]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press the indicated three + keys, and then check the display. When adjusting the display, press [INITIALIZE] to execute the adjustment automatically.</li> <li>3. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	INITIALIZE	Adjusts the display on the panel automatically.	CHECK	Checks the display on the touch panel.
Display	Description						
INITIALIZE	Adjusts the display on the panel automatically.						
CHECK	Checks the display on the touch panel.						
U202	<p><b>Setting the KMAS host monitoring system</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Initializes or operates the KMAS host monitoring system. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U203	<p><b>Checking DP operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Simulates the original conveying operation separately in the DP.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the DP operation.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Place an original in the DP if running this simulation with paper.</li><li>3. Select the item to be operated.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>CCD ADP (NON P)</td><td>Without paper, single-sided original of CCD (continuous operation)</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>CCD ADP</td><td>With paper, single-sided original of CCD</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>CCD RADP (NON P)</td><td>Without paper, double-sided original of CCD (continuous operation)</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>CCD RADP</td><td>With paper, double-sided original of CCD</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>CIS RADP (NON P)*</td><td>Without paper, double-sided original of CIS (continuous operation)</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>CIS RADP*</td><td>With paper, double-sided original of CIS</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>SPEED</td><td>Switching between normal reading (600 dpi) and high-speed reading</td><td>0 (Normal)/ 1 (High-speed)</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>*: Dual scan DP only.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the start key. The operation starts.</li><li>5. To stop continuous operation, press the stop key.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	CCD ADP (NON P)	Without paper, single-sided original of CCD (continuous operation)	-	-	CCD ADP	With paper, single-sided original of CCD	-	-	CCD RADP (NON P)	Without paper, double-sided original of CCD (continuous operation)	-	-	CCD RADP	With paper, double-sided original of CCD	-	-	CIS RADP (NON P)*	Without paper, double-sided original of CIS (continuous operation)	-	-	CIS RADP*	With paper, double-sided original of CIS	-	-	SPEED	Switching between normal reading (600 dpi) and high-speed reading	0 (Normal)/ 1 (High-speed)	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																														
CCD ADP (NON P)	Without paper, single-sided original of CCD (continuous operation)	-	-																														
CCD ADP	With paper, single-sided original of CCD	-	-																														
CCD RADP (NON P)	Without paper, double-sided original of CCD (continuous operation)	-	-																														
CCD RADP	With paper, double-sided original of CCD	-	-																														
CIS RADP (NON P)*	Without paper, double-sided original of CIS (continuous operation)	-	-																														
CIS RADP*	With paper, double-sided original of CIS	-	-																														
SPEED	Switching between normal reading (600 dpi) and high-speed reading	0 (Normal)/ 1 (High-speed)	0																														

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U204	<p><b>Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the presence or absence of the optional key card or key counter.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To run this maintenance item if a key card or key counter is installed.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>KEY-DEVICE</td><td>Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter</td></tr> <tr> <td>MESSAGE</td><td>Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: [KEY-DEVICE]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the optional counter to be installed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>KEY-CARD</td><td>The key card is installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>KEY-COUNTER</td><td>The key counter is installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Not installed</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>3. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: [MESSAGE]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the [KEY-DEVICE] or [COIN VENDOR].</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>3. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	KEY-DEVICE	Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter	MESSAGE	Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed	Display	Description	KEY-CARD	The key card is installed	KEY-COUNTER	The key counter is installed	OFF	Not installed
Display	Description														
KEY-DEVICE	Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter														
MESSAGE	Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed														
Display	Description														
KEY-CARD	The key card is installed														
KEY-COUNTER	The key counter is installed														
OFF	Not installed														
U206	<p><b>Setting the presence or absence of the coin vender</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the presence or absence of the optional coin vender. Also sets the details for coin vender operation, such as mode and unit price. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.</p>														

Maintenance item No.	Description
U207	<p><b>Checking the operation panel keys</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Checks operation of the operation panel keys.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check operation of all the keys and LEDs on the operation panel.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</li> <li>2. COUNT0 is displayed and the leftmost LED on the operation panel lights.</li> <li>3. As the keys lined up in the same line as the lit indicator are pressed in the order from the top to the bottom, the figure shown on the touch panel increases in increments of 1. When all the keys in that line are pressed and if there are any LEDs corresponding to the keys in the line on the immediate right, the top LED in that line will light.</li> <li>4. When all the keys on the operation panel have been pressed, all the LEDs light for up to 10 seconds.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U208	<p><b>Setting the paper size for the paper feeder</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the size of paper used in 3000-sheet paper feeder.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when the size of paper used in the paper feeder is changed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the paper size (A4, B5 or Letter). Initial setting: Letter (Inch specifications)/A4 (Metric specifications)</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U221	<p><b>Setting the USB host lock function</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Specifies ON/OFF the USB host lock function. Setting this to ON causes the machine to be unable to recognize the device connected to the USB host.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>USB HOST LOCK</td><td>USB host lock function ON/OFF setting</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [ON] or [OFF].</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>USB host lock function ON</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>USB host lock function OFF</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>3. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	USB HOST LOCK	USB host lock function ON/OFF setting	Display	Description	ON	USB host lock function ON	OFF	USB host lock function OFF
Display	Description										
USB HOST LOCK	USB host lock function ON/OFF setting										
Display	Description										
ON	USB host lock function ON										
OFF	USB host lock function OFF										
U222	<p><b>Setting the IC card type</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the IC card type. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.</p>										

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U223	<p><b>Operation panel lock</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the operation panel lock function to ON or OFF.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To restrict operation in the system menu on the operation panel.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Unlock</td><td>Release the lock of the operation from the system menu.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Partial Lock</td><td>Partially lock the operation from the system menu.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Lock</td><td>Entirely lock the operation from the system menu.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: Unlock</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Unlock	Release the lock of the operation from the system menu.	Partial Lock	Partially lock the operation from the system menu.	Lock	Entirely lock the operation from the system menu.								
Display	Description																
Unlock	Release the lock of the operation from the system menu.																
Partial Lock	Partially lock the operation from the system menu.																
Lock	Entirely lock the operation from the system menu.																
U224	<p><b>Panel sheet extension</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the image data and the message of the opening screen at the machine startup and the image data and the message of the service call screen to user specified data.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Write the image data or the message data to the USB memory.</li> <li>2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot of the machine.</li> <li>3. Turn the main power switch on.</li> <li>4. Enter the maintenance item.</li> <li>5. Press the start key.</li> <li>6. Select the [Install] or [UnInstall].</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Install</td><td>Installs the image data or the message data</td></tr> <tr> <td>UnInstall</td><td>Restores the original image data or message data</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Opening Img</td><td>Startup screen</td></tr> <tr> <td>Call Img</td><td>Service call image</td></tr> <tr> <td>Call Msg Top</td><td>Service call screen 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>Call Msg Detail</td><td>Service call screen 2</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8. Press the start key. Installation or uninstallation is started.</li> <li>9. When normally completed, [COMPLETE] is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Install	Installs the image data or the message data	UnInstall	Restores the original image data or message data	Display	Description	Opening Img	Startup screen	Call Img	Service call image	Call Msg Top	Service call screen 1	Call Msg Detail	Service call screen 2
Display	Description																
Install	Installs the image data or the message data																
UnInstall	Restores the original image data or message data																
Display	Description																
Opening Img	Startup screen																
Call Img	Service call image																
Call Msg Top	Service call screen 1																
Call Msg Detail	Service call screen 2																

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U234	<p><b>Setting punch destination</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the destination of punch unit of 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be set when installing a different punch unit from the destination of the machine.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the destination.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>AUTO</td><td>With no punch unit</td></tr> <tr> <td>JAPAN METRIC</td><td>Metric (Japan) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: AUTO</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	AUTO	With no punch unit	JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications
Display	Description										
AUTO	With no punch unit										
JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications										
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications										
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications										
U236	<p><b>Setting the limit for the ejection section of the built-in finisher</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> If the machine is equipped with an built-in finisher, this mode sets whether A5R/B5R/statement size paper is output to the machine top tray or not.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> If the machine is equipped with an built-in finisher and if paper jams occur due to curling of paper in the built-in ejection section when two-sided copying onto A5R/B5R/statement size paper is performed, this mode is used to change the setting to ON to disable ejection to the machine top tray.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Does not eject to the machine top tray.</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Eject to the machine top tray.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Does not eject to the machine top tray.	OFF	Eject to the machine top tray.				
Display	Description										
ON	Does not eject to the machine top tray.										
OFF	Eject to the machine top tray.										

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U237	<p><b>Setting finisher stack quantity</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the number of sheets of each stack on the main tray and on the Inner tray in 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when a stack malfunction has occurred.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN TRAY</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray</td></tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE TRAY</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple copying</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: [MAIN TRAY]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray: 3000 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray: 1500 sheets</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>3. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: [MIDDLE TRAY]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple copying: 50 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple copying: 30 sheets</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0 Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for non-staple copying: 10 sheets</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>3. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	MAIN TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray	MIDDLE TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple copying	Display	Description	0	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray: 3000 sheets	1	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray: 1500 sheets	Display	Description	0	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple copying: 50 sheets	1	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple copying: 30 sheets
Display	Description																		
MAIN TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray																		
MIDDLE TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple copying																		
Display	Description																		
0	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray: 3000 sheets																		
1	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray: 1500 sheets																		
Display	Description																		
0	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple copying: 50 sheets																		
1	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple copying: 30 sheets																		

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																		
U240	<p><b>Checking the operation of the finisher</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns each motor and solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher ON.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each motor and solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select the item to be checked. The screen for executing each item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FINISHER MOTOR</td><td>Checking the motor of the 3000-sheet document finisher</td></tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER SOL</td><td>Checking the solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIL BOX</td><td>Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET</td><td>Checking the motor of the centerfold unit</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: [FINISHER MOTOR]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the item to be operated.</li> <li>Press the start key. The operation starts.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Motor</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED IN MOTOR M</td><td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at middle speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED IN MOTOR L</td><td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at low speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR H</td><td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at high speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR M</td><td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at middle speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR L</td><td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at low speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT MOTOR H</td><td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT MOTOR M</td><td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT MOTOR L</td><td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB PATH MOTOR H</td><td>Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterclockwise</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB PATH MOTOR M</td><td>Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE UP MOTOR</td><td>Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR</td><td>Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH TEST(A3)</td><td>Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH TEST(LD)</td><td>Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE FR MOTOR</td><td>Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE S MOTOR</td><td>Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE MOTOR</td><td>Staple motor (STM) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY MOTOR</td><td>Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH MOTOR</td><td>Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To stop operation, press the stop key.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	FINISHER MOTOR	Checking the motor of the 3000-sheet document finisher	FINISHER SOL	Checking the solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher	MAIL BOX	Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox	BOOKLET	Checking the motor of the centerfold unit	Display	Motor	FEED IN MOTOR M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at middle speed	FEED IN MOTOR L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at low speed	CONV MOTOR H	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at high speed	CONV MOTOR M	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at middle speed	CONV MOTOR L	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at low speed	EJECT MOTOR H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed	EJECT MOTOR M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed	EJECT MOTOR L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed	SUB PATH MOTOR H	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterclockwise	SUB PATH MOTOR M	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise	BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on	BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on	WIDTH TEST(A3)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on	WIDTH TEST(LD)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on	STAPLE FR MOTOR	Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) is turned on	STAPLE S MOTOR	Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) is turned on	STAPLE MOTOR	Staple motor (STM) is turned on	TRAY MOTOR	Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on	PUNCH MOTOR	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on
Display	Description																																																		
FINISHER MOTOR	Checking the motor of the 3000-sheet document finisher																																																		
FINISHER SOL	Checking the solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher																																																		
MAIL BOX	Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox																																																		
BOOKLET	Checking the motor of the centerfold unit																																																		
Display	Motor																																																		
FEED IN MOTOR M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at middle speed																																																		
FEED IN MOTOR L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at low speed																																																		
CONV MOTOR H	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at high speed																																																		
CONV MOTOR M	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at middle speed																																																		
CONV MOTOR L	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at low speed																																																		
EJECT MOTOR H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed																																																		
EJECT MOTOR M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed																																																		
EJECT MOTOR L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed																																																		
SUB PATH MOTOR H	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterclockwise																																																		
SUB PATH MOTOR M	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise																																																		
BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on																																																		
BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on																																																		
WIDTH TEST(A3)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on																																																		
WIDTH TEST(LD)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on																																																		
STAPLE FR MOTOR	Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) is turned on																																																		
STAPLE S MOTOR	Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) is turned on																																																		
STAPLE MOTOR	Staple motor (STM) is turned on																																																		
TRAY MOTOR	Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on																																																		
PUNCH MOTOR	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on																																																		

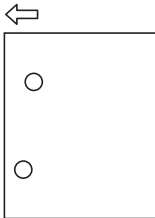
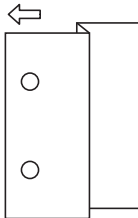
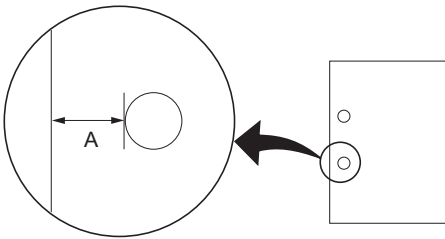
Maintenance item No.	Description																																														
U240	<p><b>Method: [FINISHER SOL]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be operated.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The operation starts.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Solenoid</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED IN SOL</td><td>Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>REAR DOWN SOL 1</td><td>Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>REAR DOWN SOL 2</td><td>Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB PATH SOL</td><td>Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB TRAY R SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SUB TRAY L SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET SOL</td><td>Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PADDLE SOL</td><td>Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>HOLD DOWN SOL</td><td>Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SOL</td><td>Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH SOL</td><td>Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: [MAIL BOX]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be operated.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The operation starts.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Motor</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CARRY ROLL</td><td>Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at paper conveying</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH ROLL</td><td>Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at feedshift operation</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: [BOOKLET]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be operated.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The operation starts.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Motor</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CONV MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold main motor (CMM)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BLADE MOTOR</td><td>Blade motor (BLM)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE UP MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH TEST(A3)</td><td>Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH TEST(LD)</td><td>Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key with the operation stopped. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Solenoid	FEED IN SOL	Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)	REAR DOWN SOL 1	Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)	REAR DOWN SOL 2	Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)	SUB PATH SOL	Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)	SUB TRAY R SOL	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)	SUB TRAY L SOL	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)	BOOKLET SOL	Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)	PADDLE SOL	Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)	HOLD DOWN SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)	EJECT SOL	Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)	PUNCH SOL	Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)	Display	Motor	CARRY ROLL	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at paper conveying	BRANCH ROLL	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at feedshift operation	Display	Motor	CONV MOTOR	Centerfold main motor (CMM)	BLADE MOTOR	Blade motor (BLM)	BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)	BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)	WIDTH TEST(A3)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)	WIDTH TEST(LD)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)	STAPLE MOTOR	Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)
Display	Solenoid																																														
FEED IN SOL	Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)																																														
REAR DOWN SOL 1	Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)																																														
REAR DOWN SOL 2	Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)																																														
SUB PATH SOL	Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)																																														
SUB TRAY R SOL	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)																																														
SUB TRAY L SOL	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)																																														
BOOKLET SOL	Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)																																														
PADDLE SOL	Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)																																														
HOLD DOWN SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)																																														
EJECT SOL	Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)																																														
PUNCH SOL	Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)																																														
Display	Motor																																														
CARRY ROLL	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at paper conveying																																														
BRANCH ROLL	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at feedshift operation																																														
Display	Motor																																														
CONV MOTOR	Centerfold main motor (CMM)																																														
BLADE MOTOR	Blade motor (BLM)																																														
BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)																																														
BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)																																														
WIDTH TEST(A3)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)																																														
WIDTH TEST(LD)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)																																														
STAPLE MOTOR	Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)																																														

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																												
U241	<p><b>Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the status of each switch of 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each switch of 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be checked.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td><td>Checking the switch of the document finisher</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIL BOX</td><td>Checking the switch of the mailbox</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET</td><td>Checking the switch of the center-folding unit</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: [FINISHER]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches and sensors</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FRONT COVER SW</td><td>Front cover switch (FCSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TOP COVER SW</td><td>Top cover switch (TCSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RIGHT COVER SW</td><td>Sub tray right switch (STRSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SET SW</td><td>Joint switch (JSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET SW</td><td>Centerfold set switch (CSSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH TANK SW</td><td>Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY L-LIMIT SW</td><td>Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY U-LIMIT SW</td><td>Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY MIDDLE SW</td><td>Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PAPER HOLD DOWN SW</td><td>Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>LOAD DET SW</td><td>Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1,2 (MTPUSDS1,2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>HP SW</td><td>Paper entry sensor (PES)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW 1</td><td>Eject switch 1 (ESW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW 2</td><td>Eject switch 2 (ESW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW 3</td><td>Eject switch 3 (ESW3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE HP SW 1</td><td>Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE HP SW 2</td><td>Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE FEED SW1</td><td>Inner tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE FEED SW2</td><td>Inner tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DET SW 1</td><td>Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DET SW 2</td><td>Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE UP HP SW</td><td>Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DOWN HP SW</td><td>Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP SW 1</td><td>Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP SW 2</td><td>Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	FINISHER	Checking the switch of the document finisher	MAIL BOX	Checking the switch of the mailbox	BOOKLET	Checking the switch of the center-folding unit	Display	Switches and sensors	FRONT COVER SW	Front cover switch (FCSW)	TOP COVER SW	Top cover switch (TCSW)	RIGHT COVER SW	Sub tray right switch (STRSW)	SET SW	Joint switch (JSW)	BOOKLET SW	Centerfold set switch (CSSW)	PUNCH TANK SW	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)	TRAY L-LIMIT SW	Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)	TRAY U-LIMIT SW	Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)	TRAY MIDDLE SW	Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)	PAPER HOLD DOWN SW	Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)	LOAD DET SW	Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1,2 (MTPUSDS1,2)	HP SW	Paper entry sensor (PES)	EJECT SW 1	Eject switch 1 (ESW1)	EJECT SW 2	Eject switch 2 (ESW2)	EJECT SW 3	Eject switch 3 (ESW3)	STAPLE HP SW 1	Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)	STAPLE HP SW 2	Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)	MIDDLE FEED SW1	Inner tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)	MIDDLE FEED SW2	Inner tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)	BUNDLE DET SW 1	Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)	BUNDLE DET SW 2	Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)	BUNDLE UP HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)	BUNDLE DOWN HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)	WIDTH HP SW 1	Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)	WIDTH HP SW 2	Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)
Display	Description																																																												
FINISHER	Checking the switch of the document finisher																																																												
MAIL BOX	Checking the switch of the mailbox																																																												
BOOKLET	Checking the switch of the center-folding unit																																																												
Display	Switches and sensors																																																												
FRONT COVER SW	Front cover switch (FCSW)																																																												
TOP COVER SW	Top cover switch (TCSW)																																																												
RIGHT COVER SW	Sub tray right switch (STRSW)																																																												
SET SW	Joint switch (JSW)																																																												
BOOKLET SW	Centerfold set switch (CSSW)																																																												
PUNCH TANK SW	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)																																																												
TRAY L-LIMIT SW	Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)																																																												
TRAY U-LIMIT SW	Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)																																																												
TRAY MIDDLE SW	Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)																																																												
PAPER HOLD DOWN SW	Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)																																																												
LOAD DET SW	Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1,2 (MTPUSDS1,2)																																																												
HP SW	Paper entry sensor (PES)																																																												
EJECT SW 1	Eject switch 1 (ESW1)																																																												
EJECT SW 2	Eject switch 2 (ESW2)																																																												
EJECT SW 3	Eject switch 3 (ESW3)																																																												
STAPLE HP SW 1	Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)																																																												
STAPLE HP SW 2	Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)																																																												
MIDDLE FEED SW1	Inner tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)																																																												
MIDDLE FEED SW2	Inner tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)																																																												
BUNDLE DET SW 1	Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)																																																												
BUNDLE DET SW 2	Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)																																																												
BUNDLE UP HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)																																																												
BUNDLE DOWN HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)																																																												
WIDTH HP SW 1	Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)																																																												
WIDTH HP SW 2	Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)																																																												

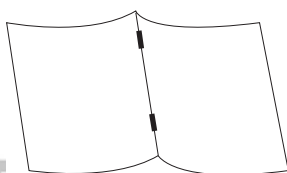
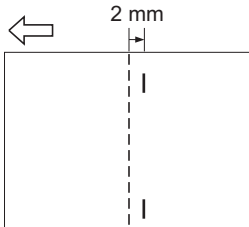
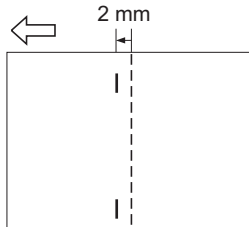
Maintenance item No.	Description																																												
U241	<p><b>Method: [MAIL BOX]</b></p> <p>1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches and sensors</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>HP SW</td><td>Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW</td><td>Tray eject sensor (TEJS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>COVER SW</td><td>Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 1</td><td>Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 2</td><td>Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 3</td><td>Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 4</td><td>Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 5</td><td>Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 6</td><td>Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)</td></tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW SW 7</td><td>Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: [BOOKLET]</b></p> <p>1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches and sensors</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BUNDLE UP HP SW</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BUNDLE DOWN HP SW</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BLADE HP SW</td><td>Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP SW U</td><td>Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP SW L</td><td>Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED IN SW</td><td>Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PAPER DET SW</td><td>Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY PAPER DET SW</td><td>Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT SW</td><td>Centerfold eject switch (CESW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRAY DET SW</td><td>Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches and sensors	HP SW	Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)	EJECT SW	Tray eject sensor (TEJS)	COVER SW	Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)	OVER FLOW SW 1	Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)	OVER FLOW SW 2	Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)	OVER FLOW SW 3	Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)	OVER FLOW SW 4	Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)	OVER FLOW SW 5	Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)	OVER FLOW SW 6	Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)	OVER FLOW SW 7	Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)	Display	Switches and sensors	BUNDLE UP HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)	BUNDLE DOWN HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)	BLADE HP SW	Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)	WIDTH HP SW U	Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)	WIDTH HP SW L	Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)	FEED IN SW	Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)	PAPER DET SW	Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)	TRAY PAPER DET SW	Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)	EJECT SW	Centerfold eject switch (CESW)	TRAY DET SW	Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)
Display	Switches and sensors																																												
HP SW	Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)																																												
EJECT SW	Tray eject sensor (TEJS)																																												
COVER SW	Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 1	Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 2	Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 3	Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 4	Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 5	Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 6	Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)																																												
OVER FLOW SW 7	Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)																																												
Display	Switches and sensors																																												
BUNDLE UP HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)																																												
BUNDLE DOWN HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)																																												
BLADE HP SW	Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)																																												
WIDTH HP SW U	Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)																																												
WIDTH HP SW L	Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)																																												
FEED IN SW	Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)																																												
PAPER DET SW	Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)																																												
TRAY PAPER DET SW	Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)																																												
EJECT SW	Centerfold eject switch (CESW)																																												
TRAY DET SW	Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)																																												

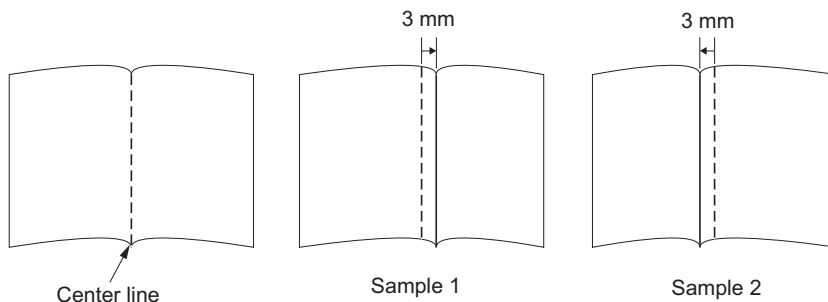
Maintenance item No.	Description																										
U243	<p><b>Checking the operation of the DP motors</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns the motors or solenoids in the DP on.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of the DP motors and solenoids.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be operated.</li><li>3. Press the start key. The operation starts.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motor and solenoid</th><th>Operation</th></tr><tr><td>DP FEED MOT</td><td>Original feed motor (OFM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr><tr><td>DP CON MOT</td><td>Original conveying motor (OCM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr><tr><td>DP REV MOT</td><td>Original switchback motor (OSBM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr><tr><td>DP LIFT MOT</td><td>DP lift motor (DPLM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr><tr><td>DP REV PRS SOL</td><td>Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL)</td><td>On for 0.5 s</td></tr><tr><td>DP REV BRCH SOL</td><td>Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL)</td><td>On for 0.5 s</td></tr><tr><td>CIS FAN*</td><td>DP fan motor (DPFM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr></table> <p>*: Dual scan DP only.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. To turn each motor off, press the stop key.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key when operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motor and solenoid	Operation	DP FEED MOT	Original feed motor (OFM)	In operation	DP CON MOT	Original conveying motor (OCM)	In operation	DP REV MOT	Original switchback motor (OSBM)	In operation	DP LIFT MOT	DP lift motor (DPLM)	In operation	DP REV PRS SOL	Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL)	On for 0.5 s	DP REV BRCH SOL	Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL)	On for 0.5 s	CIS FAN*	DP fan motor (DPFM)	In operation		
Display	Motor and solenoid	Operation																									
DP FEED MOT	Original feed motor (OFM)	In operation																									
DP CON MOT	Original conveying motor (OCM)	In operation																									
DP REV MOT	Original switchback motor (OSBM)	In operation																									
DP LIFT MOT	DP lift motor (DPLM)	In operation																									
DP REV PRS SOL	Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL)	On for 0.5 s																									
DP REV BRCH SOL	Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL)	On for 0.5 s																									
CIS FAN*	DP fan motor (DPFM)	In operation																									
U244	<p><b>Checking the DP switches</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the status of the respective switches in the DP.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check if respective switches in the DP operate correctly.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Turn the respective switches on and off manually to check the status. If the on-status of a switch is detected, the corresponding switch is displayed in reverse.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>FD SW</td><td>Original feed switch (OFSW)</td></tr><tr><td>REG SW</td><td>Original registration switch (ORSW)</td></tr><tr><td>TMG SW</td><td>DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1)</td></tr><tr><td>EJT SW</td><td>Original eject switch (OESW)</td></tr><tr><td>TRY SW</td><td>Switchback tray switch (SBTSW)</td></tr><tr><td>SET SW</td><td>Original set switch (OSSW)</td></tr><tr><td>SZ SW A</td><td>Original size length switch (OSLSW)</td></tr><tr><td>L F U SW</td><td>Tray upper limit switch (TULSW)</td></tr><tr><td>L F L SW</td><td>Tray lower limit switch (TLLSW)</td></tr><tr><td>COV OP SW</td><td>DP interlock switch (DPILSW)</td></tr><tr><td>P OP SW</td><td>DP open/close switch (DPOCSW)</td></tr><tr><td>CIS SW*</td><td>DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2)</td></tr></table> <p>*: Dual scan DP only.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FD SW	Original feed switch (OFSW)	REG SW	Original registration switch (ORSW)	TMG SW	DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1)	EJT SW	Original eject switch (OESW)	TRY SW	Switchback tray switch (SBTSW)	SET SW	Original set switch (OSSW)	SZ SW A	Original size length switch (OSLSW)	L F U SW	Tray upper limit switch (TULSW)	L F L SW	Tray lower limit switch (TLLSW)	COV OP SW	DP interlock switch (DPILSW)	P OP SW	DP open/close switch (DPOCSW)	CIS SW*	DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2)
Display	Description																										
FD SW	Original feed switch (OFSW)																										
REG SW	Original registration switch (ORSW)																										
TMG SW	DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1)																										
EJT SW	Original eject switch (OESW)																										
TRY SW	Switchback tray switch (SBTSW)																										
SET SW	Original set switch (OSSW)																										
SZ SW A	Original size length switch (OSLSW)																										
L F U SW	Tray upper limit switch (TULSW)																										
L F L SW	Tray lower limit switch (TLLSW)																										
COV OP SW	DP interlock switch (DPILSW)																										
P OP SW	DP open/close switch (DPOCSW)																										
CIS SW*	DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2)																										

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U245	<p><b>Checking messages</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays a list of messages on the touch panel of the operation panel.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the messages to be displayed.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be displayed.</li> <li>3. Displays the message one by one using cursor up/down keys. Switches the language on the touch panel using the cursor +/- keys. When a message number is entered with the numeric keys and then the start key is pressed, the message corresponding the specified number is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																						
U246	<p><b>Setting the finisher</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Provides various settings for the 3000-sheet document finisher, if furnished.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b></p> <p><b>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode</b> Adjust if skewed paper conveying occurs or if the copy paper is Z-folded in punch mode.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of paper stop timing in the punch mode</b> To adjust this item when the position of a punch hole is different from the specified one.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of front/rear side registration home position of Inner tray</b> Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the Inner tray adjuster guides to paper.</p> <p><b>Adjusting of front and back/slanted stapling home position</b> Adjusts the stapling position in the staple mode if the position is not proper. Provides adjustment of slanted stapling.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position of center-folding unit</b> Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the centerfold adjuster guides to paper.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of booklet stapling position</b> Adjusts the booklet stapling position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of center folding position</b> Adjusts the center folding position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The screen for setting each item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FINISHER 3000</td><td>Adjustment of the 3000-sheet document finisher</td></tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET FOLDER</td><td>Adjustment of the centerfold unit</td></tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER B'-IN</td><td>Adjustment of the built-in finisher</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: [FINISHER 3000]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PUNCH REG ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH POSITION ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH F HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of front side registration home position</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH R HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of rear side registration home position</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of front and back stapling home position</td></tr> <tr> <td>TURNED STAPLE HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of slanted stapling home position</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	FINISHER 3000	Adjustment of the 3000-sheet document finisher	BOOKLET FOLDER	Adjustment of the centerfold unit	FINISHER B'-IN	Adjustment of the built-in finisher	Display	Description	PUNCH REG ADJ	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode	PUNCH POSITION ADJ	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode	WIDTH F HP ADJ	Adjustment of front side registration home position	WIDTH R HP ADJ	Adjustment of rear side registration home position	STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	TURNED STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position
Display	Description																						
FINISHER 3000	Adjustment of the 3000-sheet document finisher																						
BOOKLET FOLDER	Adjustment of the centerfold unit																						
FINISHER B'-IN	Adjustment of the built-in finisher																						
Display	Description																						
PUNCH REG ADJ	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode																						
PUNCH POSITION ADJ	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode																						
WIDTH F HP ADJ	Adjustment of front side registration home position																						
WIDTH R HP ADJ	Adjustment of rear side registration home position																						
STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position																						
TURNED STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																												
U246	<p><b>Setting: Adjustment of registration stop timing</b></p> <p>1. Select [PUNCH REG ADJ].</p> <p>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of registration stop timing</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>0</td><td>1 ms</td></tr></table> <p>If skewed paper conveying occurs (sample 1), increase the preset value. If the copy paper is Z-folded (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</p> <div><div><p>Sample 1</p></div><div><p>Sample 2</p></div></div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-18</b></p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Setting: Adjustment of the paper stop timing</b></p> <p>1. Select [PUNCH POSITION ADJ].</p> <p>2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.49 mm</td></tr></table> <p>If the distance of the position of a punch hole is smaller than the specified value A, increase the preset value. If the distance is larger than the value A, decrease the preset value.</p> <div><p>Preset value A: 5.5 ± 2 mm (inch) 9.5 ± 2 mm (metric)</p></div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-19</b></p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Setting: Adjustment of front/rear side registration home position</b></p> <p>1. Select [WIDTH F HP ADJ] or [WIDTH R HP ADJ].</p> <p>2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of front side registration home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.31 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of rear side registration home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.31 mm</td></tr></table> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p>5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [FINISHER MOTOR], then [WIDTH TEST (A3)]. The width guides of the Inner tray will move to A3-size position.</p> <p>6. Pull the Inner tray, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is abut the guides.</p> <p>7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	1 ms	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of the paper stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.49 mm	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of front side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.31 mm	Adjustment of rear side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.31 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	1 ms																										
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of the paper stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.49 mm																										
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of front side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.31 mm																										
Adjustment of rear side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.31 mm																										

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U246	<div><div>Setting: Adjustment of front and back stapling home position</div><div><div><div>1. Select [STAPLE HP ADJ].</div><div>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</div></div><table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of front and back stapling home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.32 mm</td></tr></table><div><div>When staple positions are off toward the front side of the machine (sample 1), increase the preset value.</div><div>When staple positions are off toward the rear side of the machine (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</div><div><div><div><div><div></div><div></div></div><div></div></div><div>Sample 1</div><div><div><div><div></div><div></div></div><div></div></div><div>Sample 2</div></div></div><div>Figure 1-3-20</div><div><div>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</div><div>Setting: Adjustment of slanted stapling home position</div><div><div><div>1. Select [TURNED STAPLE HP ADJ].</div><div>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</div></div><table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of slanted stapling home position</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.99°</td></tr></table><div><div>To increase the angle for slanted stapling (sample 1), decrease the preset value. To decrease the angle for slanted stapling (sample 2), increase the preset value.</div><div><div><div><div><div></div><div></div></div><div></div></div><div>Sample 1</div><div><div><div><div></div><div></div></div><div></div></div><div>Sample 2</div></div></div><div>Figure 1-3-21</div><div><div>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div></div></div></div></div></div></div></div></div>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.32 mm	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.99°
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step														
Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.32 mm														
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step														
Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.99°														

Maintenance item No.	Description																																														
U246	<p><b>Setting: [BOOKLET FOLDER]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the item to be set.</li> </ol> <table> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH U HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of upper side registration home position</td></tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH L HP ADJ</td><td>Adjustment of lower side registration home position</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)</td><td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size</td></tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size</td></tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size</td></tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)</td><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size</td></tr> </table> <p><b>Setting: Adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select [WIDTH U HP ADJ] or [WIDTH L HP ADJ].</li> <li>Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li> </ol> <table> <tr> <th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of upper side registration home position</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>0</td><td>0.104 mm</td></tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of lower side registration home position</td><td>-46 to 46</td><td>0</td><td>0.104 mm</td></tr> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> <li>Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [BOOKLET], then [WIDTH TEST(A3)]. The width guides of the centerfold unit will move to A3-size position.</li> <li>Pull the centerfold unit, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is about the guides.</li> <li>Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Adjustment of booklet stapling position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select [STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)], [STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)] or [STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)].</li> <li>Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li> </ol> <table> <tr> <th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr> </table> <p>When staples are placed too far right (sample 1), decrease the preset value. When staples are placed too far left (sample 2), increase the preset value. Reference value: within <math>\pm 2</math> mm</p> <div>  <div>  <p>Sample 1</p> </div> <div>  <p>Sample 2</p> </div> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-22</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	WIDTH U HP ADJ	Adjustment of upper side registration home position	WIDTH L HP ADJ	Adjustment of lower side registration home position	STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size	STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size	STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size	SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size	SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size	SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of upper side registration home position	-20 to 20	0	0.104 mm	Adjustment of lower side registration home position	-46 to 46	0	0.104 mm	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm
Display	Description																																														
WIDTH U HP ADJ	Adjustment of upper side registration home position																																														
WIDTH L HP ADJ	Adjustment of lower side registration home position																																														
STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size																																														
STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size																																														
STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size																																														
SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size																																														
SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size																																														
SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size																																														
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																												
Adjustment of upper side registration home position	-20 to 20	0	0.104 mm																																												
Adjustment of lower side registration home position	-46 to 46	0	0.104 mm																																												
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																												
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																																												
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																																												
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																																												

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U246	<p><b>Setting: Adjustment of center folding position</b></p> <p>1. Select [SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)], [SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)] or [SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)].</p> <p>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr><tr><td>Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size</td><td>-10 to 10</td><td>0</td><td>0.55 mm</td></tr></table> <p>When the centerfold position too far right (sample 1), increase the preset value. When the centerfold position too far left (sample 2), decrease the setting value. Reference value: within ± 3 mm</p> <div><p>Center line      Sample 1      Sample 2</p></div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-23</b></p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Setting: [FINISHER B'-IN]</b></p> <p>1. Select the desired cursor position.</p> <p>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>FRONT</td><td>Front side registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>REAR</td><td>Rear side registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>END</td><td>Trailing edge registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Completion</b></p> <p>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	FRONT	Front side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	REAR	Rear side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	END	Trailing edge registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																														
Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																														
FRONT	Front side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0																														
REAR	Rear side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0																														
END	Trailing edge registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0																														

Maintenance item No.	Description																														
U247	<p><b>Setting the paper feed device</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns on motors and clutches of 3000-sheet paper feeder or paper feeder.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of motors and clutches of paper feed device.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key. The value varies depending to the option furnished.</li><li>2. Select the item to be operated.</li><li>3. Press the start key. The operation starts.</li></ol> <p>3000-sheet paper feeder.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motor and clutches</th><th>Operation</th></tr><tr><td>LCF FEED</td><td>PF conveying motor (PFCM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH B</td><td>PF conveying clutch (PFCCL)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH P1</td><td>PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH P2</td><td>PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr></table> <p>Paper feeder</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motor and clutches</th><th>Operation</th></tr><tr><td>DESK FEED</td><td>PF drive motor (PFDm)</td><td>In operation</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH FEED</td><td>PF feed clutch (PFFCL)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH U</td><td>PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH L</td><td>PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)</td><td>On for 1 s</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. To turn each motor off, press the stop key.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motor and clutches	Operation	LCF FEED	PF conveying motor (PFCM)	In operation	CLUTCH B	PF conveying clutch (PFCCL)	On for 1 s	CLUTCH P1	PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)	On for 1 s	CLUTCH P2	PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)	On for 1 s	Display	Motor and clutches	Operation	DESK FEED	PF drive motor (PFDm)	In operation	CLUTCH FEED	PF feed clutch (PFFCL)	On for 1 s	CLUTCH U	PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)	On for 1 s	CLUTCH L	PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)	On for 1 s
Display	Motor and clutches	Operation																													
LCF FEED	PF conveying motor (PFCM)	In operation																													
CLUTCH B	PF conveying clutch (PFCCL)	On for 1 s																													
CLUTCH P1	PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)	On for 1 s																													
CLUTCH P2	PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)	On for 1 s																													
Display	Motor and clutches	Operation																													
DESK FEED	PF drive motor (PFDm)	In operation																													
CLUTCH FEED	PF feed clutch (PFFCL)	On for 1 s																													
CLUTCH U	PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)	On for 1 s																													
CLUTCH L	PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)	On for 1 s																													

Maintenance item No.	Description									
U250	<p><b>Setting the maintenance cycle</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes preset values for maintenance cycle and automatic grayscale adjustment.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Provides changing the time when the message to acknowledge to conduct maintenance and automatic grayscale adjustment is periodically displayed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <p>1. Press the start key. The current pre-set value is displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>Maintenance Count A</td><td>Preset values for maintenance cycle</td><td>0 to 9999999</td></tr><tr><td>COUNT GRAY ADJUST*100</td><td>Preset values for automatic grayscale adjustment</td><td>0 to 99900*</td></tr></table> <p>*: The setting can be changed by 100 per step.</p> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <p>1. Select the item to be cleared. To clear all items, select [ALL CLEAR].</p> <p>2. Press the clear key.</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The setting value is cleared.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <p>1. Select the item to be changed.</p> <p>2. Enter the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The setting value is set.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Maintenance Count A	Preset values for maintenance cycle	0 to 9999999	COUNT GRAY ADJUST*100	Preset values for automatic grayscale adjustment	0 to 99900*
Display	Description	Setting range								
Maintenance Count A	Preset values for maintenance cycle	0 to 9999999								
COUNT GRAY ADJUST*100	Preset values for automatic grayscale adjustment	0 to 99900*								
U251	<p><b>Checking/clearing the maintenance count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays and clears or changes the maintenance count and automatic grayscale adjustment count.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To verify the maintenance counter count and automatic grayscale count. Also to clear the count during maintenance service.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The maintenance count is displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>Maintenance Count A</td><td>Count value for maintenance cycle</td><td>0 to 9999999</td></tr><tr><td>COUNT GRAY ADJUST</td><td>Automatic grayscale adjustment count</td><td>0 to 9999999</td></tr></table> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <p>1. Select the item to be cleared. To clear all items, select [ALL CLEAR].</p> <p>2. Press the clear key.</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The count is cleared.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <p>1. Select the item to be changed.</p> <p>2. Enter the count using the numeric keys.</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The count is set.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Maintenance Count A	Count value for maintenance cycle	0 to 9999999	COUNT GRAY ADJUST	Automatic grayscale adjustment count	0 to 9999999
Display	Description	Setting range								
Maintenance Count A	Count value for maintenance cycle	0 to 9999999								
COUNT GRAY ADJUST	Automatic grayscale adjustment count	0 to 9999999								

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U252	<p><b>Setting the destination</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Switches the operations and screens of the machine according to the destination.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be executed after initializing the backup RAM, in order to return the setting to the value before replacement or initialization.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the destination.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr><tr><td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr><tr><td>ASIA PACIFIC</td><td>Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications</td></tr><tr><td>AUSTRALIA</td><td>Australia specifications</td></tr><tr><td>CHINA</td><td>China specifications</td></tr><tr><td>KOREA</td><td>Korea specifications</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li><li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li></ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> The specified initial settings are provided according to the destinations in the maintenance items below. To change the initial settings in those items, be sure to run maintenance item U021 after changing the destination.</p> <p><b>Initial setting according to the destinations</b></p> <table><tr><th>Maintenance No.</th><th>Title</th><th>Inch spec.</th><th>Europe/Asia Pacific spec.</th></tr><tr><td>208</td><td>Setting the paper size for the paper feeder</td><td>Letter</td><td>A4</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications	AUSTRALIA	Australia specifications	CHINA	China specifications	KOREA	Korea specifications	Maintenance No.	Title	Inch spec.	Europe/Asia Pacific spec.	208	Setting the paper size for the paper feeder	Letter	A4
Display	Description																						
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications																						
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications																						
ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications																						
AUSTRALIA	Australia specifications																						
CHINA	China specifications																						
KOREA	Korea specifications																						
Maintenance No.	Title	Inch spec.	Europe/Asia Pacific spec.																				
208	Setting the paper size for the paper feeder	Letter	A4																				

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U253	<p><b>Switching between double and single counts</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Switches the count system for the total counter and other counters.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Used to select, according to the preference of the user (copy service provider), if A3/Ledger paper is to be counted as one sheet (single count) or two sheets (double count).</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the count system.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ALL SINGLE</td><td>Single count for all size paper</td></tr> <tr> <td>DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)</td><td>Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger</td></tr> <tr> <td>DOUBLE COUNT(B4)</td><td>Double count for B4 size or larger</td></tr> <tr> <td>DOUBLE COUNT(FOLIO/LEGAL)</td><td>Double count for FOLIO/Legal size or larger</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ALL SINGLE	Single count for all size paper	DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)	Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger	DOUBLE COUNT(B4)	Double count for B4 size or larger	DOUBLE COUNT(FOLIO/LEGAL)	Double count for FOLIO/Legal size or larger
Display	Description										
ALL SINGLE	Single count for all size paper										
DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)	Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger										
DOUBLE COUNT(B4)	Double count for B4 size or larger										
DOUBLE COUNT(FOLIO/LEGAL)	Double count for FOLIO/Legal size or larger										
U260	<p><b>Selecting the timing for copy counting</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the copy count timing for the total counter and other counters.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be set according to user (copy service provider) request. If a paper jam occurs frequently in the optional document finisher when the number of copies is counted at the time of paper ejection, copies are provided without copy counts. The copy service provider cannot charge for such copying. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made earlier. If a paper jam occurs frequently in the paper conveying or fuser sections when the number of copies is counted before the paper reaches those sections, copying is charged without a copy being made. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made later.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the copy count timing.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED</td><td>When secondary paper feed starts</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT</td><td>When the paper is ejected</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: EJECT</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FEED	When secondary paper feed starts	EJECT	When the paper is ejected				
Display	Description										
FEED	When secondary paper feed starts										
EJECT	When the paper is ejected										

Maintenance item No.	Description
U265	<p><b>Setting OEM purchaser code</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the OEM purchaser code.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Sets the code when replacing the main PWB and the like.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Change the preset value using the numeric keys.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>
U278	<p><b>Setting the delivery date</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Enter delivery date in month, day, and year.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To operate when installing the machine. Perform this to confirm the delivery date.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select [TODAY].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The delivery date is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [CLEAR].</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The delivery date is cleared.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U285	<p><b>Setting service status page</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Determines displaying the digital dot coverage report on reporting.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [COVERAGE]. Highlighted: ON, Non-highlighted: OFF Initial setting: ON</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U326	<p><b>Setting the black line cleaning indication</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether to display the cleaning guidance when detecting the black line.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Displays the cleaning guidance in order to make the call for service with the black line decrease by the rubbish on the contact glass when scanning from the DP.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key.</li><li>Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>BLACK LINE MODE</td><td>Black line cleaning guidance ON/OFF setting</td></tr><tr><td>BLACK LINE COUNT</td><td>Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication</td></tr></table> <p><b>Setting: [BLACK LINE MODE]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Select ON or OFF.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ON</td><td>Displays the cleaning guidance</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not to display the cleaning guidance</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: ON Setting count value is displayed only if the setting is ON.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key. The setting is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Setting: [BLACK LINE COUNT]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>COUNT *1000</td><td>Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication ( x 1000 sheets)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>8</td></tr></table> <p>When setting is 0, the black line cleaning indication is displayed only if the black line is detected.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	BLACK LINE MODE	Black line cleaning guidance ON/OFF setting	BLACK LINE COUNT	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication	Display	Description	ON	Displays the cleaning guidance	OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	COUNT *1000	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication ( x 1000 sheets)	0 to 255	8
Display	Description																				
BLACK LINE MODE	Black line cleaning guidance ON/OFF setting																				
BLACK LINE COUNT	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication																				
Display	Description																				
ON	Displays the cleaning guidance																				
OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance																				
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																		
COUNT *1000	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication ( x 1000 sheets)	0 to 255	8																		

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U328	<p><b>Side ejection setting</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether to eject to the side of the machine when an optional curl eliminator is installed.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select [ON] or [OFF].</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ON</td><td>To eject to the side of the machine</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not to eject to the side of the machine</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li><li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li></ol>	Display	Description	ON	To eject to the side of the machine	OFF	Not to eject to the side of the machine		
Display	Description								
ON	To eject to the side of the machine								
OFF	Not to eject to the side of the machine								
U332	<p><b>Setting the size conversion factor</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the coefficient of nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size. The coefficient set here is used to convert the black ratio in relation to the A4/Letter size and to display the result in user simulation.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Calculation Rate</td><td>Size parameter</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Calculation Rate	Size parameter	0.1 to 3.0	1.0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting						
Calculation Rate	Size parameter	0.1 to 3.0	1.0						

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U341	<p><b>Specific paper feed location setting for printing function</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets a paper feed location specified for printer output.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To use a paper feed location only for printer output. A paper feed location specified for printer output cannot be used for copy output.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the paper feed location for the printer. Two or more cassette can be selected.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 1</td><td>Cassette 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 2</td><td>Cassette 2</td></tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 3</td><td>Cassette 3 (optional paper feeder)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 4</td><td>Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)</td></tr> <tr> <td>LCF</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When an optional paper feed device is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	CASSETTE 1	Cassette 1	CASSETTE 2	Cassette 2	CASSETTE 3	Cassette 3 (optional paper feeder)	CASSETTE 4	Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)	LCF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder		
Display	Description														
CASSETTE 1	Cassette 1														
CASSETTE 2	Cassette 2														
CASSETTE 3	Cassette 3 (optional paper feeder)														
CASSETTE 4	Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)														
LCF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder														
U342	<p><b>Setting the ejection restriction</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets or cancels the restriction on the number of sheets to be ejected continuously when the internal eject tray is selected as the eject location.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> According to user request, sets or cancels restriction on the number of sheets.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select [ON] or [OFF].</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Sets restriction on the number of sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Cancels restriction on the number of sheets</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <p>Details of restriction (number of sheets to be ejected continuously after the start key is pressed)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Condition</th><th>Number of sheets</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>When no optional ejection device is installed</td><td>250 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>When the job separator is installed</td><td>150 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>When the finisher is installed</td><td>100 sheets</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Sets restriction on the number of sheets	OFF	Cancels restriction on the number of sheets	Condition	Number of sheets	When no optional ejection device is installed	250 sheets	When the job separator is installed	150 sheets	When the finisher is installed	100 sheets
Display	Description														
ON	Sets restriction on the number of sheets														
OFF	Cancels restriction on the number of sheets														
Condition	Number of sheets														
When no optional ejection device is installed	250 sheets														
When the job separator is installed	150 sheets														
When the finisher is installed	100 sheets														

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U343	<p><b>Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Switches the initial setting between duplex and simplex copy.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be set according to frequency of use: set to the more frequently used mode.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ON</td><td>Duplex copy</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td><td>Simplex copy</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Duplex copy	OFF	Simplex copy
Display	Description						
ON	Duplex copy						
OFF	Simplex copy						
U345	<p><b>Setting the value for maintenance due indication</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets when to display a message notifying that the time for maintenance is about to be reached, by setting the number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends. When the difference between the number of copies of the maintenance cycle and that of the maintenance count reaches the set value, the message is displayed.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the time for maintenance due indication.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>COUNT</td><td>Time for maintenance due indication (Remaining number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends)</td><td>0 to 9999</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	COUNT	Time for maintenance due indication (Remaining number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends)	0 to 9999
Display	Description	Setting range					
COUNT	Time for maintenance due indication (Remaining number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends)	0 to 9999					

Maintenance item No.	Description																																			
U402	<p><b>Adjusting margins of image printing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts margins for image printing.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div><table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>LEAD</td><td>Printer leading edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>4.0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>A</td><td>Printer left margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C</td><td>Printer right margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TRAIL</td><td>Printer trailing edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.9</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TRAIL(DUP)</td><td>Printer trailing edge margin (second side)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>4.0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TRAIL(MPT)</td><td>Printer trailing edge margin (MP tray)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>4.0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr></tbody></table><div><div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Press the start key to output a test pattern.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</div></div><div>Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</div></div><div><div><div><div>Printer leading edge margin (3.0 ± 2.5 mm)</div><div>Printer left margin (2.0 +2.0/-1.5mm)</div><div>Printer right margin (2.0 +2.0/-1.5 mm)</div><div>Printer trailing edge margin (3.0 ± 2.5 mm)</div></div><div><b>Figure 1-3-24</b></div></div><div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div><div><div><div><b>Caution</b></div><div>Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</div></div><div><div><div>U402</div><div>U403 (P.1-3-82)</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-83)</div></div></div><div><div><div><b>Completion</b></div><div>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</div></div></div></div></div></div></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	LEAD	Printer leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm	A	Printer left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm	C	Printer right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm	TRAIL	Printer trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	3.9	0.1 mm	TRAIL(DUP)	Printer trailing edge margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm	TRAIL(MPT)	Printer trailing edge margin (MP tray)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																
LEAD	Printer leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm																																
A	Printer left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm																																
C	Printer right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm																																
TRAIL	Printer trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	3.9	0.1 mm																																
TRAIL(DUP)	Printer trailing edge margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm																																
TRAIL(MPT)	Printer trailing edge margin (MP tray)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm																																

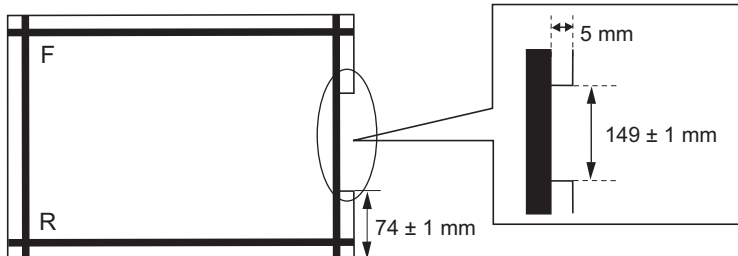
Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U403	<p><b>Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the platen</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts margins for scanning the original on the contact glass.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div><table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>A MARGIN</td><td>Scanner left margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>B MARGIN</td><td>Scanner leading edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C MARGIN</td><td>Scanner right margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>D MARGIN</td><td>Scanner trailing edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr></tbody></table><div><div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.</div></div><div>Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</div></div><div><div><div><div>Scanner leading edge margin (3.0 ± 2.5 mm)</div><div>Scanner left margin (2.5 +1.5/-2.0 mm)</div><div>Scanner right margin (2.5 +1.5/-2.0 mm)</div><div>Scanner trailing edge margin (3.0 ± 2.0 mm)</div></div><div><div><div><div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div><div></div></div></div></div></div><div><div>Figure 1-3-25</div><div><div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div></div><div><div><div><div><div><div>Caution</div><div>Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</div></div><div><div><div>U403</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-83)</div></div></div></div></div><div><div><div><div>Completion</div><div>Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</div></div></div></div></div></div></div></div></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	A MARGIN	Scanner left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	B MARGIN	Scanner leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	C MARGIN	Scanner right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	D MARGIN	Scanner trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																						
A MARGIN	Scanner left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
B MARGIN	Scanner leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
C MARGIN	Scanner right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
D MARGIN	Scanner trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																													
U404	<p><b>Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts margins for scanning the original from the DP.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect when the DP is used.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U402 (P.1-3-81)</div><div>→</div><div>U403 (P.1-3-82)</div><div>→</div><div>U404</div></div> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>A MARGIN</td><td>Left margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>B MARGIN</td><td>Leading edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.5</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C MARGIN</td><td>Right margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>D MARGIN</td><td>Trailing edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>4.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>A MARGIN (BACK)*</td><td>Left margin (second side)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>B MARGIN (BACK)*</td><td>Leading edge margin (second side)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.5</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C MARGIN (BACK)*</td><td>Right margin (second side)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>D MARGIN (BACK)*</td><td>Trailing edge margin (second side)</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>4.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr></table> <p>*: Dual scan DP only.</p> <div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys. Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</div></div> <div><div>Leading edge margin (3.0 ± 1.5 mm)</div><div>Left margin (2.0 ± 1.0 mm)</div><div>Right margin (2.0 ± 1.0 mm)</div><div>Trailing edge margin (2.0 ± 1.0 mm)</div></div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-26</b></p> <div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	A MARGIN	Left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	B MARGIN	Leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm	C MARGIN	Right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm	A MARGIN (BACK)*	Left margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	B MARGIN (BACK)*	Leading edge margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm	C MARGIN (BACK)*	Right margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	D MARGIN (BACK)*	Trailing edge margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																										
A MARGIN	Left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																																										
B MARGIN	Leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm																																										
C MARGIN	Right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																																										
D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm																																										
A MARGIN (BACK)*	Left margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																																										
B MARGIN (BACK)*	Leading edge margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm																																										
C MARGIN (BACK)*	Right margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																																										
D MARGIN (BACK)*	Trailing edge margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm																																										

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U407	<p><b>Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the leading edge registration during memory copying.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edge of the copy image on the front face and that on the reverse face during duplex switchback copying.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U034 (P.1-3-22)</div>→<div>U402 (P.1-3-81)</div>→<div>U066 (P.1-3-29)</div>→<div>U403 (P.1-3-82)</div>→<div>U071 (P.1-3-34)</div>→</div> <div><div>U404 (P.1-3-83)</div>→<div>U407</div></div> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA</td><td>Leading edge registration for memory image printing</td><td>-47 to 47</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 mm</td></tr></table><div><div>2. Press the system menu key.</div><div>3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</div><div>4. Press the system menu key.</div><div>5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</div><div>For copy example 1, decrease the value.</div><div>For copy example 2, increase the value.</div></div><div><div><div>↑</div><div>Original</div></div><div><div>↑</div><div>Copy example 1</div></div><div><div>↑</div><div>Copy example 2</div></div></div><p><b>Figure 1-3-27</b></p><div><div>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div><p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA	Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-47 to 47	0	0.1 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step							
ADJUST DATA	Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-47 to 47	0	0.1 mm							

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U410	<p><b>Adjusting the halftone automatically</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Carries out processing for the data acquisition that is required in order to perform automatic adjustment of the halftone.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Performed when the quality of reproduced halftones has dropped.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select [EXECUTE].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. A test pattern is outputted.</li> <li>4. Place the output test pattern as the original. Align the corner inside the circle with the left inside corner of the original marker.</li> </ol> <div> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">Test pattern</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-28</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern and set them.</li> <li>6. Press the start key. Adjustment is made.</li> <li>7. When normally completed, [ALL COMP.] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Error codes</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Codes</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>S01</td><td>Patch not detected</td></tr> <tr> <td>S02</td><td>Original deviation in the main scanning direction</td></tr> <tr> <td>S03</td><td>Original deviation in the auxiliary scanning direction</td></tr> <tr> <td>S04</td><td>Original inclination error</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If [S**] appears, check the original. If [C**] appears, execute again maintenance item U410.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Codes	Description	S01	Patch not detected	S02	Original deviation in the main scanning direction	S03	Original deviation in the auxiliary scanning direction	S04	Original inclination error
Codes	Description										
S01	Patch not detected										
S02	Original deviation in the main scanning direction										
S03	Original deviation in the auxiliary scanning direction										
S04	Original inclination error										

Maintenance item No.	Description																										
U411	<p><b>Adjusting the scanner automatically</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Uses a specified original and automatically adjusts the following items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To perform automatic adjustment of various items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key.</li><li>Select the item. The screen for executing is displayed.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)</th></tr><tr><td>SCANNER</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the scanner section</td><td>302FZ56990</td></tr><tr><td>DP(FACE UP)</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (first page)</td><td>302AC68243</td></tr><tr><td>DP(FACE DOWN)*</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (second page)</td><td>302AC68243/303JX57010/303JX57020</td></tr></table> <p>*: Dual scan DP only.</p> <p><b>Method: [SCANNER]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Enter the target values which are shown on the specified original (P/N: 302FZ56990) executing maintenance item U425.</li><li>Set a specified original (P/N: 302FZ56990) on the platen.</li><li>Select the item.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ALL</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.</td></tr><tr><td>INPUT</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.</td></tr><tr><td>C.A.</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: chromatic aberration filter.</td></tr><tr><td>MTF</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter.</td></tr><tr><td>GAMMA</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma.</td></tr><tr><td>MATRIX</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: matrix.</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [Complete] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.</li></ol>	Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)	SCANNER	Automatic adjustment in the scanner section	302FZ56990	DP(FACE UP)	Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (first page)	302AC68243	DP(FACE DOWN)*	Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (second page)	302AC68243/303JX57010/303JX57020	Display	Description	ALL	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.	INPUT	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.	C.A.	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: chromatic aberration filter.	MTF	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter.	GAMMA	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma.	MATRIX	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: matrix.
Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)																									
SCANNER	Automatic adjustment in the scanner section	302FZ56990																									
DP(FACE UP)	Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (first page)	302AC68243																									
DP(FACE DOWN)*	Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (second page)	302AC68243/303JX57010/303JX57020																									
Display	Description																										
ALL	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.																										
INPUT	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.																										
C.A.	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: chromatic aberration filter.																										
MTF	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter.																										
GAMMA	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma.																										
MATRIX	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: matrix.																										

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U411	<p><b>Method: [DP(FACE UP)]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Measure the leading edge, main scanning, and auxiliary scanning of the specified original (P/N: 302AC68243) and enter the values by executing maintenance item U425.</li><li>Set a specified original (P/N: 302AC68243) in the DP. Cut the trailing edge of the original.</li></ol> <div></div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-29</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press [INPUT].</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>INPUT</td><td>Automatic adjustment of first page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [Complete] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.</li></ol> <p><b>Method: [DP(FACE DOWN)]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Select [ORIGINAL TARGET] and press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>NORMAL TARGET</td><td>Execution is not required.</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL TARGET</td><td>Uses the specified original for acquiring data as the target data.</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Place the specified original for acquiring gamma target data (P/N: 303JX57010) on the platen, and press the start key.</li><li>Place the specified original for acquiring matrix target data (P/N: 303JX57020) on the platen, and press the start key. When normally completed, [Complete] is displayed.</li><li>Select the item (place all originals face down).</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)</th></tr><tr><td>ALL</td><td>Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.</td><td>302AC68243/303JX57010/303JX57020</td></tr><tr><td>INPUT</td><td>Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.</td><td>302AC68243</td></tr><tr><td>MTF/GAMMA</td><td>Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: MTF filter and input gamma.</td><td>303JX57010</td></tr><tr><td>MATRIX</td><td>Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: matrix.</td><td>303JX57020</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	INPUT	Automatic adjustment of first page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.	Display	Description	NORMAL TARGET	Execution is not required.	ORIGINAL TARGET	Uses the specified original for acquiring data as the target data.	Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)	ALL	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.	302AC68243/303JX57010/303JX57020	INPUT	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.	302AC68243	MTF/GAMMA	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: MTF filter and input gamma.	303JX57010	MATRIX	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: matrix.	303JX57020
Display	Description																									
INPUT	Automatic adjustment of first page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.																									
Display	Description																									
NORMAL TARGET	Execution is not required.																									
ORIGINAL TARGET	Uses the specified original for acquiring data as the target data.																									
Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)																								
ALL	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.	302AC68243/303JX57010/303JX57020																								
INPUT	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line.	302AC68243																								
MTF/GAMMA	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: MTF filter and input gamma.	303JX57010																								
MATRIX	Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: matrix.	303JX57020																								

Maintenance item No.	Description
U411	<p><b>[INPUT]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [INPUT].</li> <li>2. Place a specified original (P/N: 302AC68243).</li> <li>3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.</li> </ol> <p><b>[MTF/GAMMA]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [MTF/GAMMA].</li> <li>2. Place a specified original (P/N: 303JX57010).</li> <li>3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.</li> </ol> <p><b>[MATRIX]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [MATRIX].</li> <li>2. Place a specified original (P/N: 303JX57020).</li> <li>3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.</li> </ol> <p>When [ALL] is selected, the adjustment of [INPUT], [MTF/GAMMA] and [MATRIX] can be executed at once. When adjusting, place the three specified originals, and then press the start key. Set the original 303JX57020, and then place 303JX57010 and 302AC68243 in order on the top of the original.</p> <p>When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [COMPLETE] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																						
U411	<b>Error Codes</b> <table> <tr> <th>Codes</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 01</td><td>Black band detection error (scanner leading edge registration)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 02</td><td>Black band detection error (scanner center line)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 03</td><td>Black band detection error (scanner main scanning direction magnification)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 04</td><td>Black band is not detected (scanner leading edge registration)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 05</td><td>Black band is not detected (scanner center line)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 06</td><td>Black band is not detected (scanner main scanning direction magnification)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 07</td><td>Black band is not detected (scanner auxiliary scanning direction magnification)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 08</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification far end)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 09</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification near end)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 0a</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 0b</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge original check)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 0c</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 0d</td><td>Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge 2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 0e</td><td>DMA time out</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 0f</td><td>Auxiliary scanning direction magnification error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 10</td><td>Auxiliary scanning direction leading edge detection error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 11</td><td>Auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge detection error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 12</td><td>Auxiliary scanning direction skew 1.5 error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 13</td><td>Maintenance request error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 14</td><td>Main scanning direction center line error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 15</td><td>Main scanning direction skew 1.5 error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 16</td><td>Main scanning direction magnification error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 17</td><td>Service call error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 18</td><td>DP JAM error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 19</td><td>PWB error</td></tr> <tr> <td>ERROR 1a</td><td>Original error</td></tr> </table>	Codes	Description	ERROR 01	Black band detection error (scanner leading edge registration)	ERROR 02	Black band detection error (scanner center line)	ERROR 03	Black band detection error (scanner main scanning direction magnification)	ERROR 04	Black band is not detected (scanner leading edge registration)	ERROR 05	Black band is not detected (scanner center line)	ERROR 06	Black band is not detected (scanner main scanning direction magnification)	ERROR 07	Black band is not detected (scanner auxiliary scanning direction magnification)	ERROR 08	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification far end)	ERROR 09	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification near end)	ERROR 0a	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge)	ERROR 0b	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge original check)	ERROR 0c	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)	ERROR 0d	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge 2)	ERROR 0e	DMA time out	ERROR 0f	Auxiliary scanning direction magnification error	ERROR 10	Auxiliary scanning direction leading edge detection error	ERROR 11	Auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge detection error	ERROR 12	Auxiliary scanning direction skew 1.5 error	ERROR 13	Maintenance request error	ERROR 14	Main scanning direction center line error	ERROR 15	Main scanning direction skew 1.5 error	ERROR 16	Main scanning direction magnification error	ERROR 17	Service call error	ERROR 18	DP JAM error	ERROR 19	PWB error	ERROR 1a	Original error
Codes	Description																																																						
ERROR 01	Black band detection error (scanner leading edge registration)																																																						
ERROR 02	Black band detection error (scanner center line)																																																						
ERROR 03	Black band detection error (scanner main scanning direction magnification)																																																						
ERROR 04	Black band is not detected (scanner leading edge registration)																																																						
ERROR 05	Black band is not detected (scanner center line)																																																						
ERROR 06	Black band is not detected (scanner main scanning direction magnification)																																																						
ERROR 07	Black band is not detected (scanner auxiliary scanning direction magnification)																																																						
ERROR 08	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification far end)																																																						
ERROR 09	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification near end)																																																						
ERROR 0a	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge)																																																						
ERROR 0b	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge original check)																																																						
ERROR 0c	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)																																																						
ERROR 0d	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge 2)																																																						
ERROR 0e	DMA time out																																																						
ERROR 0f	Auxiliary scanning direction magnification error																																																						
ERROR 10	Auxiliary scanning direction leading edge detection error																																																						
ERROR 11	Auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge detection error																																																						
ERROR 12	Auxiliary scanning direction skew 1.5 error																																																						
ERROR 13	Maintenance request error																																																						
ERROR 14	Main scanning direction center line error																																																						
ERROR 15	Main scanning direction skew 1.5 error																																																						
ERROR 16	Main scanning direction magnification error																																																						
ERROR 17	Service call error																																																						
ERROR 18	DP JAM error																																																						
ERROR 19	PWB error																																																						
ERROR 1a	Original error																																																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																										
U425	<p><b>Setting the target</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Enters the lab values that is indicated on the back of the chart (P/N: 302FZ56990) used for adjustment. Also enters the measurement value of the chart (P/N: 302AC68243) used for adjustment.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Performs data input in order to correct for differences in originals during automatic adjustment.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the start key.</li><li>Select the item to be set.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>CCD</td><td>Entering the target values of the chart (P/N: 302FZ56990) used for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>DP</td><td>Entering the measurement value of the chart (P/N: 302AC68243) used for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>CIS</td><td>Execution is not required</td></tr></table> <p><b>Setting: [CCD]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Select the item to be set.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>N875</td><td>Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>N475</td><td>Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>N125</td><td>Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>CYAN</td><td>Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>MAGENTA</td><td>Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>YELLOW</td><td>Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>RED</td><td>Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>GREEN</td><td>Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>BLUE</td><td>Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST ORIGINAL</td><td>Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Select the item to be set.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>L</td><td>Setting the L value</td><td>0.0 to 100.0</td></tr><tr><td>A</td><td>Setting the A value</td><td>-200.0 to 200.0</td></tr><tr><td>B</td><td>Setting the B value</td><td>-200.0 to 200.0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>Enters the value that is indicated on the back of the chart using the +/- or numeric keys.</li><li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol>	Display	Description	CCD	Entering the target values of the chart (P/N: 302FZ56990) used for adjustment	DP	Entering the measurement value of the chart (P/N: 302AC68243) used for adjustment	CIS	Execution is not required	Display	Description	N875	Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment	N475	Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment	N125	Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment	CYAN	Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment	MAGENTA	Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment	YELLOW	Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment	RED	Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment	GREEN	Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment	BLUE	Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment	ADJUST ORIGINAL	Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions	Display	Description	Setting range	L	Setting the L value	0.0 to 100.0	A	Setting the A value	-200.0 to 200.0	B	Setting the B value	-200.0 to 200.0
Display	Description																																										
CCD	Entering the target values of the chart (P/N: 302FZ56990) used for adjustment																																										
DP	Entering the measurement value of the chart (P/N: 302AC68243) used for adjustment																																										
CIS	Execution is not required																																										
Display	Description																																										
N875	Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment																																										
N475	Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment																																										
N125	Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment																																										
CYAN	Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment																																										
MAGENTA	Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment																																										
YELLOW	Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment																																										
RED	Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment																																										
GREEN	Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment																																										
BLUE	Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment																																										
ADJUST ORIGINAL	Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions																																										
Display	Description	Setting range																																									
L	Setting the L value	0.0 to 100.0																																									
A	Setting the A value	-200.0 to 200.0																																									
B	Setting the B value	-200.0 to 200.0																																									

Maintenance item No.	Description
U425	<p><b>Setting: [ADJUST ORIGINAL]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Measure the distance from the left edge to the black belt (a) of the original at A, B and C. Measurement procedure             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Measure the distance from the edge to the black belt (a) of the original at A (35 mm from the leading edge), B (110 mm from the leading edge) and C (185 mm from the leading edge), respectively.</li> <li>2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: <math>((A + C) / 2 + B) / 2</math></li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Enter the values solved using the +/- keys in [MAIN ADJ].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. Measure the distance from the leading edge to the black belt (b) of the original at D, E and F. Measurement procedure             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Measure the length from the edge to the black belt (b) of the original at D (30 mm from the left edge), E (148.5 mm from the left edge) and F (267 mm from the left edge), respectively.</li> <li>2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: <math>((D + F) / 2 + E) / 2</math></li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Enter the values solved using the +/- keys in [SUB LEAD ADJ].</li> <li>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>7. Measure the length (G) from the leading edge of the black belt (b) to the bottom of the N475 patch of the original.</li> <li>8. Enter the measured value using the +/- keys in [SUB TAIL ADJ].</li> <li>9. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>10. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.</li> </ol> <div> <div> <p>[MAIN ADJ] =  <math>((A + C) / 2 + B) / 2</math></p> <p>[SUB LEAD ADJ] =  <math>((D + F) / 2 + E) / 2</math></p> <p>[SUB TAIL ADJ] = G</p> </div> <p>Original for adjustment (P/N: 302FZ56990)</p> </div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-30</b></p>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U425	<p><b>Setting: [DP]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Measure the distance from the leading edge to the black belt (inside) of the original at A.</li> <li>2. Enter the measured value using the +/- keys in [LEAD].</li> <li>3. Measure the distance from the left edge to the black belt (inside) of the original at B.</li> <li>4. Enter the measured value using the +/- keys in [MAIN SCAN].</li> <li>5. Measure the distance from the black belt of leading edge (inside) to the black belt of trailing edge (inside) of the original at C.</li> <li>6. Enter the measured value using the +/- keys in [SUB SCAN].</li> <li>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <div> </div> <p>Original for adjustment (P/N: 302AC68243)</p> <p><b>Figure 1-3-31</b></p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																				
U470	<p><b>Setting the JPEG compression ratio</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the compression ratio for JPEG images in each image quality mode.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting in accordance with the image that the user is copying. For example, in order to soften the coarseness of the image when making copies at over 200% magnification, change the level of compression by raising the value. Lowering the value will increase the compression and thereby lower the image quality; Raising the value will increase image quality but lower the image processing speed.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>System</td><td>Compression ratio for temporary storage in system</td></tr><tr><td>Copy</td><td>Compression ratio for copying</td></tr><tr><td>Send</td><td>Compression ratio for sending</td></tr></table> <p><b>Setting: [System]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select the item to be set.</li><li>2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Y</td><td>Brightness</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>90</td></tr><tr><td>C</td><td>Color differential</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>90</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Setting: [Copy]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select the item to be set.</li><li>2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Text Y</td><td>Brightness in the text mode</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>90</td></tr><tr><td>Text C</td><td>Color differential in the text mode</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>90</td></tr><tr><td>Photo Y</td><td>Brightness in the photo mode</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>90</td></tr><tr><td>Photo C</td><td>Color differential in the photo mode</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>90</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Setting: [Send]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Select [Text], [Photo] or [HC-PDF].</li><li>2. Select the item to be set.</li><li>3. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Text Y (1) to (5)</td><td>Brightness in the text mode</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>30/40/51/70/90</td></tr><tr><td>Text C (1) to (5)</td><td>Color differential in the text mode</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>30/40/51/70/90</td></tr><tr><td>Photo Y (1) to (5)</td><td>Brightness in the photo mode</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>30/40/51/70/90</td></tr><tr><td>Photo C (1) to (5)</td><td>Color differential in the photo mode</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>30/40/51/70/90</td></tr><tr><td>HC-PDF Y (1) to (3)</td><td>Brightness of high compression PDF</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>15/25/60</td></tr><tr><td>HC-PDF C (1) to (3)</td><td>Color differential of high compression PDF</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>15/25/60</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol>	Display	Description	System	Compression ratio for temporary storage in system	Copy	Compression ratio for copying	Send	Compression ratio for sending	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Y	Brightness	1 to 100	90	C	Color differential	1 to 100	90	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Text Y	Brightness in the text mode	1 to 100	90	Text C	Color differential in the text mode	1 to 100	90	Photo Y	Brightness in the photo mode	1 to 100	90	Photo C	Color differential in the photo mode	1 to 100	90	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Text Y (1) to (5)	Brightness in the text mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90	Text C (1) to (5)	Color differential in the text mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90	Photo Y (1) to (5)	Brightness in the photo mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90	Photo C (1) to (5)	Color differential in the photo mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90	HC-PDF Y (1) to (3)	Brightness of high compression PDF	1 to 100	15/25/60	HC-PDF C (1) to (3)	Color differential of high compression PDF	1 to 100	15/25/60
Display	Description																																																																				
System	Compression ratio for temporary storage in system																																																																				
Copy	Compression ratio for copying																																																																				
Send	Compression ratio for sending																																																																				
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																																		
Y	Brightness	1 to 100	90																																																																		
C	Color differential	1 to 100	90																																																																		
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																																		
Text Y	Brightness in the text mode	1 to 100	90																																																																		
Text C	Color differential in the text mode	1 to 100	90																																																																		
Photo Y	Brightness in the photo mode	1 to 100	90																																																																		
Photo C	Color differential in the photo mode	1 to 100	90																																																																		
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																																		
Text Y (1) to (5)	Brightness in the text mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90																																																																		
Text C (1) to (5)	Color differential in the text mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90																																																																		
Photo Y (1) to (5)	Brightness in the photo mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90																																																																		
Photo C (1) to (5)	Color differential in the photo mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90																																																																		
HC-PDF Y (1) to (3)	Brightness of high compression PDF	1 to 100	15/25/60																																																																		
HC-PDF C (1) to (3)	Color differential of high compression PDF	1 to 100	15/25/60																																																																		

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U470	<p><b>Supplement</b></p> <p>While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p><b>Completion</b></p> <p>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>														
U473	<p><b>Adjusting laser power output</b></p> <p><b>Description</b></p> <p>Adjusts the laser output power</p> <p><b>Purpose</b></p> <p>Performed when the quality of dots, lines or low density has dropped.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select [Set Density (EmitTime/Dot)].</li><li>3. Select the item.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>0 (100%)</td><td>LSU laser output (100%)</td></tr><tr><td>1 (90%)</td><td>LSU laser output (90%)</td></tr><tr><td>2 (80%)</td><td>LSU laser output (80%)</td></tr><tr><td>3 (70%)</td><td>LSU laser output (70%)</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>4. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b></p> <p>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	0 (100%)	LSU laser output (100%)	1 (90%)	LSU laser output (90%)	2 (80%)	LSU laser output (80%)	3 (70%)	LSU laser output (70%)				
Display	Description														
0 (100%)	LSU laser output (100%)														
1 (90%)	LSU laser output (90%)														
2 (80%)	LSU laser output (80%)														
3 (70%)	LSU laser output (70%)														
U485	<p><b>Setting the image processing mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b></p> <p>Sets the detection level for scanning printed matter outputted with the confidential document guard function. Also, sets the process PDF images are rotated.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b></p> <p>To change the detection level when the confidential document guard is not printed well for detection in scanning. Also, changes the process of how PDF images are rotated.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Conf. Doc. Detection</td><td>Confidential document guard detection level</td></tr><tr><td>PDF Rotate</td><td>Processing the rotation of PDF images</td></tr></table> <p><b>Setting: [Conf. Doc. Detection]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Change the setting value using +/- or numeric keys.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Conf. Doc. Detection</td><td>Confidential document guard detection level</td><td>1 to 5</td><td>1</td></tr></table> <p>A smaller value raises the detection sensitivity but increases the possibility of false detection. A larger value lowers the detection sensitivity but decreases the possibility of false detection.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li></ol>	Display	Description	Conf. Doc. Detection	Confidential document guard detection level	PDF Rotate	Processing the rotation of PDF images	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Conf. Doc. Detection	Confidential document guard detection level	1 to 5	1
Display	Description														
Conf. Doc. Detection	Confidential document guard detection level														
PDF Rotate	Processing the rotation of PDF images														
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting												
Conf. Doc. Detection	Confidential document guard detection level	1 to 5	1												

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U485	<p><b>Setting: [PDF Rotate]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change the setting value using +/- or numeric keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Assigns the image rotation with the internal parameter</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Assigns the image rotation with the actual image</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	0	Assigns the image rotation with the internal parameter	1	Assigns the image rotation with the actual image				
Display	Description										
0	Assigns the image rotation with the internal parameter										
1	Assigns the image rotation with the actual image										
U510	<p><b>Setting the enterprise mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether or not the application function is enabled.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select [MODE1].</li> <li>Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Application function is enabled</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Application function is disabled</td></tr> <tr> <td>INSTALL</td><td>Executing the install</td></tr> <tr> <td>UNINSTALL</td><td>Executing the uninstall</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method: [INSTALL]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insert the USB memory that contains the application into the USB memory slot on the machine.</li> <li>Turn the main power switch on.</li> <li>Enter the maintenance item.</li> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select [INSTALL].</li> <li>Press the start key. Installation of application is started.</li> <li>When normally completed, [Complete] is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Application function is enabled	OFF	Application function is disabled	INSTALL	Executing the install	UNINSTALL	Executing the uninstall
Display	Description										
ON	Application function is enabled										
OFF	Application function is disabled										
INSTALL	Executing the install										
UNINSTALL	Executing the uninstall										

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U901	<p><b>Checking/clearing copy counts by paper feed locations</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays or clears copy counts by paper feed locations.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the time to replace consumable parts. Also to clear the counts after replacing the consumable parts.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <p>1. Press the start key. The counts by paper feed locations are displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MP TRAY</td><td>MP tray</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 1</td><td>Cassette 1</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 2</td><td>Cassette 2</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 3</td><td>Cassette 3 (optional paper feeder)</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 4</td><td>Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)</td></tr><tr><td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex unit</td></tr><tr><td>LCF</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder</td></tr></table> <p>When an optional paper feed device is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.</p> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <p>1. Select the counts to be cleared. CASSETTE 3, CASSETTE 4 and LCF cannot be cleared.</p> <p>2. Select the counts for all and press [ALL CLEAR].</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The counts is cleared.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MP TRAY	MP tray	CASSETTE 1	Cassette 1	CASSETTE 2	Cassette 2	CASSETTE 3	Cassette 3 (optional paper feeder)	CASSETTE 4	Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)	DUPLEX	Duplex unit	LCF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder
Display	Description																
MP TRAY	MP tray																
CASSETTE 1	Cassette 1																
CASSETTE 2	Cassette 2																
CASSETTE 3	Cassette 3 (optional paper feeder)																
CASSETTE 4	Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)																
DUPLEX	Duplex unit																
LCF	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder																
U902	<p><b>Checking/clearing the punch-hole scrap counter</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the punch limit and displays and clears the punch-hole scrap count when 3000-sheet document finisher is installed.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Sets the punch limit to notify the user of the time to collect punch-hole scrap. Also, used to manually clear the punch-hole scrap count if a message requiring collection of punch-hole scrap is shown on the touch panel after collection. If punch-hole scrap is collected with the machine power turned off, the punch-hole scrap count is not cleared and consequently this problem occurs.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <p>1. Press the start key.</p> <p>2. Select the item.</p> <p>3. Change the value using the numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>PUNCH LIMIT (*1000)</td><td>Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)</td><td>0 to 9999000</td></tr><tr><td>PUNCH WASTE COUNT</td><td>Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)</td><td>0 to 9999999</td></tr></table> <p>The punch limit can be set in increments of 1000.</p> <p>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <p>1. Enter 0 using the numeric keys.</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	PUNCH LIMIT (*1000)	Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)	0 to 9999000	PUNCH WASTE COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 9999999							
Display	Description	Setting range															
PUNCH LIMIT (*1000)	Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)	0 to 9999000															
PUNCH WASTE COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 9999999															

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U903	<p><b>Checking/clearing the paper jam counts</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays or clears the jam counts by jam locations.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the paper jam status. Also to clear the jam counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Count</td><td>Displays/clears the jam counts</td></tr> <tr> <td>Total Count</td><td>Displays the total jam counts</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: [Count]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Count]. The count of jam code by type is displayed. Codes for which the count value is 0 are not displayed.</li> <li>2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.</li> <li>3. Select the counts for all jam codes and press [ALL CLEAR]. The individual counter cannot be cleared.</li> <li>4. Press the start key. The count is cleared.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method: [Total Count]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Total Count]. The total number of jam code by type is displayed.</li> <li>2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. The total number of jam count cannot be cleared.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Count	Displays/clears the jam counts	Total Count	Displays the total jam counts
Display	Description						
Count	Displays/clears the jam counts						
Total Count	Displays the total jam counts						
U904	<p><b>Checking/clearing the service call counts</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays or clears the service call code counts by types.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the service call code status by types. Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Count</td><td>Displays/clears the call for service counts</td></tr> <tr> <td>Total Count</td><td>Displays the total call for service counts</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: [Count]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Count]. The count for service call detection by type is displayed. Codes for which the count value is 0 are not displayed.</li> <li>2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.</li> <li>3. Select the counts for all service call codes and press [ALL CLEAR]. The individual counter cannot be cleared.</li> <li>4. Press the start key. The count is cleared.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method: [Total Count]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Total Count]. The total number of service call counts by type is displayed.</li> <li>2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. The total number of service call count cannot be cleared.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Count	Displays/clears the call for service counts	Total Count	Displays the total call for service counts
Display	Description						
Count	Displays/clears the call for service counts						
Total Count	Displays the total call for service counts						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U905	<p><b>Checking/clearing counts by optional devices</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the counts of DP or finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the use of DP and finisher.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the device, the count of which is to be checked.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The count of the selected device is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DP</td><td>Counts of optional DP</td></tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td><td>Counts of optional document finisher, built-in finisher or 3000-sheet document finisher</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>DP</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADP</td><td>No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr> <tr> <td>RADP</td><td>No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr> <tr> <td>CONCURRENT</td><td>No. of dual scan originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Document finisher/Built-in finisher</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CP CNT</td><td>No. of copies that has passed</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE</td><td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>3000-sheet document finisher</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CP CNT</td><td>No. of copies that has passed</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE</td><td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH</td><td>Frequency the punch has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>STACK</td><td>Frequency the stacker has been activated</td></tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE</td><td>Frequency the center holding has been activated</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	DP	Counts of optional DP	FINISHER	Counts of optional document finisher, built-in finisher or 3000-sheet document finisher	Display	Description	ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP	RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP	CONCURRENT	No. of dual scan originals that has passed through the DP	Display	Description	CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed	STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated	Display	Description	CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed	STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated	PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated	STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated	SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated
Display	Description																																
DP	Counts of optional DP																																
FINISHER	Counts of optional document finisher, built-in finisher or 3000-sheet document finisher																																
Display	Description																																
ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP																																
RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP																																
CONCURRENT	No. of dual scan originals that has passed through the DP																																
Display	Description																																
CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed																																
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated																																
Display	Description																																
CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed																																
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated																																
PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated																																
STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated																																
SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated																																
U906	<p><b>Resetting partial operation control</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Resets the service call code for partial operation control.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be reset after partial operation is performed due to problems in the cassettes or other sections, and the related parts are serviced.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [Execute].</li> <li>3. Press the start key to reset partial operation control.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>																																

Maintenance item No.	Description
U908	<p><b>Checking the total counter value</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the total counter value.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the total counter value.</p> <p><b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. The screen for total count value is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U910	<p><b>Clearing the black ratio data</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Clears the accumulated black ratio data for A4 sheet.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To clear data as required at times such as during maintenance service.</p> <p><b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select [EXCUTE]. 3. Press the start key. The accumulated black ratio data is cleared.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U911	<p><b>Checking copy counts by paper sizes</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the paper feed counts by paper sizes.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p><b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. The screen for the paper feed counts by paper size is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																																				
U917	<p><b>Setting backup data reading/writing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Retrieves the backup data to a USB memory from the machine; or writes the data from the USB memory to the machine.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To store and write data when replacing the HDD.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the main power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.</li><li>2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.</li><li>3. Turn the main power switch on.</li><li>4. Enter the maintenance item.</li><li>5. Press the start key.</li><li>6. Select [Export] or [Import].</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Export</td><td>Retrieving from the machine to a USB memory</td></tr><tr><td>Import</td><td>Writing data from the USB memory to the machine</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>7. Select the item.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Depending data<sup>*1</sup></th></tr><tr><td>Address Book</td><td>Address book</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>Job Acct.</td><td>Job accounting</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>FAX Forward</td><td>FAX transfer information</td><td>Job accounting, user management and document box information</td></tr><tr><td>One Touch</td><td>Information on one-touch</td><td>Address book</td></tr><tr><td>User</td><td>User managements</td><td>Job accounting</td></tr><tr><td>Shortcut</td><td>Shortcut information</td><td>Job accountings, user managements and document box information</td></tr><tr><td>Document Box</td><td>Document box information</td><td>Job accountings and user managements</td></tr><tr><td>Program</td><td>Program information</td><td>Job accountings, user managements and document box information</td></tr><tr><td>ADDRESS BOOK ONE TOUCH<sup>*2</sup></td><td>Address book and Information on one-touch</td><td>Address book and Information on one-touch</td></tr></table> <p><sup>*1</sup>: Since data are dependent with each other, data other than those assigned are also retrieved or written in.</p> <p><sup>*2</sup>: When ADDRESS BOOK ONE TOUCH is selected, editing with the Set up tool is not possible, however, Import/Export in high speed mode is possible.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>8. Press the start key. Starts reading or writing. The progress of selected item is displayed in %. When an error occurs, the operation is canceled and an error code is displayed (see page 1-3-101).</li><li>9. When normally completed, [Finished] is displayed.</li><li>10. Turn the main power switch off and on after completing writing when selecting [Import].</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Export	Retrieving from the machine to a USB memory	Import	Writing data from the USB memory to the machine	Display	Description	Depending data <sup>*1</sup>	Address Book	Address book	-	Job Acct.	Job accounting	-	FAX Forward	FAX transfer information	Job accounting, user management and document box information	One Touch	Information on one-touch	Address book	User	User managements	Job accounting	Shortcut	Shortcut information	Job accountings, user managements and document box information	Document Box	Document box information	Job accountings and user managements	Program	Program information	Job accountings, user managements and document box information	ADDRESS BOOK ONE TOUCH <sup>*2</sup>	Address book and Information on one-touch	Address book and Information on one-touch
Display	Description																																				
Export	Retrieving from the machine to a USB memory																																				
Import	Writing data from the USB memory to the machine																																				
Display	Description	Depending data <sup>*1</sup>																																			
Address Book	Address book	-																																			
Job Acct.	Job accounting	-																																			
FAX Forward	FAX transfer information	Job accounting, user management and document box information																																			
One Touch	Information on one-touch	Address book																																			
User	User managements	Job accounting																																			
Shortcut	Shortcut information	Job accountings, user managements and document box information																																			
Document Box	Document box information	Job accountings and user managements																																			
Program	Program information	Job accountings, user managements and document box information																																			
ADDRESS BOOK ONE TOUCH <sup>*2</sup>	Address book and Information on one-touch	Address book and Information on one-touch																																			

ONER

tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description			
U917	<b>Error Codes</b>			
	<b>Codes</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Codes</b>	<b>Description</b>
	321e0001	Parameter error	321e002f	Box open error
	321e0002	File write error	321e0030	Box close error
	321e0003	File initialization error	321e0031	Box creation error
	321e0004	File error	321e0032	Box creation error
	321e0005	Processing error	321e0033	Box deletion error
	321e0006	Address book clear error (contact)	321e0034	Box movement error
	321e0007	Address book open error (contact)	321e0035	Fax memory directory creation error
	321e0008	Address book list error (contact)	321e0036	Fax memory error in writing
	321e0009	Address book list error (contact)	321e0037	Fax memory error in reading
	321e000a	Address book clear error (group)	321e0038	Shortcut error in writing
	321e000b	Address book open error (group)	321e0039	Shortcut error in reading
	321e000c	Address book list error (group)	321e003a	Program error in writing
	321e000d	Address book list error (group)	321e003b	Program error in reading
	321e000e	One-touch open error	321e003c	Address/One Touch directory creation error
	321e000f	One-touch list error	321e003d	Address/One Touch error in writing
	321e0010	One-touch list error	321e003e	Address/One Touch error in reading
	321e0011	Job accounting clear error	321e003f	File reading error
	321e0012	Job accounting file open error	321e0040	File writing error
	321e0013	Job accounting file open error	321e0041	Data mismatch
	321e0014	Job accounting error in writing	321e0042	Log file open error
	321e0015	Job accounting list error	321e0043	Log file error in writing
	321e0016	Job accounting list error	321e0044	Directory open error
	321e0017	User managements backup error	321e0045	Directory error in reading
	321e0018	User managements clear error	321d0000	Unspecified error
	321e0019	User managements file open error	321d0001	HDD unavailable
	321e001a	User managements file open error	321d0002	USB memory is not inserted
	321e001b	User managements file open error	321d0003	File for writing is not found in the USB
	321e001c	User managements error in writing	321d0004	File for reading is not found in the HDD
	321e001d	User managements list error	321d0005	USB error in writing
	321e001e	User managements list error	321d0006	USB error in reading
	321e001f	User managements list error	321d0007	USB unmount error
	321e0020	User managements list error	321d0008	File rename error
	321e0021	User managements file open error	321d0009	File open error
	321e0022	User managements error	321d000a	File close error
	321e0023	User managements error	321d000b	File reading error
	321e0024	User managements file open error	321d000c	File writing error
	321e0025	User managements error	321d000d	File copy error
	321e0026	User managements file open error	321d000e	File compressed error
	321e0027	User managements error	321d000f	File decompressed error
	321e0028	Box file open error	321d0010	Directory open error
	321e0029	Box error in writing	321d0011	Directory creation error
	321e002a	Box error in reading	321d0012	File writing error
	321e002b	Box list error	321d0013	File reading error
	321e002c	Box list error	321d0014	File deletion error
	321e002d	Box error	321d0015	Log file copy error to the USB
	321e002e	Box error		

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U920	<p><b>Checking the copy counts</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Checks the copy counts.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the copy counts.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The current counts are displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Copy Count</td><td>Count value of copy</td></tr> <tr> <td>Printer Count</td><td>Count value of printer</td></tr> <tr> <td>Fax Count</td><td>Count value of fax</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Copy Count	Count value of copy	Printer Count	Count value of printer	Fax Count	Count value of fax
Display	Description								
Copy Count	Count value of copy								
Printer Count	Count value of printer								
Fax Count	Count value of fax								
U927	<p><b>Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Resets all of the counts back to zero.</p> <p><b>Supplement</b> The total account counter and the machine life counter can be cleared only once if all count values are 1000 or less.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. All copy counts and machine life counts are cleared. [CAN NOT EXECUTE] is displayed if the count cannot be cleared.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
U928	<p><b>Checking machine life counts</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the machine life counts.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the machine life counts.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The current machine life counts is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U931	<p><b>Setting the automatic toner install</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets automatic toner installation on or off when power is turned on.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Changed to off when deactivating automatic toner installation.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Automatic toner install function ON</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Automatic toner install function OFF</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>4. The machine automatically returns to the same status as when the power is turned on.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	ON	Automatic toner install function ON	OFF	Automatic toner install function OFF
Display	Description						
ON	Automatic toner install function ON						
OFF	Automatic toner install function OFF						
U935	<p><b>Relay board maintenance</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the mode when call for service (C0060) occurs.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Sets the machine status temporarily when call for service (C0060) occurs. However, after the setting, call for service (C0060) occurs again when progress of period.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MODE0</td><td>Setting mode: OFF</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE1</td><td>Setting mode: ON (Usable up to three times of use)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: MODE0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> After removing the cause of the problem, be sure to change the setting in OFF.</p>	Display	Description	MODE0	Setting mode: OFF	MODE1	Setting mode: ON (Usable up to three times of use)
Display	Description						
MODE0	Setting mode: OFF						
MODE1	Setting mode: ON (Usable up to three times of use)						

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U942	<p><b>Setting of deflection for feeding from DP</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the deflection generated when the DP is used.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Use this mode if an original non-feed jam, oblique feed or wrinkling of original occurs when the DP is used.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</li></ol> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting</th><th>Initial</th><th>Change in</th></tr><tr><td>REGIST TOP</td><td>Deflection of single-sided original</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.18 mm</td></tr><tr><td>REGIST BACK</td><td>Deflection of double-sided original</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.18 mm</td></tr><tr><td>REGIST MIX</td><td>Deflection of dual scanning</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.18 mm</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>3. Press the system menu key.</li><li>4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</li><li>5. Press the system menu key.</li><li>6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection. If an original non-feed jam or oblique feed occurs, increase the setting value. If wrinkling of original occurs, decrease the value.</li><li>7. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting	Initial	Change in	REGIST TOP	Deflection of single-sided original	-31 to 31	0	0.18 mm	REGIST BACK	Deflection of double-sided original	-31 to 31	0	0.18 mm	REGIST MIX	Deflection of dual scanning	-31 to 31	0	0.18 mm
Display	Description	Setting	Initial	Change in																	
REGIST TOP	Deflection of single-sided original	-31 to 31	0	0.18 mm																	
REGIST BACK	Deflection of double-sided original	-31 to 31	0	0.18 mm																	
REGIST MIX	Deflection of dual scanning	-31 to 31	0	0.18 mm																	
U964	<p><b>Checking of log</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sends a log file saved on the HDD to a USB memory.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To transfer a log file saved on the HDD to a USB memory as a means of investigating malfunctions.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.</li><li>2. Turn the main power switch on.</li><li>3. Enter the maintenance item.</li><li>4. Press the start key.</li><li>5. Select [Execute].</li><li>6. Press the start key. Starts sending the log file saved on the HDD to the USB memory.</li><li>7. When normally completed, [Finished] is displayed. When an error occurs, an error code is displayed.</li><li>8. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li></ol> <p><b>Error codes</b></p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>No Usb Storage</td><td>USB memory is not inserted</td></tr><tr><td>No File</td><td>File is not found</td></tr><tr><td>Mount Error</td><td>USB memory mount error</td></tr><tr><td>File Delete Error</td><td>File deletion error</td></tr><tr><td>Copy Error</td><td>File copy error</td></tr><tr><td>Unmount Error</td><td>USB memory unmount error</td></tr><tr><td>Other Error</td><td>Other error</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	No Usb Storage	USB memory is not inserted	No File	File is not found	Mount Error	USB memory mount error	File Delete Error	File deletion error	Copy Error	File copy error	Unmount Error	USB memory unmount error	Other Error	Other error				
Display	Description																				
No Usb Storage	USB memory is not inserted																				
No File	File is not found																				
Mount Error	USB memory mount error																				
File Delete Error	File deletion error																				
Copy Error	File copy error																				
Unmount Error	USB memory unmount error																				
Other Error	Other error																				

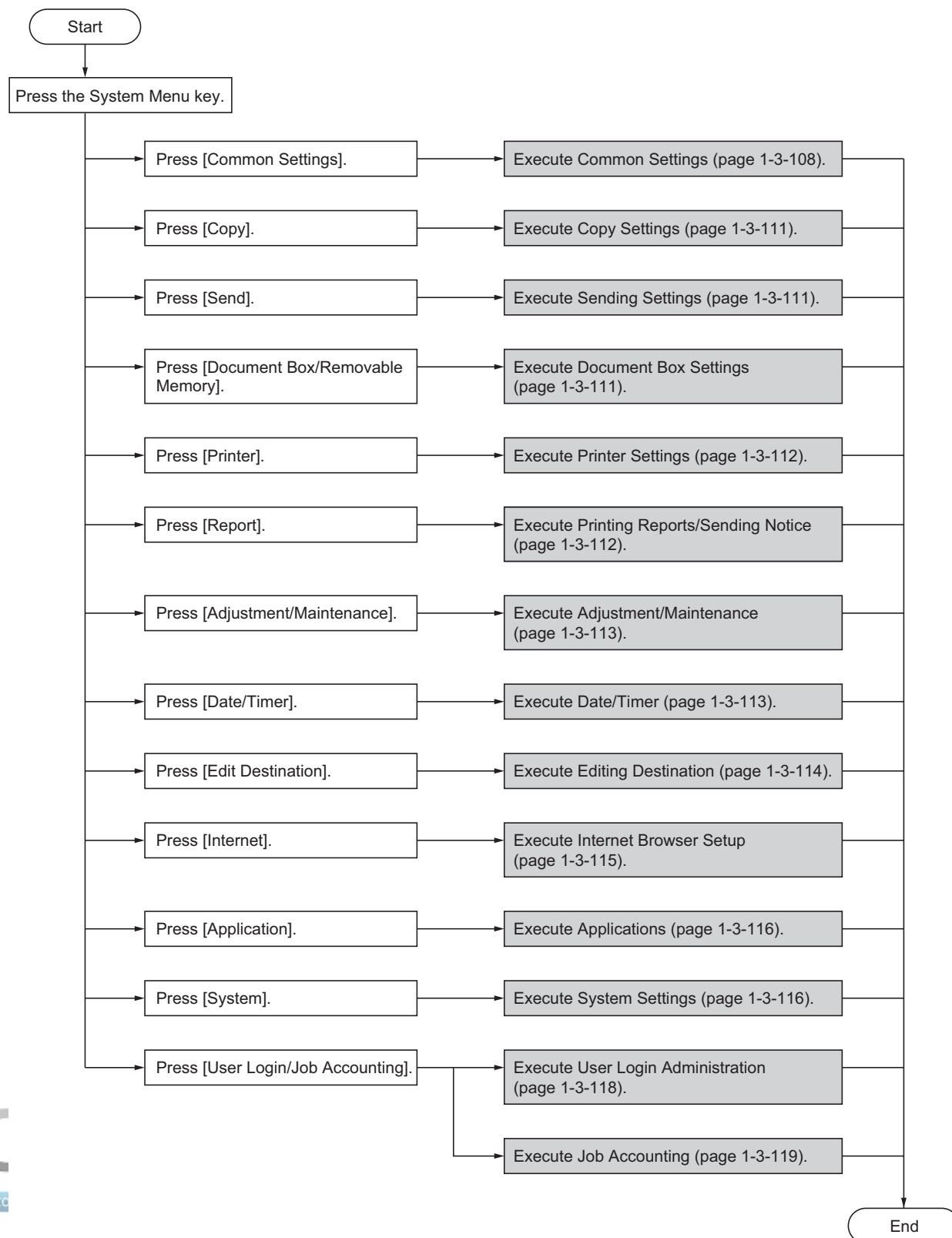
Maintenance item No.	Description						
<b>U969</b>	<p><b>Checking of toner area code</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the toner area code.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the toner area code.</p> <p><b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. The toner area code is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
<b>U977</b>	<p><b>Data capture mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Store the print data sent to the machine into USB memory.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> In case to occur the error at printing, check the print data sent to the machine.</p> <p><b>Method</b> 1. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot. 2. Turn the main power switch on. 3. Enter the maintenance item. 4. Press the start key. 5. Select [Execute]. 6. Press the start key. 7. Send the print data to the machine. Once the print data is stored into USB memory, [Complete] will be displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
<b>U984</b>	<p><b>Checking the developing unit number</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the developing unit number.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the developing unit number.</p> <p><b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. The number is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
<b>U985</b>	<p><b>Displaying the developing unit history</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the past record of machine number and the developing counter.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the count value machine number and the developing counter.</p> <p><b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. Past record of 5 cases is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MACHINE No. HISTORY1 to 5</td><td>Historical records of the machine number</td></tr> <tr> <td>DEVELOP COUNT HISTORY1 to 5</td><td>Historical records of developing counter</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MACHINE No. HISTORY1 to 5	Historical records of the machine number	DEVELOP COUNT HISTORY1 to 5	Historical records of developing counter
Display	Description						
MACHINE No. HISTORY1 to 5	Historical records of the machine number						
DEVELOP COUNT HISTORY1 to 5	Historical records of developing counter						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U989	<p><b>HDD scandisk</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Restores data in the hard disk by scanning the disk.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> If power is turned off while accessing to the hard disk is performed, the control information in the hard disk drive may be damaged. Use this mode to restore the data.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. When scanning of the disk is complete, the execution result is displayed.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>								
U990	<p><b>Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays, clears or changes the accumulated time for the CIS to light.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check duration of use of the CIS. Also to clear the accumulated time for the CIS after replacement.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The accumulated time of illumination for the CIS is displayed in minutes.</li> <li>2. Clear the accumulated time using the +/- or numeric keys.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The time is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
U991	<p><b>Checking the scanner count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the scanner operation count.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the status of use of the scanner.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COPY SCAN COUNT</td><td>Scanner operation count for copying</td></tr> <tr> <td>FAX SCAN COUNT</td><td>Scanner operation count for fax</td></tr> <tr> <td>OTHER SCAN COUNT</td><td>Scanner operation count except for copying</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance No. item is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COPY SCAN COUNT	Scanner operation count for copying	FAX SCAN COUNT	Scanner operation count for fax	OTHER SCAN COUNT	Scanner operation count except for copying
Display	Description								
COPY SCAN COUNT	Scanner operation count for copying								
FAX SCAN COUNT	Scanner operation count for fax								
OTHER SCAN COUNT	Scanner operation count except for copying								

## 1-3-2 Management mode

In addition to a maintenance function for service, the machine is equipped with a management function which can be operated by users (mainly by the administrator). In this management mode, settings such as default settings can be changed.

### (1) Using the management mode



## (2) Common Settings

### Switching the Language for Display [Language]

1. Press [Change] of Language.
2. Press the key for the language you want to use.
3. Press [OK].  
The touch panel language will be changed.

### Default Screen

1. Press [Change] of Default Screen.
2. Select the screen to be displayed as the default screen.
3. Press [OK].

### Sound

1. Press [Next] of Sound and then [Next] of Buzzer.
2. Press [Change] of Volume, Key Confirmation, Job Finish, Ready, or Warning.
3. Select the buzzer volume level, or other sound options.

### Original/Paper Settings

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Next] of Custom Original Size.
2. Press [Change] of any one of Custom 1 to Custom 4, on which you wish to register the size.
3. Press [On], and then press [+], [-] or numeric keys to enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions.
4. Press [OK].

### Adding a Custom Size and Media Type for Paper to Print

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Next] of Custom Paper Size.
2. Press [Change] of any one of Custom 1 to Custom 4, on which you want to register the size.
3. Press [On], and then press [+], [-] or numeric keys to enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions. Press [Media Type] to select the type of paper and press [OK] if necessary.
4. Press [OK].

### Paper Size and Media Type Setup for Cassettes

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings, [Next] of Cassette Setting, [Next] of Cassette 1 to Cassette 4, on which you want to register the size, and then [Change] of Paper Size.
2. To detect paper size automatically, press [Auto] and select Metric or Inch for Paper Size. To select paper size, press [Standard Sizes 1] or [Standard Sizes 2] for Paper Size.
3. Press [OK]. The previous screen reappears.
4. Press [Change] of Media Type to select media type and press [OK].

### Paper Size and Media Type Setup for Multi Purpose Tray

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings, [Next] of MP Tray Setting and then [Change] of Paper Size.
2. To detect paper size automatically, press [Auto] and select Metric or Inch for Paper Size. To select paper size, press [Standard Sizes 1], [Standard Sizes 2], [Others] or [Size Entry] for Paper Size. If you select [Size Entry], press [+], [-] to enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions. Press [# keys] to enter the paper size using the numeric keys.
3. Press [OK]. The previous screen reappears.
4. Press [Change] of Media Type to select the media type and press [OK].

### Paper Weight

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Next] of Media Type Setting.
2. Press [Next] for the media type whose weight you want to change.
3. Press [Change] of Paper Weight.
4. Select the weight and press [OK].
5. Press [Close]. The previous screen reappears.
6. To change the duplex printing settings for Custom 1 (-8), press [Next] of Custom 1(-8) and then [Change] of Duplex. Select [Prohibit] or [Permit] and press [OK]. The previous screen reappears.
7. Press [Close].
8. To change the name for Custom 1(-8), press [Next] of Custom 1(-8) and then [Change] of Name. Enter the name and press [OK].

### Default Paper Source

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Change] of Default Paper Source.
2. Select a paper cassette for the default setting.
3. Press [OK].

### Automatic Detection of Originals (Available for metric models only)

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Change] of Original Auto Detect.
2. Select [A6] or [Hagaki] of A6/Hagaki. Select [Off] to disable automatic detection or [On] to enable automatic detection of Folio and 11x15" respectively.
3. Press [OK].

### Media for Auto Selection

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Change] of Media for Auto (B & W).
2. Select [All Media Types] or any media type for paper selection.
3. Press [OK].

**Paper Source for Cover Paper**

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings, cursor down key and then [Change] of Paper Source for Cover.
2. Select the paper source to load cover paper.
3. Press [OK].

**Special Paper Action**

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings, cursor down key and then [Change] of Special Paper Action.
2. Select [Adjust Print Direction] or [Speed Priority].
3. Press [OK].

**Switching Unit of Measurement**

1. Press [Change] of Measurement.
2. Select [mm] for metric or [inch] for inch.
3. Press [OK].

**Error Handling**

1. Press [Next] of Error Handling.
2. Press [Change] at the error you wish to change the handling.
3. Select the error handling method in the selection screen for each of the errors and then press [OK].
4. The previous screen appears. To set the handling for a different error, repeat steps 2 and 3.

**Paper Output**

1. Press [Next] of Paper Output.
2. Press [Change] of Copy/Custom Box, Printer, FAX Port 1 or FAX Port 2.
3. Select Output Tray.  
For [Finisher Tray], [Tray B], [Tray C] or [Tray 1] to [Tray 7], select [Face Up] (print surface up) or [Face Down] (print surface down) as the paper orientation at output.
4. Press [OK].

**Orientation Confirmation**

1. Press [Change] of Orientation Confirmation.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

**Function Defaults**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Original Orientation.
2. Select [Top Edge Top] or [Top Edge Left] for the default.
3. Press [OK].

**Continuous Scan**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Continuous Scan.
2. Select [Off] or [On] for the default. Use the procedure below to select the default quality setting for originals.
3. Press [OK].

**Original Image**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Original Image.
2. Select the [Text+Photo], [Photo], [Text], [for OCR] or [Printed Document] as the default.
3. Press [OK].

**Scan Resolution**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Scan Resolution.
2. Select the default resolution.
3. Press [OK].

**Color Selection (Copy)**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of mode Color Selection(Copy).
2. Select the default color setting.
3. Press [OK].

**Color Selection (Send/Store)**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of mode Color Sel. (Send/Store).
2. Select the default color mode.
3. Press [OK].

**File Format**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of File Format.
2. Select the default file format.
3. Press [OK].

**File Separation**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of File Separation.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [Each Page].
3. Press [OK].

**Density**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Density.
2. Select the default density.
3. Press [OK].

**Zoom**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Zoom.
2. Select the default zoom setting.
3. Press [OK].

**File Name Entry**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of File Name Entry.
2. Press [File Name] to enter the file name in not more than 32 characters.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Date and Time] to add the date/time to the job, or press [Job No.] to add the job number to the job. The added information will be displayed in Additional Info.
5. Press [OK].

**E-mail Subject/Body**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key, and then [Change] of E-mail Subject/Body.
2. Press [Subject] to enter an E-mail subject not more than 60 characters.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Body] to enter an E-mail Body not more than 500 characters.
5. Press [OK].
6. Check that the entries are correct and press [OK].

**Border Erase Default**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Border Erase Default.
2. Press [+] or [-] for the Border and Gutter width to erase.  
You can use the number keypad to enter the number directly.
3. Press [OK].

**Border Erase to Back Page**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Border Erase to Back Page.
2. Press [Same as Front Page] or [Do Not Erase].
3. Press [OK].

**Margin Default**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Margin Default.
2. Use the [+] or [-] to enter the margin widths for Left/Right and Top/Bottom(-0.75 - +0.75).  
You can use the number keypad to enter the number directly.
3. Press [OK].

**Auto Image Rotation**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Auto Image Rotation.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

**EcoPrint**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key twice, and then [Change] of Eco-Print.
2. Select [Off] or [On] for the default.
3. Press [OK].

**PDF/TIFF/JPEG Image**

1. Press cursor down key and [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and then [Change] of PDF/TIFF/JPEG Image.
2. Select the default image quality from [1] (Low Quality) to [5] (High Quality).
3. Press [OK].

**High Comp. PDF Image**

1. Press cursor down key and [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and [Change] of High Comp. PDF Image.
2. Select the default for [Compression Ratio Priority], [Standard], or [Quality Priority].
3. Press [OK].

**Color TIFF Compression Settings**

1. Press cursor down key and [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and then [Change] of Color TIFF Compression.
2. Select [TIFF V6] or [TTN2].
3. Press [OK].

**Repeat Copying**

1. Press cursor down key and [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and [Change] of Repeat Copy.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

**Collate/Offset**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key twice and then [Change] of Collate/Offset.
2. Select the defaults for Collate and Offset respectively.
3. Press [OK].

**JPEG/TIFF Print**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key twice and then [Change] of JPEG/TIFF Print.
2. Select the default for [Fit to Paper Size], [Image Resolution], or [Fit to Print Resolution].
3. Press [OK].

**XPS Fit to Page**

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key twice and then [Change] of XPS Fit to Page.
2. Select [Off] or [On] for the default.
3. Press [OK].

**(3) Copy Settings****Paper Selection**

1. Press [Change] of Paper Selection.
2. Press [Auto] or [Default Paper Source].
3. Press [OK].

**Auto Paper Selection**

1. Press [Change] of Auto Paper Selection.
2. Press [Most Suitable Size] or [Same as Original Size].
3. Press [OK].

**Auto % Priority**

1. Press [Change] of Auto % Priority.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

**Reserve Next Priority**

1. Press [Change] of Reserve Next Priority.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

**Preset Limit**

1. Press [Change] of Preset Limit.
2. Press [+] or [-] or use the numeric keys to enter the limit for the number of copies.
3. Press [OK].

**Quick Setup Registration**

1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
3. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup Registration screen. Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
4. Press [OK]. If you overwrite the setting, a confirmation screen appears. Press [Yes].

**(4) Sending Settings****Quick Setup Registration**

1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
3. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup Registration screen. Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
4. Press [OK]. If you overwrite the setting, a confirmation screen appears. Press [Yes].

**Destination Check before Send**

1. Press [Change] of Dest. Check before Send.
2. Select [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

**Color Type**

1. Press [Change] of Color Type.
2. Select [RGB] or [sRGB].
3. Press [OK].

**Entry Check for New Destination**

1. Press [Change] of Entry Check for New Dest.
2. Select [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

**Setting the Default Send Screen**

1. Press [Change] of Default Screen.
2. Press [Destination] or [Address Book].
3. Press [OK].

**(5) Document Box Settings****Quick Setup Registration**

1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Next] of Store File or Send.
3. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
4. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup screen. Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
5. Press [OK]. If you overwrite the setting, a confirmation screen appears. Press [Yes].

## (6) Printer Settings

### Emulation

1. Press [Change] of Emulation.
2. Select the desired emulation.
3. Press [OK].

### Setting of Alternative Emulation

1. Press [Change] of Emulation, [KPD(L)Auto]] and then [Alt Emulation].
2. Select the desired alternative emulation and then press [OK].
3. Press [OK].

### Setting of KPD(L) error report

1. Press [Change] of Emulation, [KPD(L)] or [KPD(L)Auto]] and then [KPD(L) Error Report].
2. Press [On] or [Off] and then press [OK].
3. Press [OK].

### EcoPrint

1. Press [Change] of EcoPrint.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

### Override A4/Letter

1. Press [Change] of Override A4/Letter.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

### Duplex

1. Press [Change] of Duplex.
2. Press [1-sided], [2-sided Bind LongEdge], or [2-sided Bind ShortEdge].
3. Press [OK].

### Copies

1. Press [Change] of Copies.
2. Press [+], [-] or the numeric keys to set the default number of copies.
3. Press [OK].

### Orientation

1. Press [Change] of Orientation.
2. Press [Portrait] or [Landscape].
3. Press [OK].

### Form Feed Timeout

1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of Form Feed Timeout.
2. Press [+] or [-] to set the Form Feed Timeout. You can set the timeout delay in seconds. You cannot use the number keypad to enter this value.
3. Press [OK].

### LF Action

1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of LF Action.
2. Press [LF Only], [LF and CR] or [Ignore LF].
3. Press [OK].

### CR Action

1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of CR Action.
2. Press [CR Only], [LF and CR] or [Ignore CR].
3. Press [OK].

### Paper Feed Mode

1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of Paper Feed Mode.
2. Press [Auto] or [Fixed].
3. Press [OK].

## (7) Printing Reports/Sending Notice

### Printing Reports

1. Press [Next] of Print Report.
2. Press [Print] for the report you want to print. Printing starts.  
A confirmation screen appears. Press [Yes].

### Send Result Report

1. Press [Next] of Result Report Setting, [Next] of Send Result Report and then [Change] of E-mail/Folder.
2. Press [Off], [On], or [Error Only].
3. Press [OK].

## (8) Adjustment/Maintenance

### Copy Density Adjustment

1. Press [Next] of Copy Density Adjustment.
2. Press [Change] of Auto or of Manual.
3. Press [-3] - [+3] (Lighter-Darker) to adjust density.
4. Press [OK].

### Send/Box Density Adjust

1. Press and [Next] of Send/Box Density Adjust.
2. Press [Change] of Auto or of Manual.
3. Press [-3] - [+3] (Lighter-Darker) to adjust density.
4. Press [OK].

### Print Density

1. Press [Change] of Print Density.
2. Press [1] - [5] (Lighter-Darker) to adjust density.
3. Press [OK].

### Drum Refresh

1. Press [Next] of Drum Refresh.
2. Press [Execute] to Drum Refresh.
3. After Drum Refresh is completed, press [OK] to return to the Adjustment/Maintenance screen.

### Correcting Fine Black Lines

1. Press [Change] of Correcting Black Line.
2. Press [Off], [On(Low)] or [On(High)].
3. Press [OK].

### Display Brightness

1. Press [Change] of Display Brightness.
2. Press [1] - [4] (Darker- Lighter) to adjust brightness.
3. Press [OK].

### Silent Mode

1. Press [Change] of Silent Mode.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

### Charger Auto Cleaning

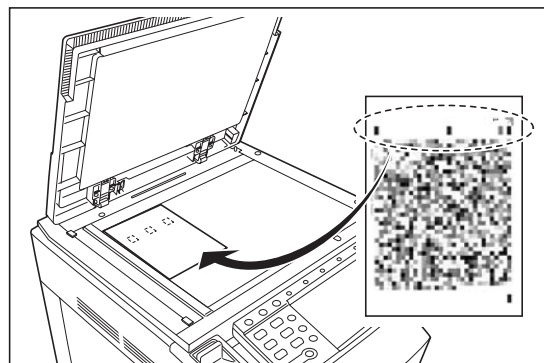
1. Press [Change] of Silent Mode.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

### Auto Color Correction

1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of Auto Color Correction.
2. Press one of keys [1] to [5] (Color - B & W) to set the detection level.
3. Press [OK].

## Gray Adjustment

1. Press cursor down key and then [Next] of Gray Adjustment.
2. Press [Execute]. A color pattern is printed.
3. As shown in the illustration, place the printed side down on the platen with the three black boxes aligned to the top.



4. Press [Execute]. The color pattern is read and adjustment begins.
5. Press [OK] in the adjustment end confirmation screen.

## System Initialization

1. Press [Execute] of System Initialization.
2. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
3. When the confirmation screen appears, press [Yes]. Initialization starts.
4. Once the initialization ends, the message Task is completed. Turn the main power switch off and on. appears. Turn the main power switch off.

## (9) Date/Timer

### Date/Time

1. Press [Change] of Date/Time.
2. Press [+] or [-] to enter the date and time respectively.
3. Press [OK].

### Date Format

1. Press [Change] of Date Format.
2. Select [MM/DD/YYYY], [DD/MM/YYYY], or [YYYY/MM/DD] and press [OK].

**Time Zone**

1. Press [Change] of Time Zone.
2. Select the location.
3. Press [Off] or [On] of Summer Time and press [OK].

**Auto Panel Reset**

1. Press [Change] of Auto Panel Reset.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

**Panel Reset Timer**

1. Press [Change] of Panel Reset Timer.
2. Press [+] or [-] to enter the time until Auto Panel Reset is turned on.  
You cannot use the number keypad to enter this value.
3. Press [OK].

**Sleep Timer**

1. Press [Change] of Sleep Timer.
2. Press [+], [-] or the numeric keys to enter the time until Auto Sleep is turned on.
3. Press [OK].

**Auto Error Clear ON/OFF**

1. Press [Change] of Auto Error Clear.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

**Error Clear Timer**

1. Press cursor down key and then [Change] of Error Clear Timer.
2. Press [+] or [-] to enter the time until printing restarts.  
You cannot use the number keypad to enter this value.
3. Press [OK].

**Interrupt Clear Timer**

1. Press cursor down key and then [Change] of Interrupt Clear Timer.
2. Press [+] or [-] to enter the time for the interrupt clear timer.
3. Press [OK].

**(10) Editing Destination (Address Book/Adding One Touch Keys)****Adding a Contact**

1. Press [Register/Edit] of Address Book, [Add], [Contact] and then [Next].
2. To specify the address number, press [Change] in Address Number.
3. Press [+], [-] or numeric keys to enter a particular Address Number (1-2500).  
To have the number assigned automatically, enter "0000".
4. Press [OK]. The screen shown in step 2 reappears.
5. Press [Change] of Name.
6. Enter the destination name (up to 32 characters) to be displayed on the Address Book and press [OK].  
The screen shown in step 2 reappears.
7. Press [E-mail] to add an e-mail address, [SMB] to add a folder on the computer, or [FTP] to add an FTP folder.  
The procedure differs depending on the transmission method selected.

**E-mail Address**

1. Press [Change] of E-mail Address, enter the E-mail address and press [OK].  
The table below explains the items to be entered.

**The Folder (FTP) Address**

1. Press [Change] of Host Name, Path, Login User Name and Login Password, enter the information for each item and press [OK].

**The Folder (SMB) Address**

1. Press [Change] of Host Name, Path, Login User Name and Login Password, enter the information for each item and press [OK].
8. Check if the destination entry is correct and press [Register]. The destination is added to the Address Book.

**Adding a Group**

1. Press [Register/Edit] of Address Book, [Add], [Group] and then [Next].
2. To specify the address number, press [Change] in Address Number.
3. Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to enter an address number (1 to 2500).  
To have the number assigned automatically, set "0000".
4. Press [OK]. The Add Group screen reappears.
5. Press [Change] of Name.
6. Enter the group name displayed on the Address Book not more than 32 characters.
7. Press [Member].
8. Press [Add].
9. Select a destination (contacts) to add to the group.
10. Press [OK].  
If you have more destinations to add, repeat Steps 8 to 10.
11. Check if the selected destination was added to the group and press [Register]. Now the group is added to the Address Book.

**Editing a Destination**

1. Press [Register/Edit] of Address Book.
2. Select a destination or group to edit.
3. Press [Detail].

The procedure differs depending on the details to be edited.

**Editing an Individual Destination**

1. Change Address Number, Name and destination type and address.
2. After you have completed the changes, press [Register].
3. Press [Yes] in the change confirmation screen to register the changed destination.

**Editing a Group**

1. Change Address Number and Name.
2. Press [Member].
3. To delete any destination from the group, select the destination and press [Delete].  
Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the deletion.
4. After you have completed the changes, press [Register].
5. Press [Yes] in the change confirmation screen to register the changed group.

**Deleting an Individual Destination or Group**

1. Press [Delete]. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the deletion. Deletion is performed.

**Adding a Destination on One Touch Key**

1. Press [Register/Edit] of One touch Key.
2. Select a One Touch Key number (0001 to 1000) for the destination. Pressing Quick No. Search key or [No.] enables direct entry of a One Touch Key number.  
Select a One Touch Key with no registered destination.
3. Press [Register/Edit]. The address book appears.
4. Select a destination (individual or group) to add to the One Touch Key number. Pressing [Detail] shows the detailed information of the selected destination.
5. Press [OK]. The destination will be added to the One Touch Key.

**Editing One Touch Key**

1. Press [Register/Edit] of One Touch Key.
2. Select a One Touch Key number (0001 to 1000) for the destination. Pressing Quick No. Search key or [No.] enables direct entry of a One Touch Key number.  
The procedure differs depending on the details to be edited.

**Changing the Registered Information**

1. Press [Register/Edit].
2. Select a new destination (individual or group).  
Pressing [Detail] shows the detailed information of the selected destination.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Yes] on the screen to add the destination to the One Touch Key.

**Deleting the Registered Information**

1. Press [Delete].
2. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the deletion of the data registered in the One Touch Key.

**Sort Settings**

1. Press [Next] of Address Book Defaults and then [Change] of Sort.
2. Select [No.] or [Name].
3. Press [OK].

**Narrow Down Settings**

1. Press [Next] of Address Book Defaults and then [Change] of Narrow Down.
2. Select the type of destination filter.
3. Press [OK].

**(11) Internet Browser Setup****Internet Browser Setting**

1. Press [Change] of Internet Browser.
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press [OK].

**Browser Preferences**

1. Press [Next] of Browser Environment.
2. To set your home page, press [Change] of Home Page, press [URL], enter the URL and then press [OK]. Press [OK] again.
3. To set the text size, press [Change] of Text Size, select [Large], [Medium] or [Small] as the text size and then press [OK].
4. To set the display mode, press [Change] of Display Mode, select [Normal], [Just-Fit Rendering] or [Smart-Fit Rendering] as the display mode and then press [OK].
5. To specify the settings for accepting cookies, press [Change] of Cookie, select [Accept All], [Reject All] or [Prompt before Accepting] as your cookie acceptance policy and then press [OK].

**Proxy Settings**

1. Press [Change] of Proxy and then press [On].  
**To set a proxy server (HTTP)**
  1. Press [Keyboard] of Proxy Server (HTTP), enter the proxy address and press [OK].
  2. Press [# Keys] and enter the port number.**To set a proxy server (HTTPS)**
  1. Press [Keyboard] of Proxy Server (HTTPS), enter the proxy address and press [OK].
  2. Press [# Keys] and enter the port number.**To set domains for which no proxy is used**
  1. Press [Keyboard] of Do Not Use Proxy for Following Domains, enter the domain name and press [OK].
  2. Press [OK].

**(12) Applications****Installing Applications**

1. Insert the USB memory containing the application to be installed into the USB memory slot (A1).
2. Press [Add].
3. Select the application to be installed and press [Install].  
You can view detailed information on the selected application by pressing [Detail].
4. When the confirmation screen appears, press [Yes].  
Installation of the application begins. Depending on the application being installed, the installation may take some time. Once the installation ends, the original screen reappears.
5. To install another application, repeat steps 3 to 4.
6. To remove the USB memory, press [Remove Memory] and wait until the Removable Memory can be safely removed message appears. Then remove the USB memory.

**Activating/Deactivating Application Use**

1. Select the desired application and press [Activate].  
You can view detailed information on the selected application by pressing [Detail].
2. Enter the license key and press [Official]. Some applications do not require you to enter an license key. If the license key entry screen does not appear, go to Step 3.  
To use the application as a trial, press [Trial] without entering the license key.
3. When the confirmation screen appears, press [Yes].

**Deleting Applications**

1. Select the application to be deleted and press [Delete].  
You can view detailed information on the selected application by pressing [Detail].
2. When the deletion confirmation screen appears, press [Yes]. The application is deleted.

**(13) System Settings****Restarting the System**

1. Press [Execute] of Restart.
2. When the confirmation screen appears, press [Yes]. The system is restarted.

**Network Setup****TCP/IP (IPv4) Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Next] of TCP/IP Setting.
2. Press [Change] of TCP/IP.
3. Press [On] and then press [OK].
4. Press [Change] of IPv4.
5. Press [DHCP].
6. Press [Off] of DHCP and then press [OK].
7. Press [Bonjour].
8. Press [Off] of Bonjour and then press [OK].
9. Press [IP Address] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
10. Press [Subnet Mask] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
11. Press [Default Gateway] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
12. Check if all the address entries are correct and press [OK].
13. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**TCP/IP (IPv6) Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Next] of TCP/IP Setting.
2. Press [Change] of TCP/IP.
3. Press [On] and then press [OK].
4. Press [Next] of IPv6.
5. Press [Change] of IPv6.
6. Press [On].
7. Press [OK].
8. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**Manual Setting (IPv6)**

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Next] of TCP/IP Setting.
2. Press [Next] of IPv6.
3. Press [Next] of Manual Setting.
4. Press [IP Address (Manual)] to enter IP address.
5. Press [OK].  
Press [# Keys] of Prefix Length (0 - 128) to enter the prefix length using the numeric keys.
6. Press [Default Gateway] to enter the default gateway.
7. Check that all the entries are correct and Press [OK].
8. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**RA (Stateless) Settings**

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Next] of TCP/IP Setting.
2. Press [Next] of IPv6.
3. Press [Change] of RA(Stateless).
4. Press [On] or [Off] of RA (Stateless).
5. Press [OK].
6. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**DHCP (IPv6) Settings**

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Next] of TCP/IP Setting.
2. Press [Next] of IPv6.
3. Press [Change] of DHCP.
4. Press [On] or [Off] of DHCP.
5. Press [OK].
6. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**NetWare Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of NetWare.
2. Press [On].
3. Press the key for the frame type you want to use.
4. Press [OK].
5. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**AppleTalk Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of AppleTalk.
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**WSD Scan Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of WSD Scan.
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**WSD Print Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of WSD Print.
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**SSL Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network, [Next] of Secure Protocol, and then [Next] of SSL.
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**IPP Security Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network, [Next] of Secure Protocol, and then [Change] of IPP Security.
2. Press [IPP over SSL Only] or [IPP or IPP over SSL].
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**HTTP Security Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network, [Next] of Secure Protocol, and then [Change] of HTTPS Security.
2. Press [HTTP or HTTPS] or [HTTPS Only].
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**LDAP Security Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network, [Next] of Secure Protocol, and then [Change] of LDAP Security.
2. Press [Off], [LDAP over SSL] or [LDAPv3/TLS].
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**IPSec Setting**

1. Press [Next] of Network, and then [Change] of IPSec.
2. Press [On].
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

**LAN Interface Setup**

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of LAN Interface.
2. Select [Auto], [10BASE-T Half], [10BASE-T Full], [100BASE-TX Half] or [100BASE-TX Full] as the LAN interface.
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

## Interface Block Setting

### USB Host (USB memory slot setting)

1. Press [Next] of Interface Block Setting and then [Change] of USB Host.
2. Press [Block].
3. Press [OK].

### USB Device (USB interface setting)

1. Press [Next] of Interface Block Setting and then [Change] of USB Device.
2. Press [Block].
3. Press [OK].

### Optional interface (Optional interface card setting)

1. Press [Next] of Interface Block Setting and then [Change] of Optional Interface 1 or Optional Interface 2.
2. Press [Block].
3. Press [OK].

### Document Guard Setting

1. Press and then [Change] of Document Guard.
2. Press [On].  
To scan documents, press [Off].
3. Press [OK].

## Optional Functions

### Starting Application Use

1. Press [Next] of Optional Function.
2. Select the desired application and press [Activate].  
You can view detailed information on the selected application by pressing [Detail].
3. In the license key entry screen, press [Official].  
Some applications do not require you to enter an license key. If the license key entry screen does not appear, go to Step 4.  
To use the application as a trial, press [Trial] without entering the license key.
4. When the confirmation screen appears, press [Yes].

### Checking Application Details

1. Press [Next] of Optional Function.
2. Select the application you want to check the details of and press [Detail].  
You can now view detailed information on the selected application.

## (14) User Login Administration

### Enabling/Disabling User Login Administration

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting and then [Change] of User Login.
3. Select [Local Authentication] or [Network Authentication]. Select [Off] to disable user login administration.  
If you select [Network Authentication], enter the host name (62 characters or less) and domain name (256 characters or less) for the Authentication Server. Select [NTLM] or [Kerberos] as the server type.
4. Press [OK].

### Adding a User

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting, [Register/Edit] of Local User List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of User Name.
4. Enter the user name and press [OK].
5. Enter the login user name and E-mail address following 3 and 4 above.
6. Press [Change] of Login Password and then [Password].
7. Enter the login password and press [OK].
8. Press [Confirm Password].
9. Enter the same login password to confirm and press [OK].
10. Press [OK].
11. Press [Change] of Access Level.
12. Select the user access privilege and press [OK].
13. Press [Change] of Account Name.
14. Select the account and press [OK].
15. Press [Register] to add a new user on the local user list.

### Changing User Properties

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting and [Register/Edit] of Local User List.
3. Select the user whose properties you wish to change.  
The procedure differs depending on the details to be edited.

#### Changing user information

1. Press [Detail].
2. Refer to steps 3 to 14 of Adding a User to change a user property.
3. Press [Register].
4. Press [Yes] in the registration confirmation screen. The user information is changed.

#### Deleting a user

1. Press [Delete].
2. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm deletion.  
The selected user will be deleted.

### Unknown login user name Job

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Change] of Unknown ID Job.
3. Press [Reject] or [Permit].
4. Press [OK].

### Group Authorization

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting, [Next] of Group Authorization Set., and then [Change] of Group Authorization.
3. Press [On].
4. Press [OK].

### Group List

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting, [Next] of Group Authorization Set., [Register/Edit] of Group List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of Group ID.
4. Enter the group ID and press [OK].
5. Press [Change] of Group Name.
6. Enter the group name and press [OK].
7. Press [Change] of Access Level.
8. Select the user access privilege and press [OK].
9. Press [Change] of Print Restriction.
10. Select [Reject Usage] or [Off] and press [OK].
11. Follow steps 9 and 10 above to set Copy Restriction, Send Restriction, FAX TX Restriction, Storing Restr. in Box, and Storing Restr. in Memory.
12. Press [Register] to add a new group on the group list.

### Obtain Network User Property

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting, [Change] of Obtain NW User Property.
3. Press [On].
4. Press [Server Name].
5. Enter the LDAP server name or the IP address and press [OK].
6. Press [# keys] to enter the LDAP port number using the numeric keys.
7. Press [Name 1].
8. Enter the LDAP Attribute to obtain the user name to be displayed and press [OK].
9. Follow steps 7 and 8 above to set Name 2.
10. Press [E-mail Address].
11. Enter the LDAP Attribute to obtain the e-mail address and press [OK].
12. Press [Search Timeout] to set the amount of time to wait before time-out.
13. Press [+], [-] or the numeric keys to enter the time.
14. Press [LDAP Security] to select the type of encryption according to the type of security employed by the LDAP server.
15. Select [Off], [LDAP over SSL], or [LDAPv3/TLS] and press [OK].

### (15) Job accounting

#### Enabling/Disabling Job Accounting

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, and then [Change] of Job Accounting.
3. Press [On]. To disable job accounting, press [Off].
4. Press [OK].

#### Adding an Account

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Register/Edit] of Accounting List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of Account Name.
4. Enter the account name and press [OK].  
The Account screen reappears.
5. Follow steps 3 and 4 above to enter the Account ID.
6. Activate or deactivate restriction.
7. Press [Register] to add a new account on the Account List.

**Managing Accounts**

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and then [Register/Edit] of Accounting List.
3. Select an account to change or delete.

**Changing account information**

1. Press [Detail].
2. Refer to steps 3 to 5 of Adding an Account and steps 3 to 6 of Restricting Using the Machine to change account information.
3. Press [Register].
4. Press [Yes] in the registration confirmation screen. The account information is changed.

**Deleting an account**

1. Press [Delete].
2. Press [Yes]. To delete the account.

**Managing the Copier/Printer Counts**

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting and then [Change] of Copier/Printer Count.
3. Press [Total] or [Split].
4. Press [OK].

**Applying Restriction**

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Register/Edit] of Accounting List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] for the item to be restricted.
4. Select the restriction mode.  
If [Counter Limit] is selected, press [+], [-] or numeric keys to select the number of pages.
5. Press [OK].
6. Repeat steps 3 to 5 for other accounts to be restricted.
7. Press [Register]. The restricted account is added.

**Applying Limit of Restriction**

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting and then [Change] of Apply Limit.
3. Select [Immediately], [Subsequently], or [Alert Only].
4. Press [OK].

2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting and then [Next] of Default Counter Limit.
3. Press [Change] for the item you want to modify and then press [+] or [-] or use the numeric keys to enter the default restriction on the number of sheets.
4. Press [OK].
5. To set another default restriction, repeat steps 3 to 4.

**Total Job Accounting/Resetting the Counter**

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and then [Next] of Total Job Accounting.
3. Press [Check] at the function to check the count. The results will be displayed.
4. Confirm the count and press [Close].
5. Press [Execute] of Counter Reset to reset the counter.
6. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the reset. The counter is reset.

**Each Job Accounting/Resetting the Counter**

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and [Check] of Each Job Accounting.
3. Select the account to check the count.
4. Press [Detail].
5. Press [Check] at the function to check the count. The results will be displayed.
6. Confirm the count and press [Close].
7. Press [Execute] of Counter Reset to reset the counter.
8. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the reset. The counter will be reset.

**Counting by Paper Size**

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting, [Change] of Count by Paper Size, [Change] of Paper Size 1 to 5 and then [On].
3. Select the paper size.
4. Press [Media Type] to specify media type.
5. Select the media type and press [OK].
6. Press [Close].

**Printing an Accounting Report**

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and then [Print] of Print Accounting Report.
3. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the printing.

**Default Counter Limit**

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].

## 1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

### (1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops copying and displays the jam location on the operation panel.

Paper misfeed counts sorted by the detection condition can be checked in maintenance item U903.

To remove paper jammed in the machine, open the front cover, left cover or pull the cassette out.

To remove original jammed in the optional DP, open the DP top cover.

To remove the jammed paper in optional document finisher, detach the finisher from the machine.

Paper misfeed detection can be reset by opening and closing the respective covers to turn safety switch off and on.

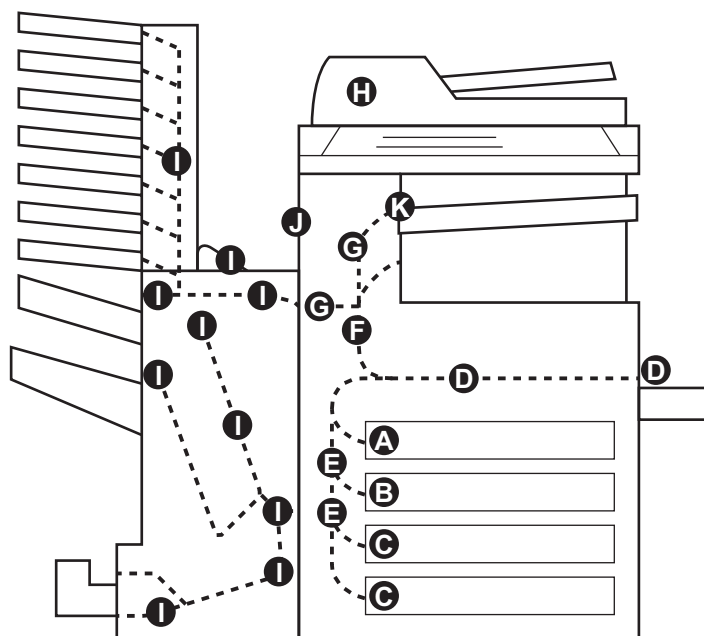


Figure 1-4-1

- (A) Misfeed in cassette 1
- (B) Misfeed in cassette 2
- (C) Misfeed in optional cassette 3 or 4
- (D) Misfeed in MP tray
- (E) Misfeed in left cover 1, 2 or 3
- (F) Misfeed in duplex section
- (G) Misfeed in paper feed section
- (H) Misfeed in optional DP
- (I) Misfeed in optional document finisher
- (J) Misfeed in optional built-in finisher
- (K) Misfeed in optional job separator

## (2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

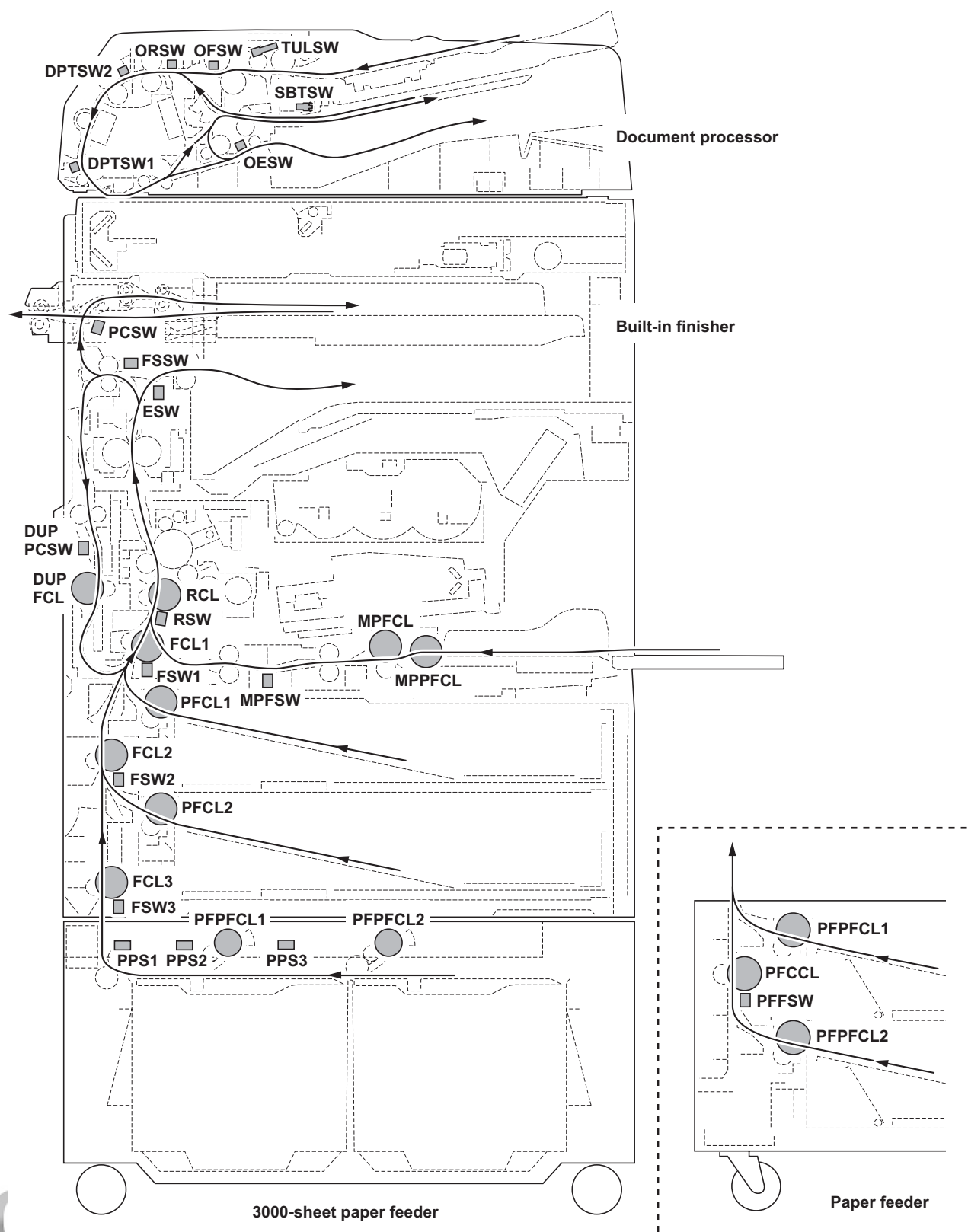


Figure 1-4-2

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
System	00 Initial JAM	The power is turned on when a sensor in the conveying system is on.	-
	04 Cover open	Cover is open during copying.	-
	05 Secondary paper feed does not start	Secondary paper feed does not start within specified time of arrival of paper at the registration section.	40 s
	09 Sequence error jam	A communication sequence error occurs between the machine and the 3000-sheet paper feeder.	-
Paper feed section	10 No paper feed from cassette 1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	1152 ms
	11 No paper feed from cassette 2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	1209 ms
	12 No paper feed from cassette 3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from paper feeder).	1209 ms
		Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder).	780 ms
	13 No paper feed from cassette 4	The PF feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from paper feeder).	1209 ms
	14 No paper feed from MP tray	The MP feed switch (MPFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of the MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	3913 ms
	15 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 1	Paper path sensor 3 (PPS3) does not turn on within specified time of PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder).	360 ms
	16 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 2	Paper path sensor 2 (PPS2) does not turn on within specified time of the paper path sensor 3 (PPS3) turning on (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder).	380 ms
	17 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 3	Paper path sensor 1 (PPS1) does not turn on within specified time of the paper path sensor 2 (PPS2) turning on (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder).	250 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Paper feed section	18 Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.	1283 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on.	1478 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.	1474 ms
	19 Misfeed in paper feeder vertical paper conveying section	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within specified time of the PF feed switch (PFFSW) turning on.	1217 ms
	20 Misfeed in MP tray vertical paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning on.	3043 ms
	21 Multiple sheets in paper feed section	The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length + 3357 ms
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length + 3357 ms
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from paper feeder).	Paper length + 3357 ms
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder).	1050 ms
		The PF feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length + 3357 ms
		The MP feed switch (MPFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length + 3357 ms
		The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turning on.	1152 ms
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) turning on.	1209 ms
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of the PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on.	2643 ms
		The PF feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn off within specified time of the PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on.	3913 ms
		The MP feed switch (MPFSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) turning on.	3913 ms
	22 Multiple sheets in vertical conveying section	The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning off.	1478 ms
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning off.	1539 ms
		The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on	1478 ms
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.	1474 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Paper feed section	23 Multiple sheets in MP tray conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning off.	2739 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning on.	3043 ms
Paper conveying section	30 Misfeed in registration/transfer section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning off.	1170 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.	1278 ms
Fuser section	40 Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
	41 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 1)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
	42 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 2)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
	43 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 3)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
	44 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 4)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
	46 Misfeed in fuser section (3000-sheet paper feeder)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
	47 Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
Eject section	50 Misfeed in eject section	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration switch (RSW) turning off.	2243 ms
		The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Eject section	51 Misfeed in job separator eject section	The job eject switch (JESW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	1587 ms
		The job eject switch (JESW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	1587 ms
		The job eject switch (JESW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	1587 ms
Feedshift section	52 Misfeed in feedshift section	The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the start of eject motor (EM) reverse rotation.	1196 ms
		During paper switchback operation, the feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	2313 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration switch (RSW) turning off.	2243 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2243 ms
Duplex section	60 Duplex paper conveying section 1	The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2196 ms
		The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	2196 ms
	61 Duplex paper conveying section 2	The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning on.	1543 ms
		The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning off.	1543 ms
DP	70 No original feed	The original feed switch (OFSW) does not turn on within specified time during the first sheet feeding (Retry 5 times).	1159 ms
		The original feed switch (OFSW) does not turn on within specified time during the second sheet feeding (Retry 5 times).	1159 ms
		During original tray ascent, the tray upper limit switch (TULSW) does not turn on within specified time.	2 s
	71 An original jam in the original feed section	The original registration switch (ORSW) does not turn on within specified time of the original feed switch (OFSW) turning on.	1013 ms
	72 An original jam in the original conveying section	DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turns off within the specified time since the switch turns on.	914 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
DP	73 An original jam in the original registration section	During single scanning, the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) does not turn on within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning on (Retry 5 times).	1774 ms
		During duplex switchback scanning, the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) does not turn on within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning on (Retry 5 times).	1774 ms
		During dual scanning, the DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2) does not turn on within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning on (Retry 5 times).	1014 ms
	74 An original jam in the original feed section	The original feed switch (OFSW) or original registration switch (ORSW) does not turn off within specified time of the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turning on.	2084 ms
		Scanning of previous original is not complete when DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turns on.	-
	75 An original jam in the original conveying section	During single scanning, the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning off.	1416 ms
		During duplex switchback scanning, the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning off.	1416 ms
		During dual scanning, the DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning off.	656 ms
	76 An original jam in the original switchback section 1	During duplex switchback scanning, the switchback tray switch (SBTSW) does not turn on within specified time of the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turning on.	2318 ms
	77 An original jam in the original switchback section 2	During duplex switchback scanning, the original registration switch (ORSW) does not turn on within specified time since original switchback operation starts.	935 ms
	78 DP cover open JAM	The DP or DP top cover is opened during original feeding.	-
		When the power is turned on or original feeding starts, the original feed switch (OFSW), the original registration switch (ORSW) or DP timing switch 1, 2 (DPTSW1, 2) turning on.	-
	79 An original jam in the original eject section	During single scanning or dual scanning, the original eject switch (OESW) does not turn on within specified time of the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turning on.	1705 ms
		During duplex switchback scanning, the original eject switch (OESW) does not turn on within specified time since switchback ejection starts.	841 ms
		During single scanning or dual scanning, the original eject switch (OESW) does not turn off within specified time of the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turning off.	1705 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Finisher	80 Jam between the finisher and machine	Paper ejection is not output from the machine to the document finisher within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	15 s
	81 Paper entry sensor non arrival jam	(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1052 ms
		(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1052 ms
		(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
		(Document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	733 ms
		(Built-in finisher) The paper conveying switch (PCSW) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1217 ms
		(Built-in finisher) The paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on when paper is conveyed to the intermediate tray from the paper conveying unit.	Paper length + 869 ms
	82 Jam in stapler	(3000-sheet document finisher) The home position is not detected within the specified time when driving the staple motor.	600 ms
		(Document finisher) The staple home position sensor (STSPS) is not turned on within the specified time when driving the staple motor (STM).	-
		(Built-in finisher) The staple home position sensor (STHPS) is not turned on within the specified time when driving the staple motor (STM).	600 ms
	83 Eject sensor stay jam	(3000-sheet document finisher) Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	1182 ms
		(Document finisher) In the straight mode, the exit sensor (EPS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	-
		(Document finisher) In the bundle discharge mode or the staple mode, bundle discharge operation does not turn off within specified time since the operation starts.	902 ms
		(Built-in finisher) The paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on when paper is ejected to the finisher tray from the intermediate tray.	Paper length + 869 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Finisher	84 Jam in eject section of right sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1209 ms
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1209 ms
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
	85 Jam in eject section of left sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn off within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1426 ms
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1426 ms
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
	86 Jam in eject section of internal tray 1 (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Internal tray entry sensor 1 (ITPES1) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the eject signal was received.	2070 ms
	87 Jam in eject section of inner tray 2 (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Inner tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn on within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1322 ms
		Inner tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn off within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning off.	676 ms
	88 Jam in eject section of main tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned on within specified time.	1324 ms
		At the time of bundle up initial operation, paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1) does not turn on.	-
		At the time of bundle down initial operation, paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2) does not turn on.	-
		At the time of side registration standby operation, side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1) does not turn off within specified time.	500 ms
		At the time of side registration standby operation, side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2) does not turn off within specified time.	500 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Finisher	89 Jam in center-folding unit (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn off within specified time of centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) turning on.	5373 ms
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn on within specified time of centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) turning on.	5373 ms
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned on within specified time.	4080 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	8200 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms
		The home position is not detected within the specified time after driving the centerfold staple motor (CSTM).	1000 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned off within specified time.	1370 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned on within specified time.	1370 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
	90 Jam in mailbox (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 1).	5120 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 2).	4633 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 3).	4147 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 4).	3660 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 5).	3173 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 6).	2687 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 7).	2200 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	Depends on paper size

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Finisher	91 Finisher cover open	(3000-sheet document finisher) The front cover, top cover or right sub tray is opened when starting the finisher operation. The centerfold unit top cover is opened when starting the center-fold operation. The mailbox cover is opened when starting the operation.	-
		(Document finisher) The finisher cover becomes open during paper is running. Paper is remaining in paths at power on.	-
	92 Eject paper sensor non-arrival jam (document finisher only)	In the straight mode, the eject paper sensor (EPS) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the paper entry sensor (PES) was turned on.	-
	93 Reverse sensor jam (document finisher only)	The reverse sensor (SBS) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on (unfinished reversing canceled).	437 ms
		The reverse sensor (SBS) is not turned on within specified time (unfinished reversing set).	431 ms
		The reverse sensor (SBS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on (resident reversing canceled).	1826 ms
		The reverse sensor (SBS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on (resident reversing set).	700 ms
	94 Paper entry sensor stay/remaining jam (document finisher only)	The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	1370 ms
	95 Paper conveying sensor jam (document finisher only)	The paper conveying sensor (PCS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on (reversing canceled).	1370 ms
		The paper conveying sensor (PCS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on (reversing set).	656 ms
	96 Jam between the built-in finisher and machine (built-in finisher only)	Paper ejection is not output from the machine to the document finisher within specified time of the intermediate tray sensor (ITS) turning on.	1217 ms

**(3) Paper misfeeds**

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in the paper feed, conveying or eject section is indicated as soon as the main power switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, eject switch or feedshift switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, eject switch, feedshift switch
(2) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 1). Jam code 10	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the cassette 1 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(3) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 2). Jam code 11	Electrical problem with the paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the cassette 2 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 2 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see page 1-4-57).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(4) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 3). Jam code 12	Paper feeder	
	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of cassette 3 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if PF paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
	3000-sheet paper feeder	
	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select following clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. PF paper feed clutch 1/2, PF paper conveying clutch
	Electrical problem with clutch.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 4). Jam code 13	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of cassette 4 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective PF feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC3-7 on the PF main PWB, check if YC3-5 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when the PF feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the PF feed switch.
	Check if PF paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(6) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from MP tray). Jam code 14	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the MP paper feed pulley, MP forwarding pulley and MP separation pulley are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective MP feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn MP feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the MP paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select MP paper feed clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the MP paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(7) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 15	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 3.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-12 on the PF main PWB, check if CN6-11 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when paper path sensor 3 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 3.
	Check if PF paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(8) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 16	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 2.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-9 on the PF main PWB, check if CN6-8 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when paper path sensor 2 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 2.
	Check if PF paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(9) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 17	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 1.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-6 on the PF main PWB, check if CN6-5 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when paper path sensor 1 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 1.
	Check if PF paper conveying clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper conveying clutch.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(10) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 18	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
(11) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in paper feeder vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 19	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken PF feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective PF feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC3-7 on the PF main PWB, check if YC3-5 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when the PF feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the PF feed switch.
(12) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in MP tray vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 20	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. MP feed switch, registration switch

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(13) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in paper feed section). Jam code 21	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 or MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, MP feed switch
	Broken PF feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective PF feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC3-7 on the PF main PWB, check if YC3-5 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when the PF feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the PF feed switch.
	Check if the clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select following clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Paper feed clutch 1/2, MP paper conveying clutch
	Electrical problem with clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
	Check if PF paper feed clutch 1/2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 1/2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 1/2.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(14) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in vertical conveying section). Jam code 22	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3
(15) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in MP tray conveying section). Jam code 23	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. MP feed switch, registration switch
(16) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during copying (jam in registration/transfer section). Jam code 30	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1, registration switch
	The contact between the right and left registration rollers is not correct.	Check visually and replace.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(17) A paper jam in the fuser section is indicated during copying (jam in fuser section). Jam codes 40 to 44, 46 and 47	Broken eject switch or feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Eject switch, feedshift switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(18) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (jam in eject section). Jam code 50	Broken eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Registration switch, eject switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(19) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (jam in job separator eject section). Jam code 51	Broken feedshift switch or job eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, job eject switch
(20) A paper jam in the feedshift section is indicated during copying (jam in feedshift section). Jam code 52	Check if the feedshift solenoid malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U033 and select the feedshift solenoid on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the feedshift solenoid.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, registration switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(21) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 1). Jam code 60	Broken feedshift switch or duplex paper conveying switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, duplex paper conveying switch
(22) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 2). Jam code 61	Broken duplex paper conveying switch or feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Duplex paper conveying switch, feed switch 1
(23) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (no original feed). Jam code 70	Defective original feed switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective original feed motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select original feed motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Defective tray upper limit switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the tray upper limit switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective original lift motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select original lift motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(24) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original feed section). Jam code 71	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original feed switch, original registration switch
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(25) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original conveying section). Jam code 72	Defective DP timing switch 1.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(26) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original registration section). Jam code 73	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original registration switch, DP timing switch 1/2
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(27) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original feed section). Jam code 74	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch1, original feed switch, original registration switch
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(28) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original conveying section). Jam code 75	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original registration switch, DP timing switch 1/2
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(29) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original switchback section 1). Jam code 76	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch 1, switchback tray switch
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original conveying motor, original switchback motor
(30) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original switchback section 2). Jam code 77	Defective original registration switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original switchback motor, original feed motor
(31) A original jam in the DP is indicated as soon as the main power switch is turned on. (DP cover open JAM). Jam code 78	A piece of paper torn from original is caught around original feed switch, original registration switch or DP timing switch 1/2.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original feed switch, original registration switch, DP timing switch 1/2
(32) An original jams in DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original eject section). Jam code 79	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch 1, original eject switch
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original switchback motor

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(33) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (jam between finisher and machine). Jam code 80	Defective paper entry sensor.	(3000-sheet document finisher) Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(34) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher). Jam code 81	3000-sheet document finisher	
	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Document finisher	
	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN3-1 and CN3-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN3-2 and CN3-4 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Built-in finisher	
	Extremely curled paper.	Replace the paper.
	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or feedshift pulley is deformed.	Check and remedy.
(35) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (finisher stapler jam). Jam code 82	3000-sheet document finisher/Document finisher	
	Defective staple home position sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the staple home position sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Built-in finisher	
	The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler. Remove the staple if any.
	Defective stapler section.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-24 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-19 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high. If it does, replace the stapler section.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(36) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor stay jam). Jam code 83	3000-sheet document finisher	
	Defective eject switch 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Document finisher	
	Defective eject paper sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN7-1 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN7-3 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject paper sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject paper sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject roller and eject pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Built-in finisher	
	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or feedshift pulley is deformed.	Check and remedy.
(37) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (right sub tray eject jam). Jam code 84	Defective eject switch 2.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(38) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (left sub tray eject jam). Jam code 85	Defective eject switch 3.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(39) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (internal tray paper entry sensor 1 jam). Jam code 86	Defective internal tray paper entry sensor 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn internal tray paper entry sensor 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(40) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (inner tray paper entry sensor 2 jam). Jam code 87	Defective inner tray paper entry sensor 2.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn inner tray paper entry sensor 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(41) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (main tray eject jam). Jam code 88	Defective eject switch 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(42) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (centerfolding unit jam). Jam code 89	Defective sensor/switch.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Centerfold paper entry sensor, centerfold eject switch, centerfold paper conveying sensor
(43) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (mailbox jam). Jam code 90	Defective tray eject sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn tray eject sensor on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(44) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (switchback sensor jam). Jam code 93	Defective switchback sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN3-5 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN3-7 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the switchback sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the switchback sensor.
	Check if the switchback motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the switchback roller and switchback pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the switchback guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(45) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (paper entry sensor stay jam). Jam code 94	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN3-1 and CN3-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN3-2 and CN3-4 on the main PCB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Check if the paper entry guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(46) A paper jam in finisher is indicated during copying (paper conveying sensor jam). Jam code 95	Defective paper conveying sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN9-1 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN9-3 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the paper conveying roller and paper conveying pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the paper conveying guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(47) A paper jam in built-in finisher is indicated during copying (jam between finisher and machine). Jam code 96	Defective intermediate tray sensor.	With 5 V DC present at YC3-1 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC3-2 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high when the intermediate tray sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the intermediate tray sensor.

## 1-4-2 Self-diagnosis

### (1) Self-diagnostic function

This unit is equipped with a self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, copying is disabled and the problem displayed as a code consisting of C followed by a number, indicating the nature of the problem.

A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.

After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning safety switches off and back on.

### List of system errors

When an unexpected error is detected for some reason, a system error will be indicated. (When 0800 error is detected, JAM05 is indicated.) After a system error is indicated, the error can be cleared by turning the power switch off and then on. If the error is detected continuously, however, perform the operation shown in Table 1-4-1. If a system error occurs frequently, a fault may have occurred. Check the details of the C call to take proper measures.

System error	Contents	Operation
0800	Image processing problem	Repetition of JAM05 → System error → JAM05
1800	Paper feeder communication error (optional paper feeder)	System error → service call → partial operation
4100	BD initialization problem	System error → Normal service call processing
8800	Document finisher communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)	System error → service call → partial operation
9000	DP communication problem (optional DP)	System error → service call → partial operation

Table 1-4-1

In addition, it is a system error if the following error code is displayed. When an error has occurred, clear the error by turning the main power switch off then on.

CF1XX, CF2XX, CF3XX, CF4XX, CF5XX, CF6XX, CF7XX, CFAXX, CFBXX, 0xFBXX

### Partial operation control

If one of the following service codes is detected, partial operation control will be activated. Take actions to clear the cause of the trouble and perform maintenance item U906 to reset partial operation control.

Code	Contents
C0840	Faults of RTC
C1010	Lift motor 1 error
C1020	Lift motor 2 error
C1030	PF lift motor 1 error (optional paper feeder)
C1040	PF lift motor 2 error (optional paper feeder)
C1100	PF lift motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C1110	PF lift motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C1120	PF left lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C1130	PF right lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C2600	PF paper conveying/drive motor error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder/paper feeder)
C3210	CIS lamp problem
C3310	CIS AGC problem
C8020	Punch motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8030	Tray upper limit detection problem (optional document finisher)
C8040	Belt problem (optional document finisher)
C8050	Paper conveying belt motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8060	Paper conveying belt motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8070	Inner tray communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)

Code	Contents
C8140	Main tray problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Tray elevation motor problem (optional document finisher)
C8170	Side registration motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Finisher front side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8180	Side registration motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Finisher rear side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8190	Finisher trailing edge registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8210	Stapler moving motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Stapler problem (optional document finisher) Finisher stapler problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8220	Stapler moving motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8230	Stapler motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8300	Center-folding unit communication error (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8310	Centerfold side registration motor 2 problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8320	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Adjustment motor 2 problem (optional document finisher)
C8330	Blade motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Adjustment motor 1 problem (optional document finisher)
C8340	Centerfold staple motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8350	Centerfold side registration motor 1 problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Roller motor problem (optional document finisher)
C8360	Centerfold main motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Slide motor problem (optional document finisher)
C8440	Sensor adjusting problem (optional document finisher)
C8460	EEPROM problem (optional document finisher)
C8500	Mailbox communication error (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8510	Mailbox drive motor problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)
C9040	DP lift motor going up error (optional DP)
C9050	DP lift motor going down error (optional DP)
C9060	DP EEPROM error (optional DP)
C9070	Communication problem between DP and SHD (optional DP)
C9080	Communication problem between DP and CIS (optional DP)

#### Measures against the service codes detecting fuser problems

If one of the following service codes is detected, take actions to clear the cause of the trouble and perform maintenance item U163 to reset the service code.

Code	Contents
C6000	Fuser heater break
C6020	Abnormally high fuser thermistor temperature
C6030	Fuser thermistor break error
C6040	Fuser thermistor 1 detection error
C6050	Abnormally low fuser thermistor temperature
C6400	Zero-cross signal error

## (2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C0030</b>	<b>Fax control PWB system problem</b> Processing with the fax software was disabled due to a hardware or software problem.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
<b>C0060</b>	<b>Main PWB type mismatch error</b>	Defective PWB.	Run maintenance item U935 to contact the Service Administrative Division.
<b>C0070</b>	<b>Abnormal detection of fax control PWB incompatibility</b> In the initial communication with the fax control PWB, any normal communication command is not transmitted.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
<b>C0100</b>	<b>Backup memory (EEPROM) device problem (Main PWB)</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
<b>C0120</b>	<b>MAC address data error</b> For data in which the MAC address is invalid.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C0150</b>	<b>Backup memory (EEPROM) device problem (Engine PWB)</b> No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
<b>C0160</b>	<b>Backup memory (EEPROM) data problem (Engine PWB)</b> Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
<b>C0170</b>	<b>Copy counts problem</b> A checksum error is detected in the main and engine backup memories for the copy counters.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C0180</b>	<b>Machine number mismatch error</b> Machine number of main PWB and engine PWB does not match.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
<b>C0620</b>	<b>FAX image DIMM problem</b> DIMM is not installed correctly. DIMM cannot be accessed.	DIMM installed incorrectly.	Check if the DIMM is inserted into the socket on the main PWB correctly.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0630	<b>DMA problem</b> DMA transmission of image data does not complete within the specified period of time.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection the signal cable for CIS and the main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0640	<b>Hard disk drive problem</b> The hard disk cannot be accessed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC49 on the main PWB and the connector on the hard disk. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective hard disk.	Run U024 (HDD formatting) without turning the power off to initialize the hard disk. Replace the hard disk drive and check for correct operation if the problem is still detected after initialization.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0650	<b>FAX image DIMM check problem</b> Improper DIMM is installed.	DIMM installed incorrectly.	Check if the DIMM is inserted into the socket on the main PWB correctly.
		DIMM of another machine is installed.	Perform maintenance mode U671 (RECOVERY FAX DIMM).
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0800	<b>Image processing problem</b> JAM05 is detected twice.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0830	<b>Fax control PWB flash program area checksum error</b> A checksum error occurred with the program of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0840	<b>Faults of RTC</b> The time is judged to go back based on the comparison of the RTC time and the current time or five years or more have passed.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		The battery is disconnected from the main PWB.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
C0870	<b>Fax control PWB to main PWB high capacity data transfer problem</b> High-capacity data transfer between the fax control PWB and the scanner MIP PWB was not normally performed even if the data transfer was retried 10 times.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the interface PWB and the connector on the fax control PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0920	<b>Fax file system error</b> The backup data is not retained for file system abnormality of flash memory of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C1010</b>	<b>Lift motor 1 error</b> After cassette 1 is inserted, lift switch 1 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected four times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift motor 1 and the connector YC8 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of lift motor 1.	Replace lift motor 1.
		Defective lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace lift motor 1.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift switch 1 and the connector YC8 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective lift switch 1.	Check if YC8-B9 on the engine PWB goes low when lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace lift switch 1.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C1020</b>	<b>Lift motor 2 error</b> After cassette 2 is inserted, lift switch 2 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected four times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift motor 2 and the connector YC8 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of lift motor 2.	Replace lift motor 2.
		Defective lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace lift motor 2.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift switch 2 and the connector YC8 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective lift switch 2.	Check if YC8-B15 on the engine PWB goes low when lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace lift switch 2.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C1030</b>	<b>PF lift motor 1 error (optional paper feeder)</b> After cassette 3 is inserted, PF lift switch 1 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected two times successively. During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 500 ms or more two times successively. However, the first 1 s after PF lift motor 1 is turned on is excluded from detection.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC15 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of PF lift motor 1.	Replace PF lift motor 1.
		Defective PF lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace PF lift motor 1.
		Defective PF lift switch 1.	Check if YC1-7 on the PF main PWB goes low when PF lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace PF lift switch 1.
<b>C1040</b>	<b>PF lift motor 2 error (optional paper feeder)</b> After cassette 4 is inserted, PF lift switch 2 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected two times successively. During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 500 ms or more two times successively. However, the first 1 s after PF lift motor 2 is turned on is excluded from detection.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC15 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of PF lift motor 2.	Replace PF lift motor 2.
		Defective PF lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace PF lift motor 2.
		Defective PF lift switch 2.	Check if YC1-9 on the PF main PWB goes low when PF lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace PF lift switch 2.
<b>C1100</b>	<b>PF lift motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC15 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		PF lift motor 1 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
<b>C1110</b>	<b>PF lift motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC15 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		PF lift motor 2 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C1120</b>	<b>PF left lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> Level switch 1 does not turn on within 30 s of PF lift motor 1 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC15 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective level switch 1.	Check if YC5-4 on the PF main PWB goes low when level switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace level switch 1.
		Defective PF lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace PF lift motor 1.
		The PF left lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
<b>C1130</b>	<b>PF right lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> Level switch 2 does not turn on within 30 s of PF lift motor 2 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC15 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective level switch 2.	Check if YC5-7 on the PF main PWB goes low when level switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace level switch 2.
		Defective PF lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace PF lift motor 2.
		The PF right lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
<b>C1800</b>	<b>Paper feeder communication error (optional paper feeder)</b> A communication error from paper feeder is detected 10 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC15 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the PF main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C1900</b>	<b>Paper feeder EEPROM error (optional paper feeder)</b> When writing the data, the write data and the read data is not continuously in agreement three times.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC15 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feeder.	Replace the paper feeder with another unit and check the operation. If the operation is normal, replace or repair optional paper feeder.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C2000</b>	<b>Drive motor problem</b> Stable OFF is detected for 1 s continuously after drive motor stability. The drive motor is not stabilized in 6 s since the motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC11 on the engine PWB and the connector on the drive motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective drive motor.	Replace the drive motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C2250</b>	<b>Main charger cleaning motor error</b> A locking error has been detected three times in a row during a reciprocating cleaning motion.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the engine PWB and the connector on the main charger cleaning motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective main charger cleaning motor.	Replace the main charger cleaning motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C2500</b>	<b>Paper feed motor error</b> Stable OFF is detected for 1 s continuously after paper feed motor stability. The paper feed motor is not stabilized in 6 s since the motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC11 on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feed motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective paper feed motor.	Replace the paper feed motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C2600</b>	<b>PF paper conveying/drive motor error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder/ paper feeder)</b> The lock signal of the motor is detected above 450 ms.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC15 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective PF paper conveying/drive motor.	Replace the PF paper conveying/drive motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the PF main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C3100</b>	<b>Scanner carriage problem</b> The home position is not correct when the power is turned on or at the start of copying using the table.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the ISM PWB and the connector of the home position switch, and the connection of connector YC7 on the ISM PWB and the connector on the scanner motor and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective home position switch.	Replace the scanner home position switch.
		Defective scanner motor.	Replace the scanner motor.
		The mirror frame, exposure lamp, or scanner wire is defective.	Check if the mirror frames and exposure lamp are on the rail. And check the scanner wire winds correctly.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the ISM PWB or ISC PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C3200</b>	<b>Exposure lamp problem</b> When input value at the time of exposure lamp illumination does not exceed the threshold value between 5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the ISM PWB and the connector on the inverter PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective exposure lamp or inverter PWB.	Replace the exposure lamp or inverter PWB.
		Incorrect shading position.	Adjust the position of the contact glass (shading plate). If the problem still occurs, replace the home position switch.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the ISM PWB, ISC PWB or CCD PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C3210</b>	<b>CIS lamp problem</b> When input value at the time of CIS illumination does not exceed the threshold value between 5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the ISM PWB and the connector on the DP driver PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective DP driver PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective DP inverter PWB.	Replace the DP inverter PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective CIS.	Replace the CIS and check for correct operation.
<b>C3300</b>	<b>Optical system (AGC) problem</b> After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CCD.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the ISM PWB and the connector on the inverter PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective exposure lamp or inverter PWB.	Replace the exposure lamp or inverter PWB.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the ISM PWB, ISC PWB or CCD PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C3310</b>	<b>CIS AGC problem</b> After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CIS.	Defective DP driver PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.
		CIS output problem.	Replace the CIS and check for correct operation.
		Defective DP inverter PWB.	Replace the DP inverter PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C3500</b>	<b>Communication error between scanner and SHD</b> An error code is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the CCD PWB and the connector YC2 on the ISC PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the CCD PWB or ISC PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C3900</b>	<b>Backup memory read/write problem (ISC PWB)</b> Read and write data does not match.	Defective backup RAM or PWB.	Replace the ISC PWB or ISM PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C3910</b>	<b>Backup memory data problem (ISC PWB)</b> Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values.	Defective backup RAM or PWB.	Replace the ISC PWB or ISM PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C4000</b>	<b>Polygon motor synchronization problem</b> The polygon motor does not reach the stable speed within 20 s of the START signal turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C4010</b>	<b>Polygon motor steady-state problem</b> Stable OFF is detected for 20 s continuously after polygon motor stability.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C4100</b>	<b>BD initialization problem</b> 5 consecutive BD errors were detected during an 800 ms interval after the polygon motor stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C6000</b>	<b>Fuser heater break</b> Fuser thermistor 1 detected less than 70°C/158°F for 10 s during warm-up and ready in. During warm-up, the temperature at the fuser unit thermistor 1 does not rise by 1°C/1.8°F continuously for 5 s. Fuser thermistor 2 detected less than 40°C/104°F for 10 s during warm-up and ready in. During warm-up, the temperature at the fuser unit thermistor 2 does not rise by 1°C/1.8°F continuously for 5 s.	Defective fuser heater 1 or 2.	Replace the fuser heater 1 or 2.
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1 or 2.	Check the mounting state of the fuser thermistor 1. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser thermostat.	Replace the fuser thermostat.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C6020</b>	<b>Abnormally high fuser thermistor temperature</b> Fuser thermistor 1 or 2 is detected 250°C/482°F or more for 40 ms.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1 or 2.	Check the mounting state of the fuser thermistor 1 or 2. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser thermistor unit 1 or 2.	Replace the fuser thermistor 1 or 2.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C6030</b>	<b>Fuser thermistor break error</b> The fuser thermistor break signal is detected continuously for 1 s.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1 or 2.	Check the mounting state of the fuser thermistor 1 or 2. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser thermistor 1 or 2.	Replace the fuser thermistor 1 or 2.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C6040</b>	<b>Fuser thermistor 1 detection error</b> Fuser thermistor 1 detected an abnormal value for at least 1 s.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Check the mounting state of the fuser thermistor 1. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser thermistor 1.	Replace the fuser thermistor 1.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C6050</b>	<b>Abnormally low fuser thermistor temperature</b> Fuser thermistor 1 is detected 80°C/176°F less than 1 s continuously during copying.	Defective fuser heater 1 or 2.	Replace the fuser heater 1 or 2.
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Check the mounting state of the fuser thermistor 1. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C6400</b>	<b>Zero-cross signal error</b> While fuser heater ON/OFF control is performed, the zero-cross signal is not input within 3 s.	Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C6410</b>	<b>Fuser unit connector insertion problem</b> Absence of the fuser unit is detected.	Fuser unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the fuser unit connector if necessary.
		Defective fuser unit connector.	Replace the fuser unit.
<b>C7300</b>	<b>Toner container problem</b> Toner level is not detected when toner empty is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective toner container sensor.	Replace the toner container sensor.
<b>C7400</b>	<b>Developing unit connector insertion problem</b> Absence of the developing unit is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Defective developing unit connector.	Replace the developing unit.
<b>C7410</b>	<b>Drum unit connector insertion problem</b> Absence of the drum unit is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Defective drum unit connector.	Replace the drum unit.
<b>C7800</b>	<b>Broken external thermistor wire</b> The thermistor output value is 4.5 V or more.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective humidity sensor.	Replace the humidity sensor.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C7900</b>	<b>Drum EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum unit.	Replace the drum unit.
<b>C7910</b>	<b>Developing unit EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing unit.	Replace the developing unit.
<b>C8020</b>	<b>Punch motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The error signal of the punch motor is detected for more than 500 ms while the punch motor is operating.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch motor.	Replace the punch motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the punch PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8030</b>	<b>Tray upper limit detection problem (optional document finisher)</b> When the tray elevation motor raises a tray, the ON status of the tray upper limit sensor is detected.	The tray upper limit sensor, paper surface sensor 1/2 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray upper limit sensor, paper surface sensor 1/2.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8040</b>	<b>Belt problem (optional document finisher)</b> The belt sensor does not turn on/off within specified time of the belt solenoid turning on.	The belt sensor, belt solenoid connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective belt sensor.	Replace the belt sensor.
		Defective belt solenoid.	Replace the belt solenoid.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C8050</b>	<b>Paper conveying belt motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn on within 2.5 s. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the inner tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8060</b>	<b>Paper conveying belt motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn on within 1.5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the inner tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8070</b>	<b>Inner tray communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Communication with the inner tray is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 and YC24 on the finisher main PWB and the connector YC1 and YC4 on the inner tray PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8140	<b>Main tray problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The main tray is not detected by the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor within 20 s since the tray has started ascending. The main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor is not detected to be turned off in 20 s after the main tray has descended. The main tray low limit detection sensor is not detected to be turned on in 20 s after the main tray has descended. During main tray ascent, the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor stays on for more than 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC11 on the finisher main PWB and the connector on the main tray motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main tray motor.	Replace the main tray motor.
		Defective main tray upper limit detection sensor/main tray paper upper surface detection sensor/main tray lower limit detection sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Tray elevation motor problem (optional document finisher)</b> The tray low limit sensor or paper surface sensor 1/2 cannot be detected to be on within 10 s since the tray elevation motor is activated.	The tray elevation motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The tray elevation motor malfunctions.	Replace the tray elevation motor.
		The tray lower limit sensor, paper surface sensor 1/2 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray lower limit sensor, paper surface sensor 1/2.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8170	<b>Side registration motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the inner tray PWB and the connector on side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective side registration motor 1.	Replace side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Finisher front side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)</b> When the front-side registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the front-side registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The front side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective front side registration motor.	Replace front side registration motor.
		The front side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective front side registration home position sensor.	Replace the front side registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.
C8180	<b>Side registration motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the inner tray PWB and the connector of side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective side registration motor 2.	Replace side registration motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Finisher rear side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)</b> When the rear-side registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the rear-side registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The rear side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective rear side registration motor.	Replace rear side registration motor.
		The rear side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective rear side registration home position sensor.	Replace the rear side registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C8190</b>	<b>Finisher trailing edge registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)</b> When the trailing edge registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the trailing edge registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The trailing edge registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective trailing edge registration motor.	Replace trailing edge registration motor.
		The trailing edge registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective trailing edge registration home position sensor.	Replace the trailing edge registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8210</b>	<b>Stapler moving motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 1.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler moving motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler moving motor 1.	Replace stapler moving motor 1.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Stapler problem (optional document finisher)</b> Jam 82 is indicated.	The stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler.
		The stapler is broken.	Replace the stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Finisher stapler problem (optional built-in finisher)</b> The stapler home position sensor does not change state from nondetection to detection within 200 ms of the start of stapler motor counterclockwise (forward) rotation. During initialization, the stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 600 ms of the start of stapler motor clockwise (reverse) rotation.	The stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler.
		The stapler is broken.	Replace the front stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C8220</b>	<b>Stapler moving motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of staple relay PWB and stapler moving motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler moving motor 2.	Replace stapler moving motor 2.
		Defective staple relay PWB.	Replace the staple relay PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8230</b>	<b>Stapler motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Jam 82 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of staple relay PWB and stapler motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler motor.	Replace the stapler motor.
		Defective staple relay PWB.	Replace the staple relay PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8300</b>	<b>Center-folding unit communication error (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Communication with the center-folding unit is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 and YC20 on the finisher main PWB and the connector YC1 and YC2 on the centerfold main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective center-fold set switch.	Replace the centerfold set switch.
		Defective center-fold main PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8310</b>	<b>Centerfold side registration motor 2 problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective center-fold side registration motor 2.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8320	<b>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor problem (optional center-fold-ing unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 2.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6, YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.	Replace centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Adjustment motor 2 problem (optional document finisher)</b> The adjustment sensor 2 does not turn on/off within specified time of the adjustment motor 2 turning on.	The adjustment sensor 2, adjustment motor 2 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective adjustment sensor 2.	Replace the adjustment sensor 2.
		Defective adjustment motor 2.	Replace the adjustment motor 2.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8330	<b>Blade motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the blade motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective blade motor.	Replace the blade motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Adjustment motor 1 problem (optional document finisher)</b> The adjustment sensor 1 does not turn on/off within specified time of the adjustment motor 1 turning on.	The adjustment sensor 1, adjustment motor 1 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective adjustment sensor 1.	Replace the adjustment sensor 1.
		Defective adjustment motor 1.	Replace the adjustment motor 1.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8340	<b>Centerfold staple motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Jam 89 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold staple motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold staple motor.	Replace the centerfold staple motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8350	<b>Centerfold side registration motor 1 problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 1.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Roller motor problem (optional document finisher)</b> The roller sensor does not turn on/off within specified time of the roller motor turning on.	The roller sensor, roller motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective roller sensor.	Replace the roller sensor.
		Defective roller motor.	Replace the roller motor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8360	<b>Centerfold main motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The motor lock signal is detected above 1 s during driving the centerfold main motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC12 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold main motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold main motor.	Replace the centerfold main motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Slide motor problem (optional document finisher)</b> The slide sensor does not turn on/off within specified time of the slide motor turning on.	The slide sensor, slide motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective slide sensor.	Replace the slide sensor.
		Defective slide motor.	Replace the slide motor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C8440</b>	<b>Sensor adjusting problem (optional document finisher)</b> The sensor cannot be adjusted within the specified range.	The paper entry sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective paper entry sensor.	Replace the paper entry sensor and check for correct operation.
		The optical path of the paper entry sensor is blocked by foreign matter.	Remove the foreign matter.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8460</b>	<b>EEPROM problem (optional document finisher)</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective EEPROM or finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8500</b>	<b>Mailbox communication error (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Communication with the mailbox is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of the connector of the mailbox and the connector YC7 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8510</b>	<b>Mailbox drive motor problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The motor lock signal is detected above 500 ms during driving the mailbox drive motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the mailbox main PWB and the connector of the mailbox drive motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective mailbox drive motor.	Replace the mailbox drive motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8800</b>	<b>Document finisher communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> A communication error from document finisher is detected 10 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8900</b>	<b>Finisher backup problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the finisher main PWB and the connector of the machine, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		EEPROM installed incorrectly.	Install EEPROM correctly.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

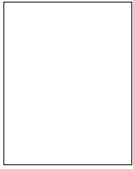
Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C8910</b>	<b>Punch backup problem (optional of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the connector YC4 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch PWB.	Replace the punch PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8920</b>	<b>Mailbox backup problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the mailbox main PWB and the connector YC7 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective mailbox main PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C8930</b>	<b>Center-folding backup problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the centerfold main PWB and the connector YC5 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		EEPROM installed incorrectly.	Install EEPROM correctly.
		Defective center-fold main PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C9000</b>	<b>DP communication problem (optional DP)</b> A communication error is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the ISM PWB and the connector of the DP, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB or ISM PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C9040</b>	<b>DP lift motor going up error (optional DP)</b> The tray upper limit switch does not turn on within 2 s of DP lift motor turning on.	Loose connection of the DP lift motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the DP lift motor.	Replace the DP lift motor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the tray upper limit switch connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the tray upper limit switch.	Replace the tray upper limit switch and check for correct operation.
		Defective DP driver PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C9050</b>	<b>DP lift motor going down error (optional DP)</b> The tray lower limit switch does not turn on within 2 s of DP lift motor turning on.	Loose connection of the DP lift motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the DP lift motor.	Replace the DP lift motor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the tray lower limit switch connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the tray lower limit switch.	Replace the tray lower limit switch and check for correct operation.
		Defective DP driver PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C9060</b>	<b>DP EEPROM error (optional DP)</b> Read and write data does not match. Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values.	Defective DP driver PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
<b>C9070</b>	<b>Communication problem between DP and SHD (optional DP)</b> A communication error is detected.	Loose connection of the SHD PWB.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective SHD PWB.	Replace the SHD PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C9080</b>	<b>Communication problem between DP and CIS (optional DP)</b> A communication error is detected.	Loose connection of CIS.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective CIS.	Replace CIS and check for correct operation.
<b>C9500</b>			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
<b>C9510</b>			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
<b>C9520</b>			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
<b>F000</b>	<b>Operation panel PWB communication error</b>	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective operation panel PWB.	Replace the operation panel PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>F040</b>	<b>Engine PWB communication error</b>	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>F041</b>	<b>Scanner PWB communication error</b>	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective ISM PWB.	Replace the ISM PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>F050</b>	<b>Engine ROM checksum error</b>	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
F090	Fax control PWB communication error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
F278	Power supply in drive system error	Main power switch was turned off without using the power key, or a power failure has occurred.	Turn on power. (To switch off power, first press the power key until the main power indicator goes off, then turn the main power switch off.)

### 1-4-3 Image formation problems

(1) No image appears (entirely white).



See page 1-4-49.

(2) No image appears (entirely black).



See page 1-4-49.

(3) Image is too light.



See page 1-4-50.

(4) Background is visible.



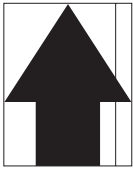
See page 1-4-50.

(5) A white line appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-50.

(6) A black line appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-51.

(7) A black line appears laterally.



See page 1-4-51.

(8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.



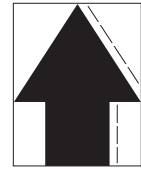
See page 1-4-51.

(9) Black dots appear on the image.



See page 1-4-51.

(10) Image is blurred.



See page 1-4-52.

(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.



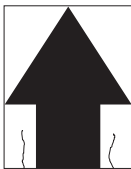
See page 1-4-52.

(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.



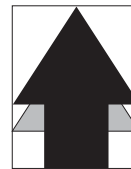
See page 1-4-52.

(13) Paper creases.



See page 1-4-52.

(14) Offset occurs.



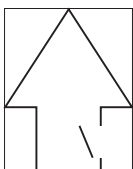
See page 1-4-53.

(15) Image is partly missing.



See page 1-4-53.

(16) Fusing is poor.



See page 1-4-53.

(17) Image is out of focus.



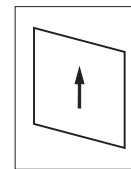
See page 1-4-53.

(18) Image center does not align with the original center.



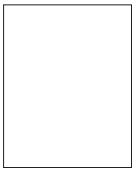
See page 1-4-54.

(19) Image is not square.




See page 1-4-54.

**(1) No image appears (entirely white).**

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No transfer charging.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC13-10 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-10 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	No LSU laser is output.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-22).
		Defective main PWB.	Check if YC3-11 on the main PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the main PWB.
	No developing bias output.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC13-1 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if developing bias is output when CN1-1 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.


**(2) No image appears (entirely black).**

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No main charging.	Broken main charger wire.	Replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-26).
		Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
		The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC13-4 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if main charging takes place when CN1-4 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	Exposure lamp fails to light.	Poor contact in the exposure lamp connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective inverter PWB.	Check if the exposure lamp lights when the terminal on the inverter PWB goes low while maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the inverter PWB.
		Defective ISM PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC5-4 on the ISM PWB goes low. If not, replace the ISM PWB.

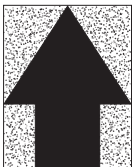
TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

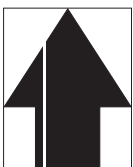
**(3) Image is too light.**

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Insufficient toner.		If the display shows the message requesting toner replenishment, replace the container.
	Deteriorated toner.		Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Defective transfer charging output.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC13-10 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
	Defective high voltage PWB.		Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-10 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.

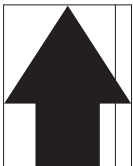
**(4) Background is visible.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Deteriorated toner.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-26).


**(5) A white line appears longitudinally.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Foreign matter in the developing unit.	Check if the magnetic brush is formed uniformly. Replace the developing unit if any foreign matter (see page 1-5-28).
	Dirty shading plate.	Clean the shading plate.


**(6) A black line appears longitudinally.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Dirty scanner mirror.	Clean the scanner mirror.
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-26).


**(7) A black line appears laterally.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Flawed drum.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Dirty developing section.	Clean any part contaminated with toner in the developing section.
	Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
	Leaking separation electrode.	Clean the separation electrode.

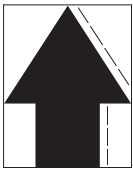
**(8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-26).
	Defective exposure lamp.	Check if the exposure lamp light is distributed evenly to run maintenance item U061. If not, replace the exposure lamp (see page 1-3-27 and page 1-5-12).

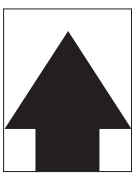
**(9) Black dots appear on the image.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Dirty drum separation claws.	Clean the drum separation claws.
	Dirty the heat roller separation claws.	Clean the heat roller separation claws.

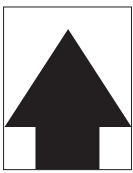
**(10) Image is blurred.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Scanner moves erratically.	Check if there is any foreign matter on the front and rear scanner rails. If any, remove it.
	Deformed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-5-32).
	Paper conveying section drive problem.	Check the gears and belts and, if necessary, grease them.

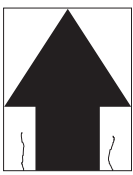
**(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U034 to readjust the leading edge registration (see page 1-3-22).
	Misadjusted scanner leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U066 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-29).

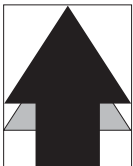
**(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Feed clutch, paper feed clutch, MP paper feed clutch or registration clutch installed or operating incorrectly.	Check the installation position and operation of each clutch. If any of them operates incorrectly, replace it.


**(13) Paper creases.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper curled.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
	Defective separation.	Check the drum separation claws and heat roller separation claws.

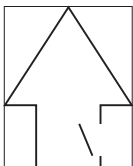
## (14) Offset occurs.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
	Defective fuser unit.	Check the heat roller and press roller.
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.


## (15) Image is partly missing.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper creased.	Replace the paper.
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).

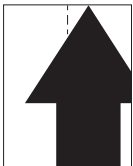
## (16) Fusing is poor.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
	Flawed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-5-32).
	Flawed fuser heater.	Replace the fuser heaters (see page 1-5-33).

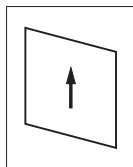
## (17) Image is out of focus.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective image scanning unit.	Replace the image scanning unit (see page 1-5-20).
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.

**(18) Image center does not align with the original center.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted image center line.	Run maintenance item U034 to readjust the center line of image printing (see page 1-3-23).
	Misadjusted scanner center line.	Run maintenance item U067 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-30).
	Original is not placed correctly.	Place the original correctly.

**(19) Image is not square.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Laser scanner unit positioned incorrectly.	Adjust the installation position of the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-24).

### 1-4-4 Electric problems

Troubleshooting to each failure must be in the order of the numbered symptoms.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The machine does not operate when the main power switch is turned on.	1. The power cord is not plugged in properly.	Check the contact between the power plug and the outlet.
	2. No electricity at the power outlet.	Measure the input voltage.
	3. Broken power cord.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cord.
	4. Defective main power switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the main power switch.
	5. Defective power source PWB.	With AC present, check for 24 V DC at YC1-1 on the power source PWB, 5 V DC at YC1-6 and 3.3 V DC at YC1-5. If none, replace the power source PWB.
(2) The eject motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective eject motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates. If not, replace the eject motor.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(3) The scanner motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the motor.
(4) Power source fan motor 1/2 does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the motor.
	3. Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if the motor operates when the following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the corresponding motor. Power source fan motor 1/2: YC4-1 on the power source PWB
	4. Defective power source PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the power source PWB. Power source fan motor 1/2: YC4-1 on the power source PWB

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(5) Fuser fan motor, developing fan motor, LSU fan motor, paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3 or duplex fan motor 1/2/3 does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the motor.
	3. Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if the motor operates when the following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the corresponding motor. Fuser fan motor: YC10-A14 on the engine PWB Developing fan motor: YC12-B12 on the engine PWB LSU fan motor: YC12-B3 on the engine PWB Paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3: YC4-B7 on the engine PWB Duplex fan motor 1/2/3: YC4-B10 on the engine PWB
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Fuser fan motor: YC10-A14 on the engine PWB Developing fan motor: YC12-B12 on the engine PWB LSU fan motor: YC12-B3 on the engine PWB Paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3: YC4-B7 on the engine PWB Duplex fan motor 1/2/3: YC4-B10 on the engine PWB
(6) Controller fan motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the motor.
	3. Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if the motor operates when the following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the corresponding motor. Controller fan motor: YC23-1 on the main PWB
	4. Defective main PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the main PWB. Controller fan motor: YC23-1 on the main PWB
(7) Scanner fan motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the motor.
	3. Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if the motor operates when the following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the corresponding motor. Scanner fan motor: YC3-2 on the ISM PWB
	4. Defective ISM PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the ISM PWB goes low. If not, replace the ISM PWB. Scanner fan motor: YC3-2 on the ISM PWB
	5. Defective ISC PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the ISC PWB goes high. If not, replace the ISC PWB. Scanner fan motor: YC3-24 on the ISC PWB

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(8) Paper feed clutch 1/2, feed clutch 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch, MP feed clutch, registration clutch, duplex feed clutch or developing clutch does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the clutch.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Paper feed clutch 1: YC10-B1 on the engine PWB Paper feed clutch 2: YC10-B4 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 1: YC23-2 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 2: YC8-A12 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 3: YC8-A5 on the engine PWB MP paper feed clutch: YC12-A9 on the engine PWB MP feed clutch: YC12-A11 on the engine PWB Registration clutch: YC10-B6 on the engine PWB Duplex feed clutch: YC4-B2 on the engine PWB Developing clutch: YC7-1 on the engine PWB
(9) The feedshift solenoid or toner feed solenoid does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the solenoid.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U033 and check if the solenoid operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(10) The exposure lamp does not turn on or off.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective inverter PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if the exposure lamp turns on with the inverter PWB go low. If not, replace the inverter PWB.
	3. Defective ISC PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC3-23 on the ISC PWB goes high. If not, replace the ISC PWB.
	4. Defective ISM PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC5-4 on the ISM PWB goes low. If not, replace the ISM PWB.
(11) Main charging is not performed.	1. Broken main charger wire.	Replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-26).
	2. Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
	3. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC13-4 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
	5. Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if main charging takes place when CN1-4 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
(12) No developing bias is output.	1. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC13-1 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
	3. Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if developing bias is output when CN1-1 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(13) Transfer charging is not performed.	1. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC13-10 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
	3. Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-10 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
(14) The original size is not detected correctly.	1. Original is not placed correctly.	Check the original and correct if necessary.
	2. Poor contact in the original detection switch or original size sensor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective original detection switch.	If the level of YC4-2 on the ISM PWB does not go low when the original detection switch is turned on and off, replace the original detection switch.
	4. Defective original size sensor.	Check if sensor operates correctly. If not, replace it.
(15) The touch panel keys do not work.	1. Poor contact in the touch panel connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective touch panel or main operation PWB.	If any keys do not work after running the maintenance item U201 to initialize the touch panel, replace the touch panel or main operation unit PWB.
(16) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the cassette 1/2 or MP tray.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of paper switch 1/2 or MP paper switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective paper switch 1/2 or MP paper switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not change when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Paper switch 1: YC8-B12 on the feed PWB Paper switch 2: YC8-B18 on the feed PWB MP paper switch: YC12-A6 on the engine PWB
(17) The size of paper on the cassette 1/2 or MP tray is not displayed correctly.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of paper size length switch 1/2, paper size width switch 1/2, MP paper size length switch or MP paper size width switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective paper size length switch 1/2 or MP paper size length switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not change when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Paper size length switch 1: YC8-B2 on the engine PWB Paper size length switch 2: YC8-A19 on the engine PWB MP paper size length switch: YC12-B14 on the engine PWB
	3. Defective paper size width switch 1/2 or MP paper size width switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not change when the width guide in the cassette 1/2 or insert guide on the MP tray is moved, replace the switch. Paper size width switch 1: YC9-3, 4, 5 on the engine PWB Paper size width switch 2: YC9-9, 10, 11 on the engine PWB MP paper size width switch: YC12-A1, A2, A3 on the engine PWB

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(18) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying, fuser, eject or duplex section is indicated when the main power switch is turned on.	1. A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, feedshift switch, eject switch or duplex paper conveying switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	2. Defective feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, feedshift switch, eject switch or duplex paper conveying switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn each switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch is not displayed in reverse.
(19) The message requesting cover to be closed is displayed when the front cover or left cover 1/2 is closed.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of front cover switch, left cover 1/2 switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective front cover switch, left cover 1 switch or left cover 2 switch.	Check for continuity across each switch. If there is no continuity when the switch is on, replace it.
(20) Others.	1. Wiring is broken, shorted or makes poor contact.	Check for continuity. If none, repair.

**1-4-5 Mechanical problems**

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes/check procedures</b>	<b>Corrective measures</b>
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following rollers or pulleys are dirty with paper powder: Forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley, feed roller, registration roller, MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pulley	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley or separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or MP separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-5).
	Electrical problem with the following clutches: Paper feed clutch 1/2, feed clutch 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch and MP feed clutch	See page 1-4-57.
(2) No secondary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the right and left registration rollers are dirty with paper powder.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	See page 1-4-57.
(3) Skewed paper feed.	Width guide in a cassette installed incorrectly.	Check the width guide visually and correct or replace if necessary.
	Deformed width guide in a cassette.	Check visually and replace any deformed guide.
	Check if a pressure spring along the paper conveying path is deformed or out of place.	Repair or replace.
(4) The scanner does not travel.	Check if the scanner wire is loose.	Reinstall the scanner wire (see page 1-5-16).
	The scanner motor malfunctions.	See page 1-4-55.
(5) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Check if the separation pulley is worn.	Replace the separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP separation pulley is worn.	Replace the MP separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-5).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(6) Paper jams.	Paper is extremely curled.	Replace the paper.
	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace any deformed guides.
	Check if the contact between the right and left registration rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the feed roller and feed pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the press roller is extremely dirty or deformed.	Clean or replace the press roller.
	Check if the contact between the heat roller and its separation claws is correct.	Repair if any springs are off the separation claws.
	Check if the contact between the eject roller and pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	The feedshift solenoid malfunctions.	See page 1-4-57.
	Check if the duplex feed pulley, upper duplex feed roller or lower duplex feed roller is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.
(7) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	Check if the developing unit is extremely dirty.	Clean the developing unit.
(8) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.
	Check if the following clutches are installed correctly: Paper feed clutch 1/2, feed clutch 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch and MP feed clutch	Correct.

## 1-4-6 Send error code

## (1) Scan to SMB error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1102	<b>Error: User/Password or Shared Name/Folder Name</b>	Domain name is not entered.	Enter the user name with the form of either [Domain¥User], [Domain/User] or [Domain@User].
		Assign disable user/pass-word.	Enter the correct user name/password.
		Assign the user who is not allowed to access to folder.	Enter correct user name/password. Check the access limit of destination folder.
		Assign disable shared name.	Enter the correct shared name. Check if the prohibited letters below are used to shared name. @ ( ) ! & # \$ % ^ ~ [ ] `
		Host name error.	Check if the prohibited letters are used to shared name. " & ' ( ) ` ; < >
1103	<b>Error: Pathname or File Name</b>	Domain name is not enter	Enter the user name with the form of either [Domain¥User], [Domain/User] or [Domain@User].
		Connect to the folder which is not permitted for reference/writing.	Enter correct user name/password. Check the access limit of destination folder.
		Assign disable folder path.	Enter correct folder path.
1105	<b>Error: Not support protocol</b>	SMB Protocol is set to OFF.	Check ON in the [Scanner]-[SMB] screen in COMMAND CENTER.
2101	<b>Error: Can not connect</b>	Enter the disable host name/IP address.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
		Assign the wrong port number.	Enter the correct port number.
		Network is not connected.	Check if the server is operating properly. Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2103	<b>Error: Response wait with timeout</b>	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2201	<b>Error: Network transfer</b>	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2203	<b>Error: Response wait with timeout</b>	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
9181	<b>Error: Page max count over</b>	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

## (2) Scan to FTP error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	Error: Host name	Enter the disable host name/ IP address.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
1102	Error: User/Password	Domain name is not entered.	Enter the user name with the form of either [Domain¥User] or [Domain/User].
		Assign disable user/pass-word.	Enter the correct user name/password.
1103	Error: Pathname or File Name	Connect to the folder which is not permitted for reference/ writing.	Enter correct user name/password. Check the access limit of destination folder.
		Assign disable folder path.	Enter correct folder path.
1105	Error: Not support protocol	FTP Protocol is set to OFF.	Check ON in the [Scanner]-[FTP] screen in COMMAND CENTER.
2101	Error: Can not connect	Enter the disable host name/ IP address.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
		Assign the wrong port number.	Enter the correct port number.
		Network is not connected.	Check if the server is operating properly. Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2102	Error: Can not connect with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
		Send the server which does not support FTP server.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
2103	Error: Response wait with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2201	Error: Network transfer	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2202	Error: Network transfer with timeout	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2203	Error: Response wait with timeout	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
3101	Error: Server response	The server is error status.	Check if the server is working properly.
9181	Error: Page max count over	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

## (3) Scan to E-mail error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	Error: Host name	SMTP sever name is not set. Error SMTP server name.	Register [SMTP Server Name] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
1102	Error: User/Password	User ID for the authentication is not entered or entered wrongly. Wrong authentication password is entered.	Enter the correct user ID/password for authentication at [Advance] in COMMAND CENTER. Enter the password of [Login User Name] of the [POP3] page or the [SMTP] page correctly.
1104	Error: No Recipient address	The destination address is not specified.	Specify the destination address.
1105	Error: Not support protocol	SMTP Protocol is set to OFF.	Check ON [SMTP] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
1106	Error: No Sender Info	Sender address is not enter	Enter the correct [Sender Address] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
2101	Error: Can not connect	Select [Other authenticate] when authenticating POP before SMTP.	Select valid POP3 user other than [Other].
		The specified server is not SMTP server.	Enter the correct [SMTP Server Name] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
		Network is not connected.	Check if the server is operating properly. Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2102	Error: Can not connect with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2103	Error: Response wait with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2201	Error: Network transfer	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2202	Error: Network transfer with timeout	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2203	Error: Response wait with timeout	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2204	Error: E-Mail Size limit	The size of E-mail exceeds its limit.	Change the [E-mail Size Limit] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General]-[E-mail Setting] in COMMAND CENTER.
3101	Error: Server response	The server is error status.	Check if the server is working properly.
		Server setting is not authenticated normally.	Check the settings for client/server authentication.
3201	Error: Not Found Authentication Mechanism	Unsupported SMTP Authentication Mechanism is found.	Check the settings for client/server Authentication Mechanism.
9181	Error: Page max count over	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

**(4) Network Twain error codes**

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
2202	<b>Error: Network transfer with timeout</b>	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable, network condition within LAN, etc.).
9181	<b>Error: Page max count over</b>	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

**(5) Software trouble error codes**

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
5101	<b>Error: Not yet connected</b>	Operation handle error. Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
5102	<b>Error: Already connected</b>	Operation handle error. Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
5103	<b>Error: Not yet opened</b>	Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
5104	<b>Error: Already opened</b>	Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
7101	<b>Error: Memory Allocation</b>	Insufficient memory space.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
7102	<b>Error: Socket Create</b>	Unable to create a communication socket.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
720f	<b>Error: Unknown error</b>	Unable to determine the cause.	Turn the main power switch off and on.

This page is intentionally left blank.

## 1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

### (1) Precautions

Before starting disassembly, press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the main power indicator is off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

Turning off the main power switch before pressing the Power key to off may cause damage to the equipped hard disk.

When the fax kit is installed, be sure to disconnect the modular code before starting disassembly.

When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands.

The PWBs are susceptible to static charge.

Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.

When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.

Take care not to get the cables caught.

To reassemble the parts, use the original screws. If the types and the sizes of screws are not known, refer to the PARTS LIST.

### (2) Drum

Note the following when handling or storing the drum.

When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.

Keep the drum at an ambient temperature between -20°C/-4°F and 40°C/104°F and at a relative humidity not higher than 90% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.

Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum.

Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Should it be touched by hands or stained with oil, clean it.

### (3) Toner

Store the toner container in a cool, dark place.

Avoid direct light and high humidity.

#### (4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container

As a means of brand protection, the Kyocera Mita toner container utilizes an optical security technology to enable visual validation. A validation viewer is required to accomplish this.

Hold the validation viewer over the left side part of the brand protection seal on the toner container. Through each window of the validation viewer, the left side part of the seal should be seen as follows:

A black-colored band when seen through the left side window ( ● )

A shiny or gold-colored band when seen through the right side window ( ☼ )

The above will reveal that the toner container is a genuine Kyocera Mita branded toner container, otherwise, it is a counterfeit.

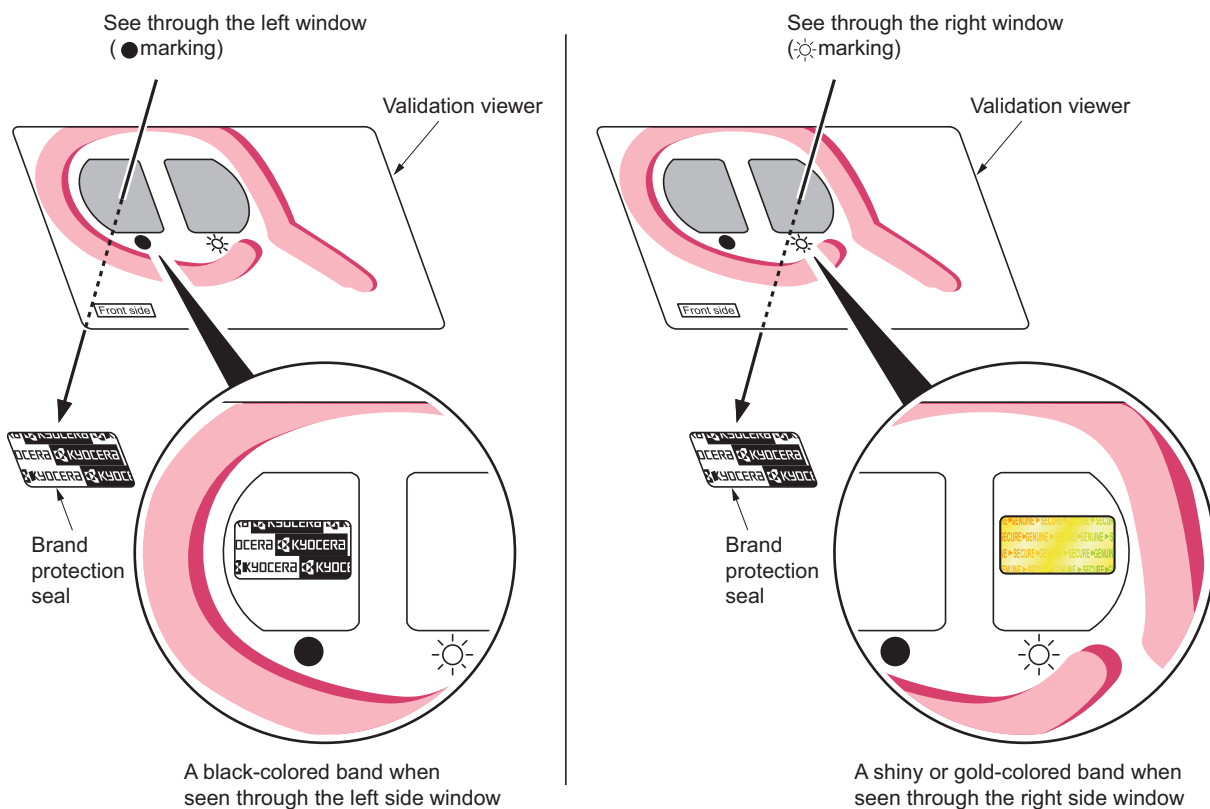


Figure 1-5-1

The brand protection seal has an incision as shown below to prohibit reuse.

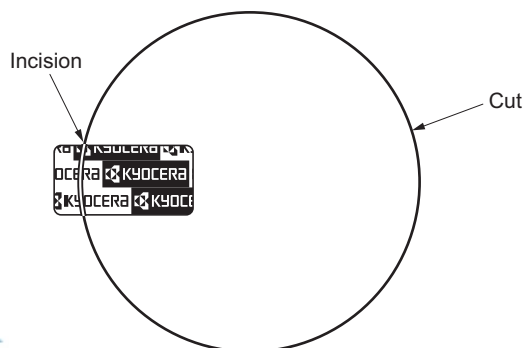


Figure 1-5-2

## 1-5-2 Paper feed section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys

Follow the procedure below to replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.

#### Procedure

##### Removing the primary paper feed units

1. Open the front cover and pull out the cassettes 1 and 2.
2. Remove the screw and remove the primary paper feed unit.

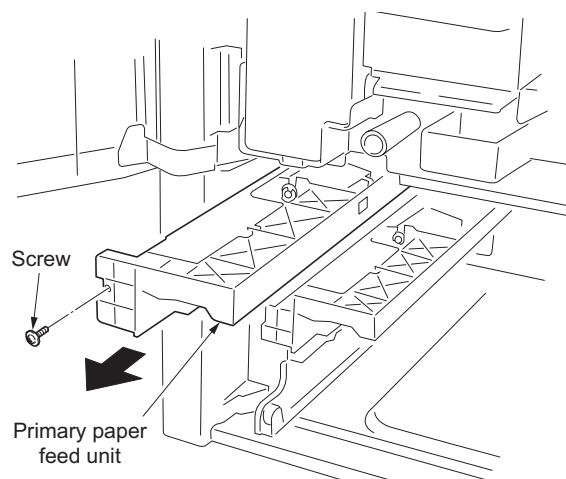


Figure 1-5-3

##### Removing the forwarding pulley

3. Remove the stopper and spring from the primary paper feed unit.
4. Raise the forwarding pulley retainer in the direction the arrow, and remove from the primary paper feed unit.

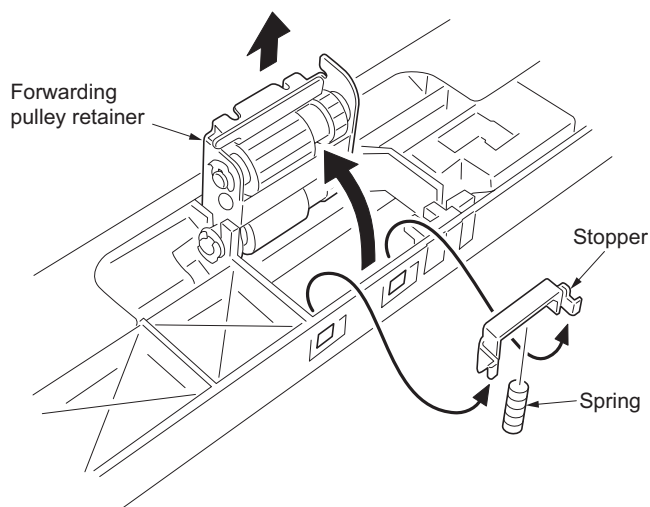


Figure 1-5-4

5. Remove the stop ring from the forwarding pulley retainer.
6. Remove the forwarding pulley from the forwarding pulley shaft.

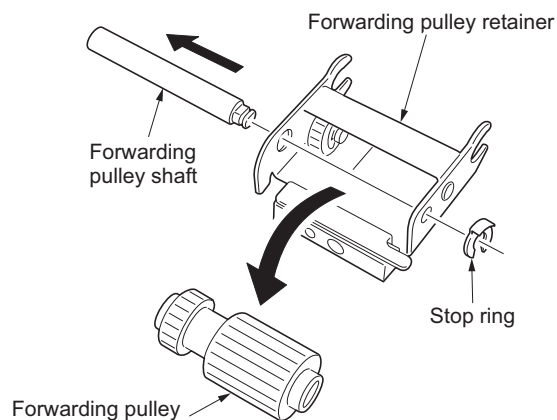
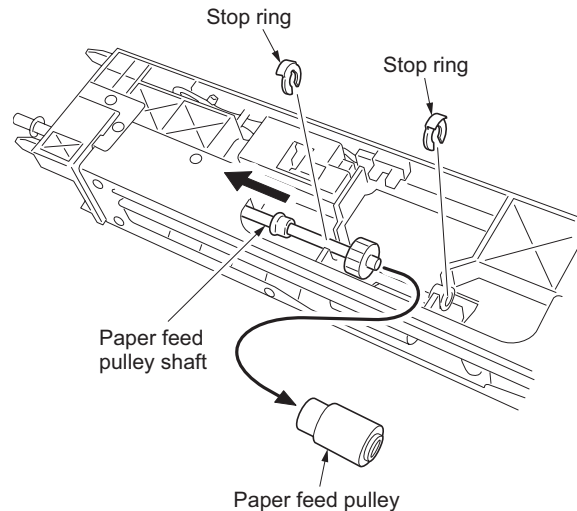


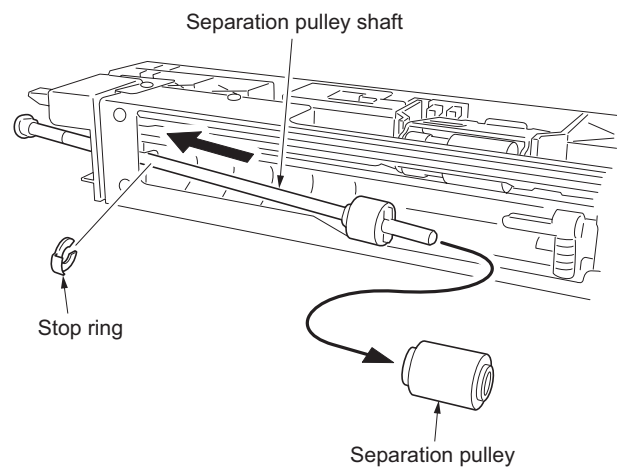
Figure 1-5-5

**Removing the paper feed pulley**

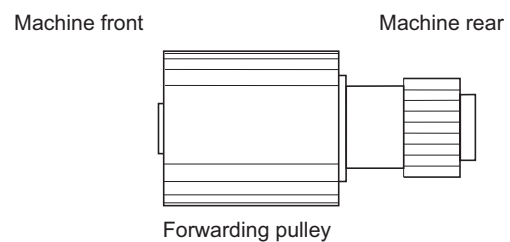
7. Remove two stop rings from the primary paper feed unit.
8. Pull the paper feed pulley shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the paper feed pulley.

**Figure 1-5-6****Removing the separation pulley**

9. Remove the stop ring from the primary paper feed unit.
10. Pull the separation pulley shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the separation pulley.

**Figure 1-5-7**

11. Replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.
12. Install the separation and paper feed pulleys to the primary paper feed unit.
13. Install the forwarding pulley to the forwarding pulley retainer.  
When refitting the forwarding pulley, orient it correctly as shown in Figure 1-5-8.
14. Refit the forwarding pulley retainer to the primary paper feed unit.
15. Refit the primary paper feed unit.

**Figure 1-5-8**

16. When the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley or the primary paper feed unit is replaced, perform maintenance mode U901 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-96).

## (2) Detaching and refitting the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys

Follow the procedure below to replace the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys.

### Procedure

#### Removing the MP unit

1. Remove four screws and remove the right lower cover.

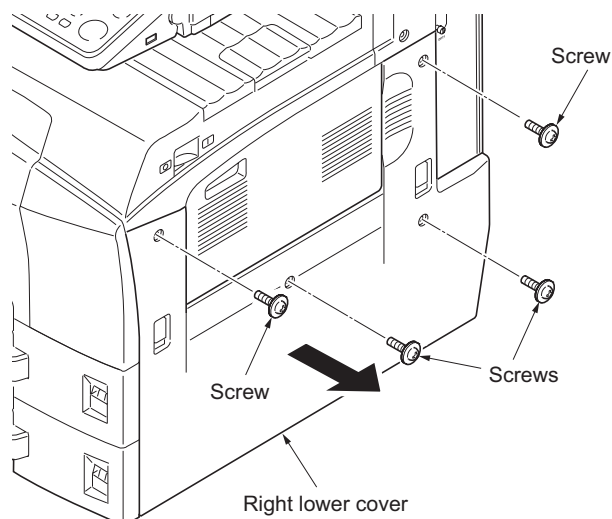


Figure 1-5-9

2. Remove two screws and two MP holder plates.
3. Remove two pins, two screws and two connectors, and then remove the MP unit.

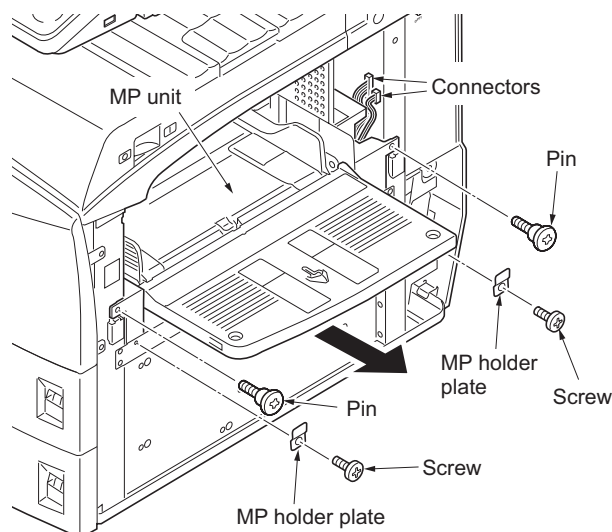


Figure 1-5-10

#### Removing the MP separation pulley

4. Reverse the MP unit and remove the spring and stop ring from the MP separation pulley shaft and move the bushing inside.

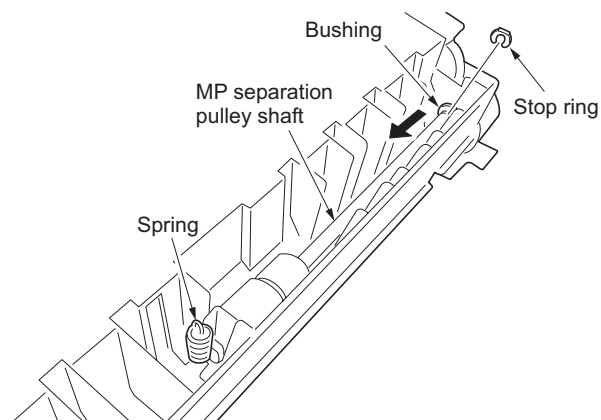


Figure 1-5-11

5. Raise the MP separation shaft as shown in the figure, remove the holder plate and the bushing, and then remove the MP separation pulley.

Take care not to remove the spring pin of the gear at the rear of the MP separation pulley shaft. If it is removed, refit it to its original position.

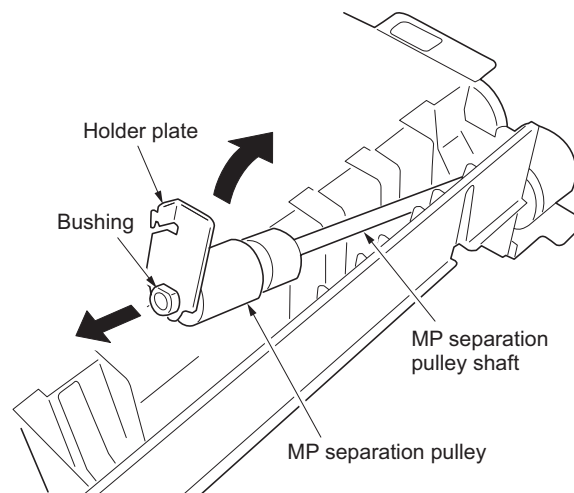


Figure 1-5-12

#### Removing the MP paper feed pulley

6. Remove the connector of the MP paper switch and remove the wire from the three clamps.
7. Remove the screw and remove the MP unit cover.

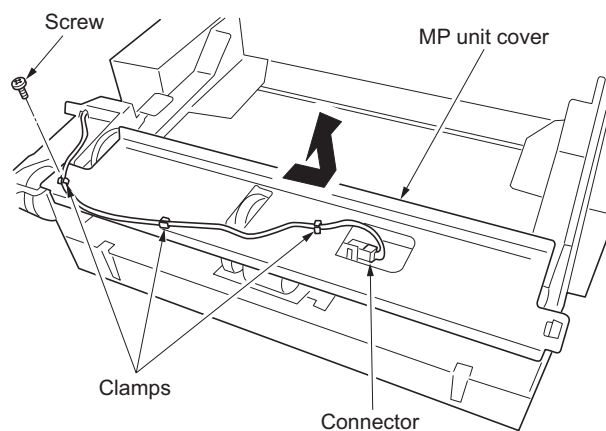


Figure 1-5-13

8. Remove the stop ring and bushing on the front of the MP paper feed pulley shaft.

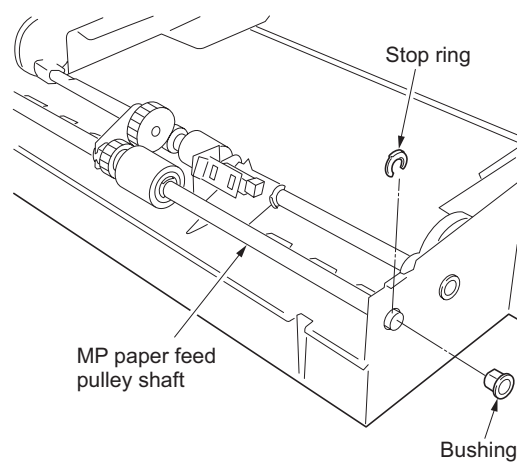


Figure 1-5-14

9. Raise the MP paper feed pulley shaft as shown in the figure, remove the stop ring, and then remove the MP paper feed pulley.

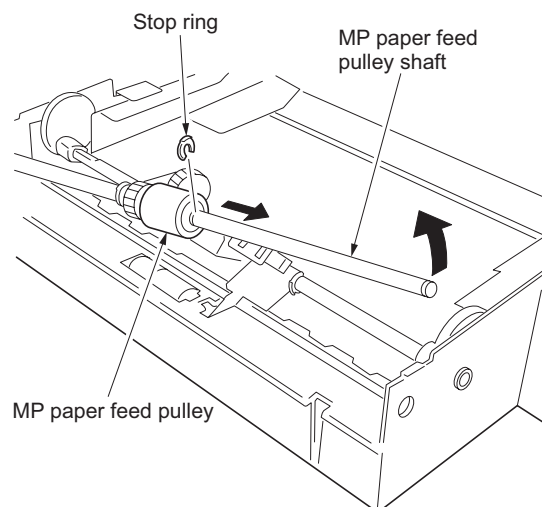


Figure 1-5-15

#### Removing the MP forwarding pulley

10. Remove the sponge.
11. Remove the stop ring and MP paper feed clutch.

When refitting, insert the cutout in the MP paper feed clutch over the stopper on the machine.

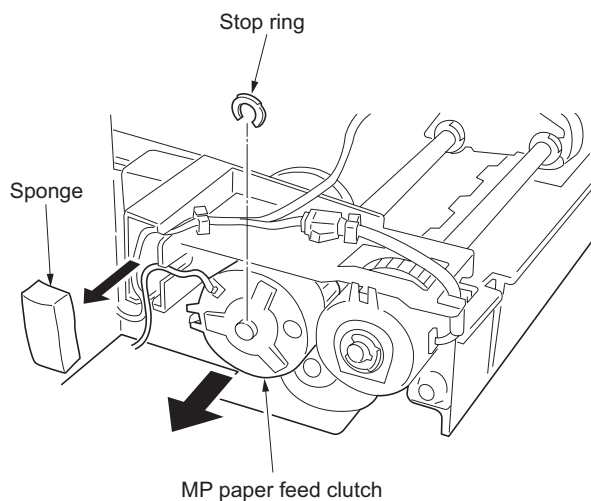


Figure 1-5-16

12. Remove the screw from the cam at the rear of the MP forwarding pulley shaft and move the cam and the bushing toward the inner side.

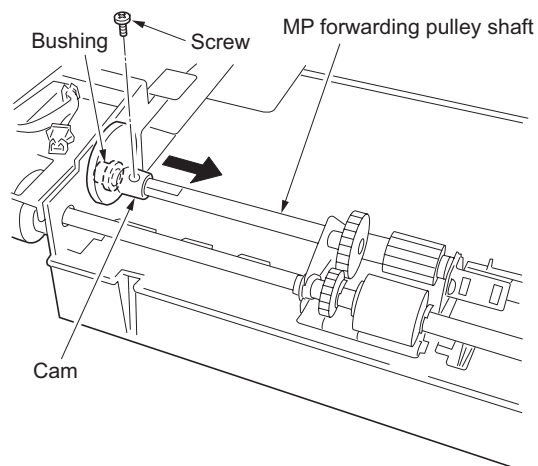
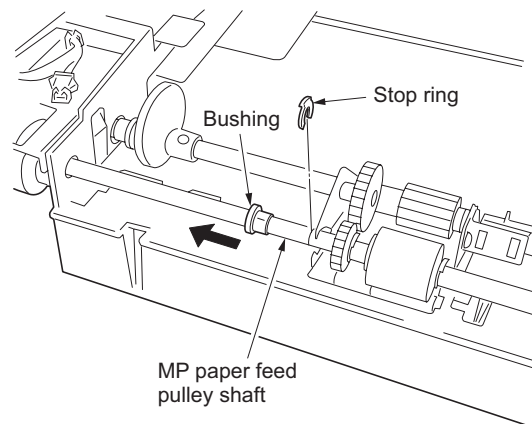


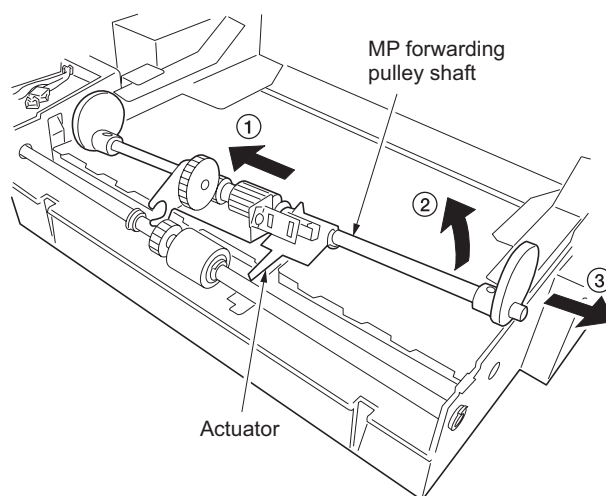
Figure 1-5-17

13. Remove the stop ring of the MP paper feed pulley shaft and slide the bushing in the direction of the arrow.



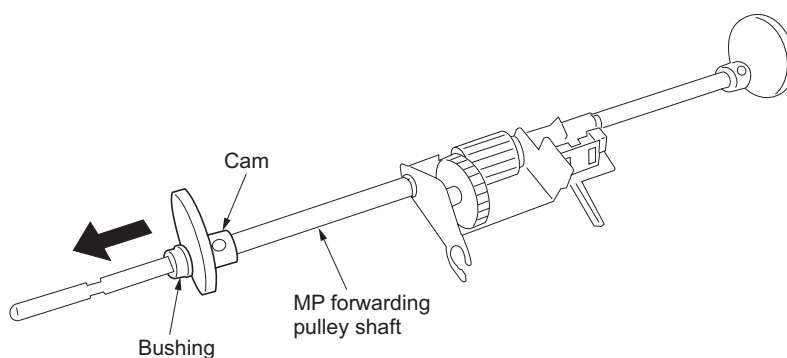
**Figure 1-5-18**

14. Slide the MP forwarding pulley shaft temporarily toward the rear side and then raise it to remove from the MP unit. Remove the shaft while raising the actuator of the MP paper switch.



**Figure 1-5-19**

15. Remove the bushing and cam on the rear of the MP forwarding pulley shaft.



**Figure 1-5-20**

16. Remove the stop ring and slide the MP forwarding pulley with the forwarding pulley retainer from the shaft to remove it.
17. Replace the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys.

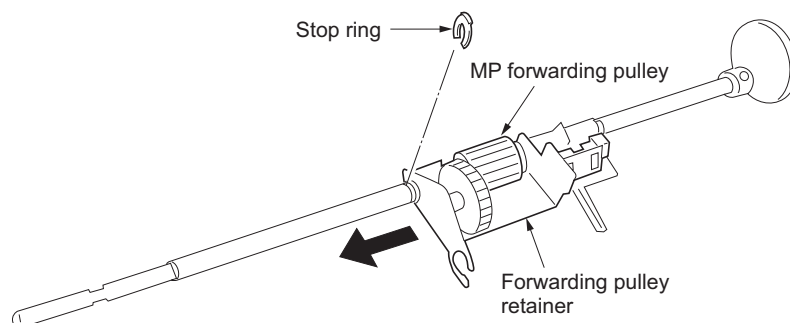


Figure 1-5-21

18. Install the MP forwarding pulley to the MP forwarding pulley shaft.
19. Refit the MP forwarding pulley shaft to the MP unit.
20. Install the MP paper feed pulley to the MP unit.
21. Refit the MP unit cover to the MP unit.  
When refitting the MP unit cover, the films on the cover are positioned under the MP paper feed pulley shaft.
22. Install the MP separation pulley to the MP unit.
23. Refit the MP unit.

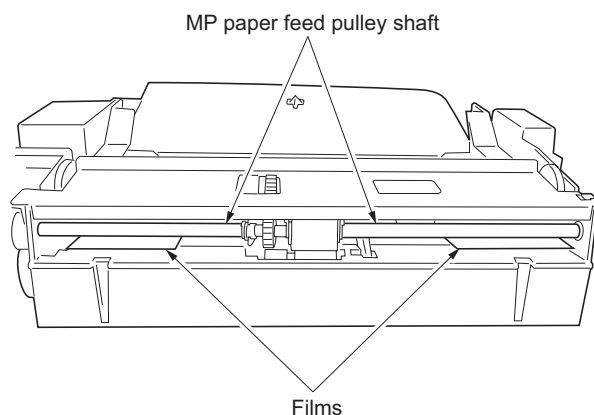


Figure 1-5-22

24. When the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or the MP separation pulley is replaced, perform maintenance mode U901 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-96).

### (3) Detaching and refitting the left and right registration cleaner

Take the following procedure when the left or right registration cleaner is to be replaced.

#### Procedure

##### Removing the left registration cleaner

1. Open the left cover 1 and remove the transfer roller unit. (see page 1-5-29).
2. Remove two roller stoppers and remove the left registration roller.
3. Remove two registration guides.

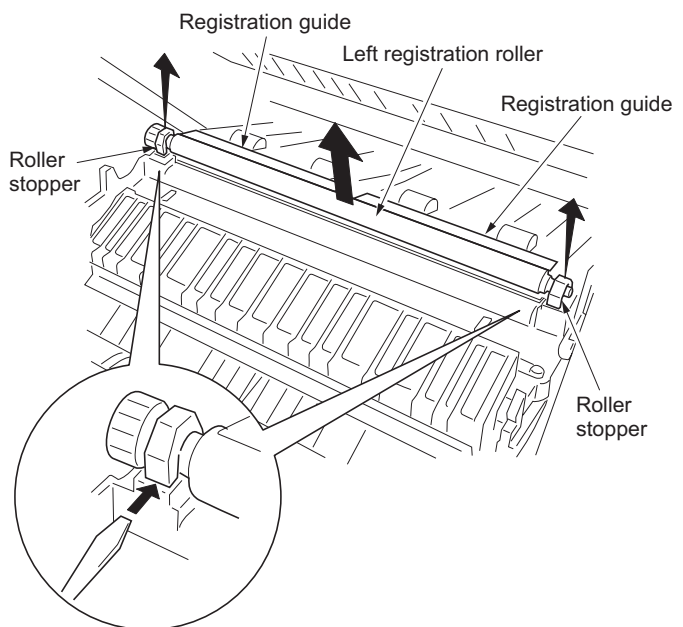


Figure 1-5-23

4. Remove the left registration cleaner.
5. Replace the left registration cleaner and registration guides.  
Install the left registration cleaner and registration guides.
6. Refit the left registration roller, roller stoppers and transfer roller unit.

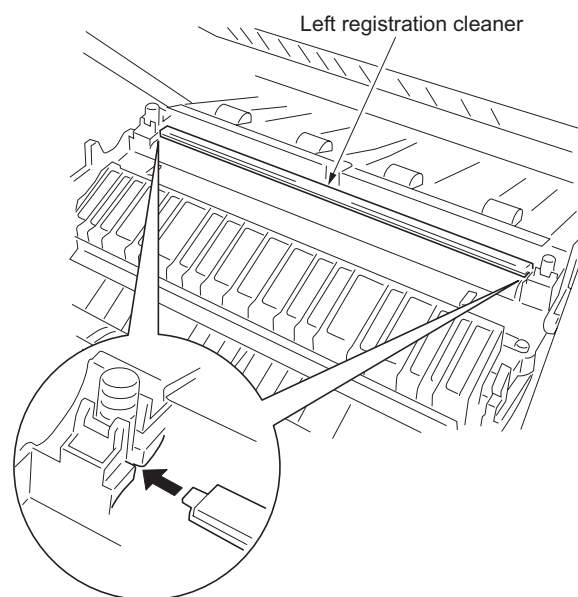
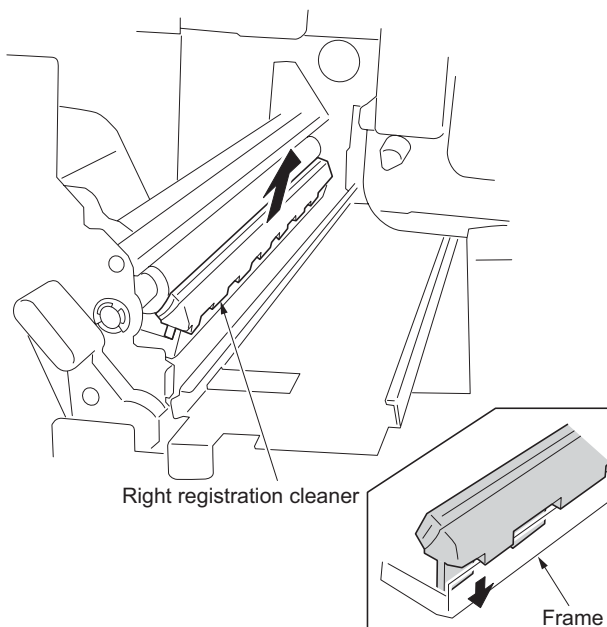


Figure 1-5-24

**Removing the right registration cleaner**

1. Remove the developing unit and drum unit.  
(see pages 1-5-28 and 1-5-25).
2. Remove the right registration cleaner.
3. Replace the right registration cleaner and  
Install the cleaner.
4. Refit the drum unit and developing unit.

**Figure 1-5-25**

### 1-5-3 Optical section

#### (1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp

Replace the exposure lamp as follows.

##### Procedure

1. Remove the original cover or the DP.
2. Remove the ISU filter cover.
3. Remove ten screws and then remove the rear cover.

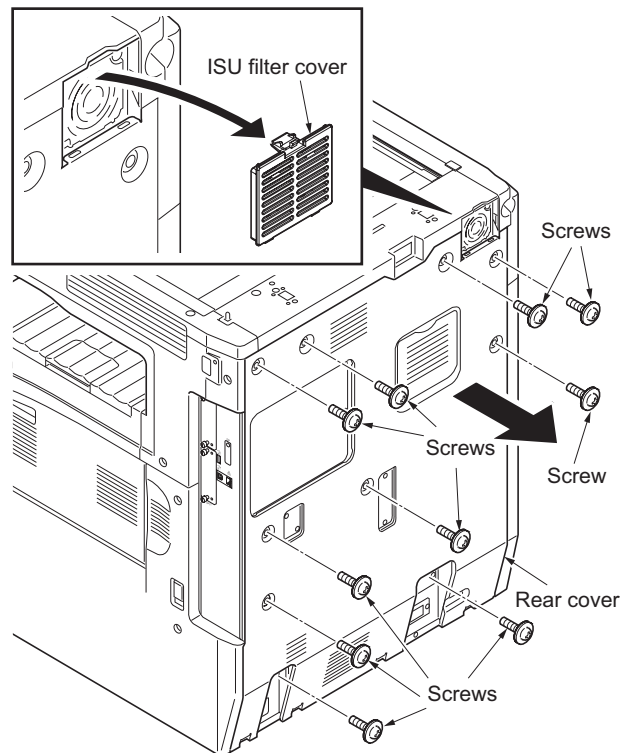


Figure 1-5-26

4. Remove the clip holder.
5. Open the front cover and left cover 1.
6. Remove four screws and remove front left cover.

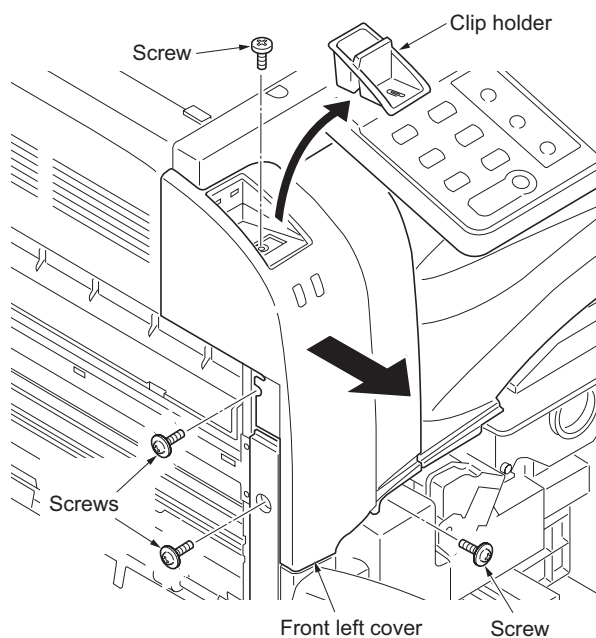


Figure 1-5-27

7. Remove the screw and pin.
8. Remove the left upper cover.

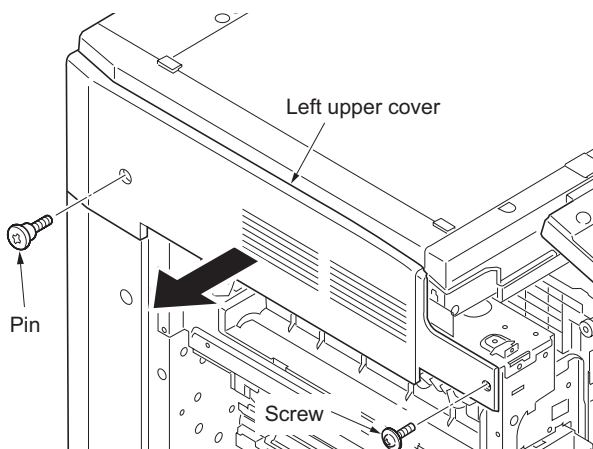


Figure 1-5-28

9. Remove two screws and then remove the scanner left cover.

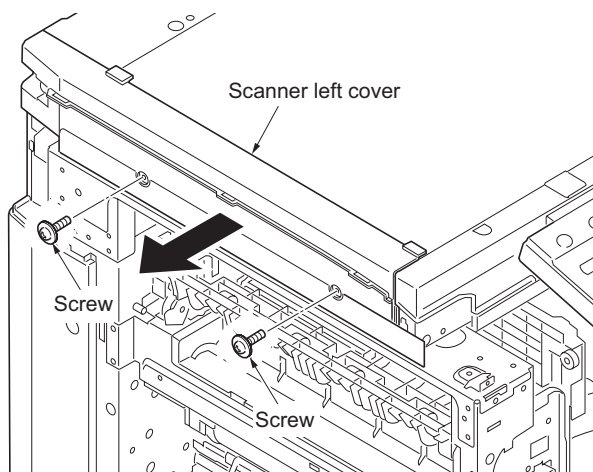


Figure 1-5-29

10. Remove two screws and then remove the scanner right cover.
11. Remove the contact glass.

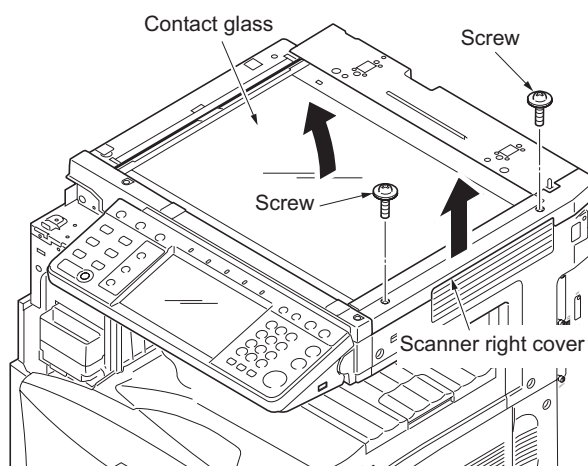


Figure 1-5-30

12. Remove the connector from the inverter PWB.
13. Draw the connector into the machine inside from opening.

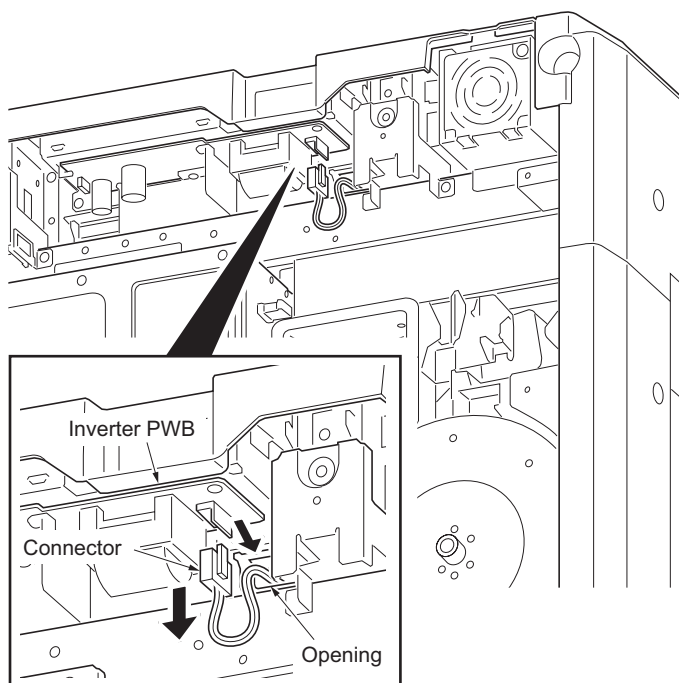


Figure 1-5-31

14. Remove the sponge from the wire guide and release the wire.
15. Move the mirror 1 frame to notch position.
16. Release the wire holder and then remove the wire.

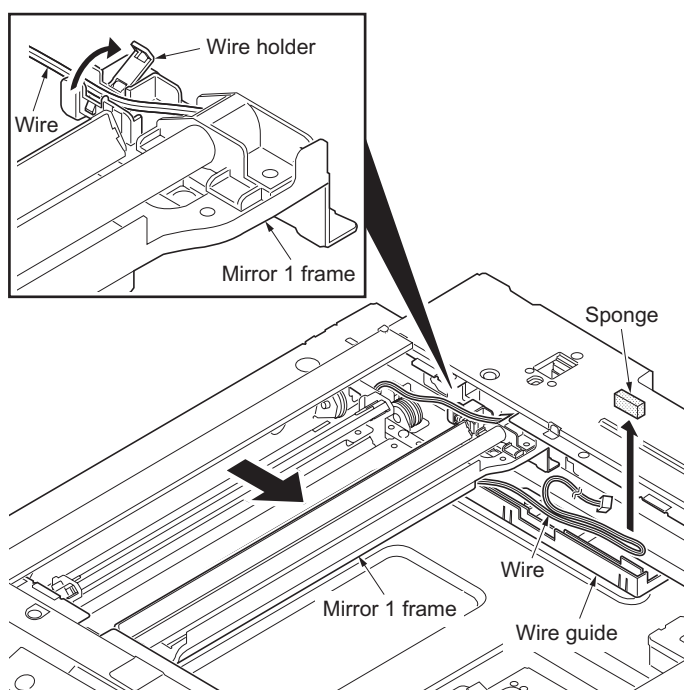
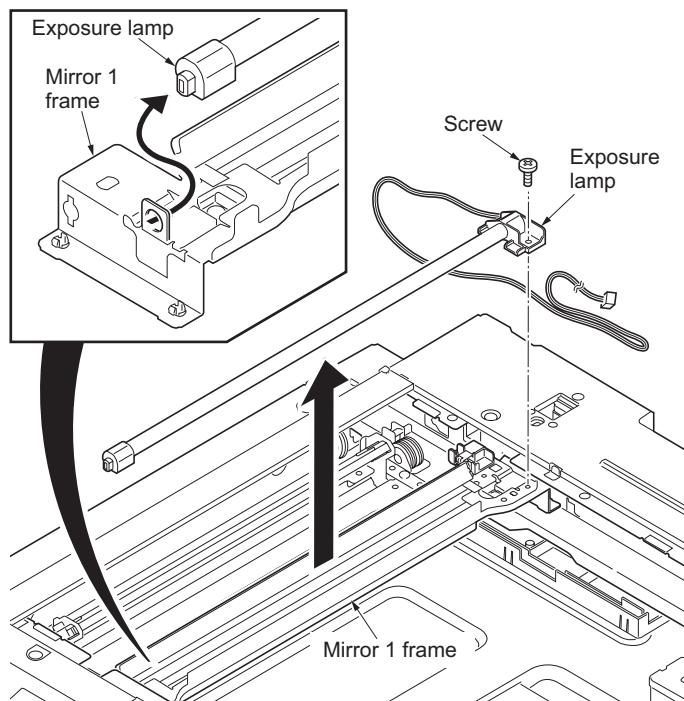


Figure 1-5-32

17. Remove the screw and then remove the exposure lamp from mirror 1 frame.
18. Check or replace the exposure lamp and then install the lamp.
19. Refit all the removed parts.

**Figure 1-5-33**

## (2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires

Take the following procedure when the scanner wires are broken or to be replaced.

### NOTE

When fitting the wires, be sure to use those specified below.

Machine front: (P/N: 302H717380), black

Machine rear: (P/N: 302H717390), gray

### Fitting requires the following tools

Two frame securing tools (P/N 302FZ17100)

Two scanner wire stoppers (P/N 3596811)

### Procedure

#### Detaching the scanner wires

1. Remove the exposure lamp (see page 1-5-12).
2. Remove each screw and then remove front and rear wire holder plates from mirror 1 frame.
3. Remove the mirror 1 frame.

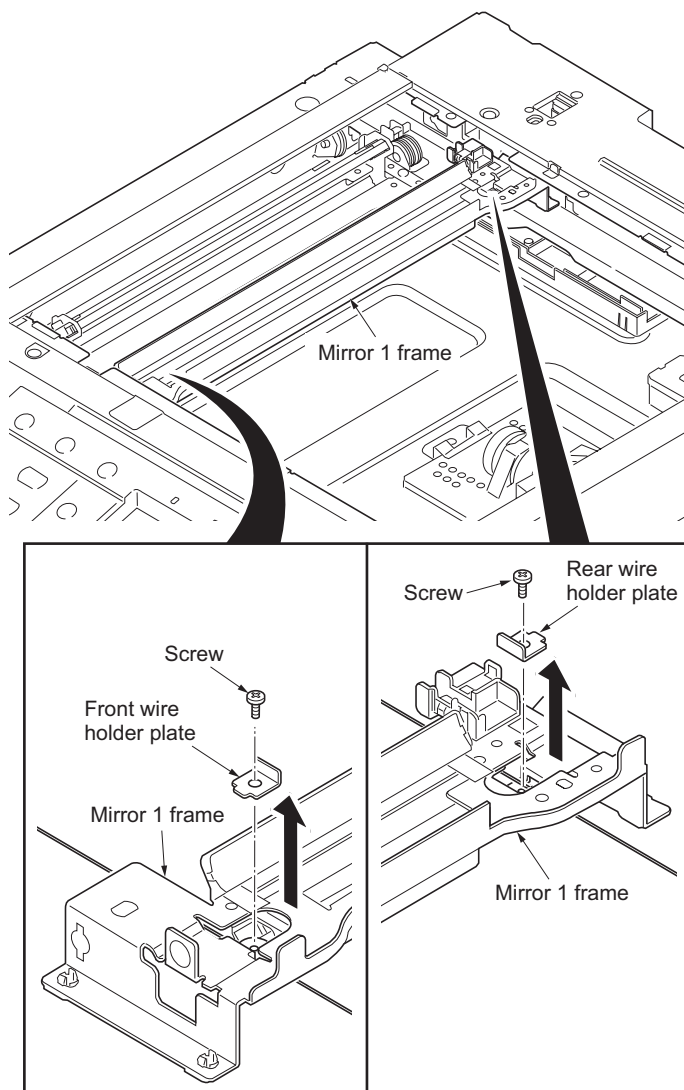


Figure 1-5-34

4. Remove the round terminals from the scanner wire springs on scanner unit left side.
5. Remove the scanner wire.

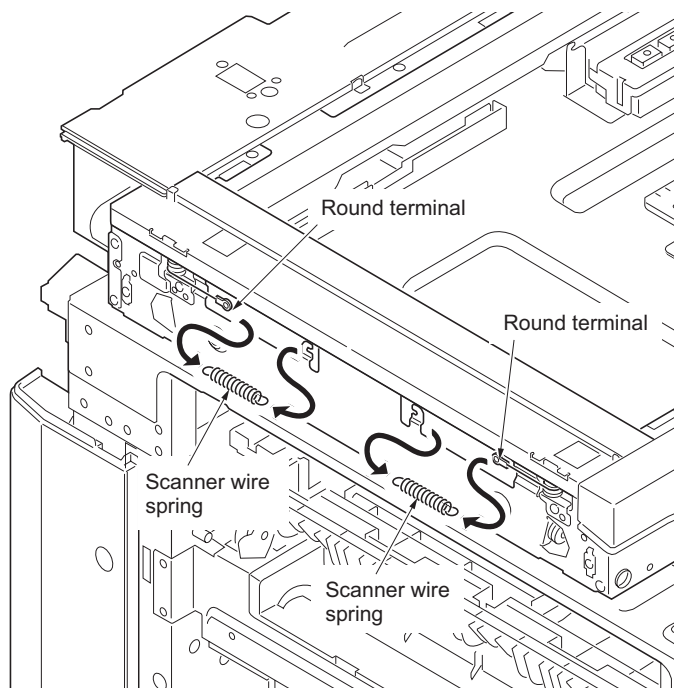


Figure 1-5-35

#### Fitting the scanner wires

6. Move the mirror 2 frame as shown in the figure and insert two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the machine center to fix the mirror 2 frame in position.

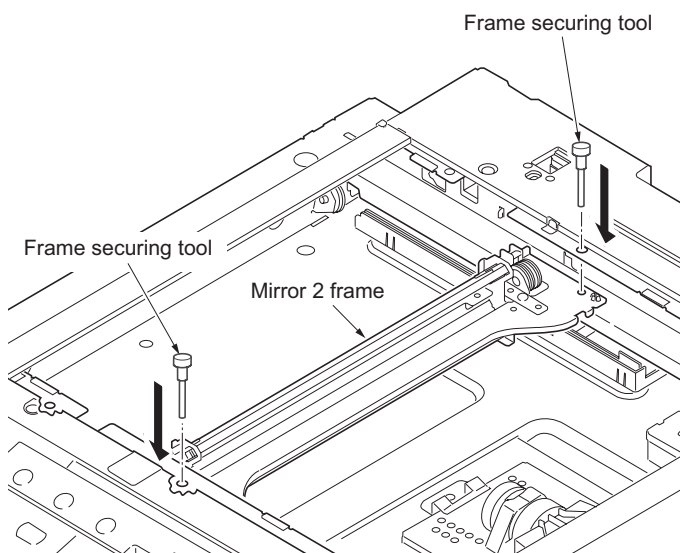


Figure 1-5-36

7. Hook the round terminals onto the catches inside of the scanner unit. . . . . (1)
8. Loop the scanner wires around the outer grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above. . . . . (2)
9. Loop the scanner wire around the groove in the scanner wire pulley at the scanner unit right, winding from above to below. . . . . (3)
10. Wind the scanner wires around the scanner wire drum five turns from the rear toward the hole in the drum. . . . . (4)
11. Insert the locating ball on the scanner wire into the hole in the scanner wire drum. . . . . (5)
12. Wind the scanner wires three turns from the inner toward the hole in the drum. . . . . (6)
13. Install the scanner wire stoppers to the scanner wire drum to fix the wires. . . . . (7)
14. Loop the scanner wire around the groove in the scanner wire pulley at the scanner unit left, winding from below to above. . . . . (8)
15. Loop the scanner wires around the inner grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above. . . . . (9)
16. Hook the scanner wires around the scanner wire guides at the machine left. . . . . (10)
17. Hook the round terminal onto the scanner wire spring. . . . . (11)

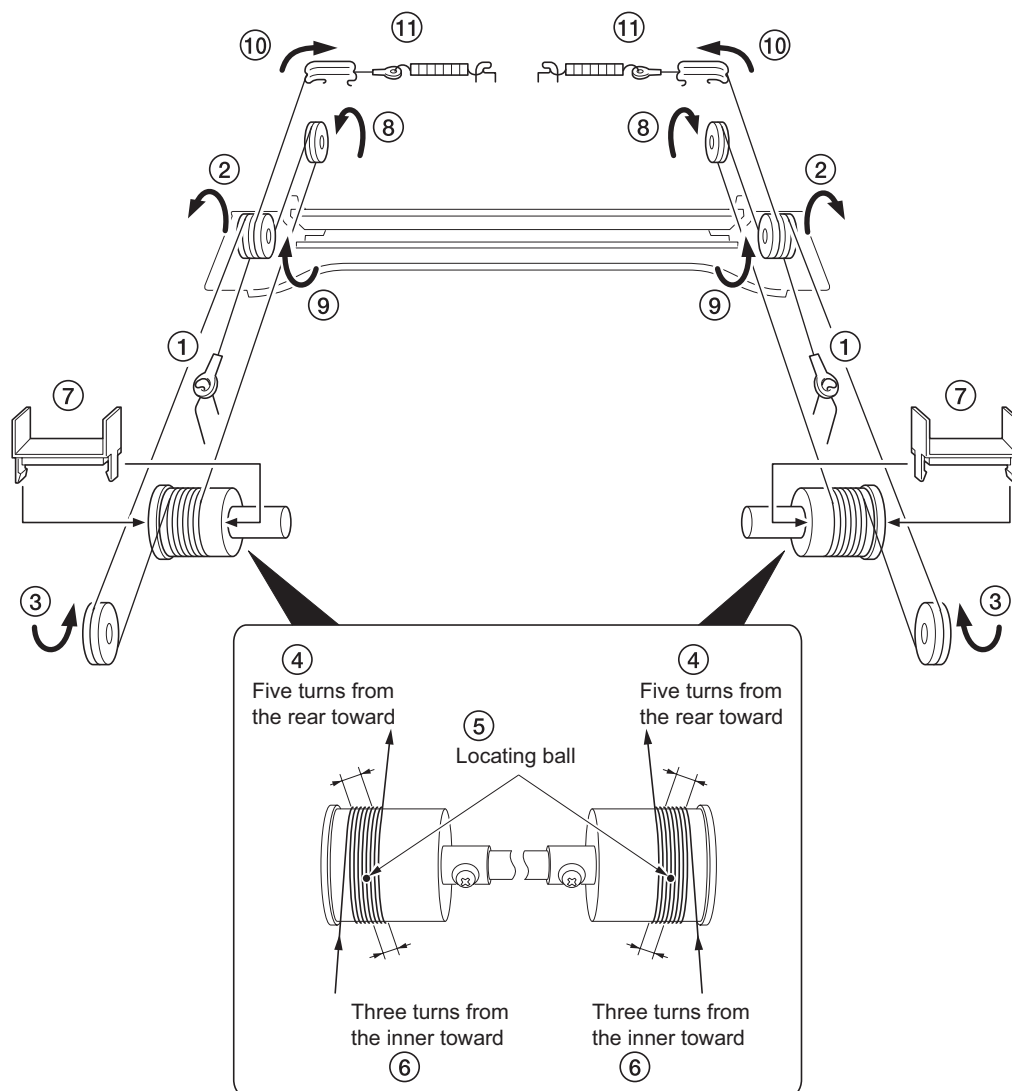
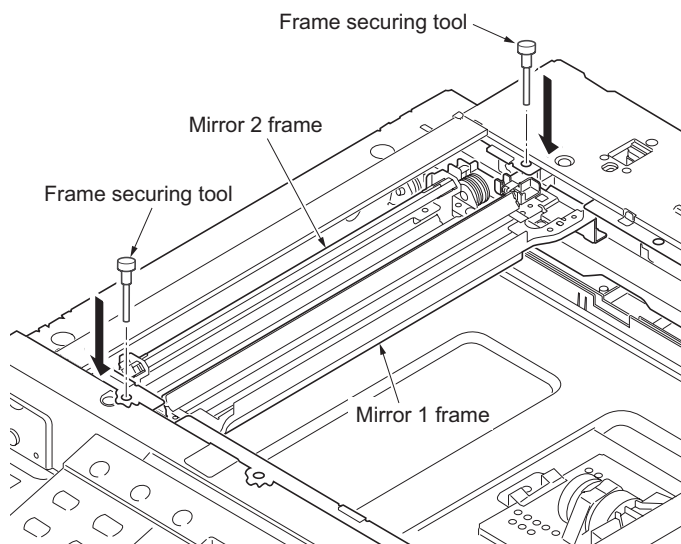


Figure 1-5-37

18. Remove the two scanner wire stoppers and frame securing tools.
19. Focusing on the locating ball of the wire drum, move aside the wires to inside.
20. Move the mirror 2 frame from side to side to correctly locate the wires in position.
21. Refit the mirror 1 frame.
22. Move the mirror 1 and 2 frames to the machine left, and insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to secure the frames in position.
23. Hold the wires and fix each front and rear wire holder plate to mirror 1 frame with the screw.
24. Remove the two frame securing tools.
25. Refit the exposure lamp.

**Figure 1-5-38**

### (3) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference)

Follow the procedure below to replace the ISU.

#### Fitting requires the following tools

Two positions pins (P/N 18568120)

#### Procedure

##### Detaching the ISU

1. Remove the contact glass (see page 1-5-12).
2. Remove seven screws and then remove the ISU cover.

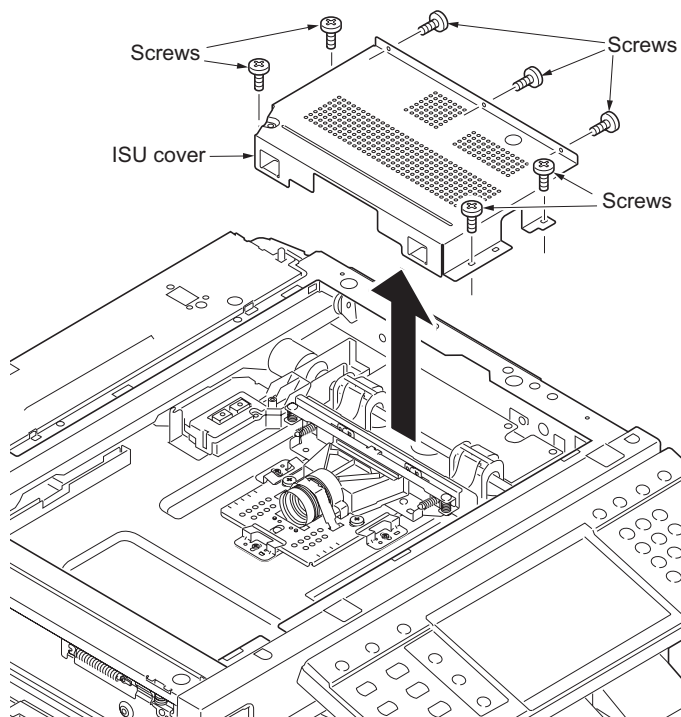


Figure 1-5-39

3. Remove three screws and two connectors, and then remove the ISU.
4. Check or replace the ISU.

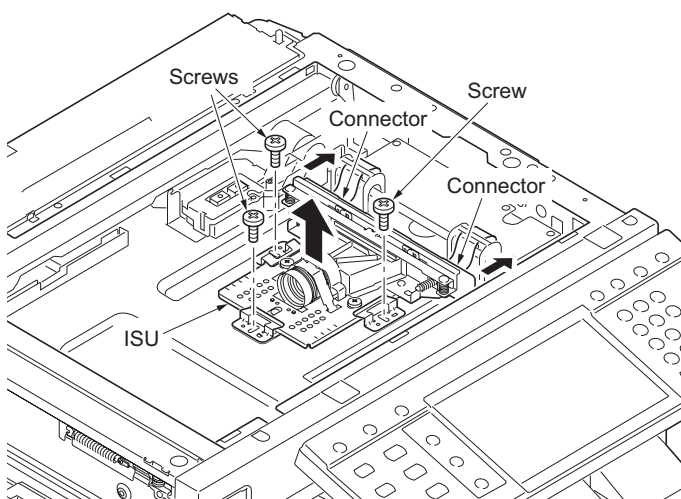


Figure 1-5-40

### Refitting the ISU

5. Adjust the position of ISU to the frame hole of number and the same number which are recorded in the lens of ISU and then insert two positioning pins.

Example: When a lens number is 5, move ISU so that the positioning hole of 5 of the number stamped in the scanner unit suit and insert two pins.

6. Remove two positioning pins after fixing ISU with three screws.

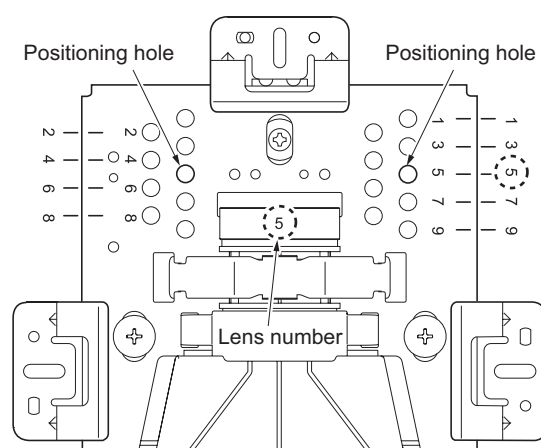
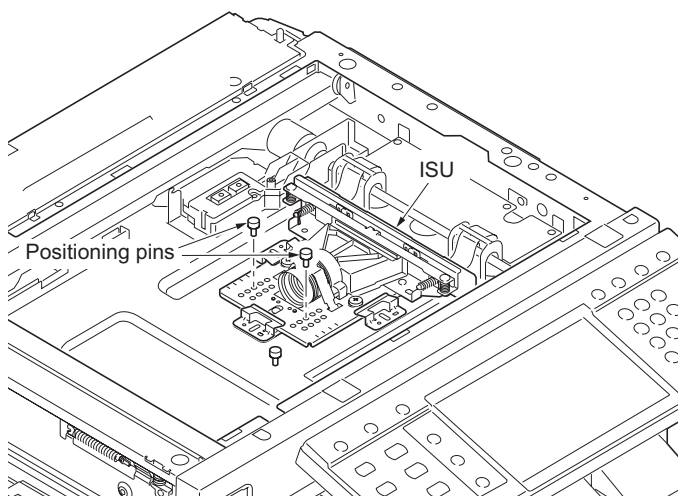


Figure 1-5-41

7. Refit two connectors.
8. Refit the ISU cover.  
Screw tightening order  
1) Three screws A  
2) Four screws B
9. Refit the contact glass.

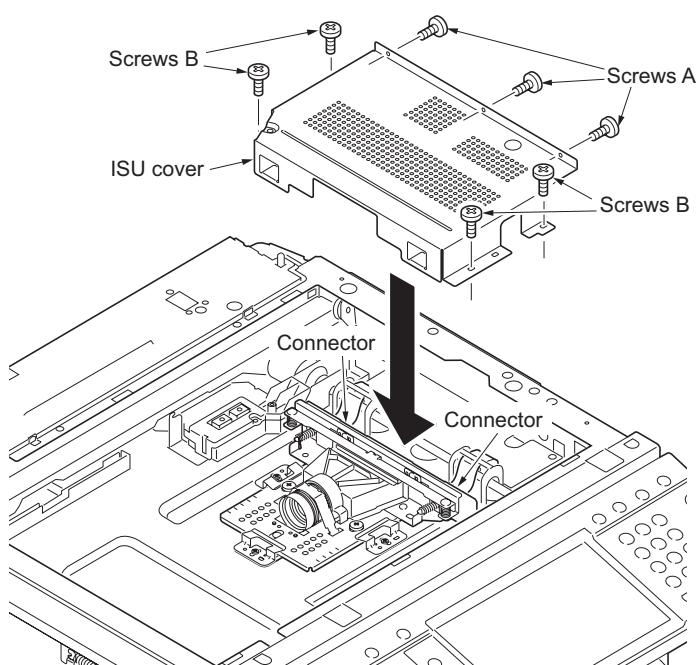


Figure 1-5-42

#### (4) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit

Take the following procedure when the laser scanner unit is to be replaced.

##### Procedure

1. Remove the developing unit and drum unit (see pages 1-5-28 and 1-5-25).
2. Remove the right lower cover and front left cover (see pages 1-5-5 and 1-5-12).
3. Remove four screws and remove the front right cover.

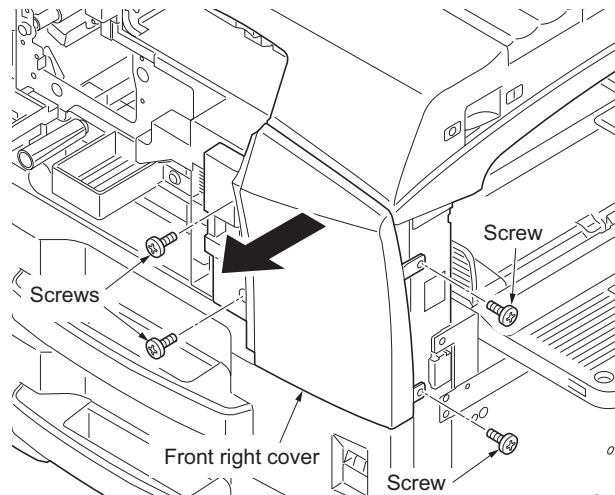


Figure 1-5-43

4. Remove three screws and remove the top tray.

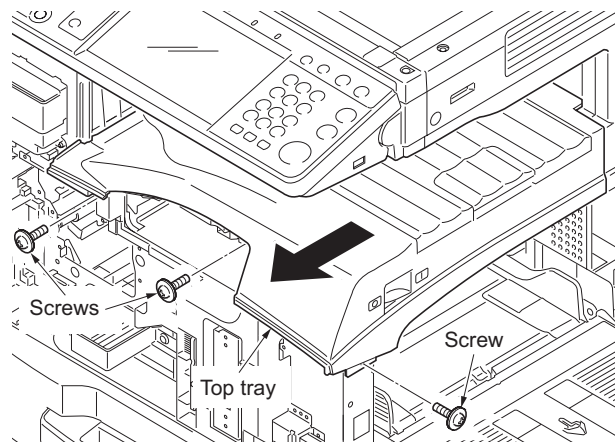


Figure 1-5-44

5. Remove five screws and remove the inner cover.

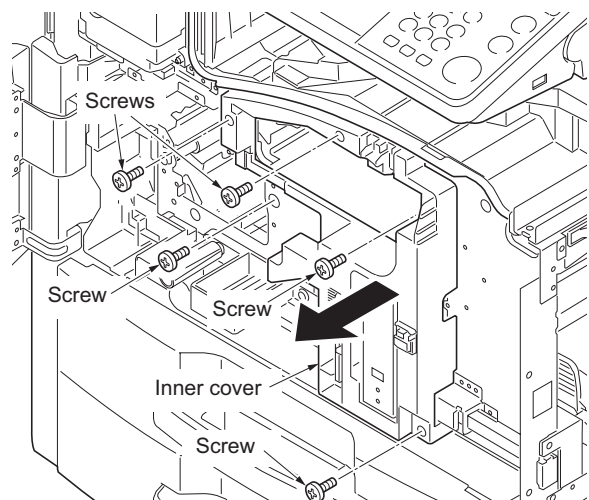


Figure 1-5-45

6. Remove two screws and two connectors, and then remove the fan duct.

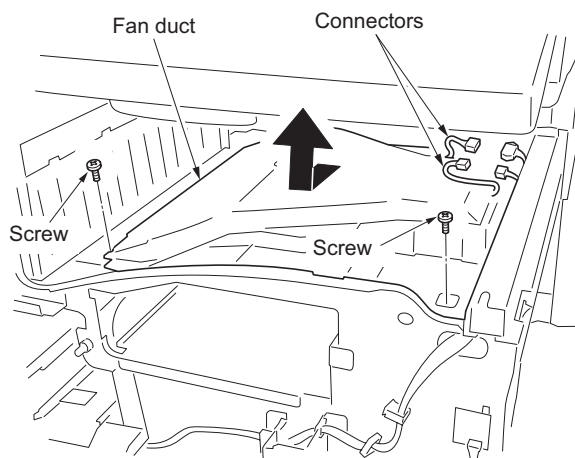


Figure 1-5-46

7. Remove six screws and remove the toner container retainer.

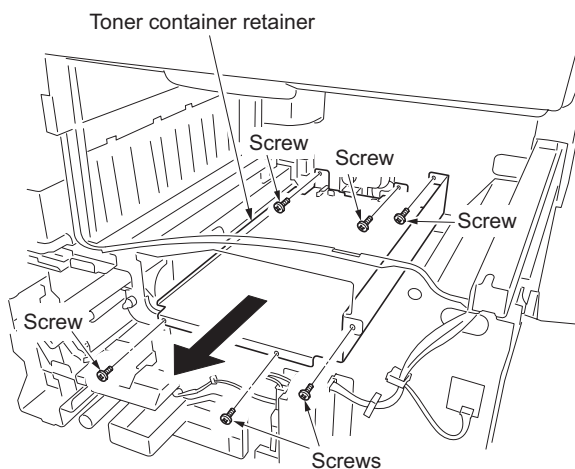


Figure 1-5-47

8. Remove two pins, two springs, one screw and one connector.
9. Remove the laser scanner unit.
10. Replace the laser scanner unit and install the unit.
11. Refit the toner container retainer, fan duct and inner cover.
12. Refit the top tray, front right cover, right lower cover and front left cover.
13. Refit the drum unit and the developing unit.

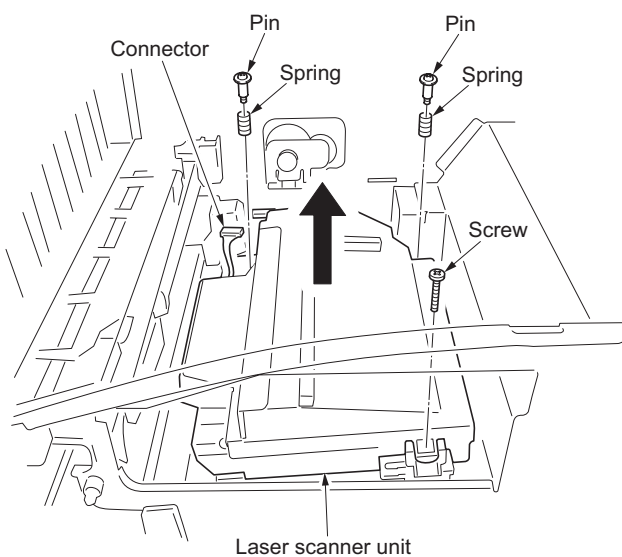


Figure 1-5-48

### (5) Adjusting the skew of the laser scanner unit (reference)

Perform the following adjustment if the leading and trailing edges of the copy image are laterally skewed (lateral squareness not obtained).

#### Procedure

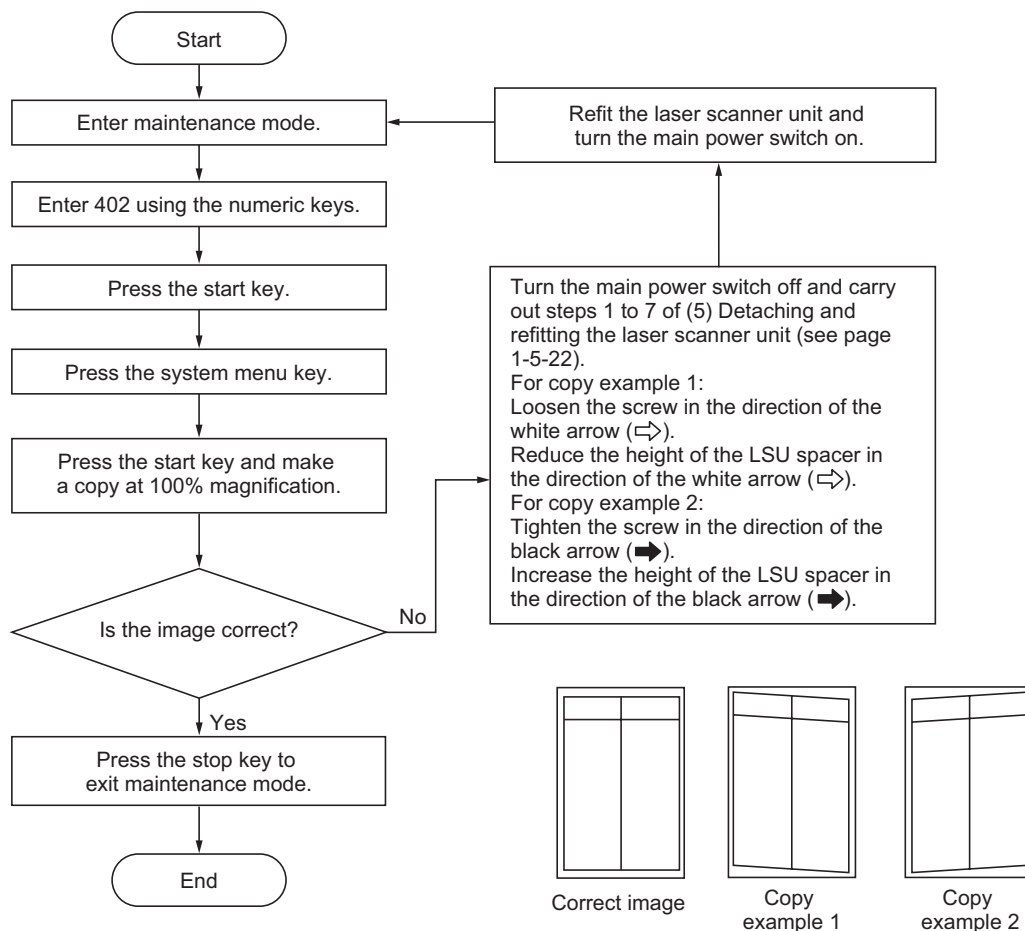


Figure 1-5-49

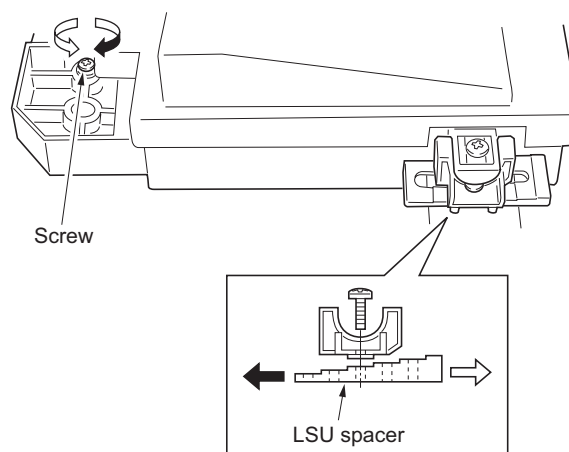


Figure 1-5-50

## 1-5-4 Drum section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the drum unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum unit.

#### Cautions:

Avoid direct sunlight or strong light when detaching and refitting the drum unit.  
Never touch the drum surface when holding the drum unit.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the developing unit (see page 1-5-28).
2. Remove the main charger unit (see page 1-5-26).
3. Remove the screw and the drum unit.
4. Replace the drum unit and install the unit.

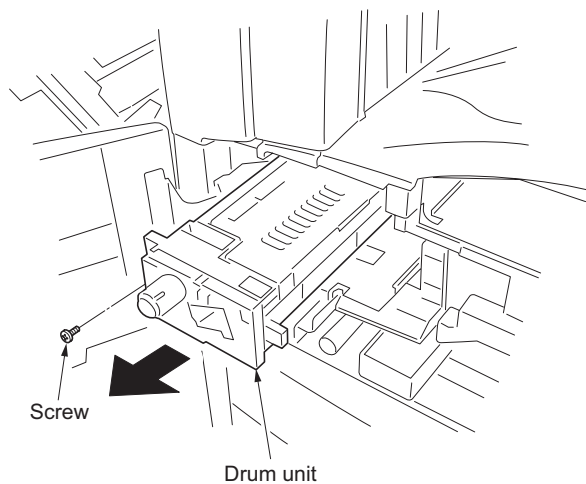


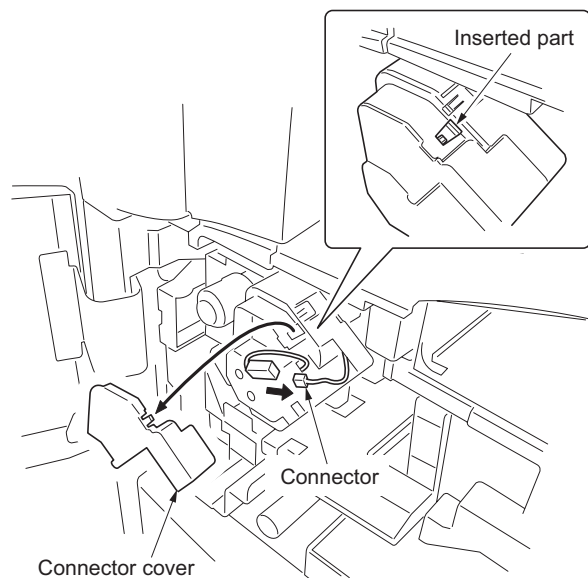
Figure 1-5-51

**(2) Detaching and refitting the main charger unit**

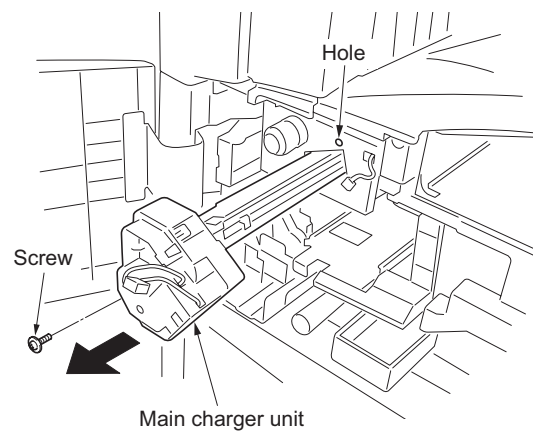
Follow the procedure below to replace the main charger unit.

**Procedure**

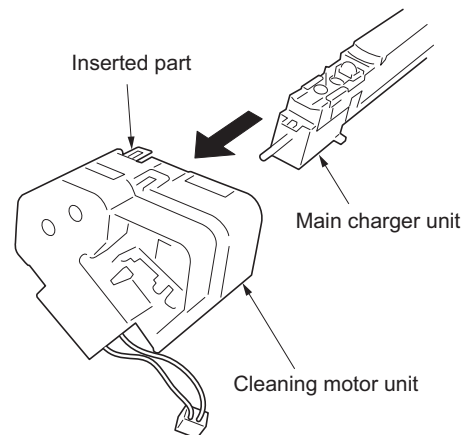
1. Remove the developing unit (see page 1-5-28).
2. Release the inserted part and remove the connector cover.
3. Remove the connector.

**Figure 1-5-52**

4. Remove the screw.
5. While pushing the hole with a sharp-pointed object, remove the main charger unit.

**Figure 1-5-53**

6. Release the inserted part and remove the cleaning motor unit from the main charger unit.
7. Replace the main charger unit.
8. Refit the cleaning motor unit to the main charger unit.
9. Install the main charger unit.

**Figure 1-5-54**

### (3) Detaching and refitting the drum separation claws

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum separation claws.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the developing unit (see page 1-5-28).
2. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-25).
3. Remove two screws and remove the lower cleaning seal.

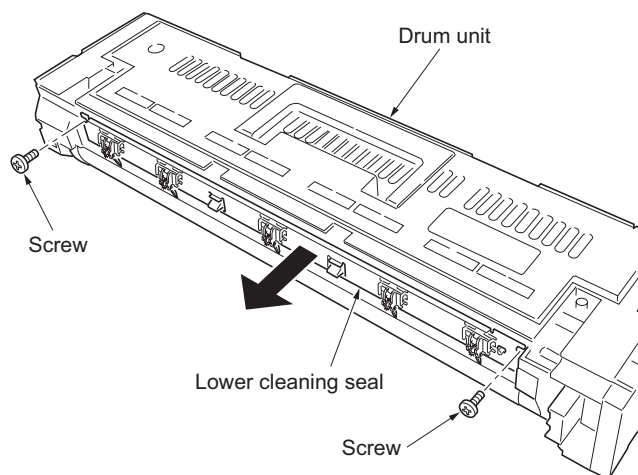


Figure 1-5-55

4. Release the inserted part and remove the drum separation claws from the lower cleaning seal.
5. Replace the drum separation claws and install the claws.
6. Refit the lower cleaning seal to the drum unit.
7. Refit the drum unit and developing unit.

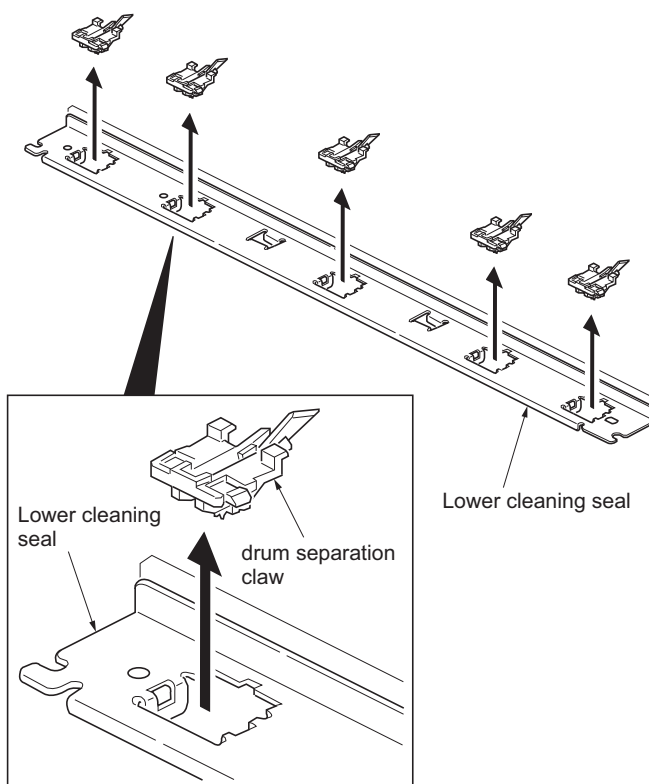


Figure 1-5-56

## 1-5-5 Developing section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the developing unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the developing unit.

#### Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the toner container and waste toner box.
3. Remove the pin and turn the developing release lever in the direction of the arrow.

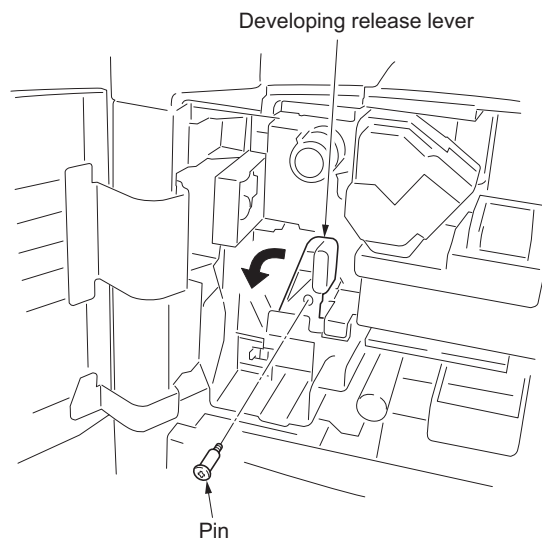


Figure 1-5-57

4. Remove the developing unit.
5. Replace the developing unit and install the unit.
6. Perform maintenance mode U130 (see page 1-3-49).

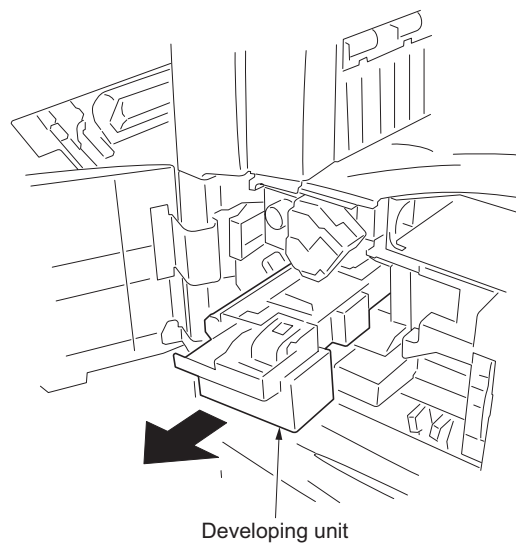


Figure 1-5-58

## 1-5-6 Transfer section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the transfer roller unit.

#### Procedure

1. Open the left cover 1.
2. While holding down the projection, slide the transfer roller unit toward the front to remove it.
3. Replace the transfer roller unit and install the unit.
4. Perform maintenance mode U127 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-48).

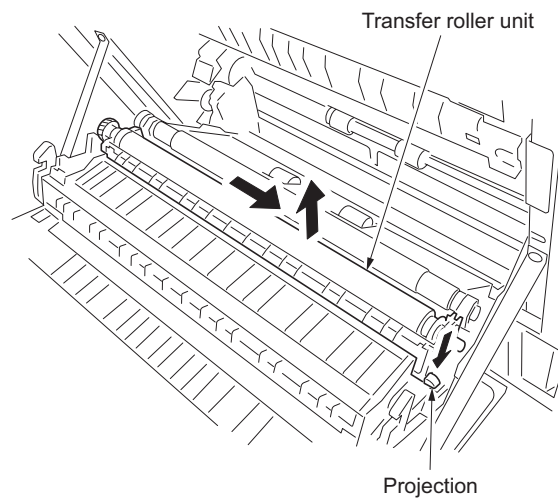


Figure 1-5-59

## 1-5-7 Fuser section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit

Follow the procedure below to check or replace the fuser unit.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the clip holder.
2. Open the front cover and left cover 1.
3. Remove four screws and remove front left cover.

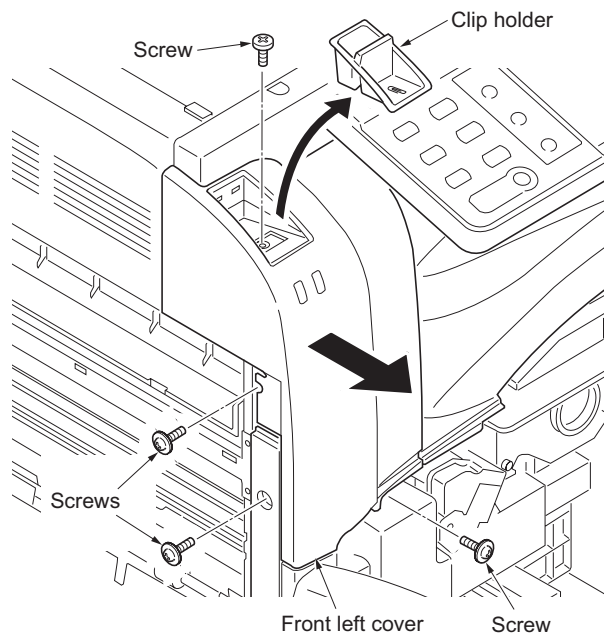


Figure 1-5-60

4. Remove the screw and remove the fuser unit.
5. Check or replace the fuser unit and install the unit.
6. Perform maintenance mode U167 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-52).

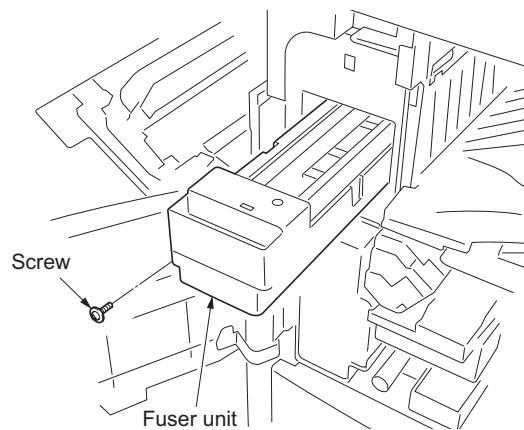


Figure 1-5-61

## (2) Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws

Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller separation claws.

### Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the two pins and remove the upper fuser cover while holding the four claws.

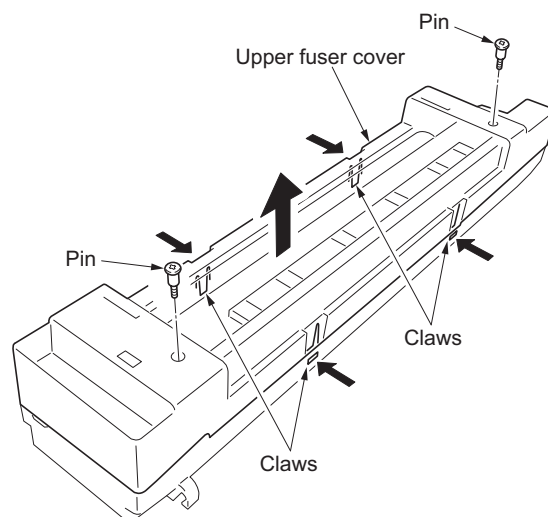


Figure 1-5-62

3. Remove the heat roller separation claws from the upper fuser cover.
4. Replace the heat roller separation claws and install the claws to upper fuser cover.
5. Refit the upper fuser cover.
6. Refit the fuser unit.

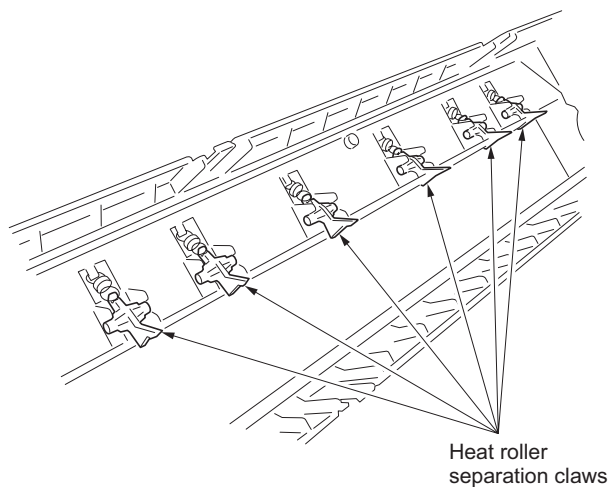


Figure 1-5-63

### (3) Detaching and refitting the press roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the press roller.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-31).
3. Remove the front and rear press springs.

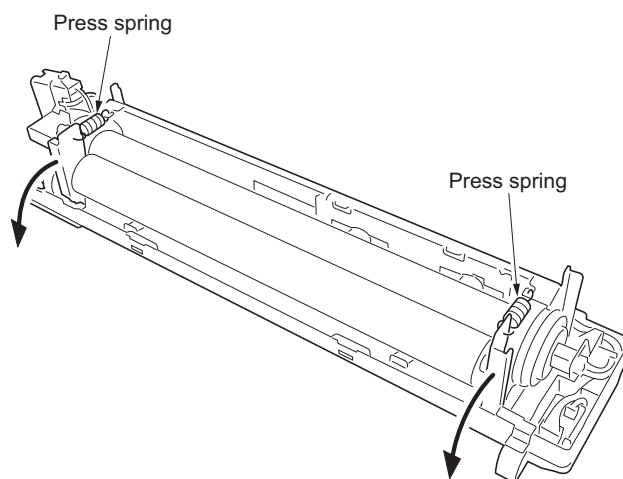


Figure 1-5-64

4. Remove the press roller from the fuser unit.
5. Replace the press roller and install the roller to fuser unit.
6. Refit the upper fuser cover.
7. Refit the fuser unit.

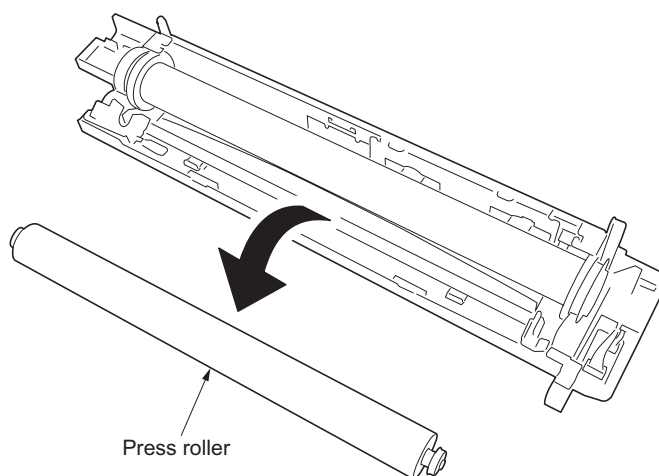


Figure 1-5-65

#### (4) Detaching and refitting the fuser heater

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser heater.

##### Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-31).
3. Remove two screws and the connector.

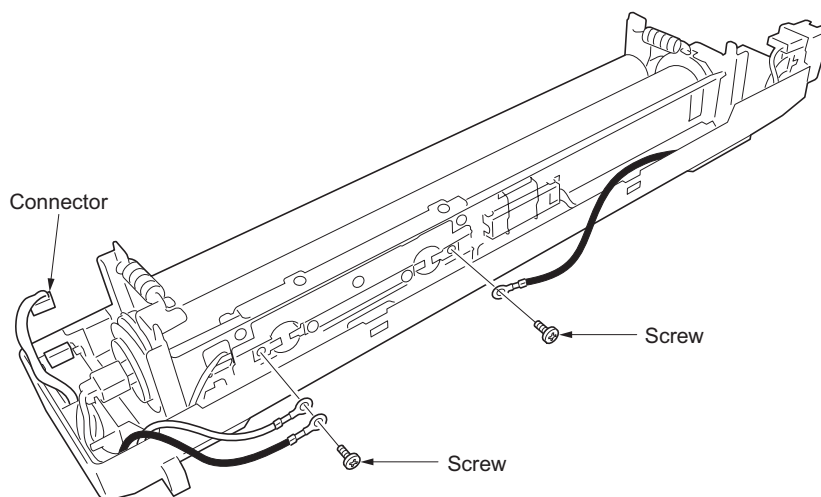


Figure 1-5-66

4. Pull out the fuser heater from the fuser unit.

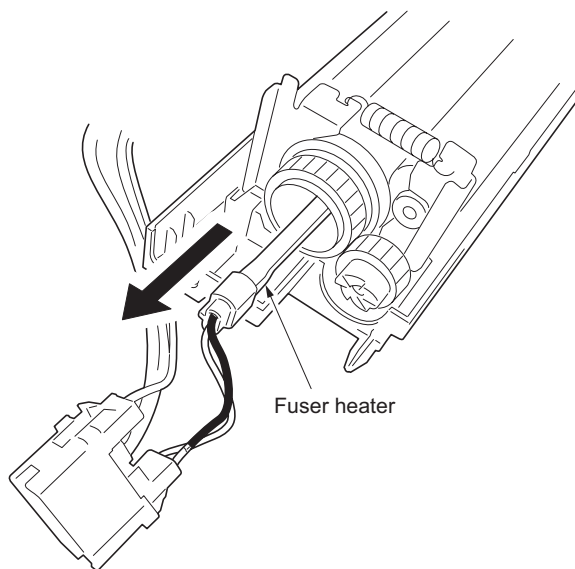


Figure 1-5-67

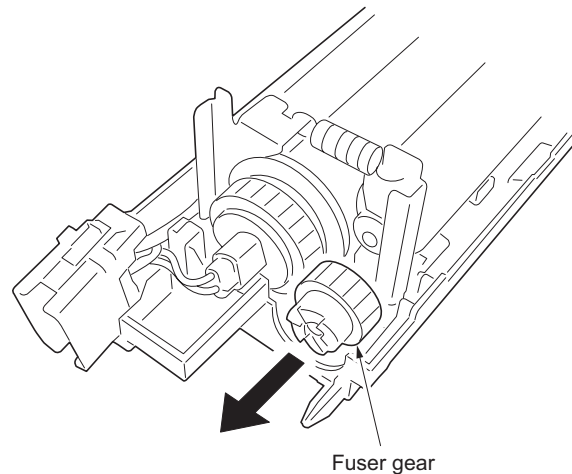
5. Replace the fuser heater and install the heater to fuser unit.
6. Refit the upper fuser cover.
7. Refit the fuser unit.

**(5) Detaching and refitting the heat roller**

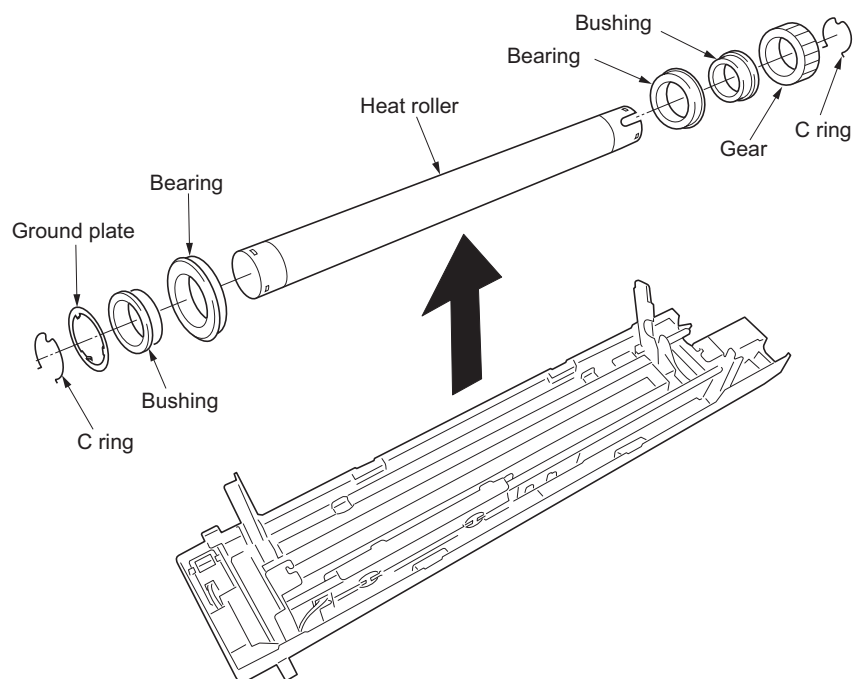
Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller.

**Procedure**

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-31).
3. Remove the press roller and fuser heater (see page 1-5-32 and 1-5-33).
4. Remove the fuser gear.

**Figure 1-5-68**

5. Remove the heat roller from the fuser unit. Remove the C ring, gear, bearing and bushing on the rear side of the heat roller and remove the C ring, ground plate, bearing and bushing on the front side.
6. Replace the heat roller and install the roller to the fuser unit.

**Figure 1-5-69**

7. Refit the fuser gear.
8. Refit the fuser heater, press roller and upper fuser cover.
9. Refit the fuser unit.

## (6) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermistor 1 and 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser thermistor 1 and 2.

### Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the upper fuser cover (see page 1-5-31).
3. Release the stopper of the fuser thermistor 2.
4. Remove the connector and remove the fuser thermistor 2.
5. Replace the fuser thermistor 2 and install the thermistor to fuser unit.

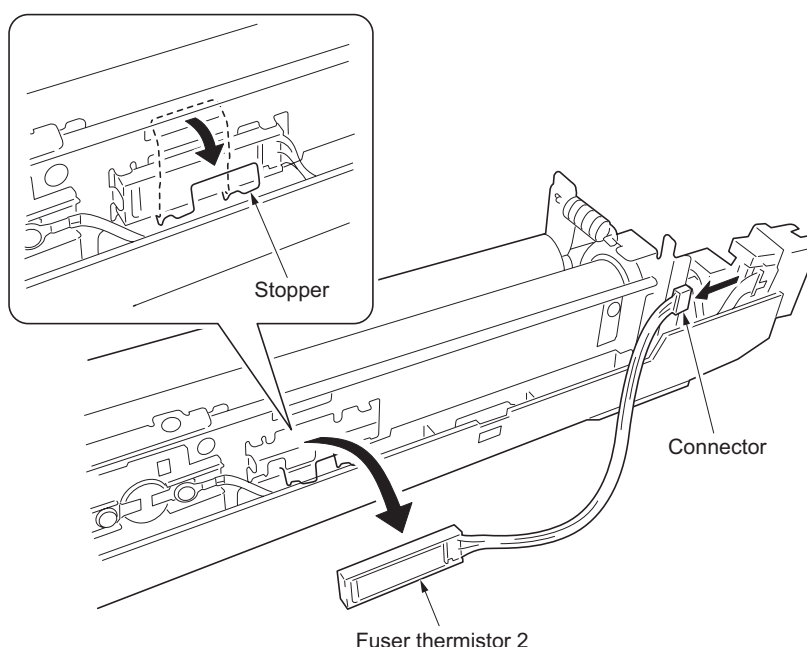


Figure 1-5-70

6. Remove the press roller and fuser heater (see page 1-5-32 and 1-5-33).
7. Remove the heat roller (see page 1-5-34).
8. Remove the screw and the connector, and then remove the fuser thermistor 1.
9. Replace the fuser thermistor 1 and install the thermistor to fuser unit.
10. Refit the heat roller, fuser heater, press roller and upper fuser cover.
11. Refit the fuser unit.

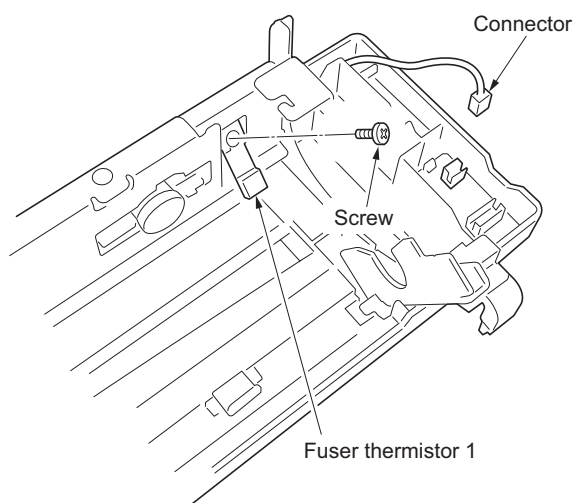


Figure 1-5-71

### (7) Adjusting front position of the fuser unit (adjusting lateral squareness)

Follow the procedure below if the drum is not parallel to the fuser unit and therefore paper is not fed straight to the fuser section and the trailing edge of image on either the front or rear side becomes longer.

#### Procedure

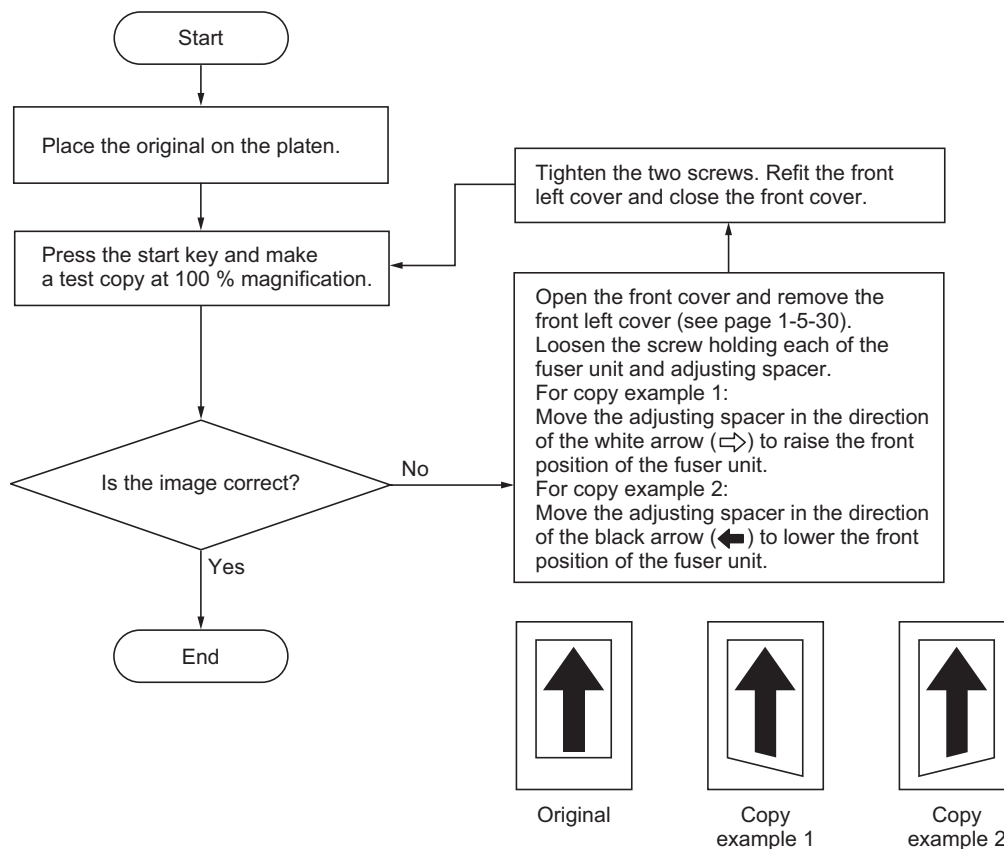


Figure 1-5-72

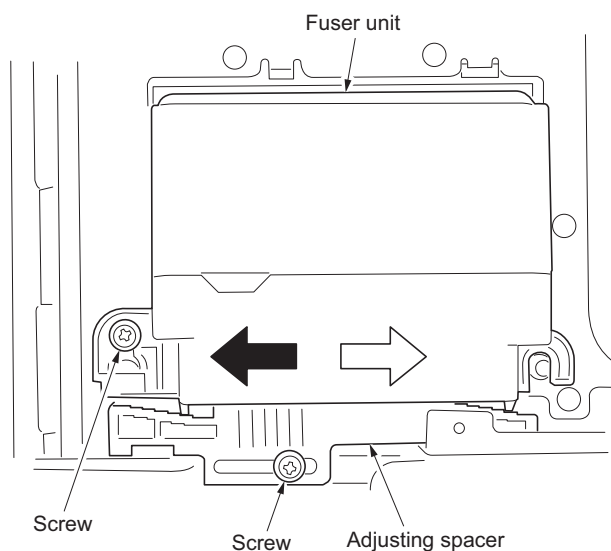


Figure 1-5-73

## 1-5-8 Others

### (1) Detaching and refitting the ozone filter 1 and 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the ozone filter 1 and 2.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the ozone filter 1 from the machine left side.

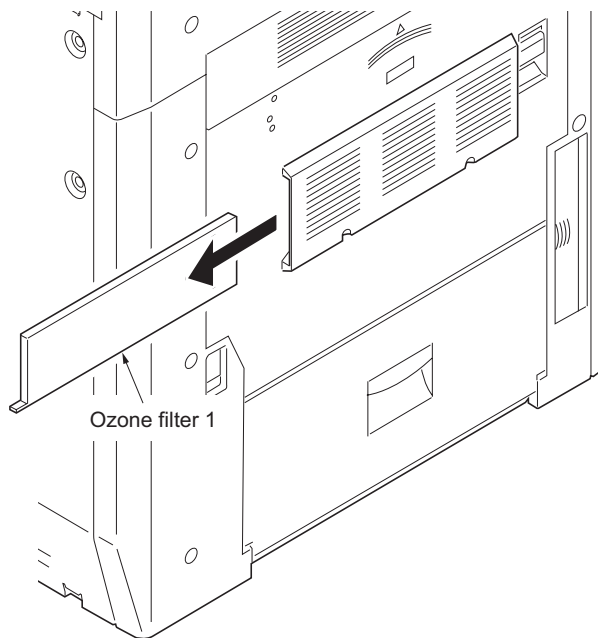


Figure 1-5-74

2. Open the filter cover of the machine rear side and remove the ozone filter 2.
3. Replace the ozone filter 1 and 2 and install the filters.

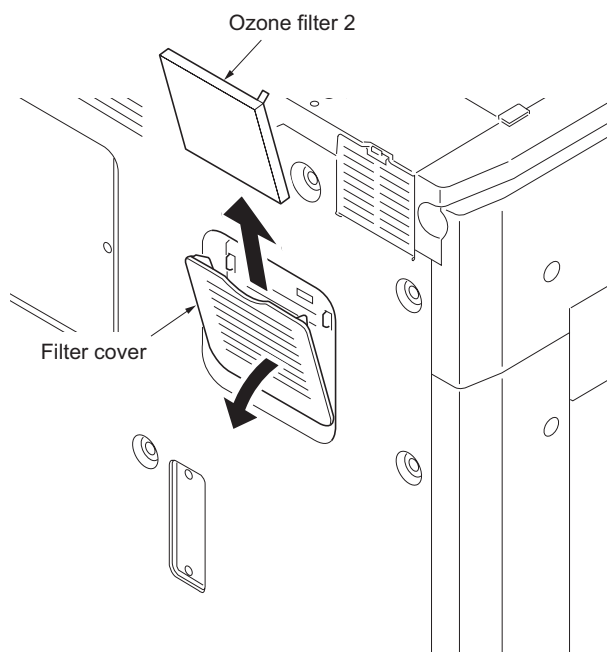


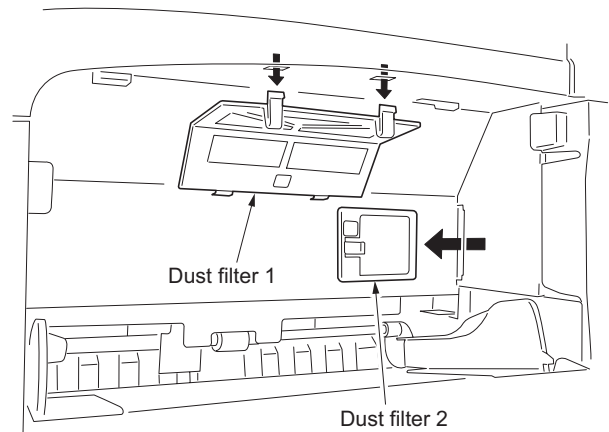
Figure 1-5-75

## (2) Detaching and refitting the dust filter 1 and 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the dust filter 1 and 2.

### Procedure

1. Open the MP tray.
2. Remove the dust filter 1 and 2 from the machine.
3. Replace the dust filter 1 and 2 and install the filters.



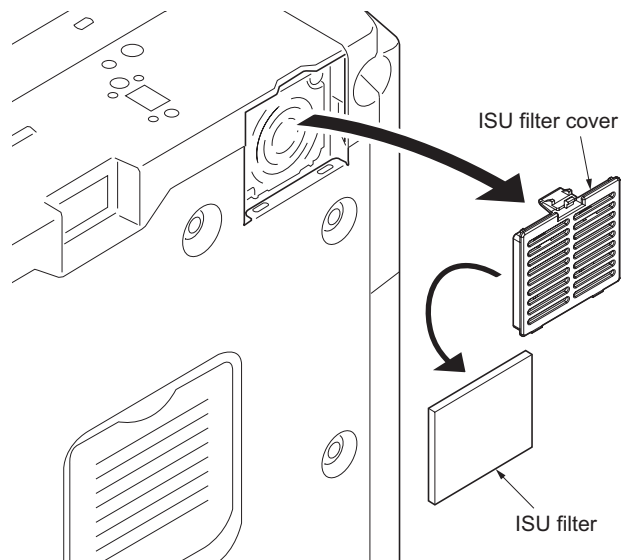
**Figure 1-5-76**

**(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU filter**

Follow the procedure below to replace the ISU filter.

**Procedure**

1. Remove the ISU filter cover.
2. Replace the ISU filter and install the filter to the ISU filter cover.



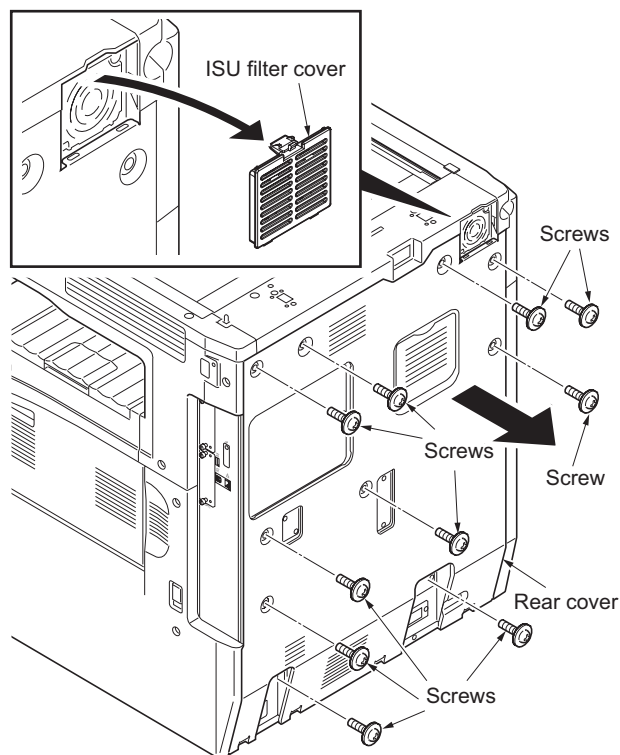
**Figure 1-5-77**

**(4) Detaching and refitting the hard disk**

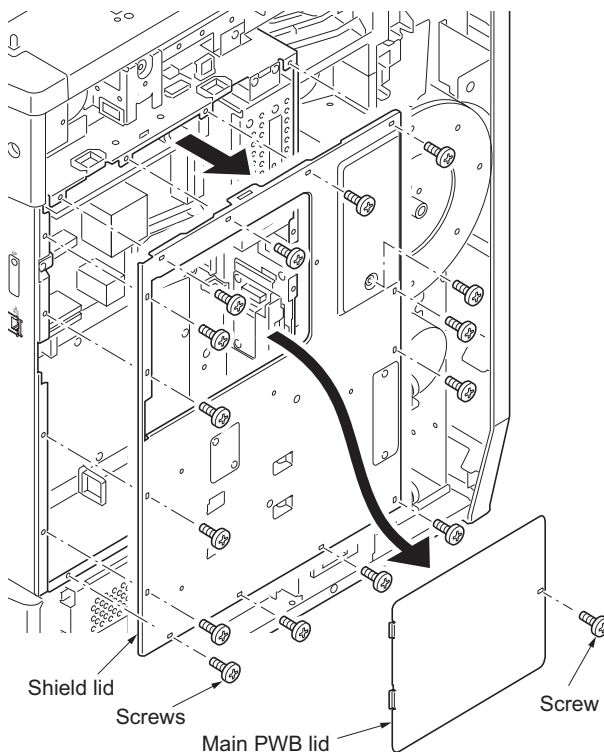
Follow the procedure below to replace the hard disk.

**Procedure**

1. Remove the ISU filter cover.
2. Remove ten screws and then remove the rear cover.

**Figure 1-5-78**

3. Remove the screw and then remove the main PWB lid.
4. Remove the fifteen screws and then remove the shield lid.

**Figure 1-5-79**

5. Remove two cable clamps.
6. Pressing the lock lever and remove the following connectors.  
Connector (Blue)
- Connector (Black)
7. Remove the power source connector.

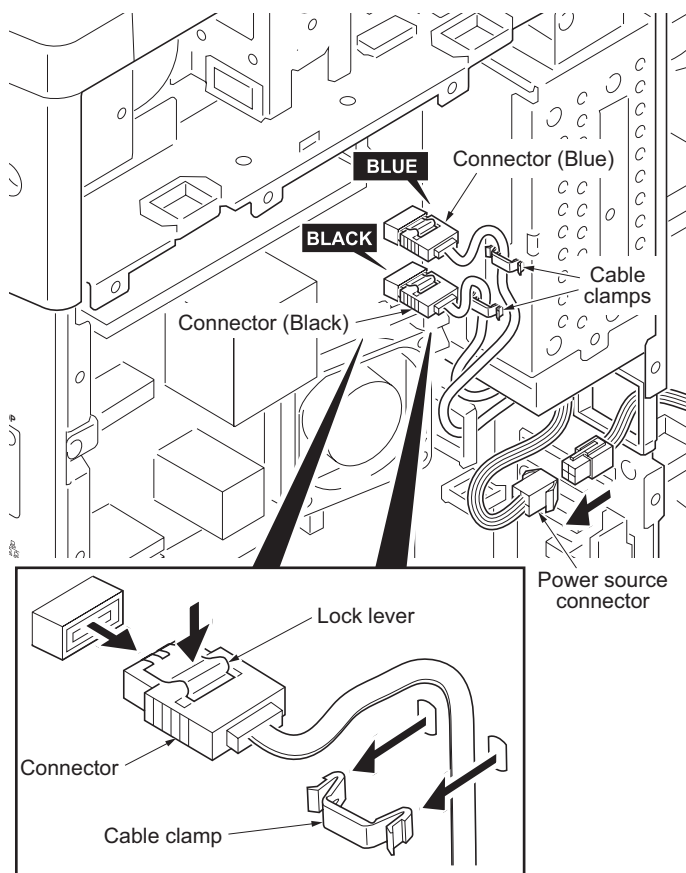


Figure 1-5-80

8. Remove two screws and then remove the hard disk mount assembly.

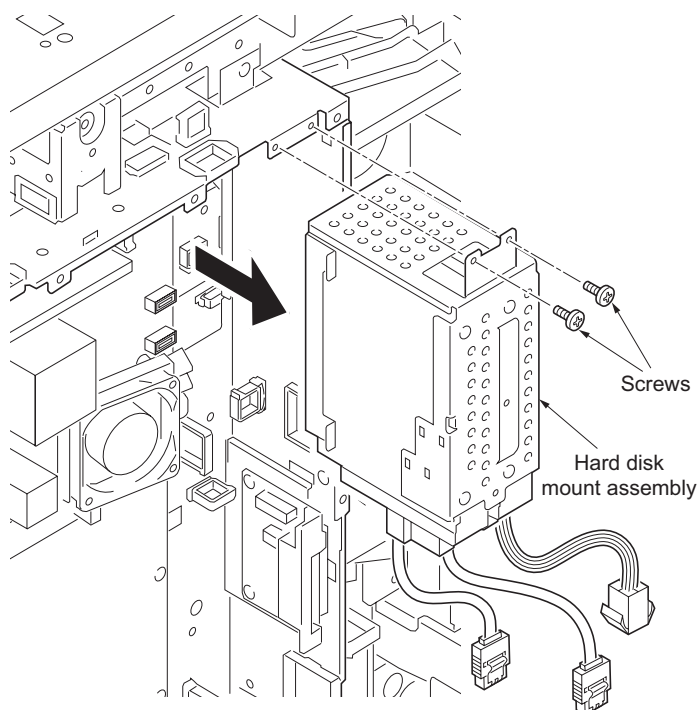


Figure 1-5-81

9. Pressing the lock lever and remove the following connectors.  
 Connector (Blue)  
 Connector (Black)  
 Two power source connectors
10. Replace the hard disk mount assembly and refit all the removed parts.
11. Perform maintenance mode U024 (HDD initializing) (see page 1-3-19).  
 Reinstall applications as necessary after initializing the HDD.
12. Perform maintenance mode U917 (backup data writing) (see page 1-3-100).

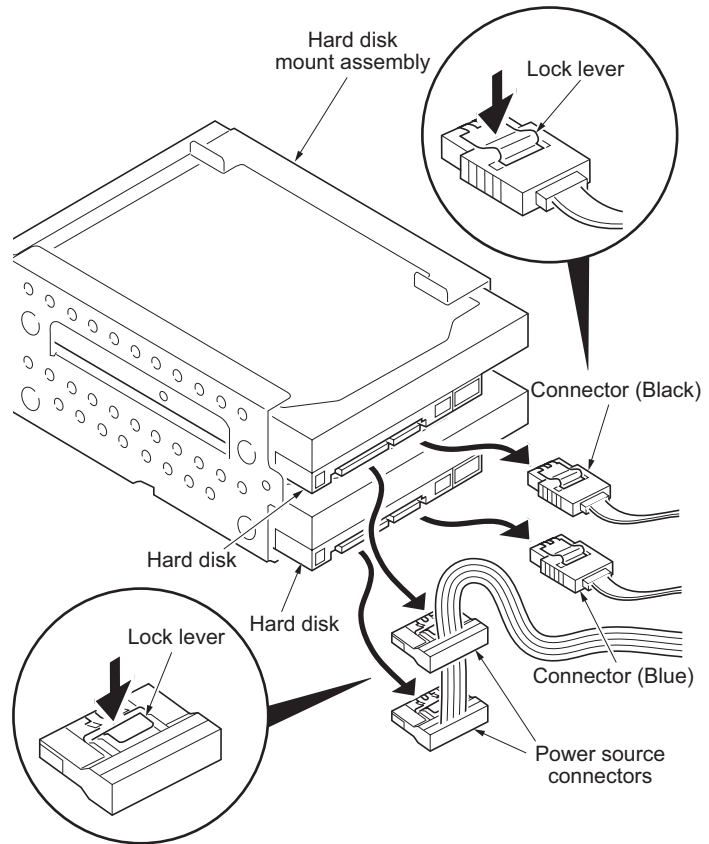


Figure 1-5-82

### (5) Direction of installing the principal fan motors

When detaching or refitting the fan motors, be careful of the airflow direction (intake or exhaust).

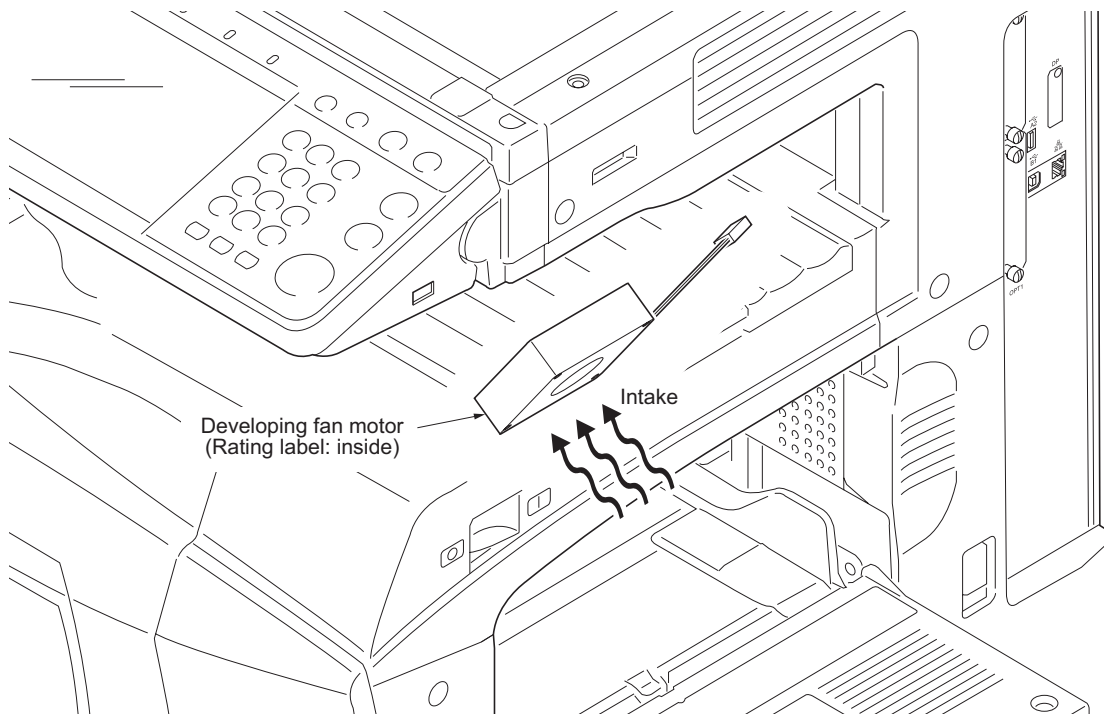


Figure 1-5-83 Machine right

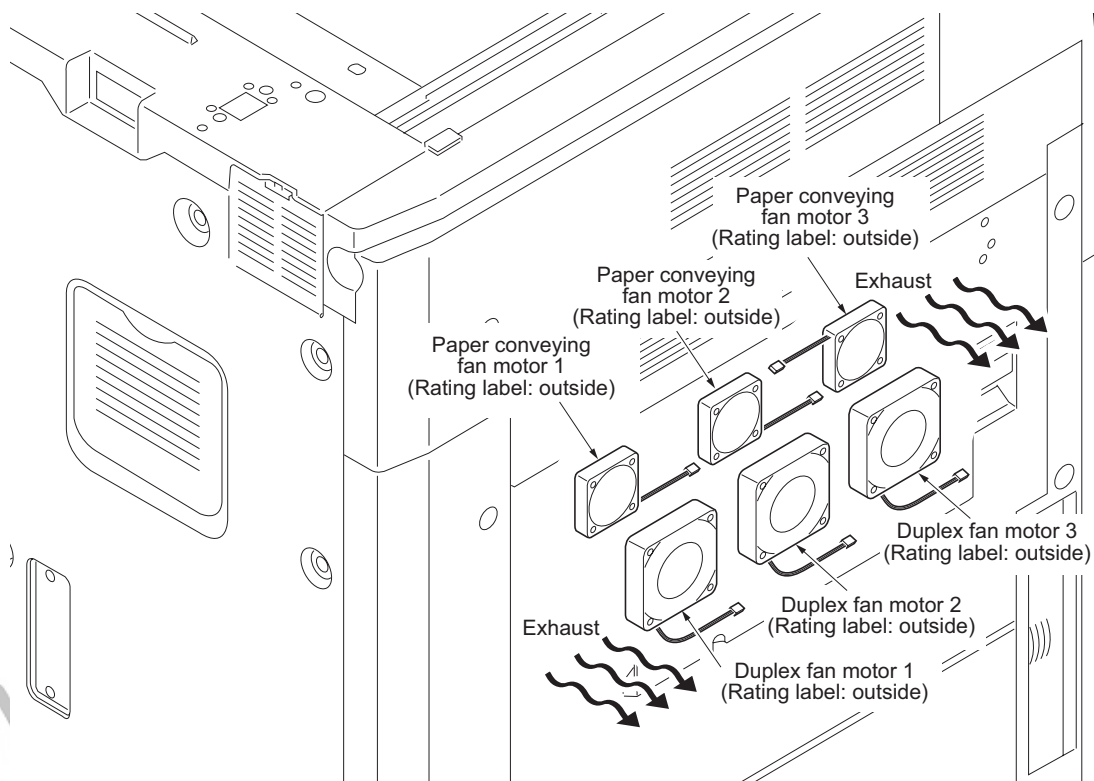


Figure 1-5-84 Machine left

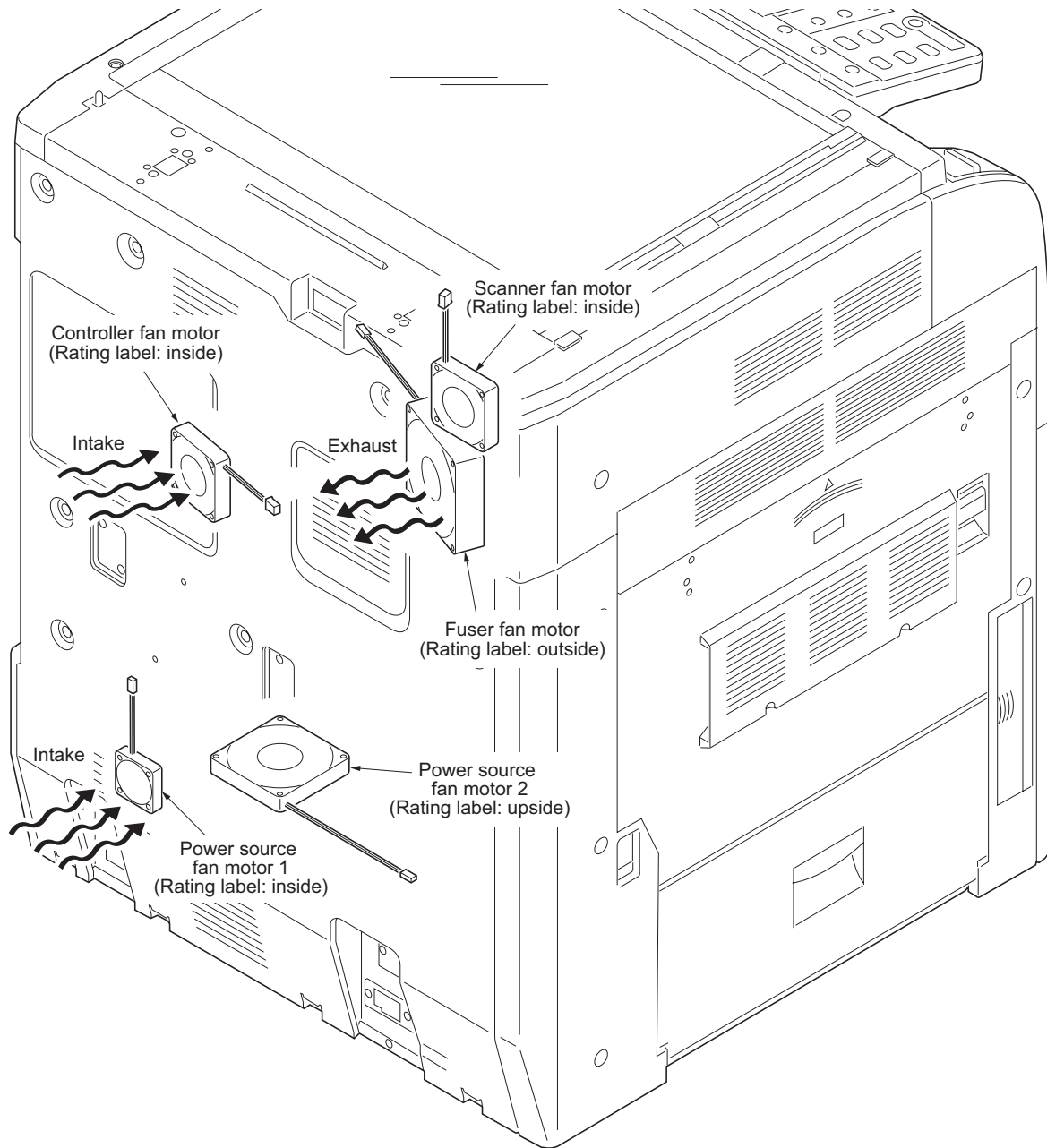


Figure 1-5-85Machine rear

### 1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware

Follow the procedure below to upgrade the firmware of main PWB, engine PWB, scanner and panel.

#### Procedure

1. Perform maintenance item U000 (maintenance report output) and check U019 ROM version.
2. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the main power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
3. Insert USB memory in a notch hole of the machine.
4. Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on. Upgrading firmware starts.

#### Caution:

Never turn the main power switch off during upgrading.

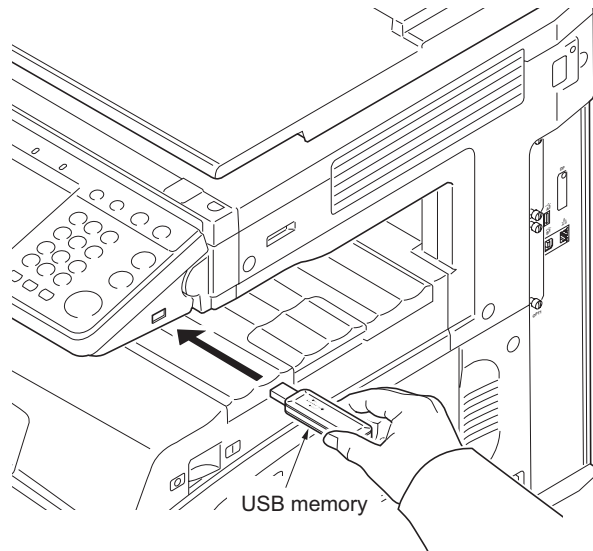


Figure 1-6-1

5. [100% Completed] is displayed on the touch panel when upgrading is complete.
6. Turn the main power switch off and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
7. Remove USB memory from the machine.
8. Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on.
9. Perform maintenance item U000 (maintenance report output) and check that U019 ROM version has been upgraded.

### 1-6-2 Adjustment-free variable resistors (VR)

The variable resistors listed below are set at the factory prior to shipping and cannot be adjusted in the field.

High voltage PWB: VR2, VR42, VR201, VR204

### 1-6-3 Remarks on main PWB replacement

When replacing the main PWB, remove EEPROM (YC14) from the main PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new main PWB.

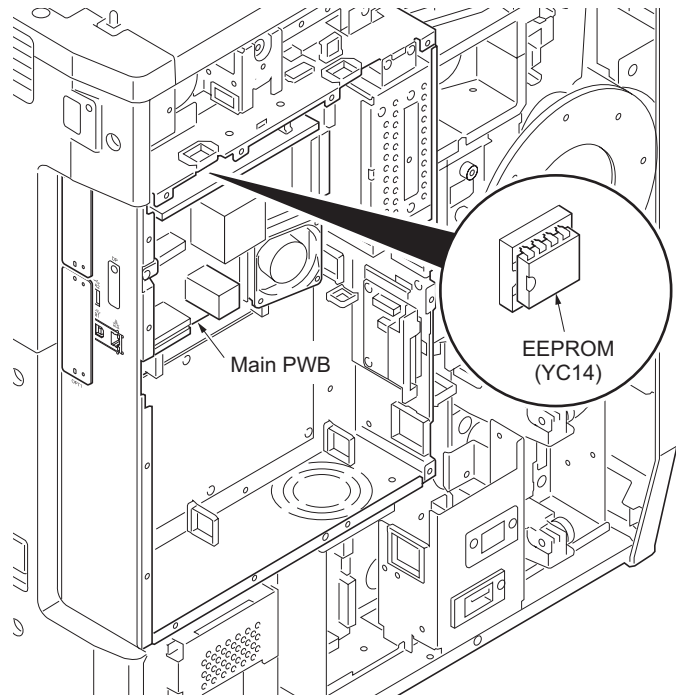


Figure 1-6-2

#### 1-6-4 Remarks on engine PWB replacement

When replacing the engine PWB, remove the EEPROM (U3) from the engine PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new engine PWB.

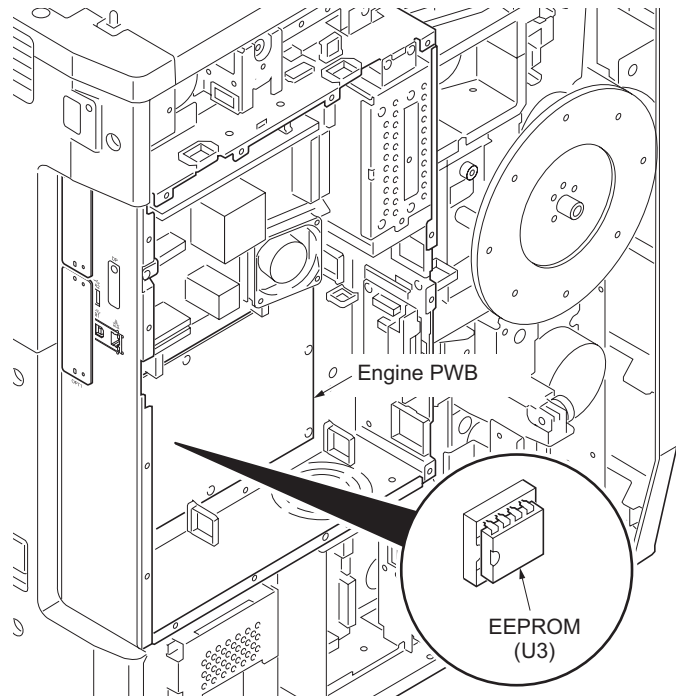


Figure 1-6-3

When removing YC1, YC2, YC3, YC4, YC8, YC9, YC11 from the main PWB and YC2 from the engine PWB, press the lock lever.

When connecting the hard disk cables (YC1, YC2) to the PWB, match "BLACK" and "BLUE" marked on the PWB with the connector colors.

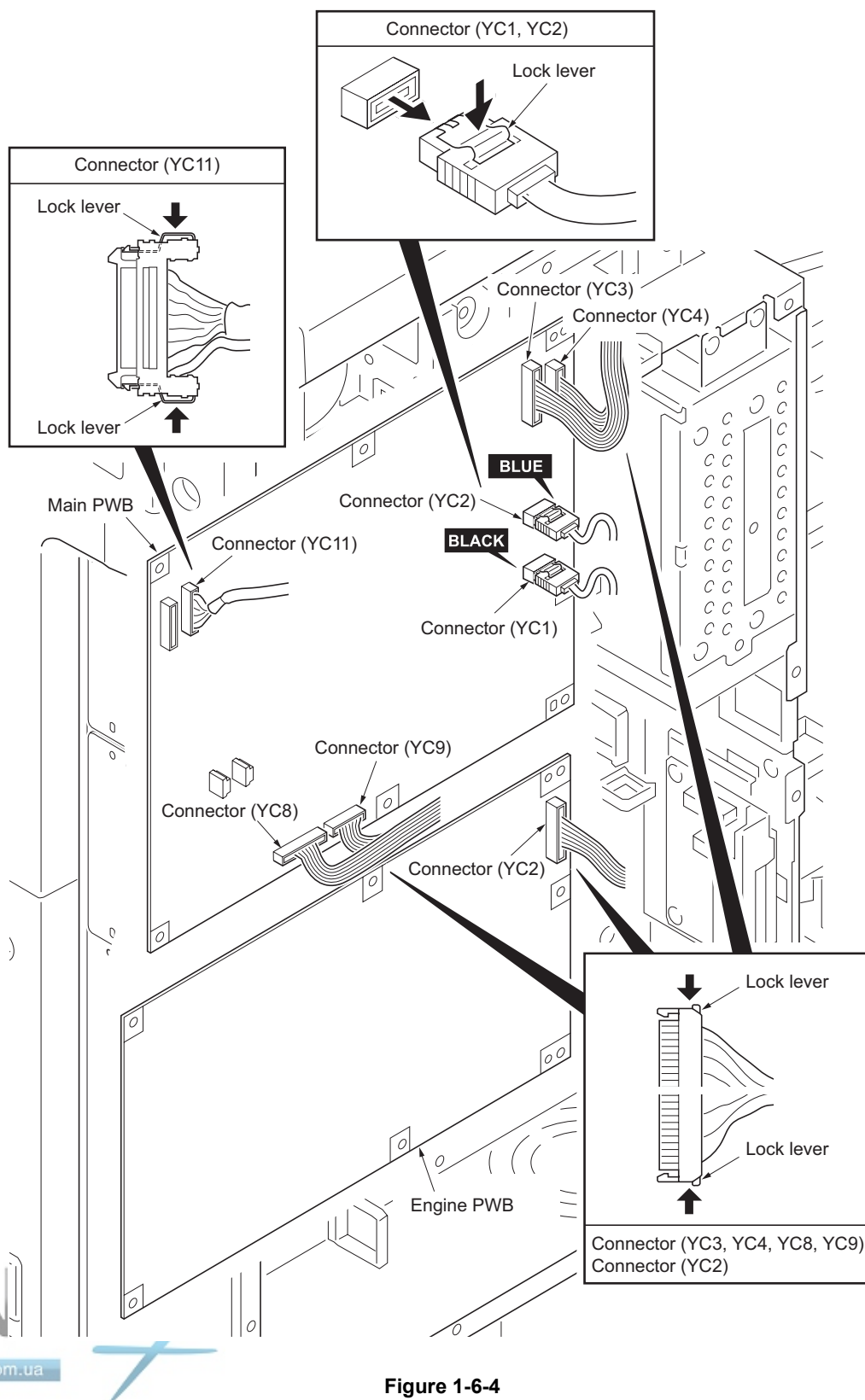


Figure 1-6-4

## 2-1-1 Paper feed section

The paper feed section consists of the primary feed and secondary feed subsections. Primary feed conveys paper from the cassettes 1, 2 or MP tray to the left and right registration rollers, at which point secondary feed takes place and the paper travels to the transfer section in sync with the printing timing.

### (1) Cassette paper feed section

Each cassette consists of a lift driven by the lift motor and other components. Each cassette can hold up to 500 sheets of paper. Paper is fed from the cassette by the rotation of the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley. The separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time, via the torque limiter.

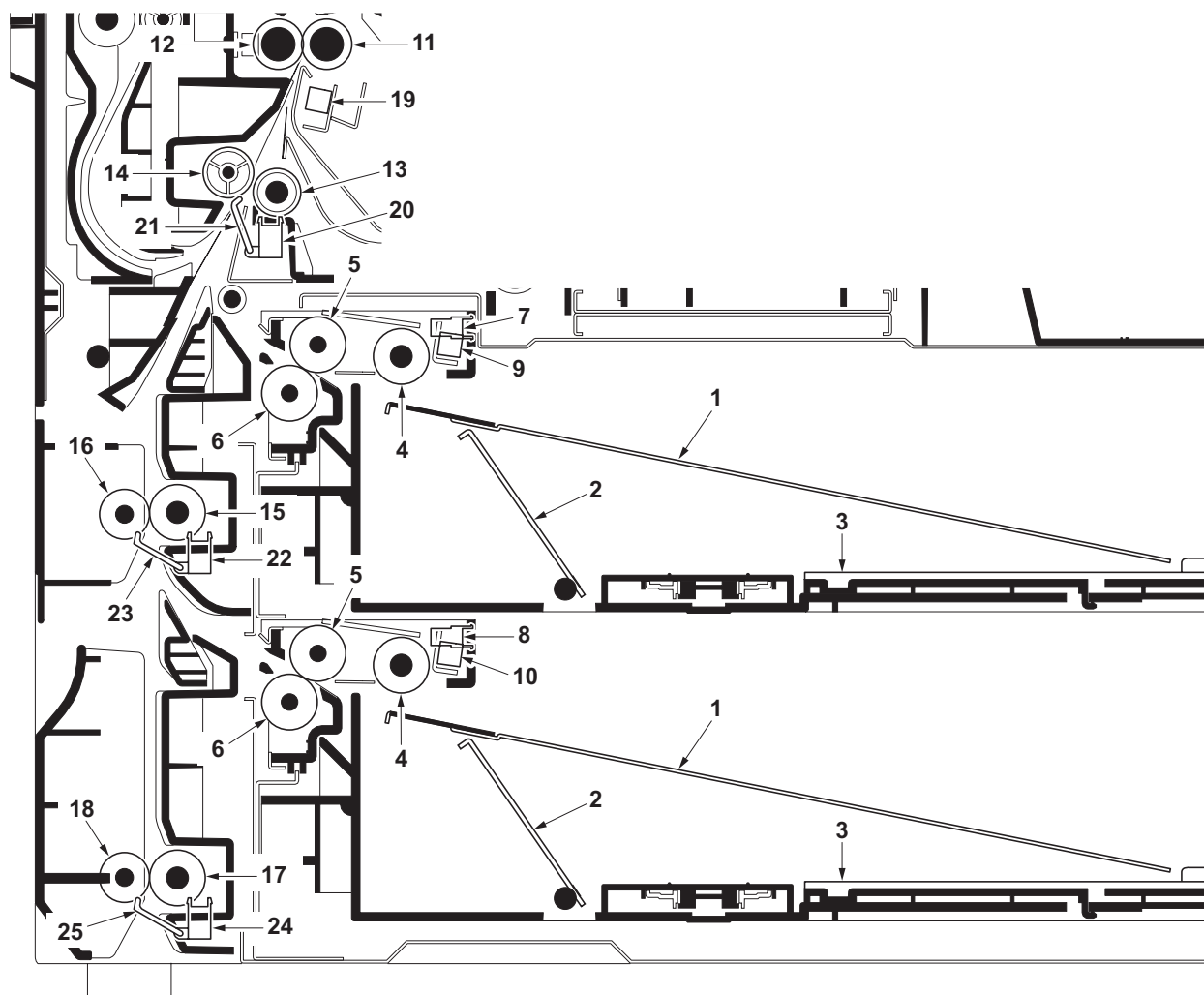


Figure 2-1-1 Cassette paper feed section

- |                           |                                |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (1) Cassette base         | (10) Lift switch 2 (LSW2)      | (19) Registration switch (RSW) |
| (2) Cassette lift         | (11) Right registration roller | (20) Feed switch 1 (FSW1)      |
| (3) Cassette              | (12) Left registration roller  | (21) Actuator (Feed switch 1)  |
| (4) Forwarding pulley     | (13) Feed roller 1             | (22) Feed switch 2 (FSW2)      |
| (5) Paper feed pulley     | (14) Feed pulley               | (23) Actuator (Feed switch 2)  |
| (6) Separation pulley     | (15) Feed roller 2             | (24) Feed switch 3 (FSW3)      |
| (7) Paper switch 1 (PSW1) | (16) Feed pulley               | (25) Actuator (Feed switch 3)  |
| (8) Paper switch 2 (PSW2) | (17) Feed roller 3             |                                |
| (9) Lift switch 1 (LSW1)  | (18) Feed pulley               |                                |

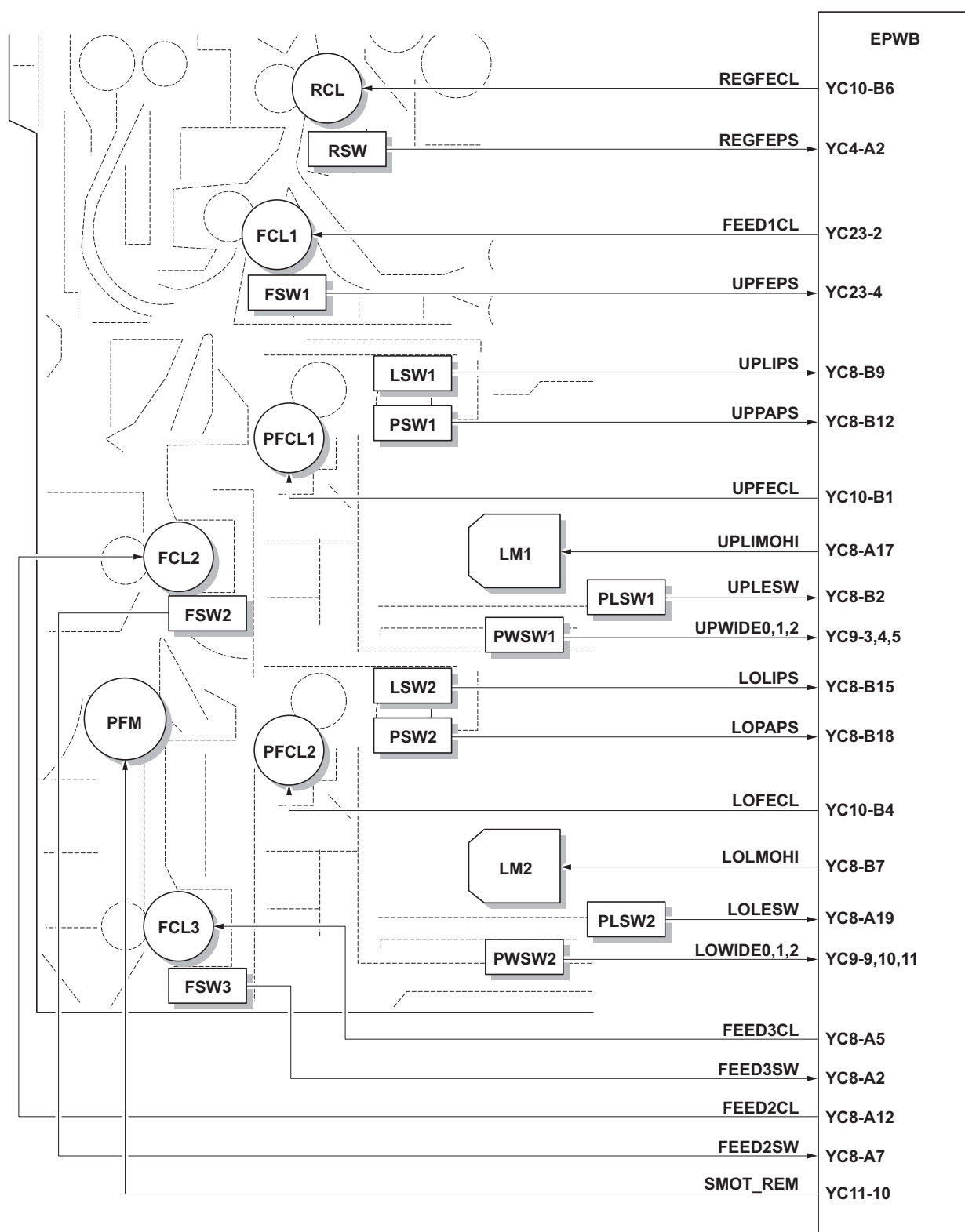


Figure 2-1-2 Cassette paper feed section block diagram

## (2) MP tray paper feed section

The MP tray can hold up to 200 sheets of paper at one time. Paper is fed from the MP tray by the rotation of the MP forwarding pulley and MP paper feed pulley. Also during paper feed, the MP separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time by the torque limiter.

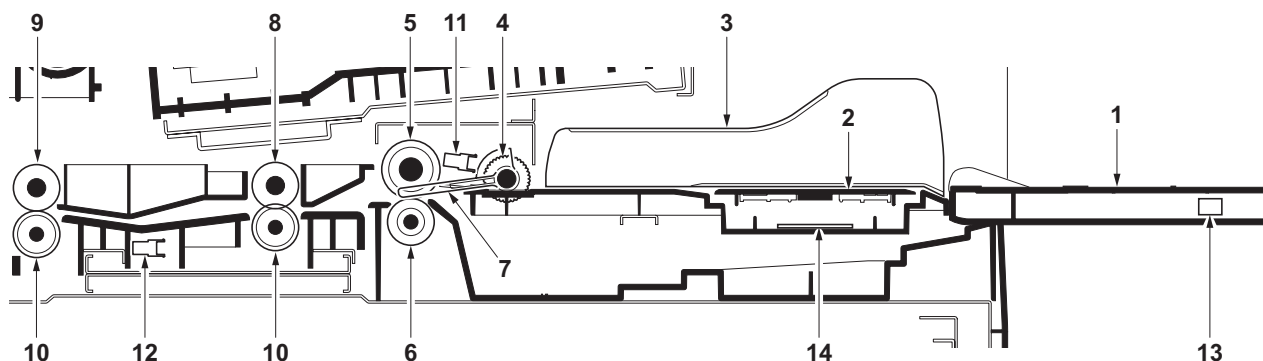


Figure 2-1-3 MP tray paper feed section

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| (1) MP tray              | (9) MP feed roller 2                      |
| (2) MP lift guide        | (10) MP feed pulley                       |
| (3) Paper width guide    | (11) MP paper switch (MPPSW)              |
| (4) MP forwarding pulley | (12) MP feed switch (MPFSW)               |
| (5) MP paper feed pulley | (13) MP paper size length switch (MPPLSW) |
| (6) MP separation pulley | (14) MP paper size width switch (MPPWSW)  |
| (7) Paper stopper        |   |
| (8) MP feed roller 1     |   |

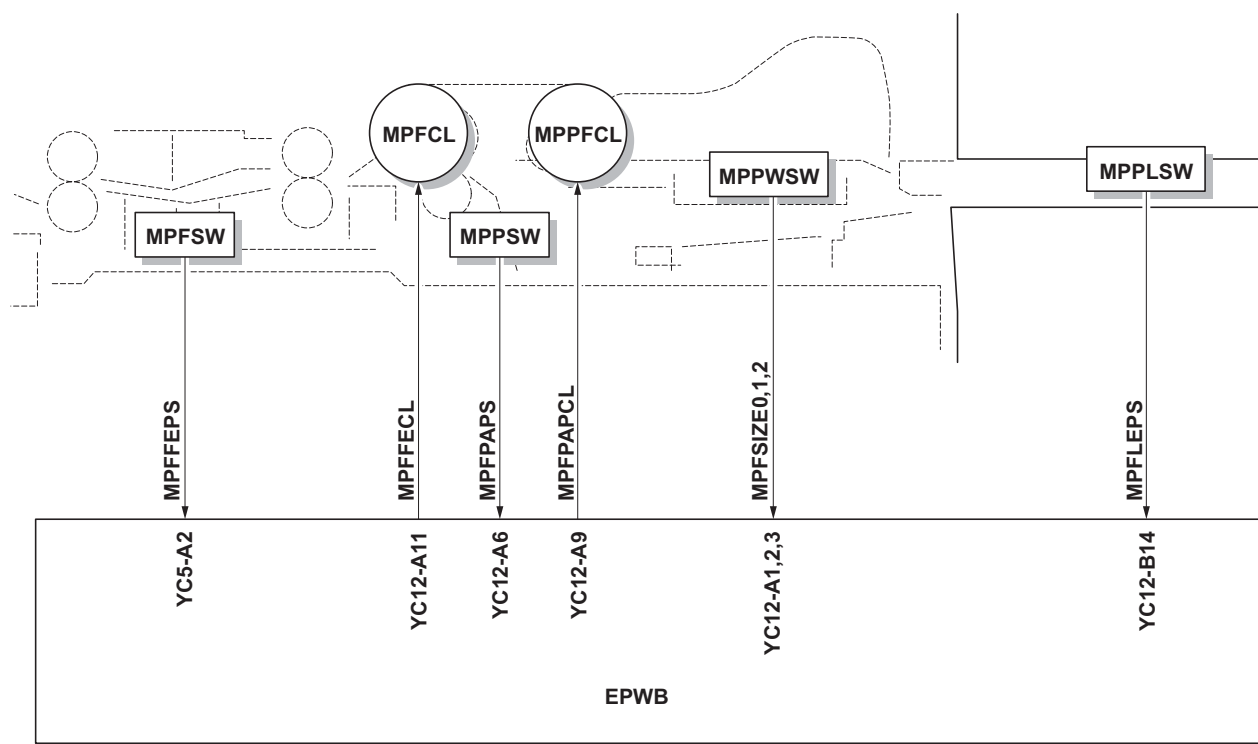


Figure 2-1-4 MP tray paper feed section block diagram

## 2-1-2 Optical section

The optical section consists of the scanner, mirror frame and image scanner section for scanning and the laser scanner unit for printing.

### (1) Image scanner section

The original image is illuminated by the exposure lamp (EL) and scanned by the CCD in the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) via the three mirrors and lens, the reflected light being converted to an electrical signal. The mirror 1 and 2 frame travel to scan on the optical rails on the front and rear of the machine to scan from side to side. The speed of the mirror 2 frame is half the speed of the mirror 1 frame.

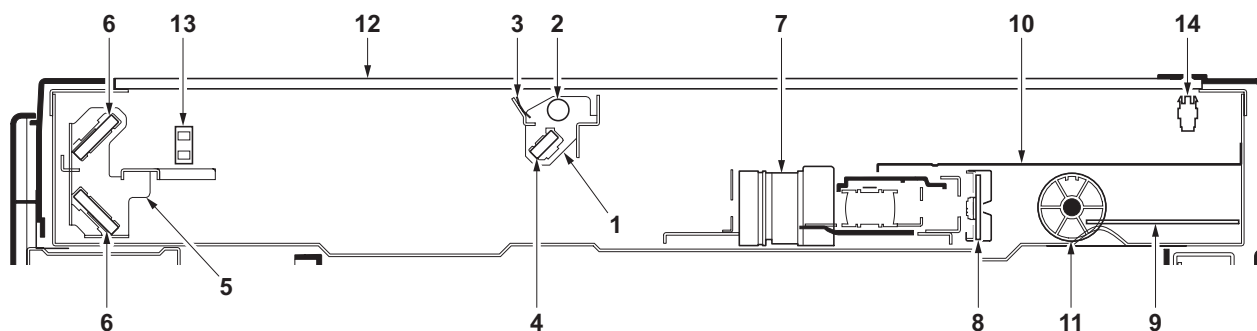


Figure 2-1-5 Image scanner section

- |                        |                                       |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (1) Mirror 1 frame     | (8) CCD PWB (CCDPWB)                  |
| (2) Exposure lamp (EL) | (9) ISC PWB (ISCPWB)                  |
| (3) Scanner reflector  | (10) ISU cover                        |
| (4) Mirror A           | (11) Scanner wire drum                |
| (5) Mirror 2 frame     | (12) Contact glass                    |
| (6) Mirror B           | (13) Home position switch (HPSW)      |
| (7) ISU lens           | (14) Original detection switch (ODSW) |

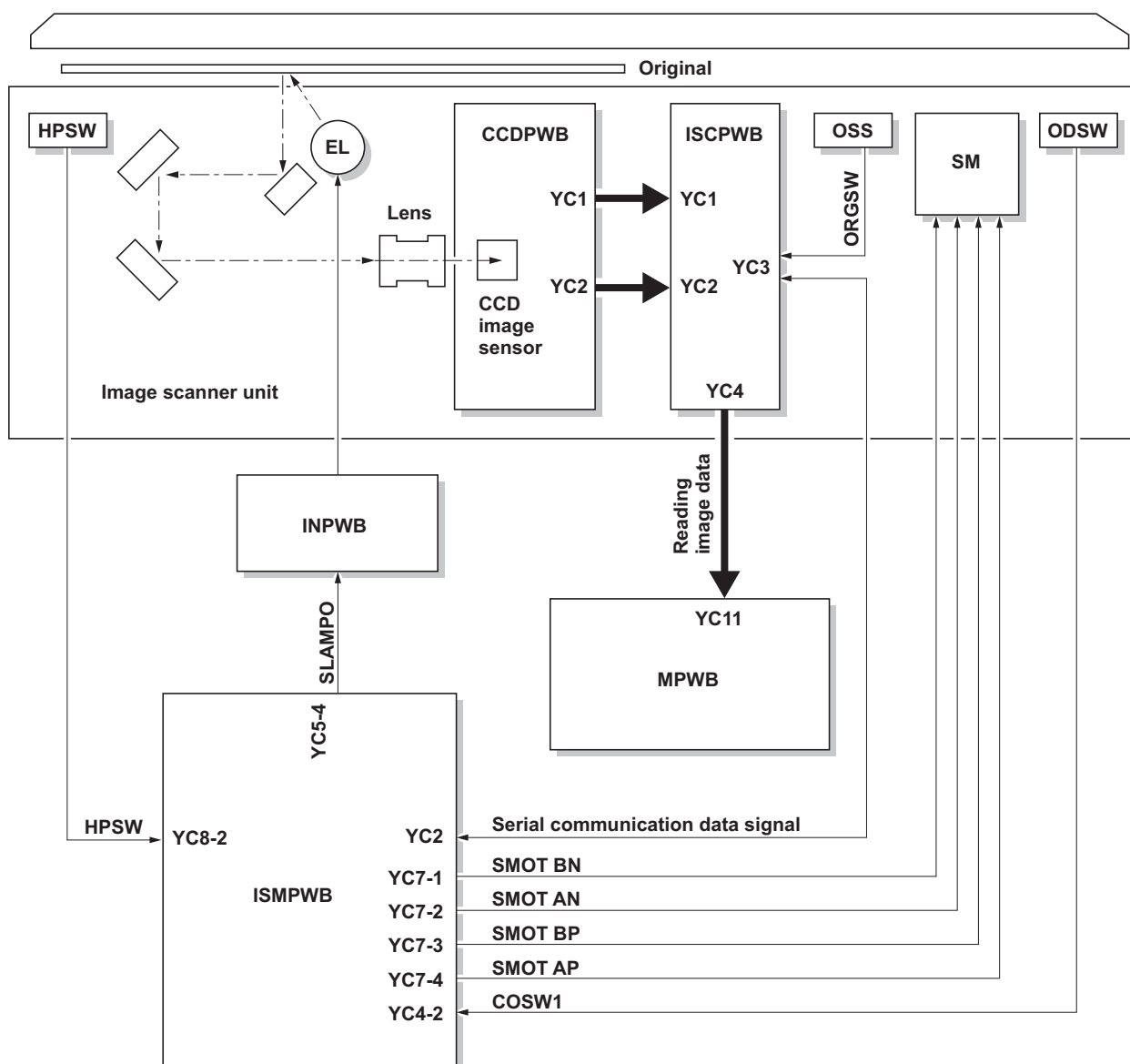
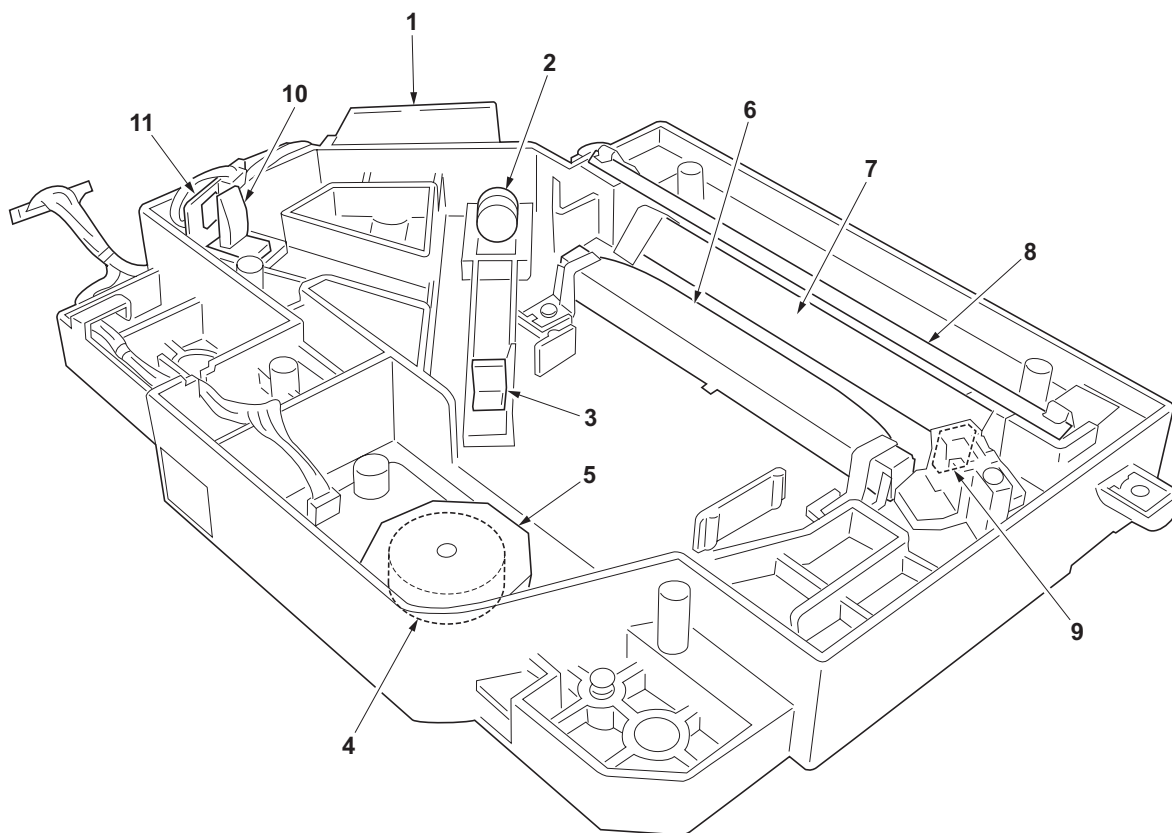


Figure 2-1-6 Image scanner section block diagram

## (2) Laser scanner section

The image data scanned by the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) is processed on the main PWB (MPWB) and transmitted from engine PWB (EPWB) as image printing data to the laser scanner unit (LSU). By repeatedly turning the laser on and off, the laser scanner unit forms a latent image on the drum surface.



**Figure 2-1-7 Laser scanner section**

- (1) APC PWB (APCPWB)
- (2) Collimator lens
- (3) Cylindrical lens
- (4) Polygon motor (PM)
- (5) Polygon mirror
- (6)  $f\theta$  lens
- (7) Mirror
- (8) Mirror
- (9) PD sensor mirror
- (10) Cylindrical correcting lens
- (11) PD PWB (PDPWB)

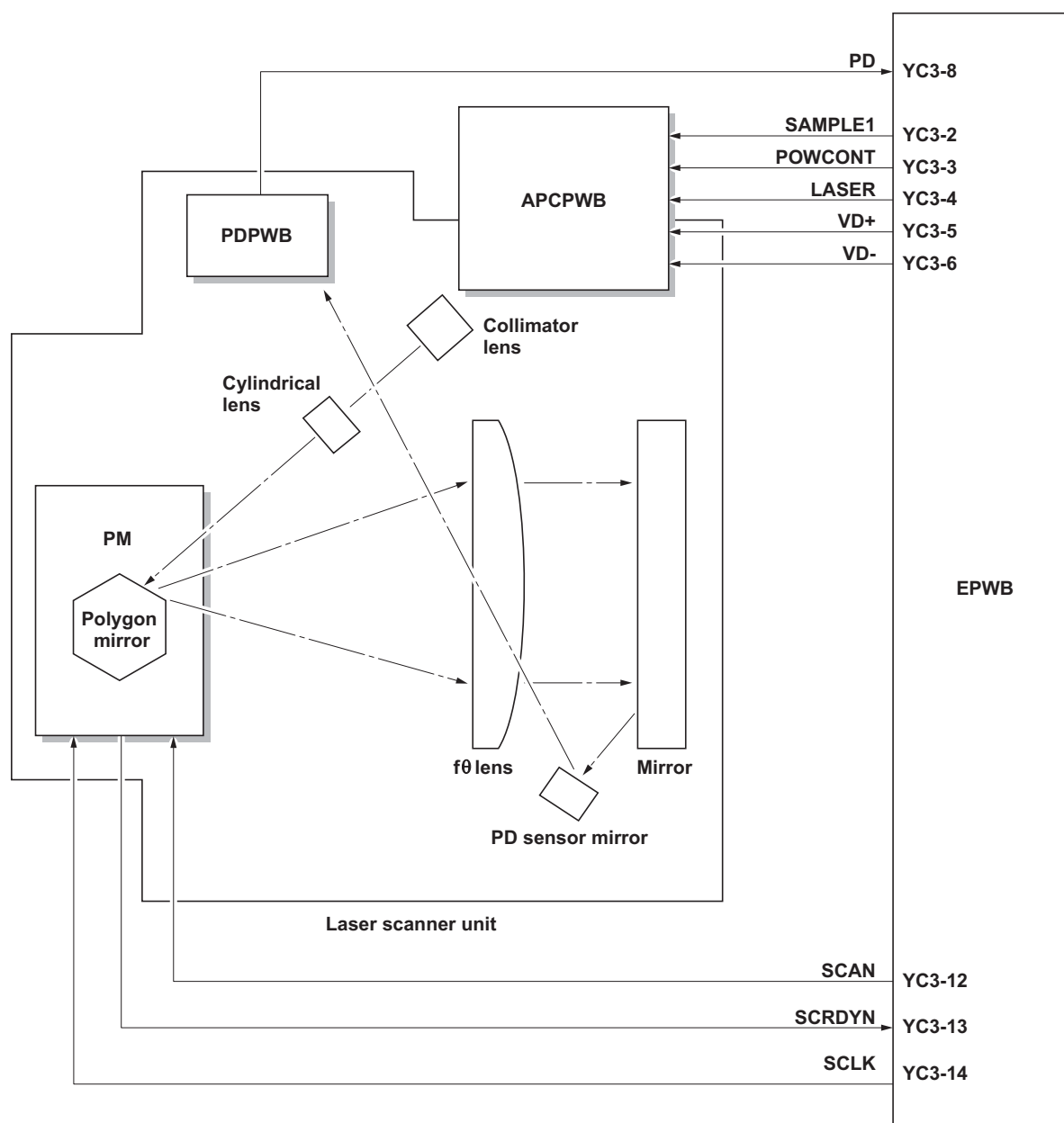


Figure 2-1-8 Laser scanner section block diagram

### 2-1-3 Drum section

The drum section consists of the drum, main charger unit and cleaning section.

The drum is electrically charged uniformly by means of a main charger unit to form a latent image on the surface. In addition, the main charger unit is equipped with the main charger cleaning motor, and it is cleaning automatically.

The cleaning section consists of the cleaning blade that removes residual toner from the drum surface after the transfer process, and the cleaning spiral that carries the residual toner back to the waste toner box.

The cleaning lamp (CL) consists of LEDs and removes residual charge on the drum before main charging.

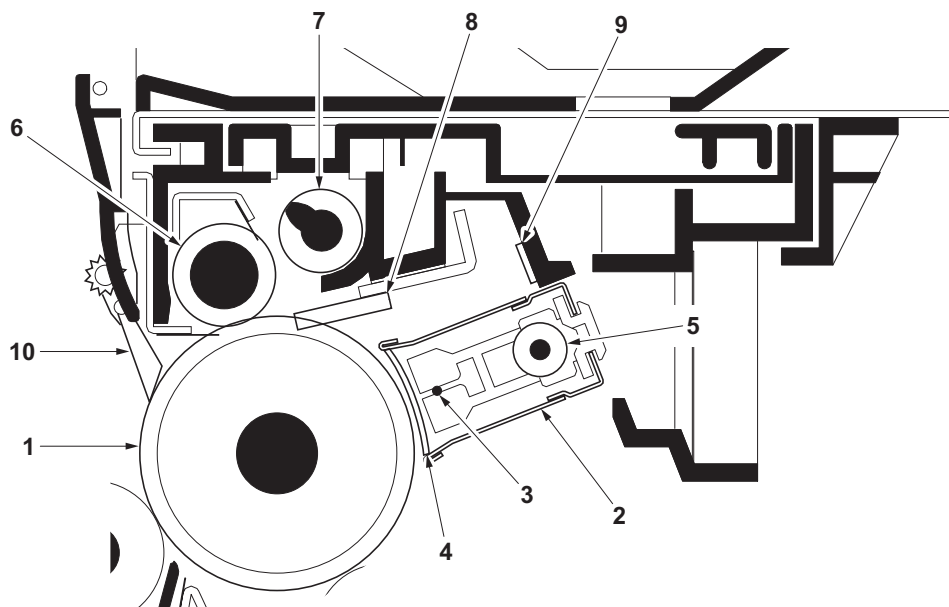


Figure 2-1-9 Drum section

- (1) Drum
- (2) Main charger unit
- (3) Main charger wire
- (4) Main charger grid
- (5) Main charger spiral
- (6) Cleaning roller
- (7) Cleaning spiral
- (8) Cleaning blade
- (9) Cleaning lamp (CL)
- (10) Drum separation claws

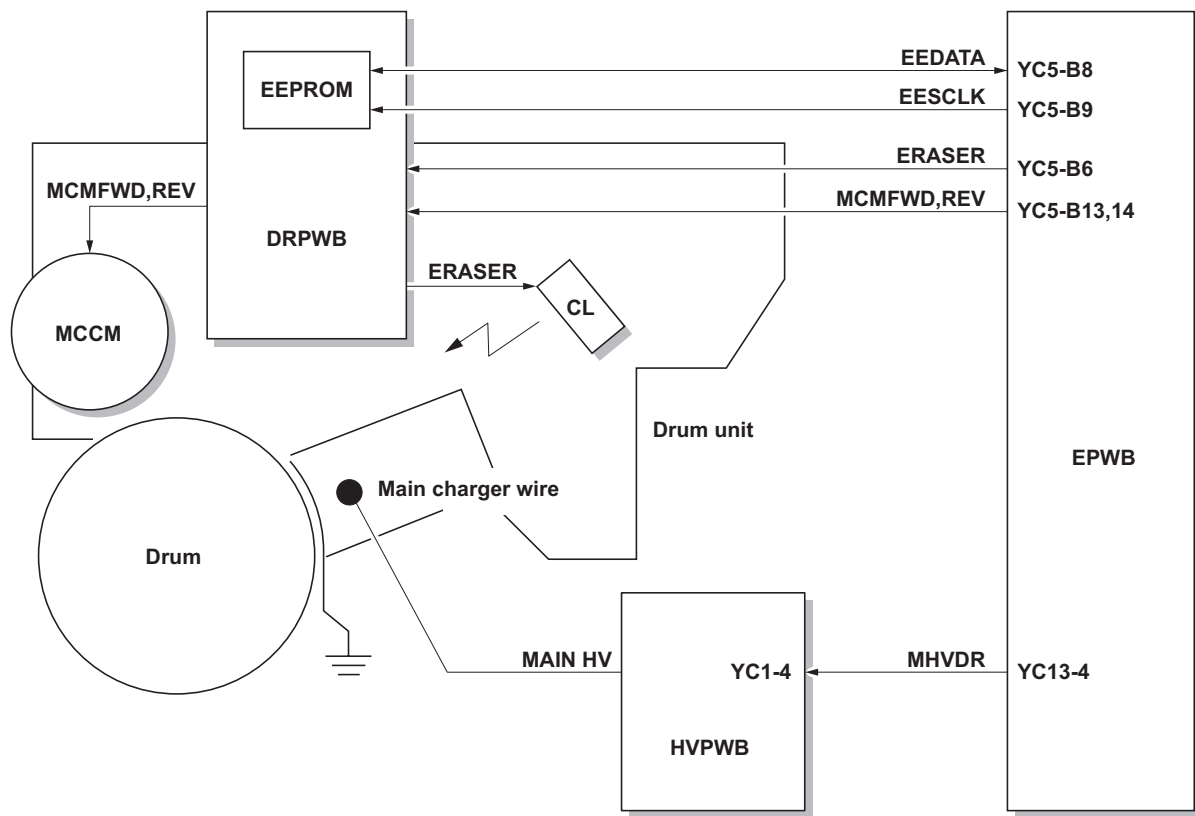


Figure 2-1-10 Drum section block diagram

### 2-1-4 Developing section

The developing section consists of the developing unit and the toner container.

The developing unit consists of the developing sleeve where a magnetic toner blade is formed, the doctor blade and the developing spirals that agitate the toner. When the toner sensor (TNS) detects a low toner level in the developing unit, the toner replenishment signal is output to the engine PWB (EPWB). The engine PWB (EPWB) that has received the signal turns on the toner replenishment solenoid (TNFSOL) and replenishes toner from the toner container to the developing unit. Also, the toner container sensor (TCS) checks whether or not toner remains in the toner container.

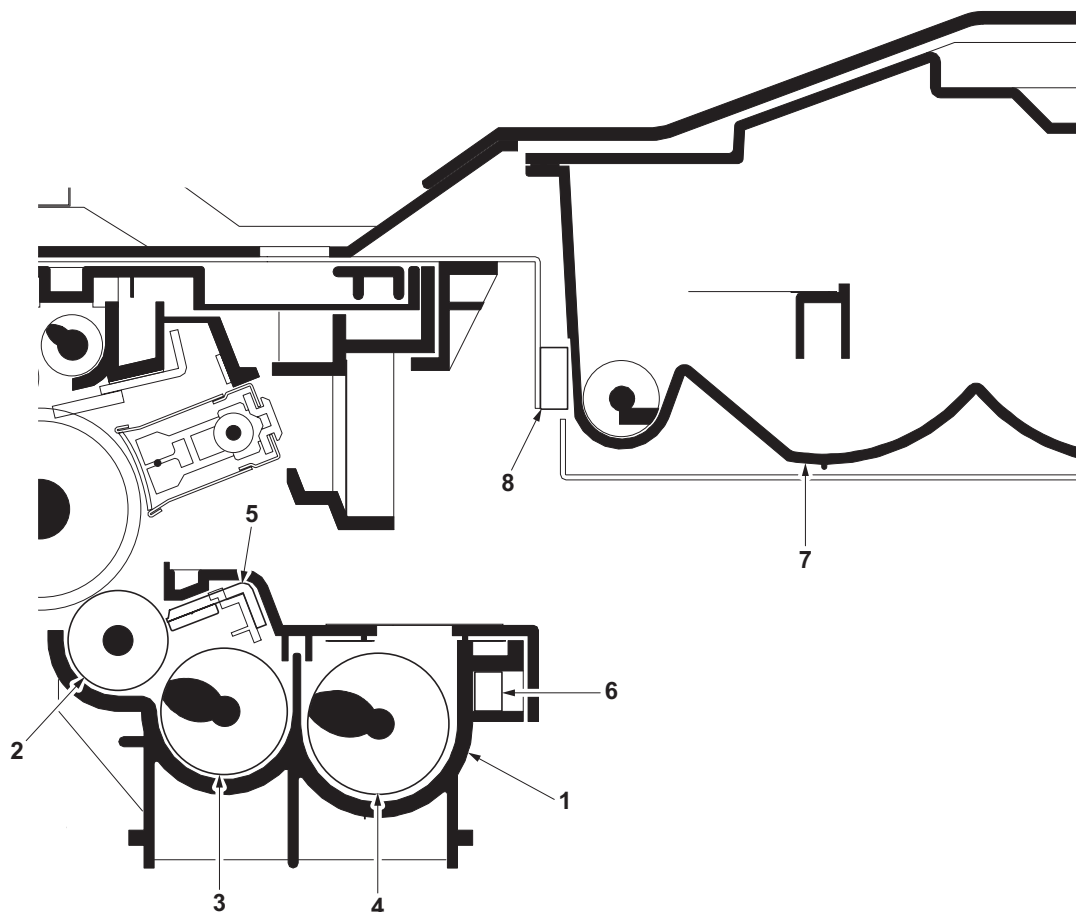


Figure 2-1-11 Developing section

- (1) Developing unit
- (2) Developing sleeve
- (3) Left developing spiral
- (4) Right developing spiral
- (5) Magnetic toner blade
- (6) Toner sensor (TNS)
- (7) Toner container
- (8) Toner container sensor (TCS)

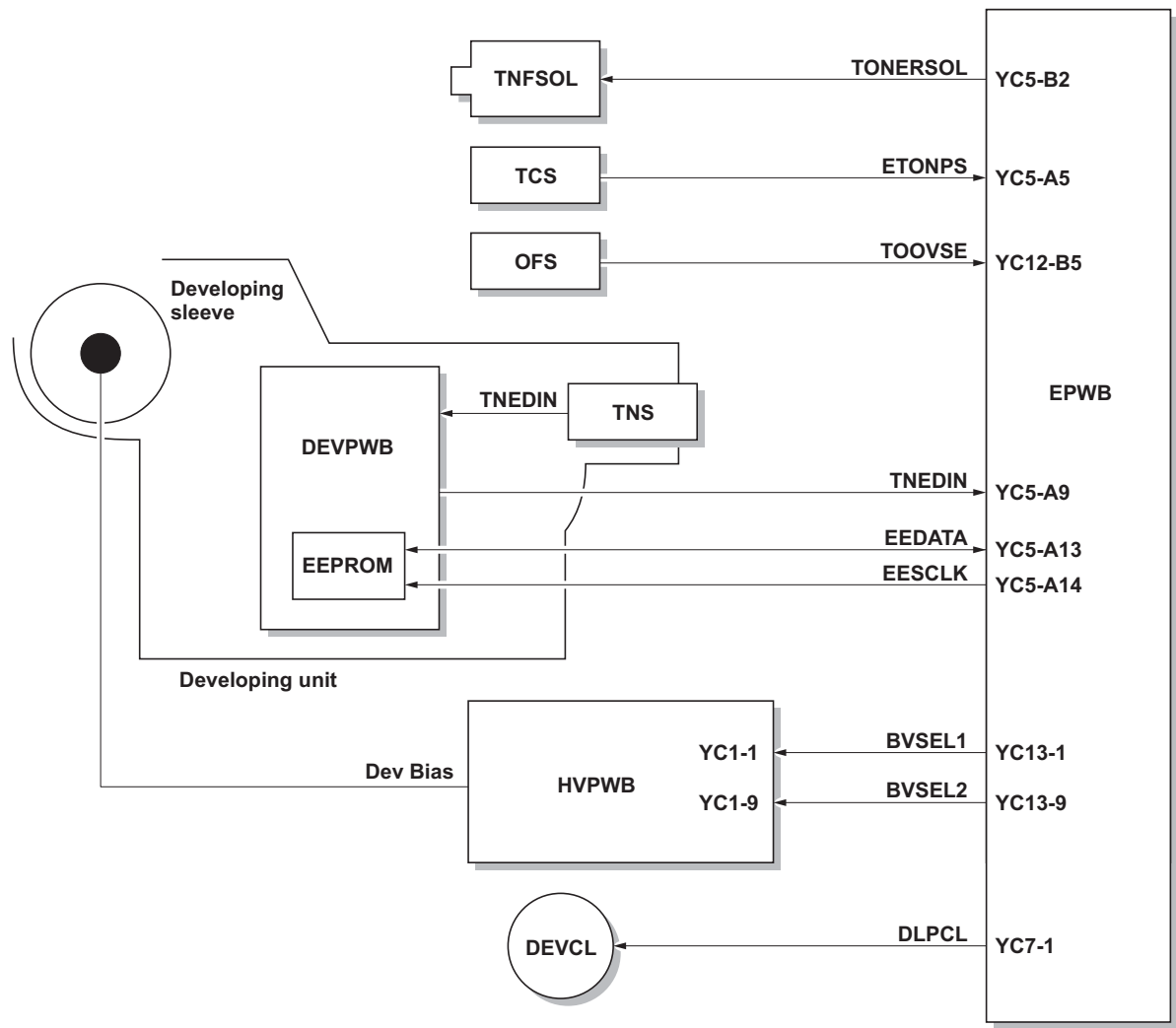


Figure 2-1-12 Developing section block diagram

### (1) Single component developing system

This machine uses the single component developing system, and reversal processing is performed with a + charged drum and a + charged magnetic toner.

With the single component developing system, toner is electrically charged by friction with the developing sleeve and + charged when it passes through the magnetic toner blade. The toner that has passed through the magnetic toner blade forms a uniform layer on the developing sleeve. When the toner layer comes to the location where the developing sleeve is the nearest to the drum, toner moves between the drum and the developing sleeve by an electric field of the magnetic pole. Then, when the developing sleeve rotates and passes through the nearest location to the drum, on the portion of the drum that has been exposed to light, toner is attracted toward the drum by potential difference between the developing bias and the drum surface and development is performed. On the other hand, on the portion of the drum that has not been exposed to light, toner is attracted toward the sleeve and development is not performed. When toner comes to an area where the gap between the drum and the developing sleeve is large, an electric field disappears and toner does not leave the developing sleeve. Development is complete.

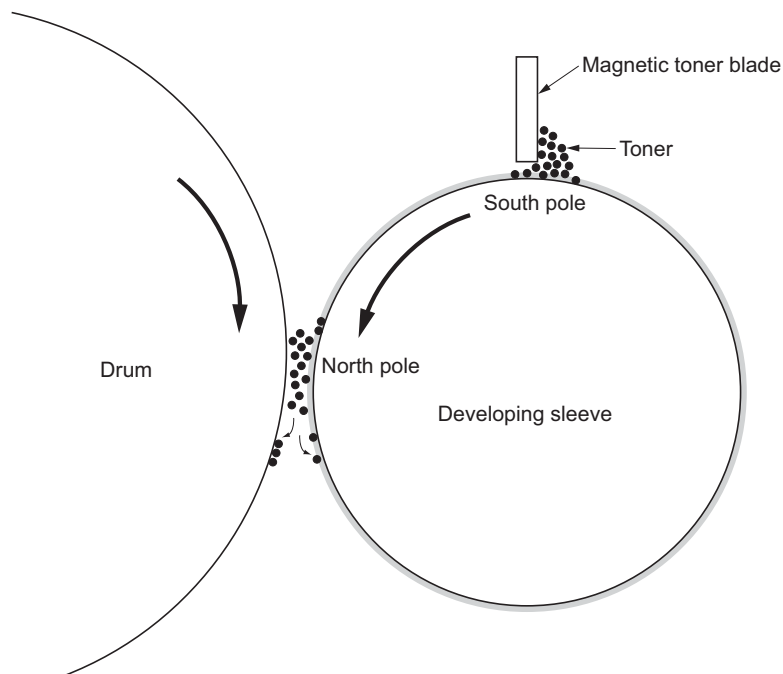


Figure 2-1-13 Single component developing system

### 2-1-5 Transfer and separation sections

The transfer and separation section consists mainly of the transfer roller, separation electrode and drum separation claws. A high voltage generated by the high-voltage PWB (HVPWB) is applied to the transfer roller for transfer charging. Paper after transfer is separated from the drum by applying separation bias that is output from the high-voltage PWB (HVPWB) to the separation electrode.

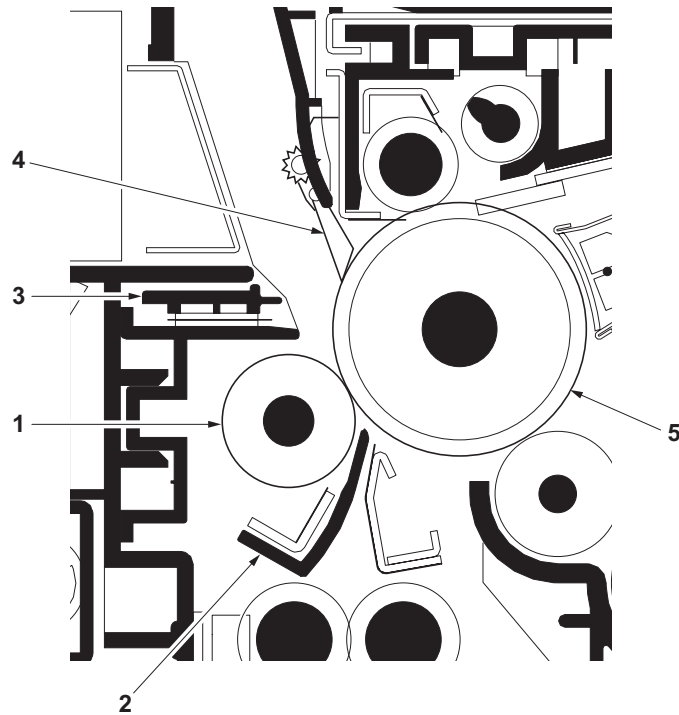


Figure 2-1-14 Transfer and separation sections

- (1) Transfer roller
- (2) Transfer guide
- (3) Separation electrode
- (4) Drum separation claws
- (5) Drum

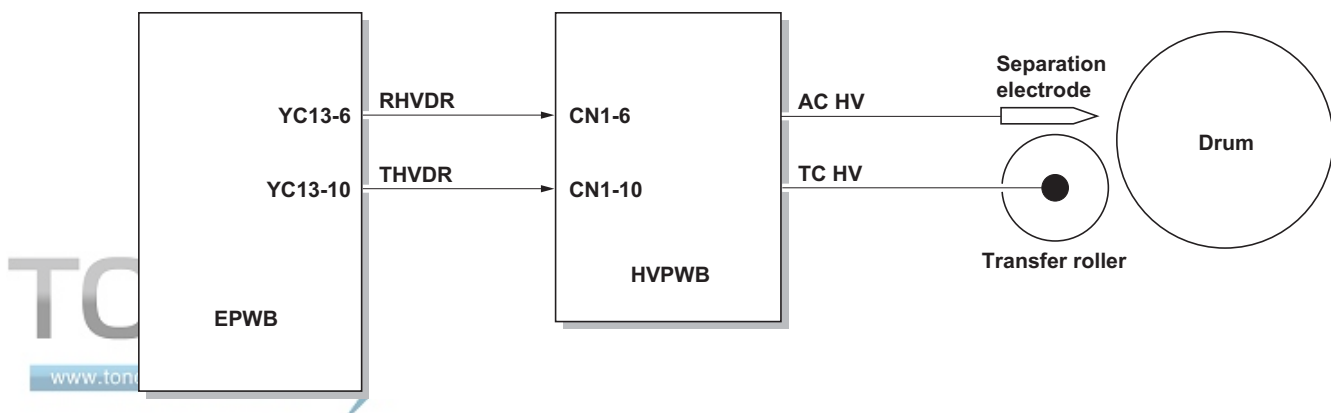


Figure 2-1-15 Transfer and separation sections block diagram

### 2-1-6 Fuser section

The fuser section consists of the parts shown in Figure. When paper reaches the fuser section after the transfer process, it passes between the press roller and heat roller, which is heated by fuser heaters 1 or 2 (FH1 or FH2). Pressure is applied by the fuser pressure springs so that the toner on the paper is melted, fused and fixed onto the paper. The heat roller is heated by fuser heaters 1 or 2 (FH1 or FH2) inside it; its surface temperature is detected by the fuser thermistor 1 and 2 (FTH1/2), and is regulated by the fuser heaters turning on and off.

If the fuser section becomes abnormally hot, fuser thermostat 1 and 2 (FTS1/2) operates shutting the power to the fuser heaters off. When the fusing process is completed, the paper is separated from the heat roller by its separation claws and is conveyed from the machine to eject and switchback section.

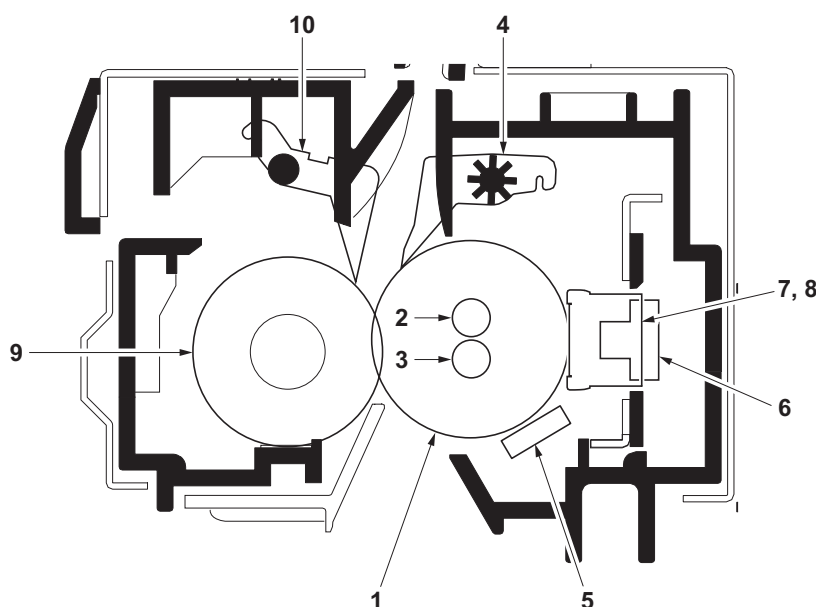
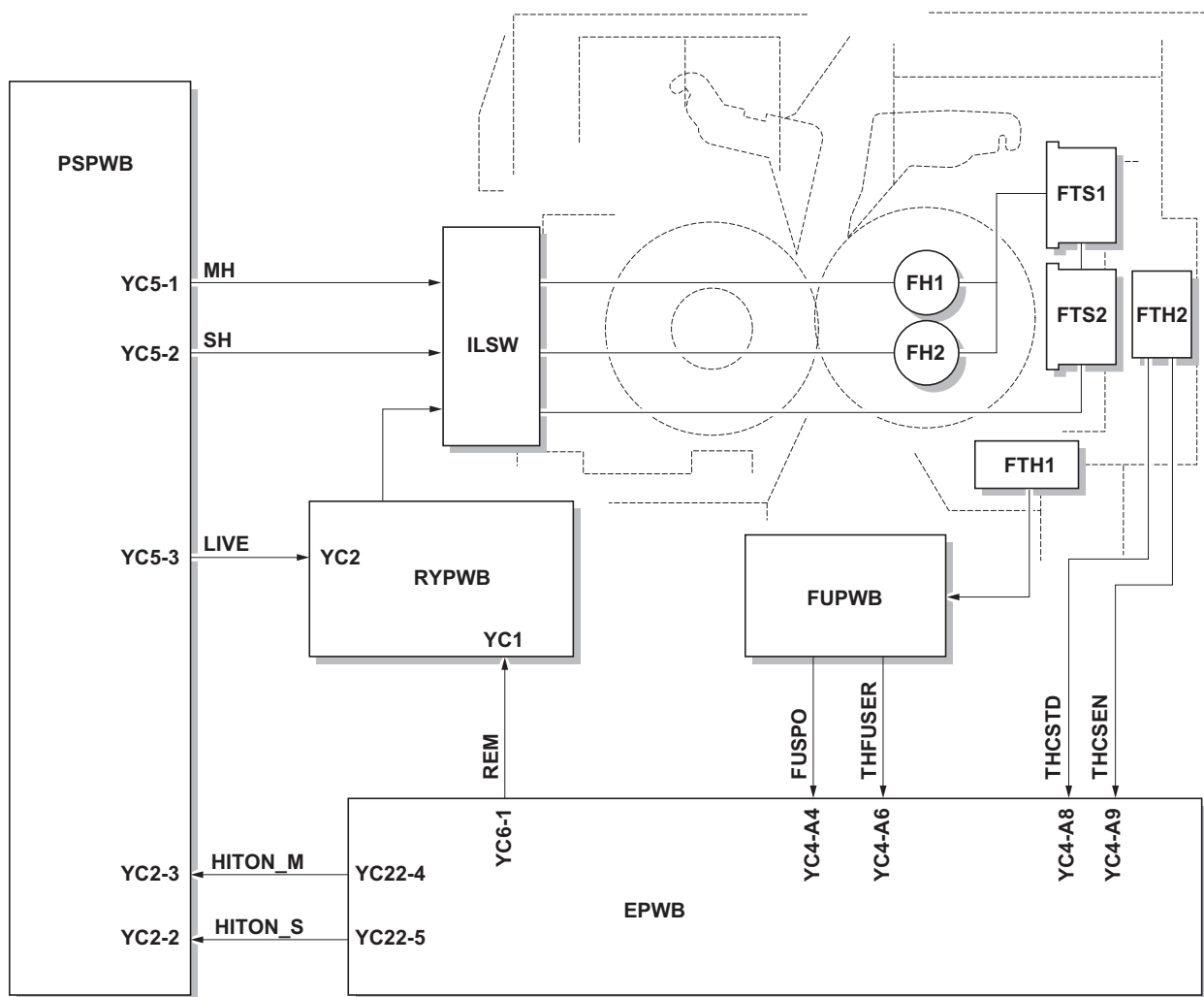


Figure 2-1-16 Fuser section

- (1) Heat roller
- (2) Fuser heater 1 (FH1)
- (3) Fuser heater 2 (FH2)
- (4) Heat roller separation claws
- (5) Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH1)
- (6) Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH2)
- (7) Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1)
- (8) Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2)
- (9) Press roller
- (10) Press roller separation claws

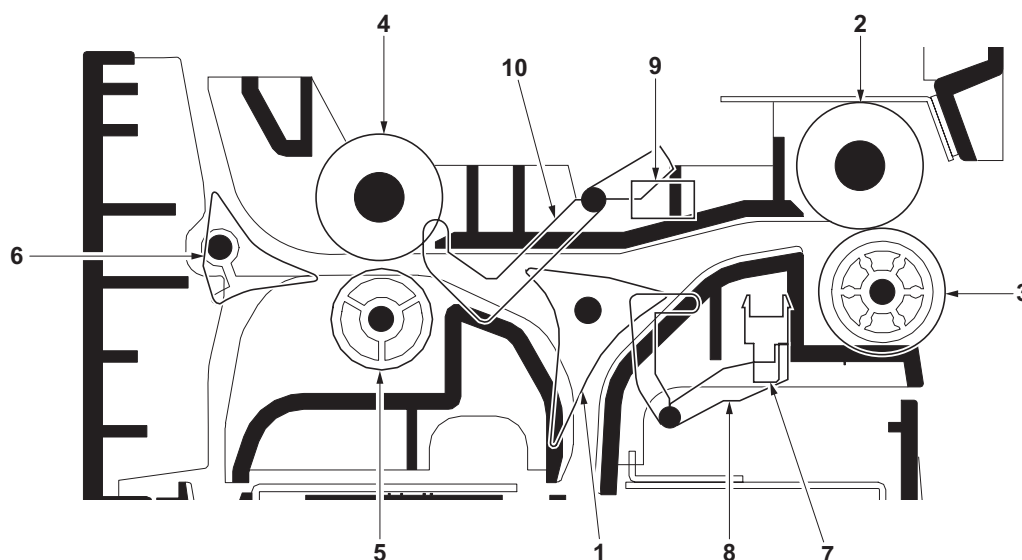


**Figure 2-1-17 Fuser section block diagram**

### 2-1-7 Eject and switchback sections

The eject and switchback sections eject paper on which fixing has ended with the eject roller that is rotated by forward rotation of the eject motor.

In duplex copying, paper is turned over by reverse rotation of the eject motor. When paper is transferred to the job separator or the internal finisher, the feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) is turned on to activate the feedshift guide to switch the paper transfer path.



**Figure 2-1-18 Eject and switchback sections**

- (1) Feedshift guide
- (2) Eject roller
- (3) Eject pulley
- (4) Switchback roller
- (5) Switchback pulley
- (6) Feedshift guide
- (7) Eject switch (ESW)
- (8) Actuator (Eject switch)
- (9) Feedshift switch (FSSW)
- (10) Actuator (Feedshift switch)

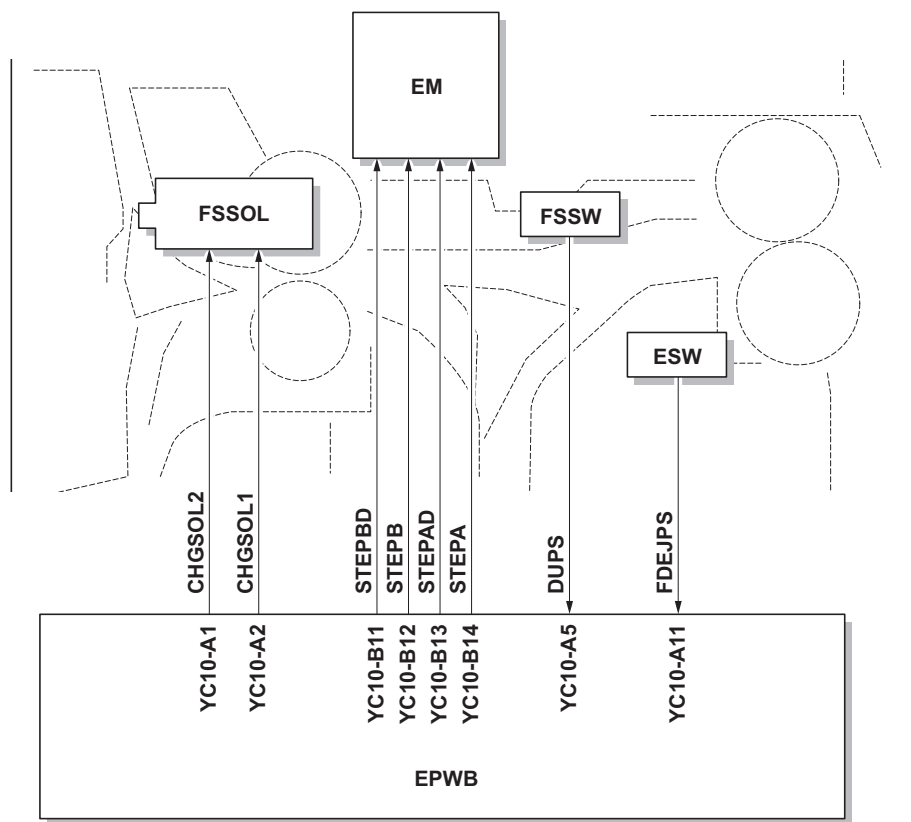
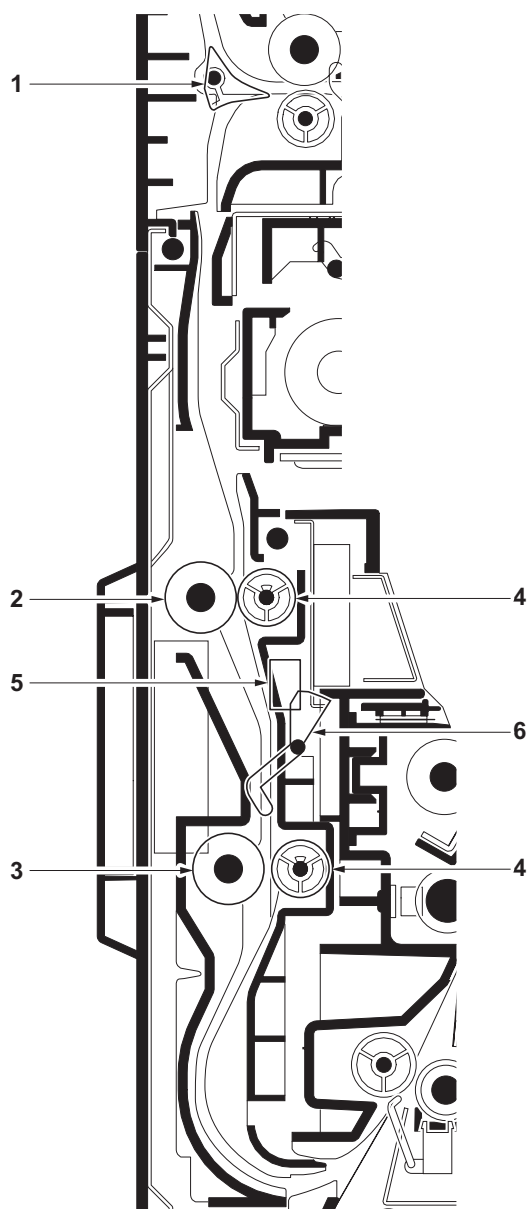


Figure 2-1-19 Eject and switchback sections block diagram

## 2-1-8 Duplex section

The duplex section consists of the components shown in figure. In duplex mode, after copying on to the reverse face of the paper, the paper is reversed in the switchback section and conveyed to the duplex section. The paper is then conveyed to the paper feed section by the upper and lower duplex feed rollers.



**Figure 2-1-20 Duplex section**

- (1) Feedshift guide
- (2) Upper duplex feed roller
- (3) Lower duplex feed roller
- (4) Duplex feed pulley
- (5) Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)
- (6) Actuator (Duplex paper conveying switch)

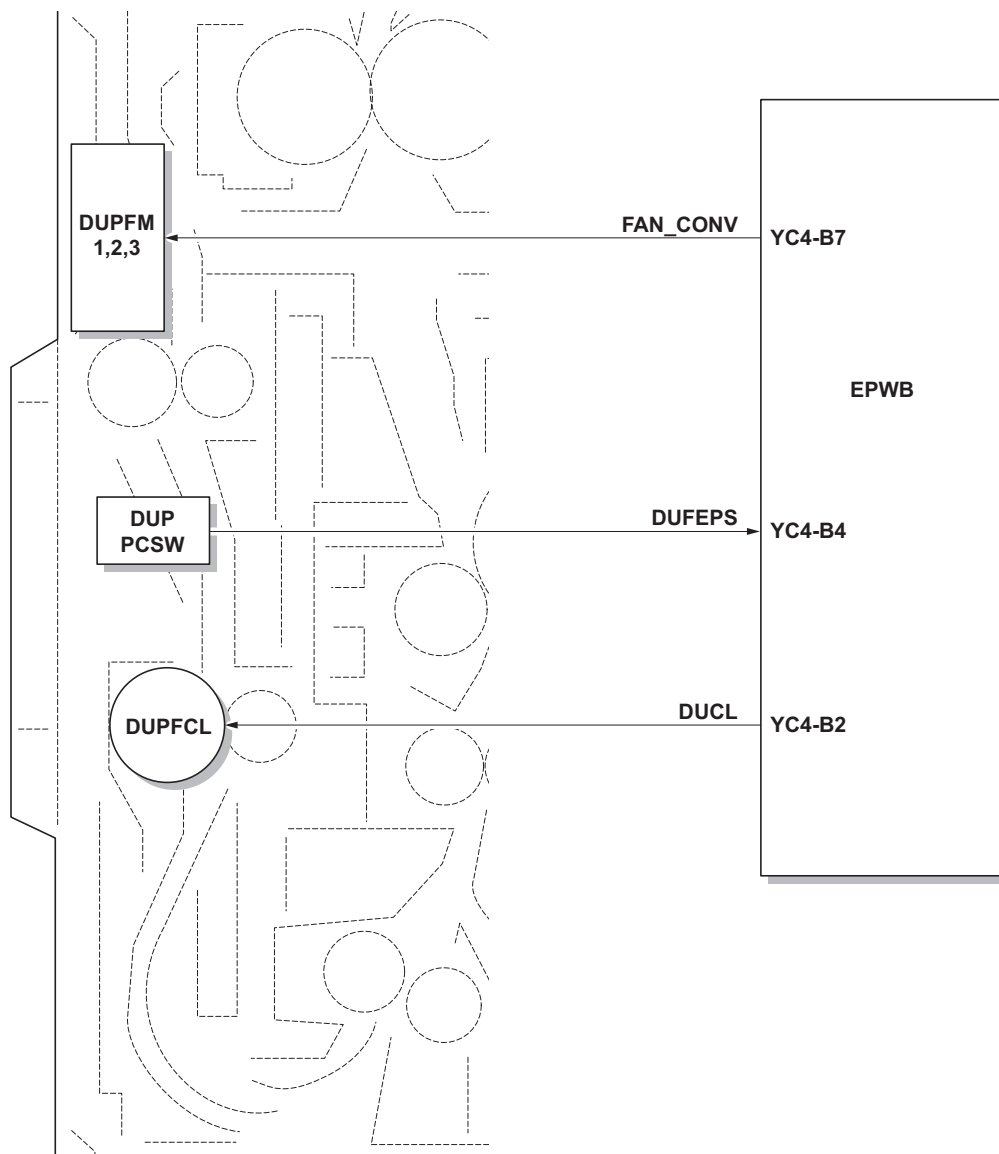


Figure 2-1-21 Duplex section block diagram

## 2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

### (1) PWBs

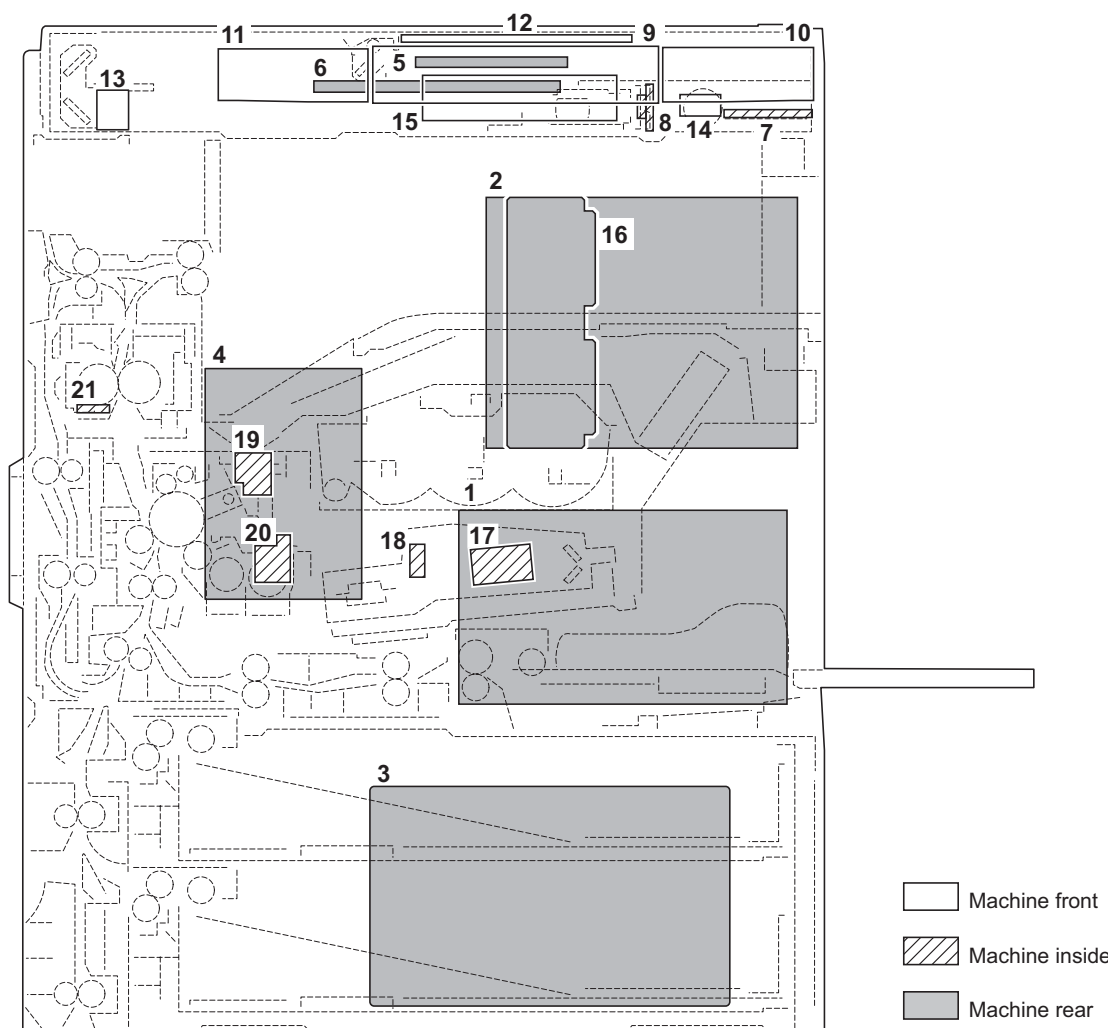


Figure 2-2-1 PWBs

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Engine PWB (EPWB).....              | Controls the other PWBs, electrical components and optional devices.     |
| 2. Main PWB (MPWB) .....               | Controls the image processing and operation panel.                       |
| 3. Power source PWB (PSPWB) .....      | Generates +24 V DC, 5 V DC and 3.3 V DC; controls the fuser heaters.     |
| 4. High voltage PWB (HVPWB) .....      | Main charging. Generates developing bias and high voltages for transfer. |
| 5. ISM PWB (ISMPWB) .....              | Controls the scanner section.  |
| 6. Inverter PWB (INPWB) .....          | Controls the exposure lamp.  |
| 7. ISC PWB (ISCPWB) .....              | Controls the shading correction and AGC of CCD.                          |
| 8. CCD PWB (CCDPWB).....               | Reads the image of originals.  |
| 9. Main operation PWB (OPWB-M) .....   | Controls touch panel and LCD indication.                                 |
| 10. Right operation PWB (OPWB-R) ..... | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs.                         |
| 11. Left operation PWB (OPWB-L) .....  | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs.                         |
| 12. Upper operation PWB (OPWB-U) ..... | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs.                         |
| 13. Front operation PWB (OPWB-F).....  | Consists of the display LEDs.  |
| 14. LCD inverter PWB (LINPWB) .....    | Controls LCD back light.   |
| 15. LCD PWB (LCDPWB).....              | Controls LCD indication.   |
| 16. Interface PWB (INPWB).....         | Consists of wiring relay circuits.                                       |
| 17. APC PWB (APCPWB) .....             | Generates and controls the laser beam.                                   |
| 18. PD PWB (LDPWB).....                | Detects horizontal synchronizing timing of laser beam.                   |

19. Drum PWB (DRPWB) ..... Controls the drum section.  
 20. Developing PWB (DEVPWB) ..... Controls the developing section.  
 21. Fuser PWB (FUPWB) ..... Controls the fuser section.

**List of correspondences of PWB names**

No.	Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list
1	Engine PWB (EPWB)	PARTS PWB ENGINE SP
2	Main PWB (MPWB)	PARTS MAIN PWB ASSY SP
3	Power source PWB (PSPWB)	LVU 100/LVU 200
4	High voltage PWB (HVPWB)	HVU
5	ISM PWB (ISMPWB)	PARTS PWB ISM ASSY SP
6	Inverter PWB (INPWB)	PARTS UNIT LAMP INVERTER
7	ISC PWB (ISCPWB)	PARTS PWB ISC SP
8	CCD PWB (CCDPWB)	-
9	Main operation PWB (OPWB-M)	PARTS PWB PANEL MAIN SP
10	Right operation PWB (OPWB-R)	PARTS PWB PANEL RIGHT ASSY SP
11	Left operation PWB (OPWB-L)	PARTS PWB PANEL LEFT ASSY SP
12	Upper operation PWB (OPWB-U)	OPERATION UPPER PWB ASS'Y
13	Front operation PWB (OPWB-F)	OPERATION FRONT PWB ASS'Y
14	LCD inverter PWB (LINPWB)	LCD INVERTER
15	LCD PWB (LCDPWB)	LCD OPERATION
16	Interface PWB (IFPWB)	PARTS PWB KUIO IF ASSY SP
17	APC PWB (APCPWB)	-
18	PD PWB (PDPWB)	-
19	Drum PWB (DRPWB)	-
20	Developing PWB (DEVPWB)	-
21	Fuser PWB (FUPWB)	-

## (2) Switches and sensors

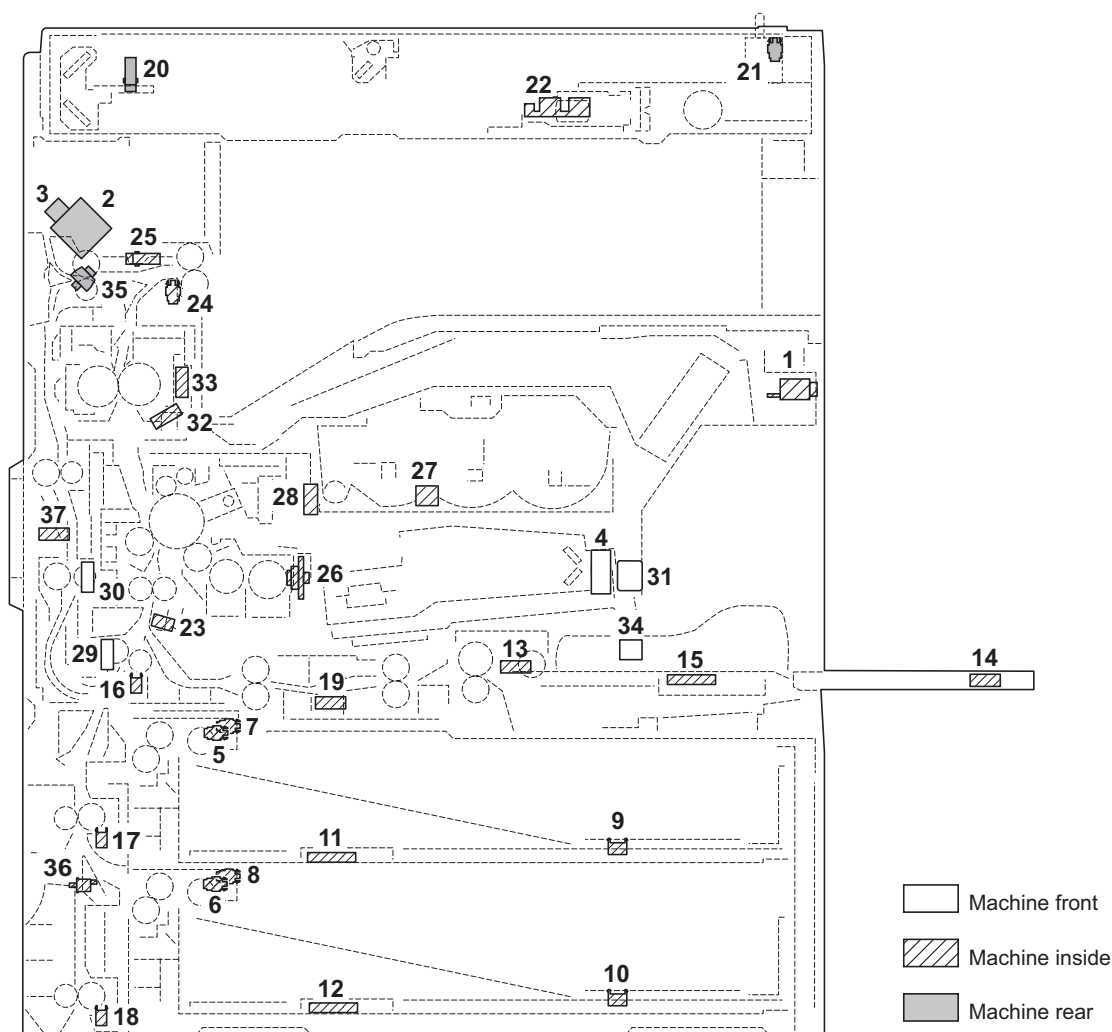
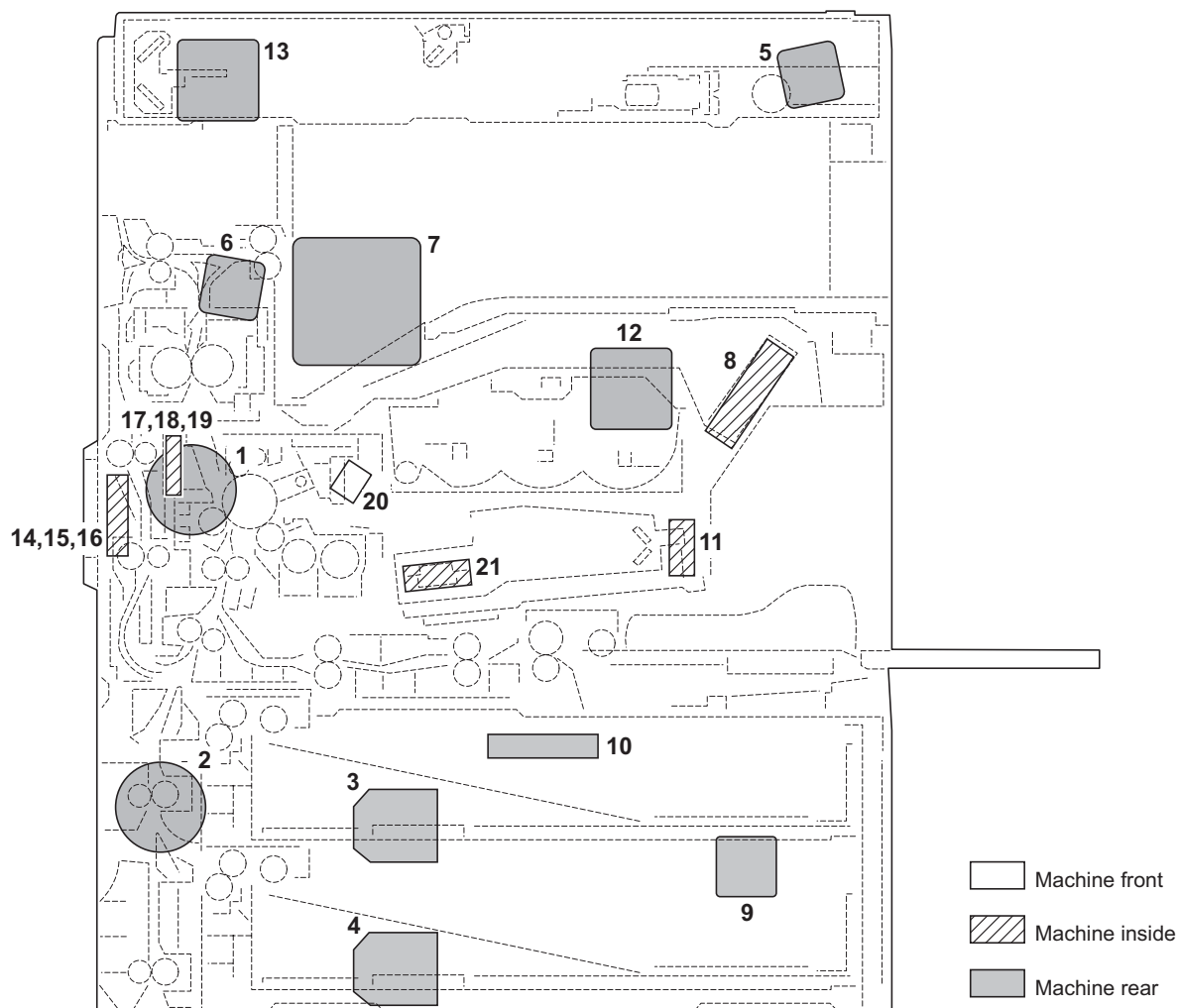


Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors

1. Main power switch (MSW) ..... Turns the AC power on and off.
2. Interlock switch (ILSW) ..... Turns the AC power for the fuser heaters on and off.
3. Safety switch 1 (SSW1) ..... Breaks the safety circuit when the left cover 1 is opened.
4. Safety switch 2 (SSW2) ..... Breaks the safety circuit when the front cover is opened.
5. Paper switch 1 (PSW1) ..... Detects the presence of paper in cassette 1.
6. Paper switch 2 (PSW2) ..... Detects the presence of paper in cassette 2.
7. Lift switch 1 (LSW1) ..... Detects lift reaching the upper limit in cassette 1.
8. Lift switch 2 (LSW2) ..... Detects lift reaching the upper limit in cassette 2.
9. Paper size length switch 1 (PLSW1) ..... Detects the length of paper in the cassette 1.
10. Paper size length switch 2 (PLSW2) ..... Detects the length of paper in the cassette 2.
11. Paper size width switch 1 (PWSW1) ..... Detects the width of paper in the cassette 1.
12. Paper size width switch 2 (PWSW2) ..... Detects the width of paper in the cassette 2.
13. MP paper switch (MPPSW) ..... Detects the presence of paper on the MP tray.
14. MP paper size length switch (MPPLSW) ..... Detects the length of paper on the MP tray.
15. MP paper size width switch (MPPWSW) ..... Detects the width of paper on the MP tray.
16. Feed switch 1 (FSW1) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper cassette paper feed section.
17. Feed switch 2 (FSW2) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper cassette paper feed section.
18. Feed switch 3 (FSW3) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper cassette paper feed section.
19. MP feed switch (MPFSW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the MP tray paper feed section.
20. Home position switch (HPSW) ..... Detects the optical system in the home position.

- 21. Original detection switch (ODSW) ..... Detects the opening/closing of the original platen.
- 22. Original size sensor (OSS) ..... Detects the size of the original.
- 23. Registration switch (RSW) ..... Controls the secondary paper feed start timing.
- 24. Eject switch (ESW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the fuser section.
- 25. Feedshift switch (FSSW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the switchback section in a duplex copy.
- 26. Toner sensor (TNS)..... Detects the toner density in the developing unit.
- 27. Toner container detection switch  
(TCDSW) ..... Detects the presence of the toner container.
- 28. Toner container sensor (TCS)..... Detects the quantity of toner in a toner container.
- 29. Waste toner box detection switch  
(WTDSW)..... Detects the presence of the waste toner box.
- 30. Overflow sensor (OFS) ..... Detects when the waste toner box is full.
- 31. Humidity sensor (HUMS) ..... Detects absolute humidity.
- 32. Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH1) ..... Detects the heat roller temperature.
- 33. Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH2) ..... Detects the heat roller temperature.
- 34. Front cover switch (FRCSW) ..... Detects the opening and closing of the front cover.
- 35. Left cover 1 switch (LC1SW) ..... Detects the opening and closing of the left cover 1.
- 36. Left cover 2 switch (LC2SW) ..... Detects the opening and closing of the left cover 2.
- 37. Duplex paper conveying switch  
(DUPPCSW) ..... Detects a paper jam in the duplex section.

**(3) Motors****Figure 2-2-3 Motors**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Drive motor (DM)                     | Drives the machine.  |
| 2. Paper feed motor (PFM)               | Drives paper feed section.   |
| 3. Lift motor 1 (LM1)                   | Drives cassette 1 lift.  |
| 4. Lift motor 2 (LM2)                   | Drives cassette 2 lift.  |
| 5. Scanner motor (SM)                   | Drives the scanner section.  |
| 6. Eject motor (EM)                     | Drives the eject section.  |
| 7. Fuser fan motor (FUFM)               | Cools the fuser section.   |
| 8. Developing fan motor (DEVFM)         | Cools the developing section.  |
| 9. Power source fan motor 1 (PSFM1)     | Cools the power source PWB.  |
| 10. Power source fan motor 2 (PSFM2)    | Cools the power source PWB.  |
| 11. LSU fan motor (LSUFM)               | Cools the LSU.   |
| 12. Controller fan motor (CONFM)        | Cools the controller box.  |
| 13. Scanner fan motor (SFM)             | Cools the scanner section.   |
| 14. Duplex fan motor 1 (DUPFM1)         | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 15. Duplex fan motor 2 (DUPFM2)         | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 16. Duplex fan motor 4 (DUPFM3)         | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 17. Paper conveying fan motor 1 (PCFM1) | Cools the machine interior (around the paper conveying).                   |
| 18. Paper conveying fan motor 2 (PCFM2) | Cools the machine interior (around the paper conveying).                   |
| 19. Paper conveying fan motor 3 (PCFM3) | Cools the machine interior (around the paper conveying).                   |
| 20. Main charger cleaning motor (MCCM)  | Drives the main charger auto cleaning.                                     |
| 21. Polygon motor (PM)                  | Drives the polygon mirror.   |

## (4) Others

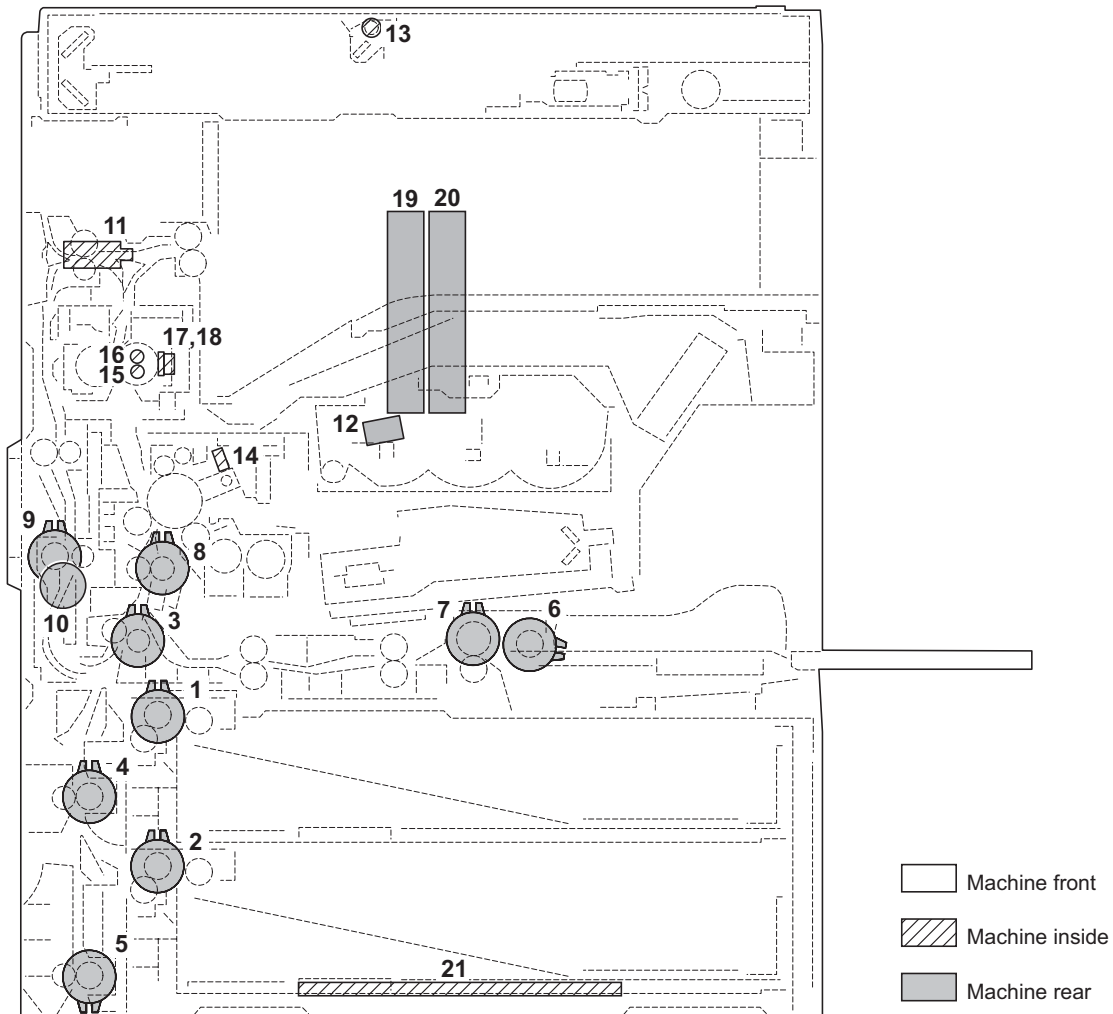


Figure 2-2-4 Others

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) .....   | Primary paper feed from the cassette 1.                       |
| 2. Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) .....   | Primary paper feed from the cassette 2.                       |
| 3. Feed clutch 1 (FCL1) .....          | Controls the drive of feed roller.                            |
| 4. Feed clutch 2 (FCL2) .....          | Controls the drive of feed roller.                            |
| 5. Feed clutch 3 (FCL3) .....          | Controls the drive of feed roller.                            |
| 6. MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) ..... | Primary paper feed from the MP tray.                          |
| 7. MP feed clutch (MPFCL) .....        | Controls the drive of MP feed roller.                         |
| 8. Registration clutch (RCL) .....     | Secondary paper feed.   |
| 9. Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL) .....   | Controls the drive of the duplex feed roller.                 |
| 10. Developing clutch (DEVCL) .....    | Controls the drive of the developing section.                 |
| 11. Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) .....   | Operates the feedshift guide.                                 |
| 12. Toner feed solenoid (TNFSOL) ..... | Replenishes toner.  |
| 13. Exposure lamp (EL) .....           | Exposes originals.  |
| 14. Cleaning lamp (CL) .....           | Removes residual charge from the drum surface.                |
| 15. Fuser heater 1 (FH1) .....         | Heats the heat roller.  |
| 16. Fuser heater 2 (FH2) .....         | Heats the heat roller.  |
| 17. Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1) .....    | Prevents overheating in the fuser section.                    |
| 18. Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2) .....    | Prevents overheating in the fuser section.                    |
| 19. Hard disk unit 1 (HDD1) .....      | Stores the image data and information of job accounting mode. |
| 20. Hard disk unit 2 (HDD2) .....      | Stores the image data and information of job accounting mode. |
| 21. Cassette heater (CH) .....         | Dehumidifies the cassette section.                            |

## 2-3-1 Power source PWB

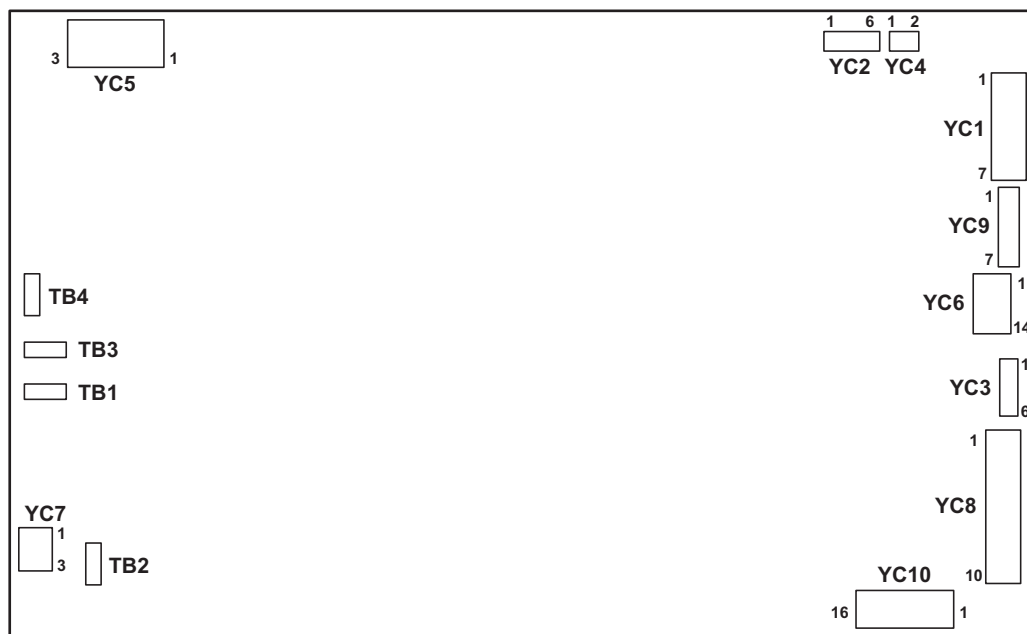


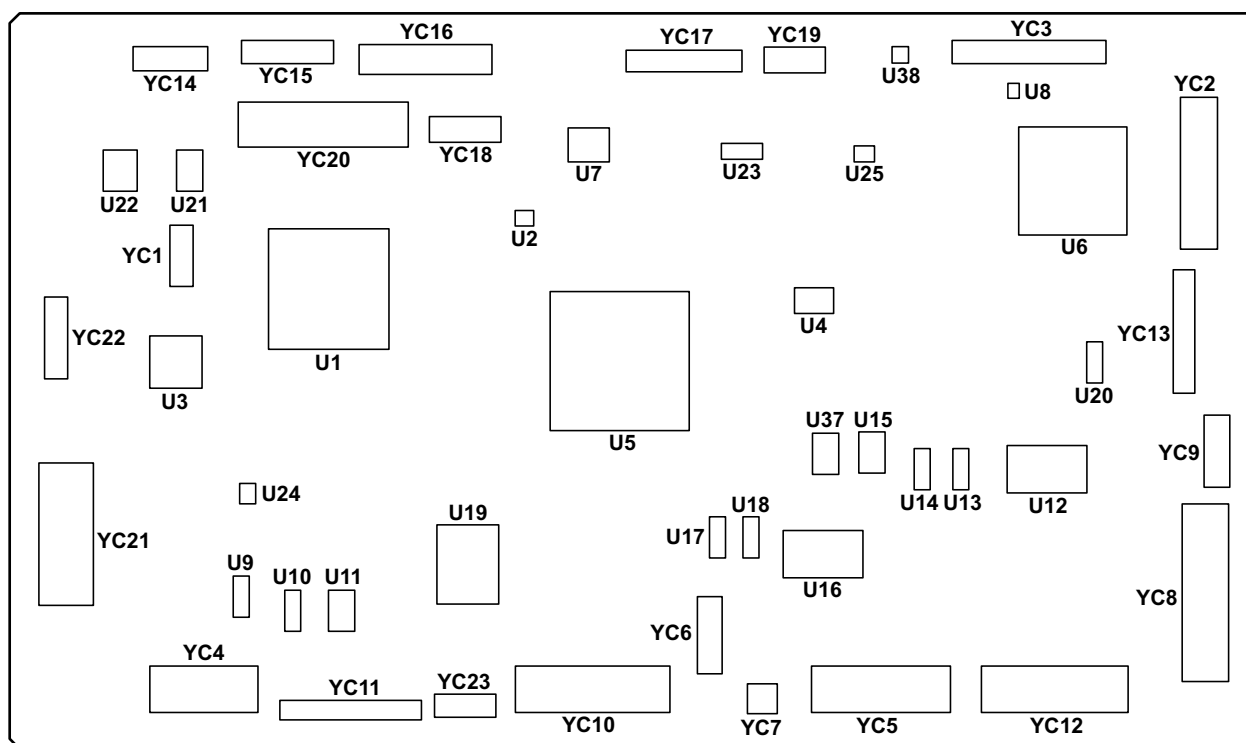
Figure 2-3-1 Power source PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>TB</b>  Connected to the inlet and main power switch	TB1	LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
	TB2	COM	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
	TB3	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to MSW
	TB4	LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input from MSW
<b>YC1</b>  Connected to the engine PWB and DP	1	+24VD	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+3.3VD	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to EPWB
	6	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to EPWB
	7	+24VDF	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB and DPDPWB
<b>YC2</b>  Connected to the engine PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	HITON_S	I	0/3.3 V DC	FH2: On/Off
	3	HITON_M	I	0/3.3 V DC	FH1: On/Off
	4	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to EPWB
	5	ZCROSS	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	6	FANREM	I	0/24 V DC	PSFM1,2: On/Off
<b>YC3</b>  Connected to the document finisher	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC4</b>  Connected to the power source fan motor 1/2	1	FANREM	O	0/24 V DC	PSFM1,2: On/Off
	2	+24VD	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
<b>YC5</b>  Connected to the relay PWB and interlock switch	1	MH	O	120/0 V AC 220-240/0 V AC	FH1: On/Off
	2	SH	O	120/0 V AC 220-240/0 V AC	FH2: On/Off
	3	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to RYPWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC6</b> Connected to the ISM PWB	1	+24VD	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to ISM PWB
	2	+24VD	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to ISM PWB
	3	+24VD	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to ISM PWB
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	PGND	-	-	Ground
	6	PGND	-	-	Ground
	7	SGND	-	-	Ground
	8	SGND	-	-	Ground
	9	SGND	-	-	Ground
	10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	11	+12VD	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to ISM PWB
	12	+5VD	-	-	Not used
	13	+3.3VD	-	-	Not used
	14	+3.3VD	-	-	Not used
<b>YC7</b> Connected to the cassette heater	1	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH
	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH
<b>YC8</b> Connected to the paper feeder, document finisher and hard disk	1	+24VDF	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to paper feeder
	2	+24VDF	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to document finisher
	3	+5VDF	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to document finisher
	4	P.GND	-	-	Ground
	5	F.GND	-	-	Ground
	6	P.GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to hard disk
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to hard disk
<b>YC9</b> Connected to the main operation PWB	1	+12VD	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to OPWB-M
	2	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OPWB-M
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OPWB-M
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	NC	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10 Connected to the main PWB, DP and engine PWB	1	SLEEP_N	I	0/5 V DC	SLEEP signal
	2	+5VDF	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to DPDPWB
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	4	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	5	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	7	NC	-	-	Not used
	8	NC	-	-	Not used
	9	NC	-	-	Not used
	10	NC	-	-	Not used
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	NC	-	-	Not used
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	GND	-	-	Ground

### 2-3-2 Engine PWB



**Figure 2-3-2 Engine PWB silk-screen diagram**

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC2 Connected to the main PWB	1	MAIN_SCL	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MPWB clock signal
	2	HLD_ENG	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB hold signal
	3	MAIN_SI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MPWB serial communication data signal
	4	EG_SLEEPG	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB sleep signal: On/Off
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	VMRE_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	VMRE_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	11	VCLK_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data clock signal
	12	VD_D0_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	13	VCLK_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data clock signal
	14	VD_D0_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	VD_D1_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	VD_D1_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	VD_D2_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	21	GND	-	-	Ground
	22	VD_D2_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	23	GND	-	-	Ground
	24	VD_D3_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	25	GND	-	-	Ground
	26	VD_D3_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	27	HSYNC_DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	28	VSNC_DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	29	HSYNC_DN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	30	VSNC_DN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	31	HSYNC_CP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	32	VSNC_CP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	33	HSYNC_CN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	34	VSNC_CN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	35	HSYNC_BP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	36	VSNC_BP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	37	HSYNC_BN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	38	VSNC_BN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	39	HSYNC_AP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	40	VSNC_AP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	41	HSYNC_AN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	42	VSNC_AN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	43	GND	-	-	Ground
	44	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC2</b> Connected to the main PWB	45	GND	-	-	Ground
	46	MAIN_EGIRN	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB interrupt signal
	47	MAIN_SO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MPWB serial communication data signal
	48	MAIN_SDIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB communication direction signal
	49	MAIN_SBSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB busy signal
	50	24V_OFF	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB 24 V down signal
<b>YC3</b> Connected to the laser scanner unit	1	5VSAFE	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to APCPWB
	2	SAMPLE1	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB sample/hold signal
	3	POWCONT	O	Analog	APCPWB power control signal
	4	LASER	O	0/3.3 V DC	Laser diode output signal
	5	VD+	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal
	6	VD-	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	PD	I	0/3.3 V DC	Laser sync signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PM
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	SCAN	O	0/24 V DC	PM: On/Off
	13	SCRDYN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PM ready signal
	14	SCCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PM clock signal
<b>YC4</b> Connected to the registration switch, fuser unit, duplex feed clutch, duplex paper conveying switch, paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3 and duplex fan motor 1/2/3	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	RGFEPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	RSW: On/Off
	A3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to RSW
	A4	FUSP0	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser unit distinction signal
	A5	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to FUPWB
	A6	THFUSER	I	Analog	FTH1 detection voltage signal
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	THCSTD	I	Analog	FTH2 detection voltage signal
	A9	THCSEN	I	Analog	FTH2 detection voltage signal
	A10	OPEN	-	-	Not used
	B1	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DUPFCL
	B2	DUCL	O	0/24 V DC	DUPFCL: On/Off
	B3	GND	-	-	Ground
	B4	DUFEPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUPPCSW: On/Off
	B5	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to DUPPCSW
	B6	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PCFM1,2,3
	B7	FAN_CONV	O	0/24 V DC	PCFM1,2,3: On/Off
	B8	DUSET	I	0/3.3 V DC	Duplex unit distinction signal
	B9	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DUPFM1,2,3
	B10	FAN5	O	0/24 V DC	DUPFM1,2,3: On/Off

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC5</b> Connected to the MP feed switch, toner container sensor, developing PWB, toner feed solenoid, toner container detection switch and drum PWB	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	MPFFEPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPFSW: On/Off
	A3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPFSW
	A4	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to TCS
	A5	ETONPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	TCS detection signal
	A6	GND	-	-	Ground
	A7	DEVEP0	I	0/3.3 V DC	Developing unit distinction signal
	A8	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to DEVPWB
	A9	TNEDIN	I	0/3.3 V DC	TNS detection signal
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	DVUNITN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Developing unit detection signal
	A12	DVHIT	O	0/3.3 V DC	DEVPWB FUSE CUT signal
	A13	EEDATA	I/O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB EEPROM DATA signal
	A14	EESCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB EEPROM clock signal
	B1	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to TNFSOL
	B2	TONERSOL	O	0/24 V DC	TNFSOL: On/Off
	B3	TOBOSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	TCDSW: On/Off
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	DRUMP0	I	0/3.3 V DC	Drum unit distinction signal
	B6	ERASER	O	0/24 V DC	CL: On/Off
	B7	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CL
	B8	EEDATA	I/O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB EEPROM DATA signal
	B9	EESCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB EEPROM clock signal
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	DRUNIT	I	0/3.3 V DC	Drum unit detection signal
	B12	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to DRPWB
	B13	MCMFWD	O	0/24 V DC	MCCM: On/Off (forward)
	B14	MCMREV	O	0/24 V DC	MCCM: On/Off (reverse)
<b>YC7</b> Connected to the developing clutch	1	DLPCL	O	0/24 V DC	DEVCL: On/Off
	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DEVCL
<b>YC8</b> Connected to the feed switch 2/3, feed clutch 2/3, left cover 2 switch, lift motor 1/2, paper size length switch 1/2, lift switch 1/2 and paper switch 1/2	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	FEED2SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSW3: On/Off
	A3	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to FSW3
	A4	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to FCL3
	A5	FEED3CL	O	0/24 V DC	FCL3: On/Off
	A6	GND	-	-	Ground
	A7	FEED2SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSW2: On/Off
	A8	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to FSW2
	A9	GND	-	-	Ground
	A10	FECOSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	LC2SW: On/Off
	A11	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to FCL2
	A12	FEED2CL	O	0/24 V DC	FCL2: On/Off
	A13	UPLIFSW2	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 paper gauge signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC8</b> Connected to the feed switch 2/3, feed clutch 2/3, left cover 2 switch, lift motor 1/2, paper size length switch 1/2, lift switch 1/2 and paper switch 1/2	A14	GND	-	-	Ground
	A15	UPLIFSW1	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 paper gauge signal
	A16	GND	-	-	Ground
	A17	UPLIMOH1	O	0/24 V DC	LM1: On/Off
	A18	GND	-	-	Ground
	A19	LOLESW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	B1	GND	-	-	Ground
	B2	UPLESW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	B3	LOLIFSW2	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 paper gauge signal
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	LOLIFSW1	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 paper gauge signal
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	LOLIMOH1	O	0/24 V DC	LM2: On/Off
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	UPLIPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	LSW1: On/Off
	B10	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LSW1
	B11	GND	-	-	Ground
	B12	UPPAPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	PSW1: On/Off
	B13	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to PSW1
	B14	GND	-	-	Ground
	B15	LOLIPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	LSW2: On/Off
	B16	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LSW2
	B17	GND	-	-	Ground
	B18	LOPAPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	PSW2: On/Off
	B19	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to PSW2
<b>YC9</b> Connected to the paper size width switch 1/2	1	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PWSW1
	2	UP24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PWSW1
	3	UPWIDE0	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW1: On/Off
	4	UPWIDE1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW1: On/Off
	5	UPWIDE2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW1: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PWSW2
	8	LO24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PWSW2
	9	LOWIDE0	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW2: On/Off
	10	LOWIDE1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW2: On/Off
	11	LOWIDE2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW2: On/Off
	12	GND	-	-	Ground

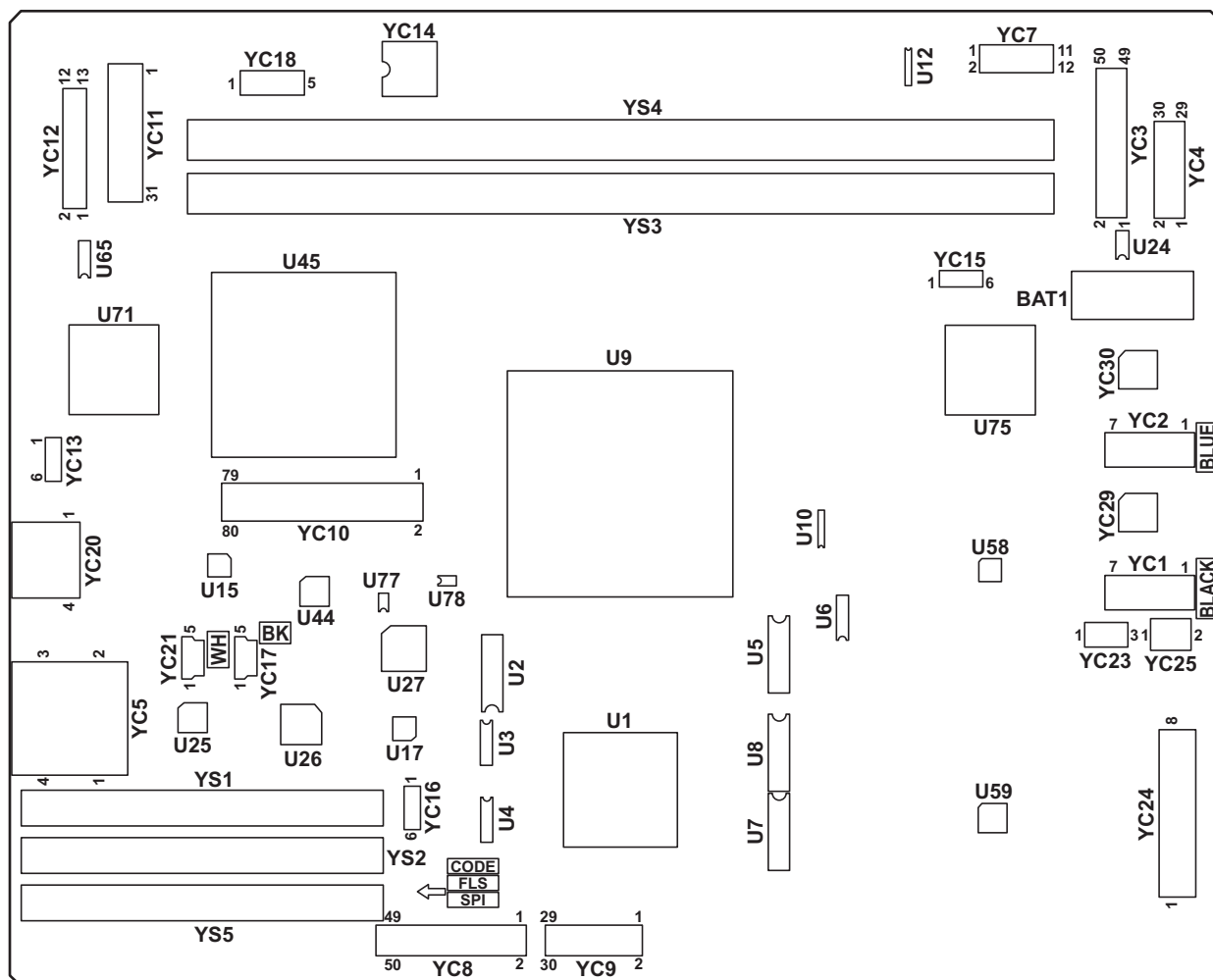
Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC10</b> Connected to the feed-shift solenoid, feedshift switch, eject switch, fuser fan motor, left cover 1 switch, paper feed clutch 1/2, humidity sensor and eject motor	A1	CHGSOL2	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (return)
	A2	CHGSOL1	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (activate)
	A3	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to FSSOL
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	DUPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSSW: On/Off
	A6	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to FSSW
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	FDFULPS	-	-	Not used
	A9	+5V	-	-	Not used
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	FDEJPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	ESW: On/Off
	A12	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to ESW
	A13	24V1	O	24 V DC	5 V DC power output to FUFM
	A14	FAN1	O	0/24 V DC	FUFM: On/Off
	A15	GND	-	-	Ground
	A16	SIDCOSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	LC1SW: On/Off
	B1	UPFECL	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL1: On/Off
	B2	UP24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFCL1
	B3	LO24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFCL2
	B4	LOFECL	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL2: On/Off
	B5	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to RCL
	B6	REGFECL	O	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
	B7	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to HUMS
	B8	SDA	I	Analog	HUMS detection voltage signal
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
	B10	SCL	I	Analog	Thermistor detection voltage signal
	B11	STEPBD	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B12	STEPB	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B13	STEPAD	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B14	STEPA	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	B15	OPEN	-	-	Not used
	B16	OPEN	-	-	Not used
<b>YC11</b> Connected to the drive motor and paper feed motor	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DM
	2	PGND	-	-	Ground
	3	MMOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	DM ready signal
	4	MMOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DM clock signal
	5	MMOT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	DM: On/Off
	6	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFM
	7	PGND	-	-	Ground
	8	SMOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFM ready signal
	9	SMOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFM clock signal
	10	SMOT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFM: On/Off

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC12</b> Connected to the MP unit, waste toner box detection switch, over-flow sensor, front cover switch, LSU fan motor and developing fan motor	A1	MPFSIZE0	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	A2	MPFSIZE1	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	A3	MPFSIZE2	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	A6	MPFPAPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPSW: On/Off
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A9	MPFPAPCL	O	0/24 V DC	MPPFCL: On/Off
	A10	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	A11	MPFFECL	O	0/24 V DC	MPFCL: On/Off
	B1	NC	-	-	Not used
	B2	+24V1	-	-	Ground
	B3	DEVFAN	O	0/24 V DC	CFM2: On/Off
	B4	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B5	TOOVSE	I	0/3.3 V DC	WTDSW: On/Off
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	OVFLSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	OFS: On/Off
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	FRTCOSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	FRCSW: On/Off
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	+24V1	O	0/24 V DC	CFM1: On/Off
	B12	FAN4	-	-	Ground
	B13	+5VDPI	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B14	MPFLEPS	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
	B15	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC13</b> Connected to the high-voltage PWB	1	BVSEL1	O	Analog	Developing bias control voltage
	2	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to HVPWB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	MHVDR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Main charging: On/Off
	5	HVCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing bias clock signal
	6	RHVDR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Separation charging: On/Off
	7	RICTL	O	Analog	Separation charging control voltage
	8	TICTL	O	Analog	Transfer charging control voltage
	9	BVSEL2	O	Analog	Developing bias control voltage
	10	THVDR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Transfer charging: On/Off

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC14</b> Connected to the document finisher	1	DET	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher connection signal
	2	DFSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication data signal
	3	DFSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication data signal
	4	DFSCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher clock signal
	5	DFSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Document finisher select signal
	6	SISEL	-	-	Not used
	7	DFRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher ready signal
	8	SIRDY	-	-	Not used
<b>YC15</b> Connected to the paper feeder	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to paper feeder
	3	PFSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal
	4	PFSCCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder clock signal
	5	PFSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	6	PFSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	7	PFREADY	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder ready signal
	8	PFFFEED	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder feed signal
<b>YC16</b> Connected to the built-in finisher	1	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to built-in finisher
	2	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to built-in finisher
	3	PGND	-	-	Ground
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to built-in finisher
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	7	DFSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Built-in finisher select signal
	8	DFRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Built-in finisher ready signal
	9	SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher serial communication data signal
	10	SDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher serial communication data signal
	11	SCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher clock signal
	12	OPEN	-	-	Not used
<b>YC17</b> Connected to the job separator	1	JOB_EJT_SIG	I	0/3.3 V DC	JESW: On/Off
	2	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to JESW
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	SET SIG	I	0/3.3 V DC	Job separator connection signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	EPDSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	EPDSW: On/Off
	8	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to EPDSW
	9	LED REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	LED: On/Off
	10	+5VD LED	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LEDPWB
	11	FSSOL2	O	0/24 V DC	JFSSOL: On/Off (return)
	12	FSSOL1	O	0/24 V DC	JFSSOL: On/Off (activate)
	13	+24VDR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to JFSSOL

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC19</b> Connected to the total counter, key card and key counter	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to total counter
	2	T_CNT_REM1	O	0/24 V DC	Total counter signal
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	SET_MS_SIG	I	0/3.3 V DC	Connection signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	KEY_SET_SIG	I	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter connection signal
	7	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to key counter
	8	KEY_CNT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	Key counter signal
	9	SET_KT_SIG	I	0/3.3 V DC	Connection signal
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC21</b> Connected to the power source PWB	1	+24VDR	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PSPWB
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+3.3V	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power input from PSPWB
	6	+5VD	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	7	+24VDR	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PSPWB
<b>YC22</b> Connected to the power source PWB	1	FAN3N	O	0/24 V DC	PSFM1,2: On/Off
	2	ZCROSS	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	3	+5VD	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	4	_HITON_M	O	0/3.3 V DC	FH1: On/Off
	5	_HITON_S	O	0/3.3 V DC	FH2: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal
<b>YC23</b> Connected to the feed clutch 1 and feed switch 1	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output
	2	FEED1CL	O	0/24 V DC	FCL1: On/Off
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	UPFEPS	-	0/3.3 V DC	FSW1: On/Off
	5	+5VD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to FSW1

### 2-3-3 Main PWB



**Figure 2-3-3 Main PWB silk-screen diagram**

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC1</b> Connected to the hard disk 1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	TXP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	3	TXN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	RXN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	6	RXP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC2</b> Connected to the hard disk 2	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	TXP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	3	TXN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	RXN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	6	RXP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC3</b> Connected to the engine PWB	1	EG_SCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EPWB clock signal
	2	HLD_ENG	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB hold signal
	3	EG_SI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EPWB serial communication data signal
	4	SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB sleep signal: On/Off
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	VMREA P	-	-	Not used
	8	VMRED P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	9	VMREA N	-	-	Not used
	10	VMRED N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	11	VD A0 P	-	-	Not used
	12	VD D0 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	13	VD A0 N	-	-	Not used
	14	VD D0 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	15	VD A1 P	-	-	Not used
	16	VD D1 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	17	VD A1 N	-	-	Not used
	18	VD D1 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	19	VD A2 P	-	-	Not used
	20	VD D2 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	21	VD A2 N	-	-	Not used
	22	VD D2 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	23	VD A3 P	-	-	Not used
	24	VD D3 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	25	VD A3 N	-	-	Not used
	26	VD D3 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data control signal
	27	VMREB P	-	-	Not used
	28	VMREC P	-	-	Not used
	29	VMREB N	-	-	Not used
	30	VMREC N	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC3</b> Connected to the engine PWB	31	VD B0 P	-	-	Not used
	32	VD C0 P	-	-	Not used
	33	VD B0 N	-	-	Not used
	34	VD C0 N	-	-	Not used
	35	VD B1 P	-	-	Not used
	36	VD C1 P	-	-	Not used
	37	VD B1 N	-	-	Not used
	38	VD C1 N	-	-	Not used
	39	VD B2 P	-	-	Not used
	40	VD C2 P	-	-	Not used
	41	VD B2 N	-	-	Not used
	42	VD C2 N	-	-	Not used
	43	VD B3 P	-	-	Not used
	44	VD C3 P	-	-	Not used
	45	VD B3 N	-	-	Not used
	46	VD C3 N	-	-	Not used
	47	VCLKOUT P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data clock signal
	48	GND	-	-	Ground
	49	VCLKOUT N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data clock signal
	50	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC4</b> Connected to the engine PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	HSYNCDN P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	4	VSYNCD P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	5	HSYNCDN N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	6	VSYNCD N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	7	HSYNCCN P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	8	VSYNCC P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	9	HSYNCCN N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	10	VSYNCC N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	11	HSYNCBN P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	12	VSYNCB P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	13	HSYNCBN N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	14	VSYNCB N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	15	HSYNCAN P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	16	VSYNCA P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	17	HSYNCAN N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	18	VSYNCA N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Vertical synchronization signal
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	EG_IRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB interrupt signal
	22	NC	-	-	Not used
	23	EG_SO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EPWB serial communication data signal
	24	NC	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC4</b> Connected to the engine PWB	25	EG_SDIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB communication direction signal
	26	NC	-	-	Not used
	27	EG_SBSY	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB busy signal
	28	NC	-	-	Not used
	29	+24V DOWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB 24 V down signal
	30	NC	-	-	Not used
<b>YC5-1</b> Connected to the ethernet	1	CT	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	2	TD+	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	3	TD-	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	4	RD+	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	5	RD-	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	6	CT	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	7	CAT PHY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	8	ANO PHY	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	9	CAT MAC	-	-	Ground
	10	ANO MAC	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
<b>YC5-2</b> Connected to the USB	U1	VBUS	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	U2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	U3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	U4	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC8</b> Connected to the interface PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	AUDIO	I	Analog	AUDIO signal
	3	SEL AUDIO0	O	0/3.3 V DC	SEL AUDIO0 signal
	4	SEL AUDIO1	O	0/3.3 V DC	SEL AUDIO1 signal
	5	_REG	I	0/3.3 V DC	REG signal
	6	A8	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	7	A15	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	8	A7	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	9	A14	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	10	A6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	11	A13	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	12	A5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	13	A12	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	14	A4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	15	A11	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	16	A3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	17	A10	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	18	A2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	19	A9	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	20	A1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	21	GND	-	-	Ground
	22	GND	-	-	Ground
	23	D8	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	24	D0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	25	D9	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC8</b> Connected to the interface PWB	26	D1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	27	D10	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	28	D2	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	29	D11	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	30	D3	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	31	GND	-	-	Ground
	32	GND	-	-	Ground
	33	D12	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	34	D4	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	35	D13	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	36	D5	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	37	D14	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	38	D6	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	39	D15	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	40	D7	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	41	GND	-	-	Ground
	42	GND	-	-	Ground
	43	KUIODREQT0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODREQT0 signal
	44	KUIODREQT1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODREQT1 signal
	45	KUIODREQR0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODREQR0 signal
	46	KUIODREQR1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODREQR1 signal
	47	KUIOIORN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOIORN0 signal
	48	KUIOIORN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOIORN1 signal
	49	KUIOIOWN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOIOWN0 signal
	50	KUIOIOWN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOIOWN1 signal
<b>YC9</b> Connected to the interface PWB	1	KUIOCSN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOCSN0 signal
	2	KUIOCSN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOCSN1 signal
	3	KUIOACKN0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOACKN0 signal
	4	KUIOACKN1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOACKN1 signal
	5	KUIOIRN0	I	0/3.3 V DC	KUIOIRN0 signal
	6	KUIOIRN1	I	0/3.3 V DC	KUIOIRN1 signal
	7	KUIORDY0	O	0/3.3 V DC	KUIORDY0 signal
	8	KUIORDY1	O	0/3.3 V DC	KUIORDY1 signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	KUIODACKRN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODACKRN0 signal
	12	KUIODACKRN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODACKRN1 signal
	13	KUIODACKTN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODACKTN0 signal
	14	KUIODACKTN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODACKTN1 signal
	15	KUIORSTN0	O	0/3.3 V DC	KUIORSTN0 signal
	16	KUIORSTN1	O	0/3.3 V DC	KUIORSTN1 signal
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	SLEEP signal
	20	CFOEN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CFOEN0 signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC9</b> Connected to the inter-face PWB	21	EXTBOEN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EXTBOEN signal
	22	CFWEN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CFWEN0 signal
	23	EXTBDIR	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EXTBDIR signal
	24	CFRST0	O	0/3.3 V DC	CFRST0 signal
	25	CF0CSN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CF0CSN0 signal
	26	CFWAITN0	I	0/3.3 V DC	CFWAITN0 signal
	27	CF0CSN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CF0CSN1 signal
	28	CF0CDET1	I	0/3.3 V DC	CF0CDET1 signal
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	CF0CDET2	I	0/3.3 V DC	CF0CDET2 signal
<b>YC10</b> Connected to the DP	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPRPWB
	4	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPRPWB
	5	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPRPWB
	6	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPRPWB
	7	VCLKB	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB clock signal
	8	VSYNCB	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB VSYNCB signal
	9	HSYNCB	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB HSYNCB signal
	10	MREB	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB MREB signal
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	DRB0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	13	DRB1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	14	DRB2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	15	DRB3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	16	DRB4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	17	DRB5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	18	DRB6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	19	DRB7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	DGB0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	22	DGB1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	23	DGB2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	24	DGB3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	25	DGB4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	26	DGB5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	27	DGB6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	28	DGB7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	DBB0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	31	DBB1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	32	DBB2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	33	DBB3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	34	DBB4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	35	DBB5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10 Connected to the optional DP	36	DBB6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	37	DBB7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	38	TWS_SCM_HALF	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB control signal
	39	RES_SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB control signal
	40	TWS_DET1	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB control signal
	41	GND	-	-	Ground
	42	LA2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	43	LA3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	44	LA4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	45	LA5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	46	LA6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	47	LA7	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	48	LA8	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	49	LA9	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	50	LA10	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	51	LA11	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	52	LA12	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	53	LA13	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	54	LA14	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	55	LA15	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	56	LA16	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	57	LA17	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	58	GND	-	-	Ground
	59	LD0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	60	LD1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	61	LD2	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	62	LD3	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	63	LD4	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	64	LD5	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	65	LD6	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	66	LD7	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	67	GND	-	-	Ground
	68	INT	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB control signal
	69	RESETZ	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB control signal
	70	GND	-	-	Ground
	71	CEZ	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB control signal
	72	WEZ	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB control signal
	73	OEZ	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB control signal
	74	SCLKIN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB clock signal
	75	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPRPWB
	76	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPRPWB
	77	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPRPWB
	78	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPRPWB
	79	GND	-	-	Ground
	80	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC11</b> Connected to the ISC PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	G6_SC_SCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ISCPWB clock signal
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	G6_SC_SI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ISCPWB serial communication data signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	G6_SC_SO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ISCPWB serial communication data signal
	7	G6_SC_SBSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	ISCPWB busy signal
	8	G6_SC_SDIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	ISCPWB communication direction signal
	9	G6_SC_IRN	I	0/3.3 V DC	ISCPWB interrupt signal
	10	HLD_SCN	O	0/3.3 V DC	ISCPWB scanner hold signal
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	IS_SAD4N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	15	IS_SAD4P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	IS_SACKN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ISCPWB clock signal
	18	IS_SACKP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ISCPWB clock signal
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	IS_SAD3N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	21	IS_SAD3P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	22	GND	-	-	Ground
	23	IS_SAD2N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	24	IS_SAD2P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	25	GND	-	-	Ground
	26	IS_SAD1N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	27	IS_SAD1P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	28	GND	-	-	Ground
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	GND	-	-	Ground
	31	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC12</b> Connected to the main operation PWB	1	FPSTAT	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel status signal
	2	S LED0	O	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel LED display signal
	3	S LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel LED display signal
	4	PANEL RESET	O	0/3.3 V DC	OPWB-M reset signal
	5	HLD PANEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel displaying enable signal
	6	SW FOOTN	-	-	Not used
	7	+24V DOWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	24 V DC down signal
	8	SUPND ENTER	O	0/3.3 V DC	Energy save mode control signal
	9	AUDIO	O	Analog	Audio output signal
	10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	11	PH KEY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	12	SGND	-	-	Ground
	13	SUPND POWER	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to OPWB-M

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC17</b> Connected to the main operation PWB	1	VBUS	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC20</b> Connected to the USB	U1	VBUS	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	U2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	U3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	U4	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC21</b> Connected to the USB	1	VBUS	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC23</b> Connected to the controller fan motor	1	CLT FAN	O	0/5 V DC	CONFM: On/Off
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to CONFM
<b>YC24</b> Connected to the power source PWB	1	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	2	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	3	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	4	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC25</b> Connected to the interface PWB	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to IFPWB
	2	GND	-	-	Ground

## 2-3-4 ISM PWB

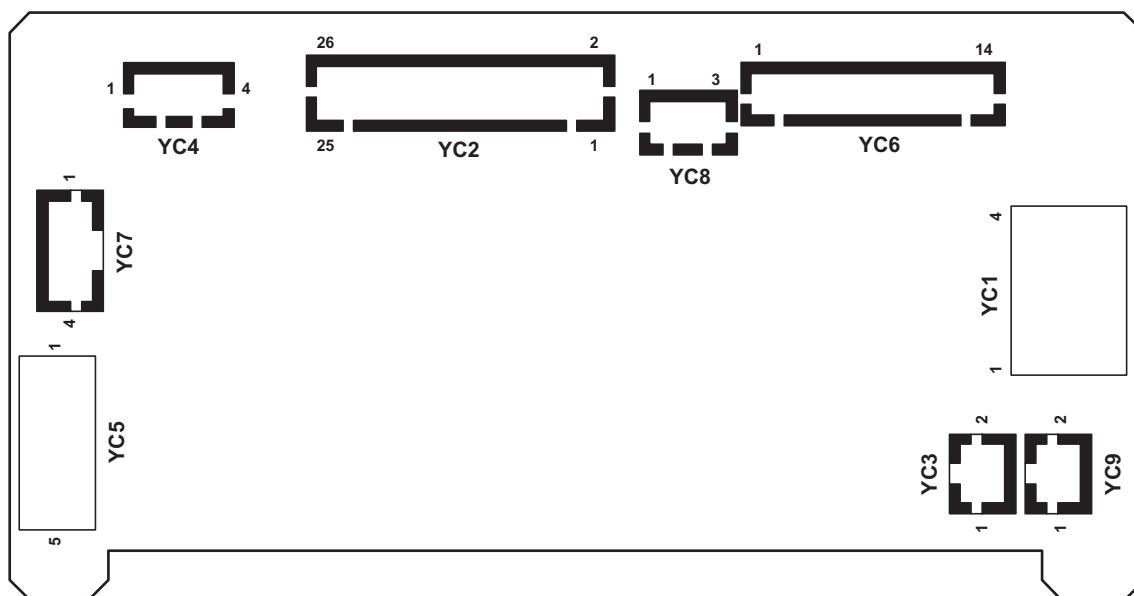


Figure 2-3-4 ISM PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC1</b> Connected to the power source PWB	1	24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PSPWB
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	12V1	I	12 V DC	12 V DC power input from PSPWB
<b>YC2</b> Connected to the ISC PWB	1	DPTMG	O	0/3.3 V DC	DP timing signal
	2	DPRDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	DP ready signal
	3	HPSW	O	0/3.3 V DC	HPSW: On/Off
	4	DPEND	O	0/3.3 V DC	DP end signal
	5	+12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to ISCPWB
	6	DPSEL	I	0/3.3 V DC	DP select signal
	7	+12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to ISCPWB
	8	DPSDI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	9	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from ISCPWB
	10	DPCLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DP clock signal
	11	FANREM	I	0/3.3 V DC	SFM: On/Off
	12	DPSDO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	13	SM_FR	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	SM control signal
	14	DP_CO	O	0/3.3 V DC	DP open signal
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	SMTVREF	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	SM control signal
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	SM_STP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	SM control signal
	20	INV_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	INPWB clock signal
	21	SM_STB	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	SM control signal
	22	COSW1	O	0/3.3 V DC	ODSW: On/Off
	23	MON24V	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	24	INVTH	O	0/3.3 V DC	EL control signal
	25	SLAMP	I	0/3.3 V DC	EL: On/Off
	26	NC	-	-	Not used
<b>YC3</b> Connected to the scan- ner fan motor	1	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to SFM
	2	FANREM	O	0/24 V DC	SFM: On/Off
<b>YC4</b> Connected to the origi- nal detec- tion switch	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
	2	COSW1	I	0/3.3 V DC	ODSW: On/Off
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	24 V DC power output to ODSW
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
<b>YC5</b> Connected to the inverter PWB	1	INV_CL	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	INPWB clock signal
	2	INVTH	I	0/3.3 V DC	EL control signal
	3	PGND	-	-	Ground
	4	SLAMPO	O	0/3.3 V DC	EL: On/Off
	5	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to INPWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC6</b> Connected to the DP	1	DPCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DP clock signal
	2	DPSDO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	3	DPSDI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	4	DPSEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	DP select signal
	5	DPEND	I	0/3.3 V DC	DP end signal
	6	DPRDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	DP ready signal
	7	DPTMG	I	0/3.3 V DC	DP timing signal
	8	DP CO	I	0/3.3 V DC	DP open signal
	9	NC	-	-	Not used
	10	NC	-	-	Not used
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC7</b> Connected to the scanner motor	1	SMOT BN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
	2	SMOT AN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
	3	SMOT BP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
	4	SMOT AP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
<b>YC8</b> Connected to the home position switch	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
	2	HPSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	HPSW: On/Off
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to HPSW

## 2-3-5 Main operation PWB

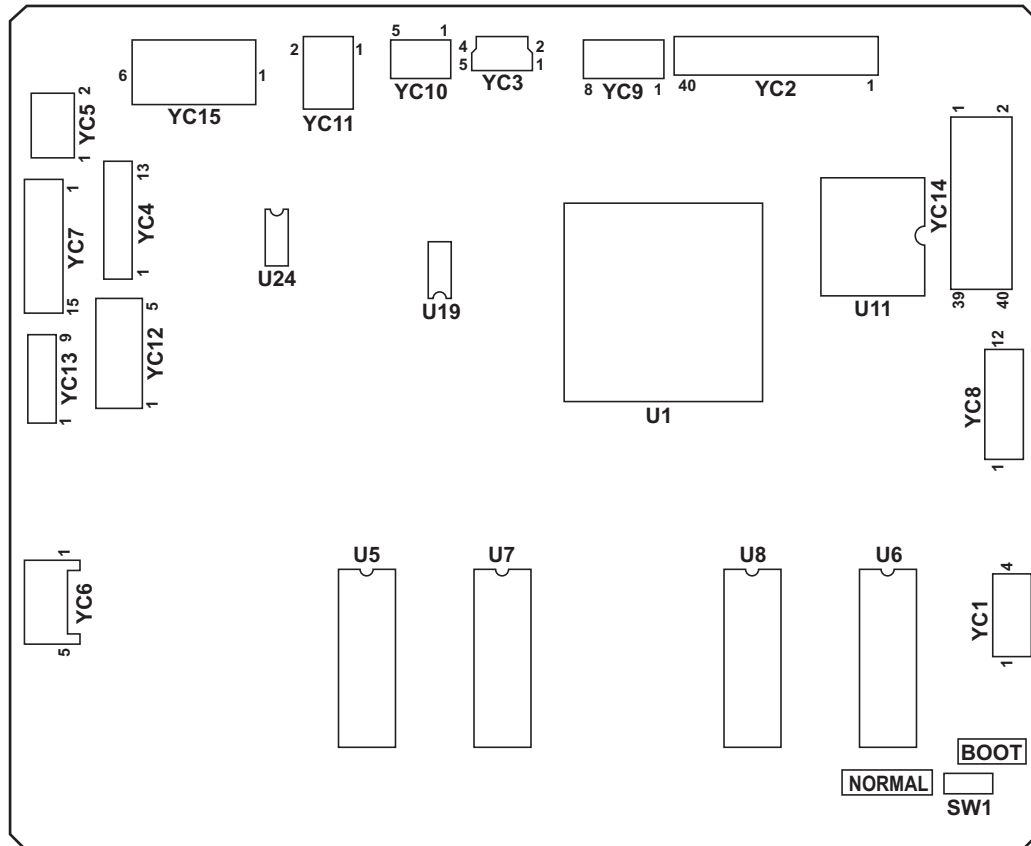


Figure 2-3-5 Main operation PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC1</b> Connected to the touch panel	1	TOP Y+	I	Analog	Touch panel Y+ position signal
	2	LEFT X+	I	Analog	Touch panel X+ position signal
	3	BOT Y-	I	Analog	Touch panel Y- position signal
	4	RIGHT X-	I	Analog	Touch panel X- position signal
<b>YC2</b> Connected to the LCD	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	B5(MSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	4	B4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	5	B3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	7	B2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	8	B1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	9	B0(LSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	11	G5(MSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	12	G4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	13	G3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	14	SGND	-	-	Ground
	15	G2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	16	G1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	17	G0(LSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	18	SGND	-	-	Ground
	19	R5(MSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	20	R4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	21	R3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	22	SGND	-	-	Ground
	23	R2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	24	R1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	25	R0(LSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	26	SGND	-	-	Ground
	27	DE	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	28	SGND	-	-	Ground
	29	L_R	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	30	U_D	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	31	SGND	-	-	Ground
	32	DCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	LCD clock signal
	33	NC	-	-	Not used
	34	SGND	-	-	Ground
	35	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LCD
	36	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LCD
	37	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LCD
	38	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LCD
	39	SGND	-	-	Ground
	40	SGND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC3</b> Connected to the main PWB	1	VBUS	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	2	DN	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DP	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	ID	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC4</b> Connected to the main PWB	1	SUPND POWER	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from MPWB
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	PH KEY	O	0/5 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	AUDIO	I	Analog	Audio output signal
	6	SUPND_ENTR	I	0/3.3 V DC	Energy save mode control signal
	7	+24V_DOWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	24 V DC down signal
	8	SW_FOOTN	-	-	Not used
	9	HOLDPANEL	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel displaying enable signal
	10	PANEL_RESET	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB reset signal
	11	S_LED1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel LED display signal
	12	S_LED0	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel LED display signal
	13	PANEL_STATU S	O	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel status signal
<b>YC6</b> Connected to the LCD inverter PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	+12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to LINPWB
	3	LCDBKLT	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD back light: On/Off
	4	ADJUST	O	Analog	LCD back light brightness adjustment signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC7</b> Connected to the right operation PWB	1	KEY0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 0
	2	KEY1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 1
	3	KEY2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 2
	4	KEY3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 3
	5	KEY4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 4
	6	SCAN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	7	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	8	SCAN2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	9	SCAN3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	10	SCAN6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 6
	11	LED0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 0
	12	LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 1
	13	PH KEY	I	0/5 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	14	SUPND POWER	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OPWB-R
	15	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
<b>YC8</b> Connected to the left operation PWB	1	SCAN6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 6
	2	KEY5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 5
	3	KEY6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 6
	4	KEY7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 7
	5	SCAN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	6	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	7	SCAN2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	8	SCAN3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	9	LED2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 2
	10	LED3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 3
	11	LED4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 4
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC9</b> Connected to the upper operation PWB	1	SCAN4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 4
	2	SCAN5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 5
	3	LED5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 5
	4	LED6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 6
	5	LED7	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 7
	6	S_LED0	O	0/5 V DC	Operation panel LED display drive signal 0
	7	S_LED1	O	0/5 V DC	Operation panel LED display drive signal 1
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC10</b> Connected to the front operation PWB	1	SCAN5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 5
	2	LED5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 5
	3	LED6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 6
	4	S_LED1	O	0/5 V DC	Operation panel LED display drive signal 1
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
<b>YC11</b> Connected to the speaker	1	VO2	O	Analog	Speaker sound signal (+)
	2	VO1	O	Analog	Speaker sound signal (-)
<b>YC15</b> Connected to the power source PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	5	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	6	+12V	I	12 V DC	12 V DC power input from PSPWB

This page is intentionally left blank.

## Maintenance parts list

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list		
Paper feed pulley	PULLEY,PAPER FEED	2AR07220	-
Separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-
Forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	-
MP paper feed pulley	UPPER PULLEY,BYPASS	61706770	-
MP separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-
MP forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	-
MP feed roller 1	PARTS ROLLER2 BYPASSFEED SP	302KS94160	2KS94160
MP feed roller 2	PARTS ROLLER4 BYPASSFEED SP	302KS94170	2KS94170
MP feed pulley	RIGHT PULLEY,FEED	33906660	-
Left registration roller	UPPER ROLLER REGIST	302KS06010	2KS06010
Right registration roller	RIGHT ROLLER REGIST	302FG06211	2FG06211
Feed pulley	PULLEY FEED	2BL16080	-
Feed roller 1	PULLEY MIDDLE FEED A	302GR06010	2GR06010
Feed roller 1	PULLEY MIDDLE FEED B	302GR06020	2GR06020
Feed roller 2	PARTS ROLLER B FEED SP	302KS94140	2KS94140
Feed roller 3	PARTS ROLLER C FEED SP	302KS94150	2KS94150
Registration switch	SWITCH REGISTRATION	2FG27110	-
Left registration cleaner	UNDER CLEANER REGIST	2BL07950	-
Registration guide	GUIDE REGIST F	2BL16130	-
Right registration cleaner	PARTS,REGISTRATION CLEAN	2BL93450	-
Transfer guide	PARTS,GUIDE TRANSFER	302GR94480	2GR94480
Laser scanner unit	PARTS LSU	302KS93040	2KS93040
Slit glass	PARTS CONTACT GLASS ADF ASSY	302H793480	2H793480
Contact glass	PARTS CONTACT GLASS (M) ASSY SP	302KS94250	2KS94250
	PARTS CONTACT GLASS (I) ASSY SP	302KS94260	2KS94260
Mirror 1	MIRROR A	2FB12140	-
Mirror 2 and mirror 3	MIRROR B	2FB12180	-
Lens	-	-	-
Reflector	REFRECTOR SCANNER	302GR17250	2GR17250
Exposure lamp	PARTS LAMP SCANNER	302H794260	2H794260
Optical rail F	-	-	-
Optical rail R	-	-	-
Original size sensor	SENSOR ORIGINAL	2C927090	-
Transfer roller unit	TR-710	302GR93281	2GR93281
Developing unit	DV-715	302GR93034	2GR93034
Drum unit	DK-716	302GR93042	2GR93042
Main charger unit	MC-710	302GR93071	2GR93071
Drum separation claw	PARTS CLAW SEPARATION ASSY	302GR93190	2GR93190
Fuser unit	PARTS FUSER 120 UNIT	302KS93010	2KS93010
Fuser unit	PARTS FUSER 230 UNIT	302KS93020	2KS93020
Heat roller	PARTS,ROLLER HEAT SP	302GR94270	2GR94270
Heat roller separation claw	CLAW HEAT ROLLER	2BL20080	-
Press roller	PARTS,ROLLER PRESS SP	302GR94280	2GR94280
Press roller separation claw	CLAW PRESS ROLLER	302BL20351	2BL20351

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list		
Upper duplex feed roller	ROLLER DU FEED UP	2BL07020	-
Lower duplex feed roller	ROLLER DU FEED LOW	2BL07030	-
Duplex feed pulley	PULLEY DU	2BL07040	-
Eject roller	PARTS ROLLER EXIT SP	302KS94180	2KS94180
Switchback roller	PARTS ROLLER FEED SHIFT SP	302KS94200	2KS94200
Eject pulley	PULLEY EXIT C	2BL21520	-
Eject pulley	PULLEY EXIT	302GR28060	2GR28060
Switchback pulley	PULLEY FEED SHIFT	302GR28150	2GR28150
Dust filter 1	PARTS FILTER DUST F1 ASSY	302GR94431	2GR94431
Dust filter 2	PARTS FILTER DUST F2 ASSY	302GR94441	2GR94441

### Maintenance kits

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list		
Maintenance kit	MK-726 (120 V specifications)	1702KR7US0	072KR7US
	MK-726 (220 - 240 V specifications)	1702KR8NL0	072KR8NL
Paper feed pulley	PULLEY,PAPER FEED	-	-
Separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	-	-
Forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	-	-
Left registration cleaner	UNDER CLEANER REGIST	-	-
Registration guide	GUIDE REGIST F	-	-
Right registration cleaner	PARTS,REGISTRATION CLEAN	-	-
Transfer roller unit	TR-710	-	-
Transfer guide	PARTS,GUIDE TRANSFER	-	-
Developing unit	DLP UNIT	-	-
Drum unit	DK-716	-	-
Fuser unit	PARTS FUSER 120 UNIT	-	-
	PARTS FUSER 230 UNIT	-	-
MP paper feed pulley	UPPER PULLEY,BYPASS	-	-
Cassette pad	PAD,CASSETTE	-	-

## Periodic maintenance procedures

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Test copy and test print	Perform at the maximum copy size	Test copy	Test copy		



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed section	Paper feed pulley	Check Clean	Replace	Clean with alcohol. Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-3
	Separation pulley	Check Clean	Replace	Clean with alcohol. Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-3
	Forwarding pulley	Check Clean	Replace	Clean with alcohol. Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-3
	MP paper feed pulley	Check Clean	Replace	Clean with alcohol. Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-5
	MP separation pulley	Check Clean	Replace	Clean with alcohol. Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-5
	MP forwarding pulley	Check Clean	Replace	Clean with alcohol. Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-5
	MP feed roller 1	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	MP feed pulley	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	MP feed roller 2	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Left registration roller	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Right registration roller	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Feed pulley	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Feed roller 1	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Feed roller 2	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Feed roller 3	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Registration switch	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with a dry cloth.	
	Left registration cleaner	Clean	Replace	Vacuum. Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-10
	Registration guide	-	Replace	Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	
	Right registration cleaner	Clean	Replace	Vacuum. Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-10
	Transfer guide	Check Clean	Replace	Clean with alcohol. Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Optical section	Laser scanner unit	Check Clean	-	Clean the shield glass with a dry cloth.	P.1-5-22
	Contact glass	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth.	
	Slit glass	Clean	Clean	Clean with a dry cloth or alcohol (do not clean with a wet cloth).	
	Mirror 1	Clean	-	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Mirror 2 and mirror 3	Clean	-	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Lens	Clean	-	Clean with a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Reflector	Clean	-	Clean with a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Exposure lamp	Check Replace	-	Replace if an image problem occurs.	P.1-5-12
	Optical rail	Grease	-	Check noise and shifting and then apply scanner rail grease EM-50L.	
	Original size sensor	Check Clean	-	Clean the sensor emitter and sensor receiver with alcohol or a dry cloth only if there is a problem.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Transfer/ separation sections	Transfer roller unit	Clean Replace	Replace	Clean with a cleaning brush or alcohol. Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-29



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Developing section	Developing unit	Check Replace	Replace	Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-28



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Drum section	Drum unit	Check Replace	Replace	Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-25
	Main charger unit	Clean	-	Clean with a wet cloth and then a dry cloth.	P.1-5-26
	Drum separation claw	Check Replace	-	Replace if the leading edge of the claws are damaged.	P.1-5-27



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Fuser section	Fuser unit	Check Replace	Replace	Replace after feeding 500,000 sheets.	P.1-5-30
	Heat roller	Check Replace	-	Check and replace when user call occurs.	P.1-5-34
	Heat roller separation claw	Check Replace	Clean	Clean with alcohol. Check and replace when user call occurs.	P.1-5-31
	Press roller	Check Replace	-	Check and replace when user call occurs.	P.1-5-32
	Press roller separation claw	Check Replace	Clean	Clean with alcohol. Check and replace when user call occurs.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Duplex section	Upper duplex feed roller	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Lower duplex feed roller	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Duplex feed pulley	Check	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Eject section	Eject roller	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Eject pulley	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Switchback roller	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	
	Switchback pulley	Check Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol.	

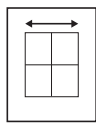
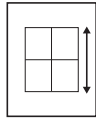
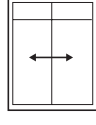
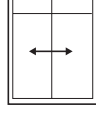
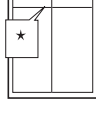
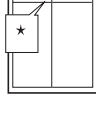
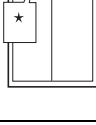
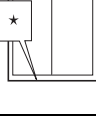
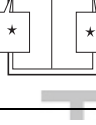



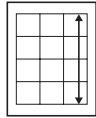
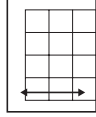
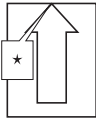
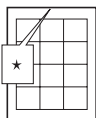
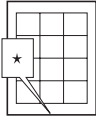
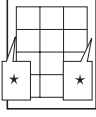
Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Covers	Covers	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Original platen	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	500K	Points and cautions	Page
Other	Dust filter 1	Clean	Clean	Vacuum.	P.1-5-38
	Dust filter 2	Clean	Clean	Vacuum.	P.1-5-38
	Gears	-	Check Clean	Check noise and then apply grease EM-50L.	
	Bushes	-	Check Clean	Check noise and then apply grease EM-50L.	
	Paper conveying section	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Image quality	Check Adjust	Check Adjust		

## Chart of image adjustment procedures

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
1	Adjusting the magnification in the main scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Polygon motor speed adjustment	U053	POLYGON MOTOR	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-25	
2	Adjusting the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Drive motor speed adjustment	U053	TMAIN MOTOR	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-25	
3	Adjusting the center line of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSUOUT LEFT (MPT)	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-23	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select LSUOUT LEFT (DUP).
4	Adjusting the center line of the cassettes (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 1) LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 2) LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 3) LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 4)	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-23	Cassette 1: select Center (Feed 1) Cassette 2: select Center (Feed 2) Cassette 3: select Center (Feed 3) Cassette 4: select Center (Feed 4)
5	Adjusting the leading edge registration of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	LSUOUT TOP MPT	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-22	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select LSUOUT TOP DUP.
6	Adjusting the leading edge registration of the cassette (printing adjustment)		Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	LSUOUT TOP CAS	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-22	
7	Adjusting the leading edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start timing	U402	LESD	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-81	
8	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination end timing	U402	TRAIL	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-81	
9	Adjusting the left and right margins (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start/end timing	U402	A/C	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-81	
10	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Data processing	U065	Y SCAN ZOOM	Test chart	P.1-3-28	No adjustment for copying using the DP.

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
11	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Original scanning speed	U065	X SCAN ZOOM	Test chart	P.1-3-28	U065: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U070: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select MOTOR ADJ (BACK) or X SCAN ZOOM (CIS).
				U070	MOTOR ADJ (FRONT) MOTOR ADJ (BACK) X SCAN ZOOM (CIS)		P.1-3-32	
12	Adjusting the center line (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U067	FRONT ROTATE	Test chart	P.1-3-30	U067: For copying an original placed on the contact glass To make an adjustment for rotate copying, select ROTATE. U072: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select BACK or CIS.
				U072	FRONT BACK CIS		P.1-3-36	
13	Adjusting the leading edge registration (scanning adjustment)		Original scan start timing	U066	FRONT TAIL	Test chart	P.1-3-29	U066: For copying an original placed on the contact glass To make an adjustment for trailing edge registration, select TAIL. U071: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select BACK HEAD or HEAD (CIS).
				U071	FRONT HEAD BACK HEAD HEAD (CIS)		P.1-3-34	
14	Adjusting the leading edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403	B MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-82	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.
				U404	B MARGIN		P.1-3-83	
15	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403	D MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-82	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.
				U404	D MARGIN		P.1-3-83	
16	Adjusting the left and right margins (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403	A MARGIN C MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-82	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.
				U404	A MARGIN C MARGIN		P.1-3-83	

When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the scanner) is run using the specified original (P/N 302FZ56990),

the following adjustments are automatically made:

Adjusting the scanner magnification (U065)

Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066)

Adjusting the scanner center line (U067)

When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the DP) is run using the specified original (P/N 302AC68243),

the following adjustments are automatically made:

Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)

Adjusting the DP leading edge registration (U071)

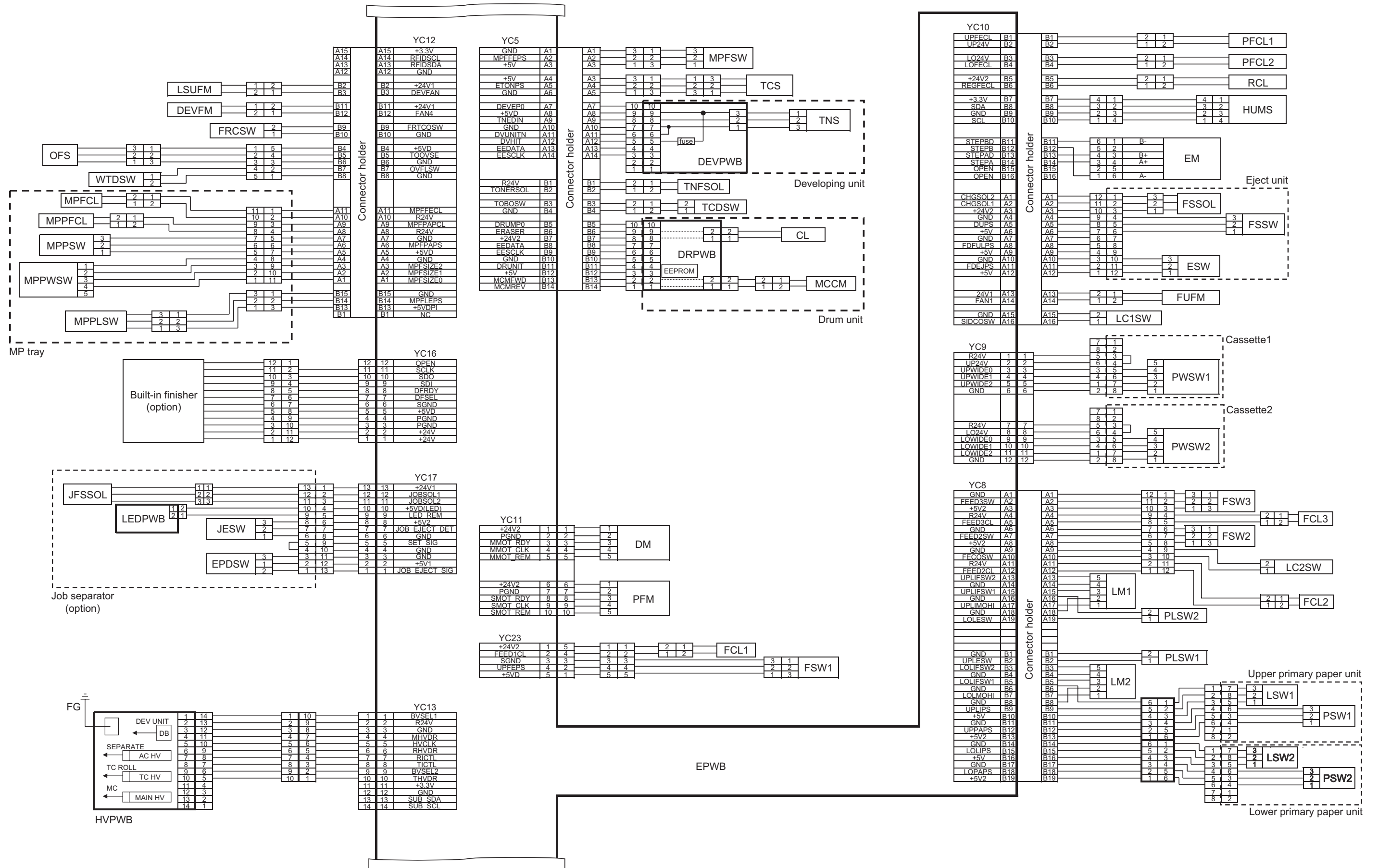
Adjusting the DP center line (U072)



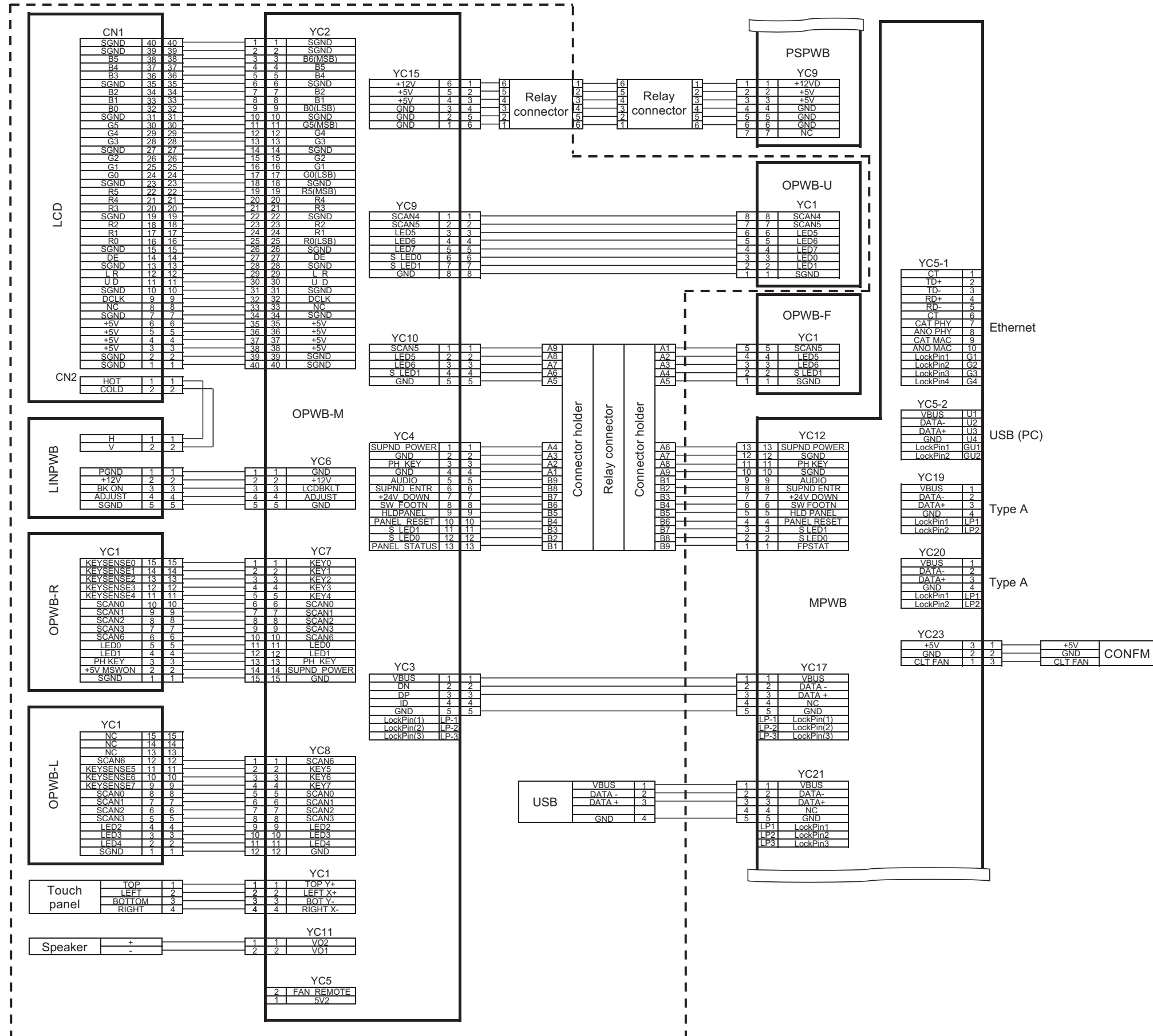
#### Image quality

Item	Specifications
100% magnification	Machine: $\pm 0.8\%$ Using DP: $\pm 1.5\%$
Enlargement/reduction	Machine: $\pm 1.0\%$ Using DP: $\pm 1.5\%$
Lateral squareness	Machine: $\pm 1.5$ mm/375 mm Using DP: $\pm 3.0$ mm/375 mm
Leading edge registration	Cassette: $\pm 2.5$ mm MP tray: $\pm 2.5$ mm Duplex: $\pm 2.5$ mm
Skewed paper feed (left-right difference)	Cassette: 1.5 mm or less MP tray: 1.5 mm or less Duplex: 2.0 mm or less
Lateral image shifting	Cassette: $\pm 2.0$ mm MP tray: $\pm 2.0$ mm Duplex: $\pm 3.0$ mm

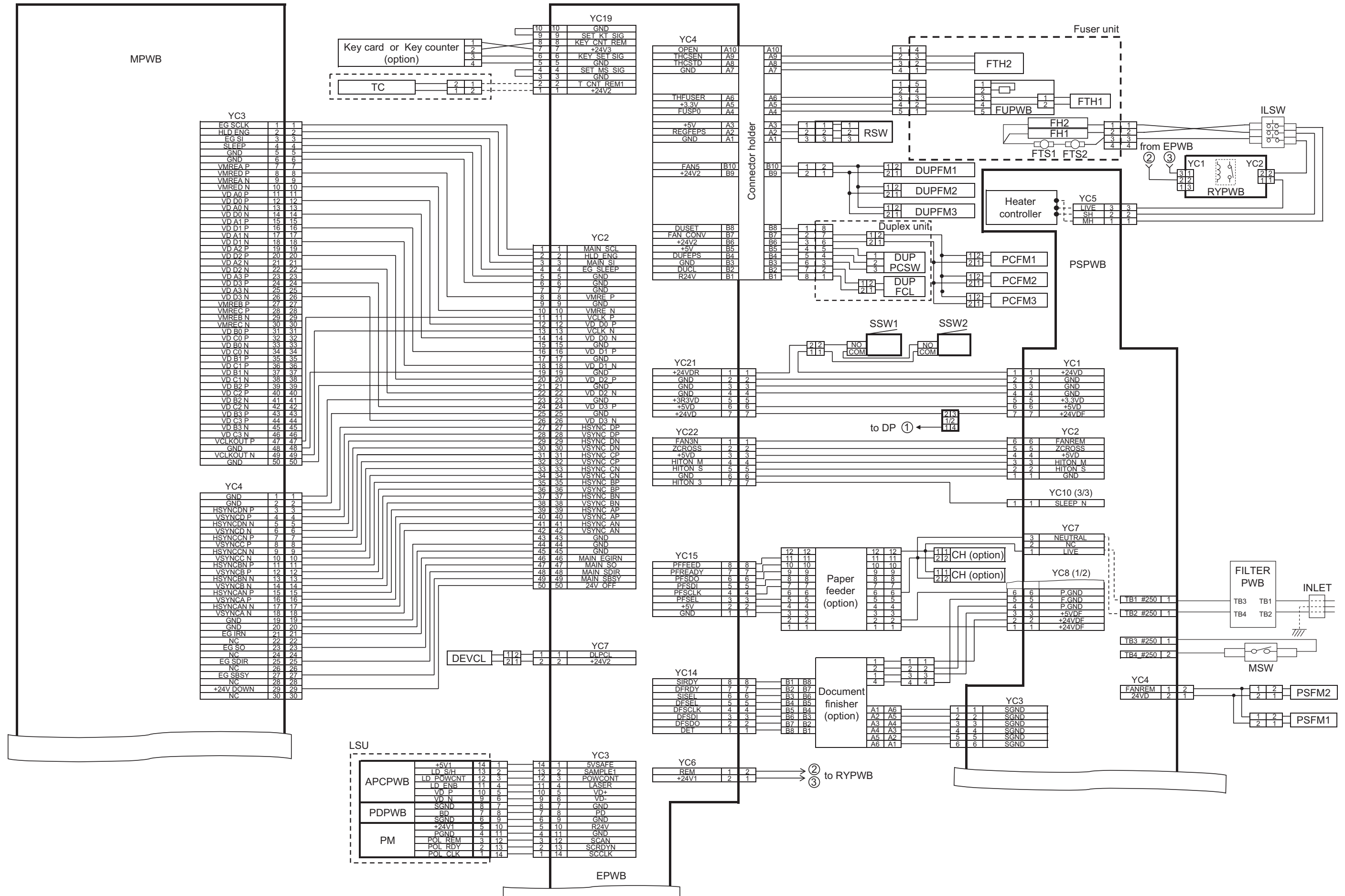
### Wiring diagram No.1



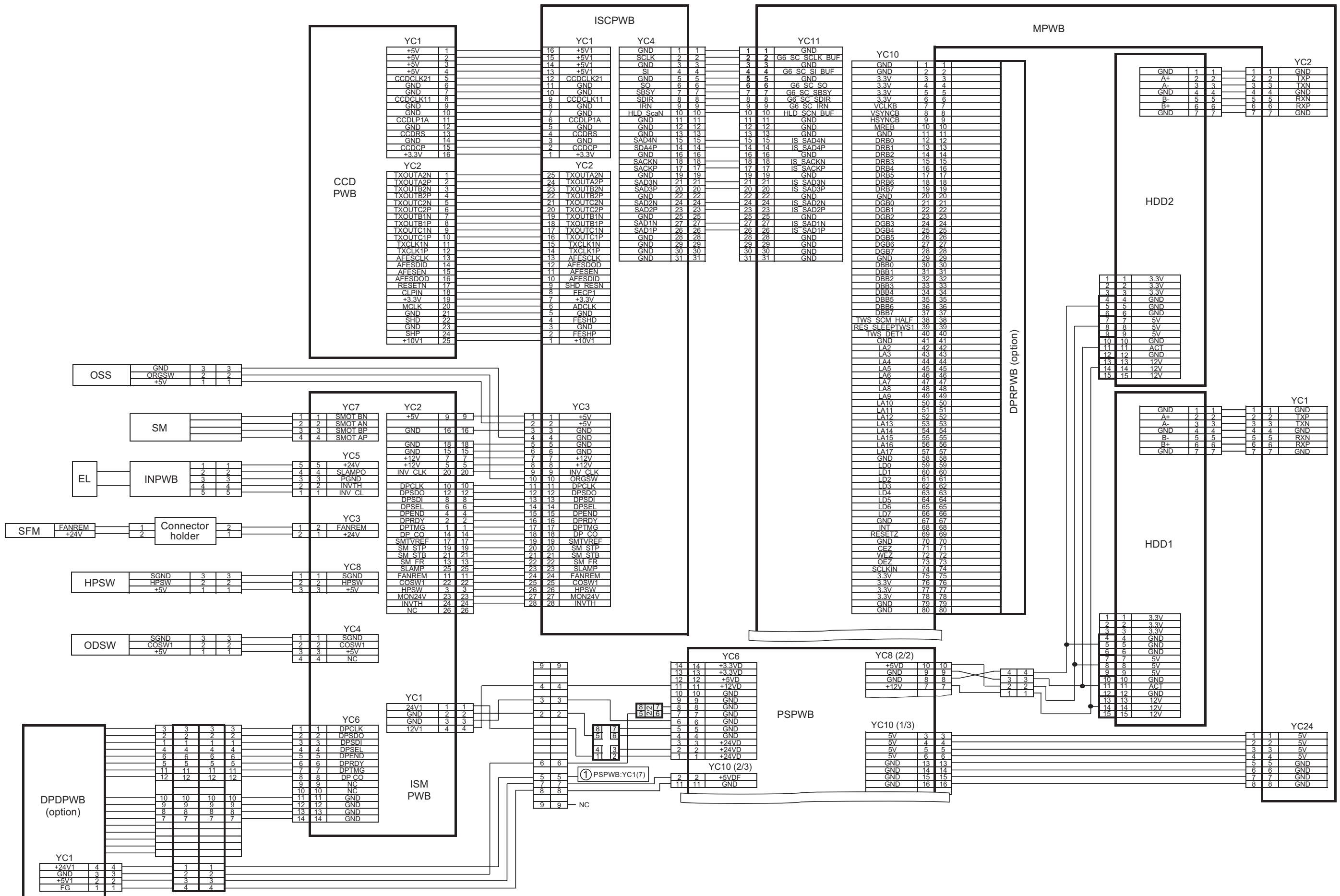
### Wiring diagram No.2



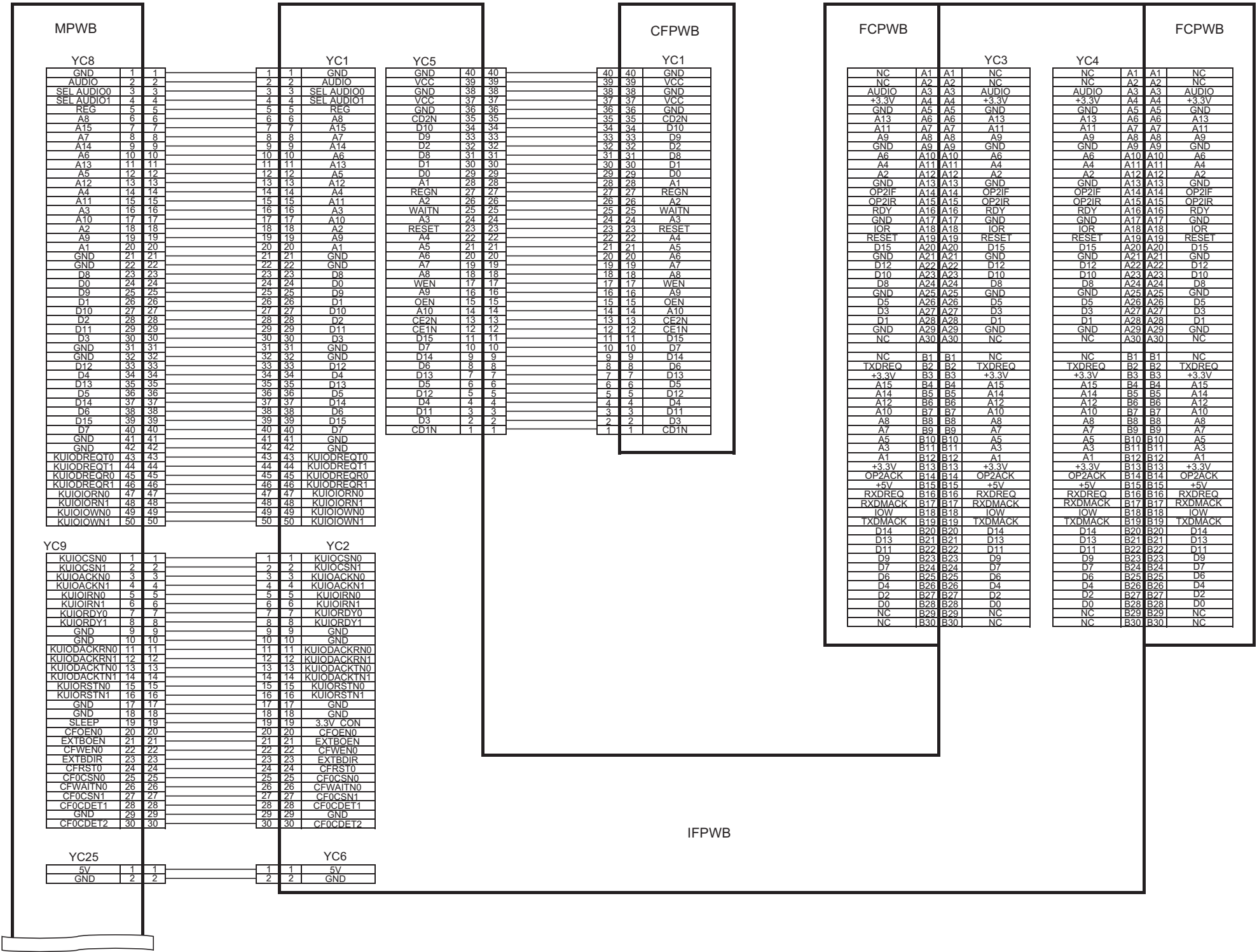
### Wiring diagram No.3



Wiring diagram No.4



Wiring diagram No.5



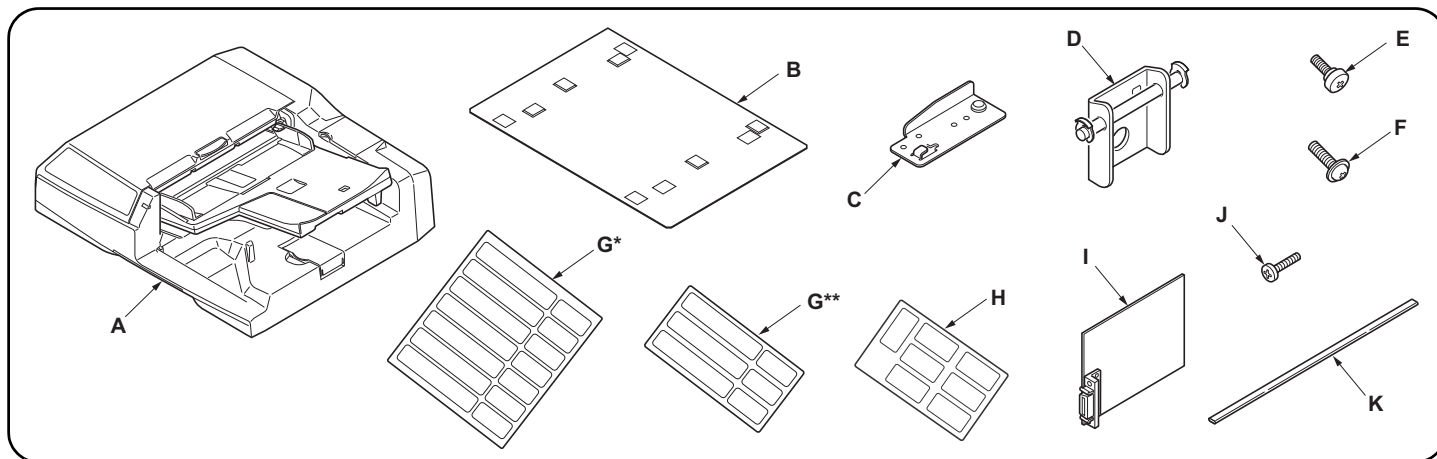
# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT PROCESSOR

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.

Output: 587 VA max.

Please use the item below Interconnecting Cable/

P/N: 303LK46010, 303LL46010



## English

### Supplied parts

A DP	1
B Original mat	1
C Fixing fitting	2
D Angle control fitting	1
E Pin	1
F M4 × 14TP screw	8

G Label "Operation procedure" (except for 100 V models)	1
*: for metric specification	
**: for inch specification	
H Caution label "Original face up!" (except for 100 V models)	1
I DP relay PWB (for DP-760 only)	1
J M2.6 × 8 screw (for DP-760 only)	2
K Gasket (for DP-760 only)	1

### Precautions

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

The illustrations of the DP in the Installation Guide are for DP-760.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A DP	1
B Plaque d'original	1
C Fixation	2
D Fixation d'angle	1
E Goupille	1
F Vis TP M4 × 14	8

G Étiquette relative à la procédure d'utilisation (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)	1
*: pour des spécifications métriques	
** : pour des spécifications anglo-saxonnes	
H Étiquette d'avertissement relative à l'orientation vers le haut de la face de l'original (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)	1
I Carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (pour DP-760 uniquement)	1

J Vis M2.6 × 8 (pour DP-760 uniquement)	2
K Garniture (pour DP-760 uniquement)	1

### Précautions

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Les schémas du DP dans le Guide d'installation concernent le DP-760.

## Español

### Pièces suministradas

A DP	1
B Alfombrilla para originales	1
C Herraje de fijación	2
D Herraje de control de ángulo	1
E Pasador	1
F Tornillo TP M4 × 14	8

G Etiqueta "Procedimiento operativo" (excepto para modelos de 100 V)	1
*: para especificaciones en el sistema métrico	
** : para especificaciones en el sistema de pulgadas	
H Etiqueta de precaución "Original cara arriba" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)	1
I PWB del relé del DP (solamente para el DP-760)	1
J Tornillo M2.6 × 8 (solamente para el DP-760)	2

K Junta (solamente para el DP-760)	1
------------------------------------	---

### Precauciones

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Las ilustraciones del DP en la Guía de instalación corresponden al DP-760.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A DP	1
B Originalmatte	1
C Befestigungshalterung	2
D Winkeleinstellbefestigung	1
E Stift	1
F M4 × 14TP Schraube	8

G Schild "Funktionsanweisung" (außer 100 V-Modelle)	1
*: für metrische Angaben	
** : für Angaben in Zoll	
H Warnschild "Originalschriftseite nach oben" (außer 100 V-Modelle)	1
I DP-Relaisleiterplatte (nur für DP-760)	1
J M2.6 × 8 Schraube (nur für DP-760)	2
K Dichtung (nur für DP-760)	1

### Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Die Abbildungen des DP in der Installationsanleitung gelten für Modell DP-760.

## Italiano

### Parti fornite

A DP	1
B Tappetino originale	1
C Accessorio di fissaggio	2
D Accessorio di regolazione angolare	1
E Perno	1
F Vite M4 × 14TP	8

G Etichetta "Procedura di funzionamento" (eccetto modelli 100 V)	1
*: per specifiche in unità del sistema metrico	
** : per specifiche in pollici	
H Etichetta di avvertimento "Originale rivolto verso l'alto!" (eccetto modelli 100 V)	1
I Scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (solo per DP-760)	1
J Vite M2,6 × 8 (solo per DP-760)	2

K Guarnizione (solo per DP-760)	1
---------------------------------	---

### Precauzioni

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Le illustrazioni del DP nella Guida all'installazione sono per il modello DP-760.

## 简体中文

### 附属品

A DP	1
B 原稿垫	1
C 固定附件	2
D 角度控制附件	1
E 销	1

F M4 × 14TP 螺钉	8
G 标签“动作步骤”(220V 规格以外)	1
*: 公制规格	
** : 英制规格	
H 注意标签“原稿正面朝上!” (220V 规格以外)	1
I DP 中继基板 (仅限 DP-760)	2
J M2.6 × 8 螺钉 (仅限 DP-760)	1

K 衬垫 (仅限 DP-760)	1
------------------	---

### 注意事项

如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必揭下。

安装手册中关于 DP 的图示以 DP-760 为例。

www.tonerplus.com.ua

## 日本語

### 同梱品

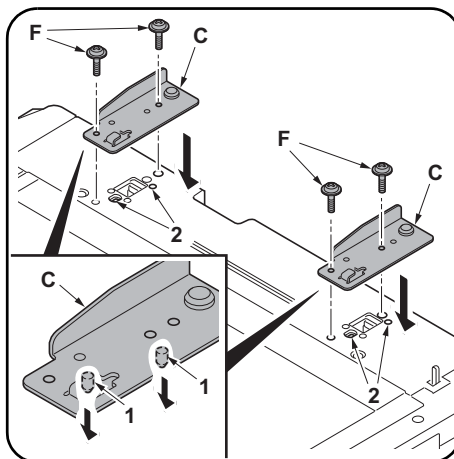
A DP 本体	1
B 原稿マット	1
C 固定金具	2
D 角度規制金具	1
E ピン	1

F ビス M4 × 14TP	8
G 操作ラベル (100V 仕様以外)	1
*: センチ仕様	
** : インチ仕様	
H 原稿表向きラベル (100V 仕様以外)	1
I DP 中継基板 (DP-760 のみ)	1
J ビス M2.6 × 8 (DP-760 のみ)	2
K ガasket (DP-760 のみ)	1

### 注意事項

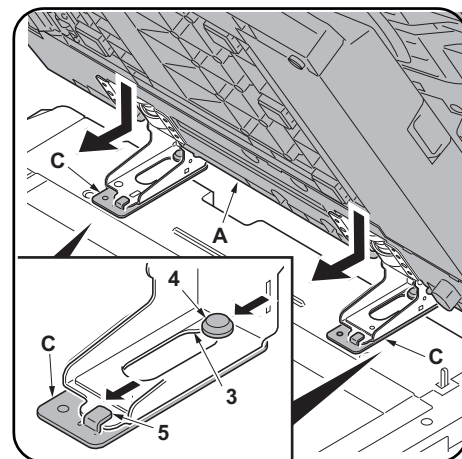
同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

設置手順書に記載している DP 本体のイラストは、DP-760 です。



#### Attach the fixing fitting.

1. Align projections (1) of each fixing fitting (C) with holes (2) on the MFP and insert the fixing fittings (C) into the MFP.
2. Secure each fixing fitting (C) with two M4 x 14TP screws (F).



#### Install the DP.

3. Align hinge hole (3) of DP (A) with pin (4) of fixing fitting (C), place DP (A) on the MFP.
4. Slide the DP (A) toward the front side and engage hinges into hooks (5) on fixing fittings (C).

#### Procedure

When installing the DP, be sure to turn the MFP power off and disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

#### Procédure

Lors de l'installation du DP, veiller à mettre l'interrupteur du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

#### Mettre en place la fixation.

1. Aligner les saillies (1) de chacune des pièces de fixation (C) avec les trous (2) sur le MFP et insérer ces pièces (C) dans le MFP.
2. Fixer chacune des pièces de fixation (C) avec deux vis M4 x 14TP (F).

#### Installer le DP.

3. Aligner le trou de la charnière (3) du DP (A) sur la goupille (4) de la fixation (C) et placer le DP (A) sur le MFP.
4. Faire glisser le DP (A) vers l'avant et engager les charnières dans les crochets (5) sur les pièces de fixation (C).

#### Procedimiento

Cuando instale el DP, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y desenchúfelo del tomacorriente de la pared.

#### Monte el herraje de fijación.

1. Alinee las salientes (1) de cada herraje de fijación (C) con los orificios (2) del MFP e inserte los herrajes de fijación (C) en el MFP.
2. Asegure cada uno de los herrajes de fijación (C) con dos tornillos M4 x 14TP (F).

#### Instale el DP.

3. Alinee el orificio de bisagra (3) del DP (A) con el pasador (4) del herraje de fijación (C) y coloque el DP (A) en el MFP.
4. Deslice el DP (A) hacia el frente y enganche las bisagras en los ganchos (5) de los herrajes de fijación (C).

#### Verfahren

Schalten Sie vor Installation des DP unbedingt den MFP-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose.

#### Anbringen der Befestigungshalterung.

1. Die Zapfen (1) jeder Befestigungshalterung (C) mit den Öffnungen (2) am MFP ausrichten und die Befestigungshalterungen (C) in den MFP einsetzen.
2. Jede Befestigungshalterung (C) mit zwei M4 x 14TP Schrauben (F) befestigen.

#### Installieren des DP.

3. Scharnierloch (3) des DP (A) mit Stift (4) der Befestigungshalterung (C) ausrichten, und DP (A) auf den MFP stellen.
4. Den DP (A) nach vorne hin verschieben und die Scharniere in die Haken (5) an den Befestigungshalterungen (C) einsetzen.

#### Procedura

Spegnere l'interruttore principale e sfilare la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il DP.

#### Applicazione dell'accessorio di fissaggio.

1. Allineare le sporgenze (1) di ogni accessorio di fissaggio (C) con i fori (2) sull'MFP, ed inserire gli accessori di fissaggio (C) nell'MFP.
2. Bloccare ogni accessorio di fissaggio (C) con le due viti M4 x 14TP (F).

#### Montaggio del DP.

3. Allineare il foro della cerniera (3) del DP (A) con il perno (4) dell'accessorio di fissaggio (C), quindi posizionare il DP (A) sull'MFP.
4. Far scorrere il DP (A) verso il lato anteriore ed inserire le cerniere nei ganci (5) sugli accessori di fissaggio (C).

#### 安装步骤

安装 DP 时，请务必将 MFP 电源关闭，关拔下电源插头再进行安装作业。

#### 安装固定附件。

1. 将各固定附件 (C) 上的突出部分 (1) 与 MFP 上的孔 (2) 对齐，然后将固定附件 (C) 插入 MFP 中。
2. 用两颗 M4 × 14TP 螺钉 (F) 固定各固定附件 (C)。

#### 安装 DP

3. 将 DP (A) 的铰链孔 (3) 对准固定附件 (C) 的销 (4)，并将 DP (A) 放在 MFP 上。
4. 朝前侧滑动 DP (A)，然后将铰链与固定附件 (C) 上的卡扣 (5) 相啮合。



#### 取付手順

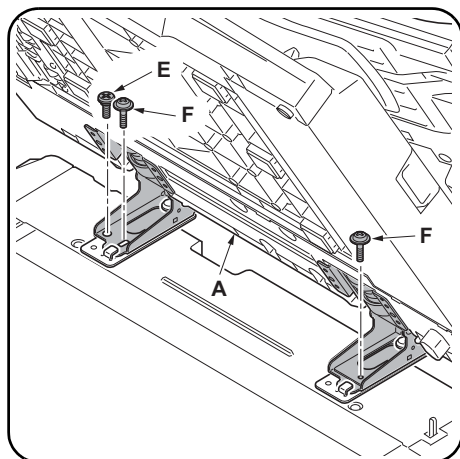
DP 本体を設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

#### 固定金具の取り付け

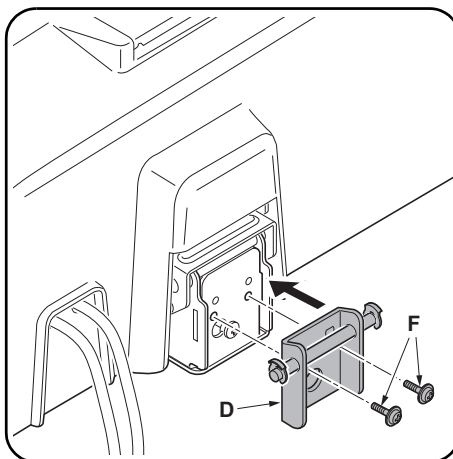
1. 固定金具 (C) の突起 (1) と MFP 本体の穴 (2) を合わせ、MFP 本体に固定金具 (C) を差し込む。
2. ビス M4 × 14TP (F) 各 2 本で固定金具 (C) を固定する。

#### DP 本体の取り付け

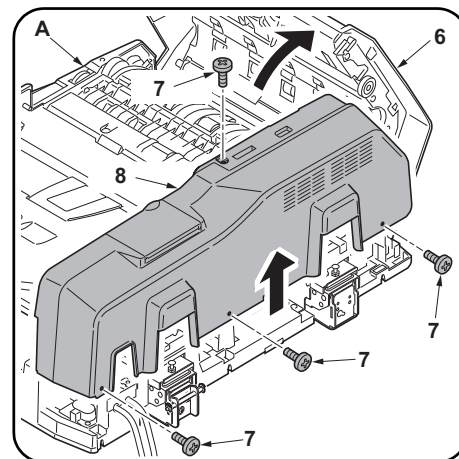
3. DP 本体 (A) のヒンジ部の穴 (3) と固定金具 (C) のピン (4) を合わせ、MFP 本体に DP 本体 (A) を乗せる。
4. DP 本体 (A) を手前にスライドさせ、ヒンジ部を固定金具 (C) の引っ掛け部 (5) にはめ込む。



5. Install DP (A) onto the MFP securely with pin (E) and two M4 x 14TP screws (F).



**Install the angle control fitting.**  
**To adjust DP open-close angle 60 degrees**  
 6. Install angle control fitting (D) at the rear side of the right hinge with two M4 x 14TP screws (F).



**To adjust DP open-close angle 30 degrees**  
 7. Open the upper cover (6) of the DP (A).  
 8. Remove four screws (7) and then remove rear cover (8) of DP (A).

5. Installer le DP (A) sur le MFP en le fixant à l'aide de la goupille (E) et des deux vis TP M4 x 14 (F).

**Installer la fixation d'angle.**  
**Pour régler l'angle d'ouverture/de fermeture du DP de 60 degrés**  
 6. Placer la fixation d'angle (D) à l'arrière de la charnière droite à l'aide des deux vis TP M4 x 14 (F).

**Pour régler l'angle d'ouverture/de fermeture du DP de 30 degrés**  
 7. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur (6) du DP (A).  
 8. Retirer les quatre vis (7), puis le couvercle arrière (8) du DP (A).

5. Instale el DP (A) firmemente en el MFP con el pasador (E) y dos tornillos TP M4 x 14 (F).

**Instale el herraje de control de ángulo.**  
**Para ajustar el DP, abra o cierre el ángulo 60 grados**  
 6. Instale el herraje de control de ángulo (D) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha con dos tornillos TP M4 x 14 (F).

**Para ajustar el DP, abra o cierre el ángulo 30 grados**  
 7. Abra la cubierta superior (6) del DP (A).  
 8. Saque cuatro tornillos (7) y retire la cubierta trasera (8) del DP (A).

5. DP (A) sicher mit einem Stift (E) und zwei M4 x 14TP Schrauben (F) am MFP befestigen.

**Installieren der Winkeleinstellbefestigung.**  
**Einstellen des Öffnungs-/Schließungswinkels des DP um 60 Grad**  
 6. Winkeleinstellbefestigung (D) an der Rückseite des rechten Scharniers mit zwei M4 x 14TP Schrauben (F) befestigen.

**Einstellen des Öffnungs-/Schließungswinkels des DP um 30 Grad**  
 7. Die obere Abdeckung (6) des DP (A) öffnen.  
 8. Vier Schrauben (7) abnehmen und dann die Rückabdeckung (8) des DP (A) abnehmen.

5. Montare il DP (A) sull'MFP assicurandolo con il perno (E) e due viti M4 x 14TP (F).

**Montaggio dell'accessorio di regolazione angolare.**  
**Per regolare l'angolo di chiusura / apertura del DP a 60 gradi**  
 6. Montare l'accessorio di regolazione angolare (D) sul lato posteriore della cerniera destra con due viti M4 x 14TP (F).

**Per regolare l'angolo di chiusura / apertura del DP a 30 gradi**  
 7. Aprire il pannello superiore (6) del DP (A).  
 8. Rimuovere quattro viti (7), quindi rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (8) del DP (A).

5. 用销 (E) 和两颗 M4 x 14TP 螺钉 (F) 将 DP (A) 安装到 MFP 上。

**安装角度控制附件。**  
**若要将 DP 的开关角度调整为 60 度**  
 6. 在右部铰链的后部使用两颗 M4 x 14TP 螺钉 (F) 安装角度控制附件 (D)。

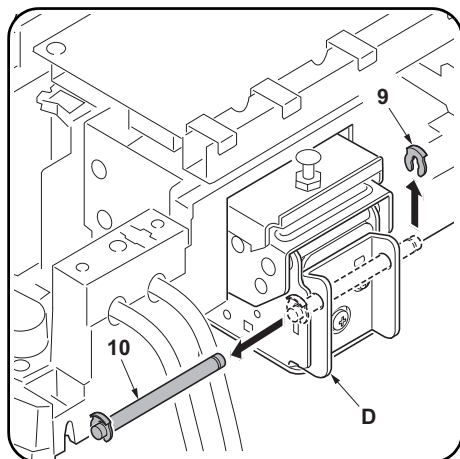
**若要将 DP 的开关角度调整为 30 度**  
 7. 打开 DP (A) 的上盖板 (6)。  
 8. 拆下 4 颗螺钉 (7)，然后拆下 DP (A) 的后盖板 (8)。

**TONER**  
[www.tonerplus.com.au](http://www.tonerplus.com.au)

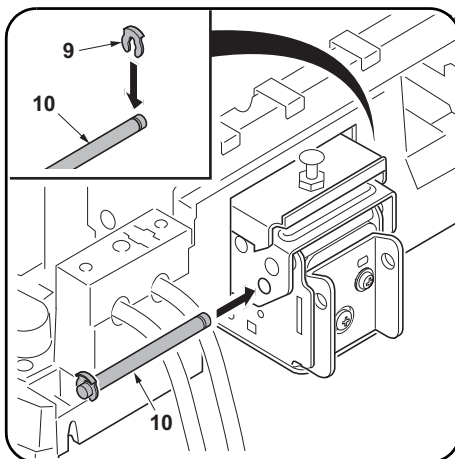
5. ピン (E) 1 本とビス M4 x 14TP (F) 2 本で DP 本体 (A) を MFP 本体に固定する。

**角度規制金具の取り付け**  
**DP 開閉角度を 60 度に設定する場合**  
 6. 右ヒンジ後側にビス M4 x 14TP (F) 2 本で角度規制金具 (D) を取り付ける。

**DP 開閉角度を 30 度に設定する場合**  
 7. DP 本体 (A) の DP 上カバー (6) を開く。  
 8. ビス (7) 4 本を外し、DP 本体 (A) の後カバー (8) を取り外す。



9. Remove stop ring (9) of angle control fitting (D) that has been installed in step 6 to remove shaft (10).



10. Insert shaft (10) into the rear side of the right hinge.

11. Attach stop ring (9) to the notch of shaft (10) and secure shaft (10).

12. Reinstall rear cover (8) that has been removed in step 8, with four screws (7).

13. Move to:

Step 14 when using DP-760 (full-color machines), or  
Step 24 when using DP-760 (monochrome machines), or  
Step 32 when using DP-750.

9. Retirer l'anneau de butée (9) de la fixation d'angle (D) installée à l'étape 6 pour enlever la tige (10).

10. Insérer la tige (10) à l'arrière de la charnière droite.

11. Fixer l'anneau de butée (9) sur l'encoche de la tige (10) et mettre en place la tige (10).

12. Remettre en place le couvercle arrière (8) retiré à l'étape 8 à l'aide des quatre vis (7).

13. Passer à:

Etape 14 en cas d'utilisation DP-760 (machines entièrement en couleurs), ou  
Etape 24 en cas d'utilisation DP-760 (machines monochromes), ou  
Etape 32 en cas d'utilisation DP-750

9. Retire el anillo de retención (9) del herraje de control de ángulo (D) que se instaló en el paso 6 para retirar el eje (10).

10. Inserte el eje (10) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha.

11. Fije el anillo de retención (9) a la muesca del eje (10) y asegure el eje (10).

12. Reinstale la cubierta trasera (8) que ha retirado en el paso 8 con cuatro tornillos (7).

13. Vaya:

al paso 14 cuando utilice DP-760 (máquinas a todo color), o  
al paso 24 cuando utilice DP-760 (máquinas monocromáticas), o  
al paso 32 cuando utilice DP-750.

9. Anschlagring (9) von der Winkleinstellbefestigung (D) abnehmen, die in Schritt 6 montiert wurde, um die Welle (10) zu entfernen.

10. Welle (10) in die Rückseite des rechten Scharniers einsetzen.

11. Anschlagring (9) an der Wellenkerbe (10) anbringen und Welle befestigen (10).

12. Die in Schritt 8 abgenommene Rückabdeckung (8) wieder mit vier Schrauben (7) einbauen.

13. Weitergehen zu:

Schritt 14, wenn DP-760 (Vollfarbenmaschinen) verwendet werden, oder  
Schritt 24, wenn DP-760 (Monochrommaschinen) verwendet werden, oder  
Schritt 32, wenn DP-750 verwendet wird.

9. Rimuovere l'anello di bloccaggio (9) dell'accessorio di regolazione angolare (D) che era stato installato al Punto 6 per rimuovere l'albero (10).

10. Inserire l'albero (10) nella parte posteriore della cerniera destra.

11. Applicare l'anello di bloccaggio (9) nell'incavo dell'albero (10) e assicurare l'albero (10).

12. Rimontare il coperchio posteriore (8) rimosso al Punto 8 con quattro viti (7).

13. Andare a:

Passo 14 quando si DP-760 (Macchine a colori), o  
Passo 24 quando si DP-760 (Macchine in bianco e nero), o  
Passo 32 quando si DP-750.

9. 拆下在第 6 步中安装的角度控制配件 (D) 的止动环 (9), 以将轴 (10) 拆下。

10. 将轴 (10) 插入到右部铰链的后部。

11. 将止动环 (9) 安装到轴 (10) 的切口并将轴 (10) 固定。

12. 用 4 颗螺钉 (7) 将步骤 8 中拆下的后盖板 (8) 重新安装。

13. 移至

步骤 14 (使用 DP-760 时, 彩色机器), 或者  
步骤 24 (使用 DP-760 时, 黑白机器), 或者  
步骤 32 (使用 DP-750 时)。

**TONER**

9. 手順 6 で取り付けした角度規制金具 (D) のストップリング (9) 1 個を外し、シャフト (10) を取り外す。

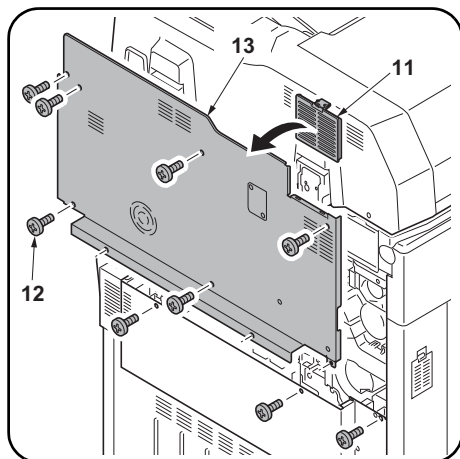
10. 右ヒンジ後側にシャフト (10) を挿入する。

11. ストップリング (9) をシャフト (10) の溝に取り付け、シャフト (10) を固定する。

12. 手順 8 で外した後カバー (8) をビス (7) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。

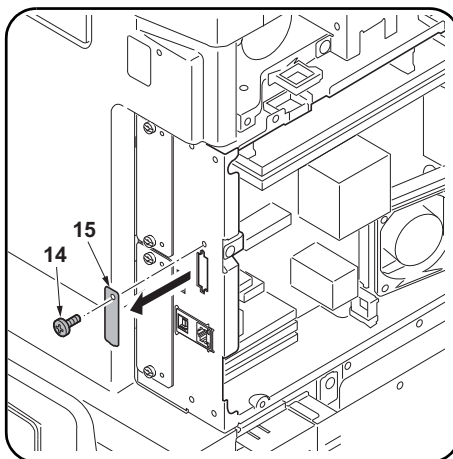
13. 以下の手順から実行する。

DP-760 (カラー機) : 手順 14  
DP-760 (モノクロ機) : 手順 24  
DP-750 : 手順 32

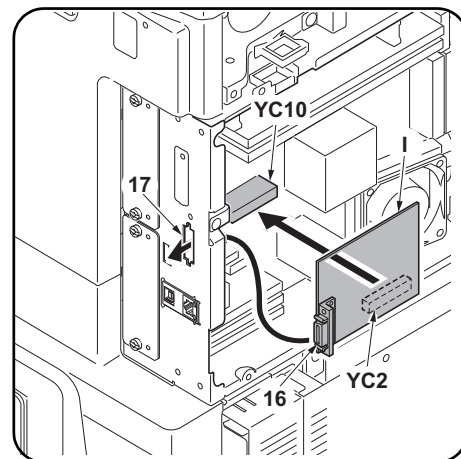


#### Installing the DP relay PWB

14. Remove the filter cover (11) of the MFP.
15. Remove nine screws (12) and then remove the upper rear cover (13).



16. Remove the screw (14) to remove the DP cover (15) on the MFP.



17. Place connector (16) on the DP relay PWB (I) through the rectangular hole (17).
18. Connect connector (YC2) on the DP relay PWB (I) to connector (YC10) on the MFP.

#### Installation de la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP

14. Déposer le couvercle du filtre (11) du MFP.
15. Déposer les neuf vis (12) puis le couvercle arrière supérieur (13).

16. Déposer la vis (14) pour libérer la couverture du DP (15) sur le MFP.

17. Positionner le connecteur (16) sur la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) en passant par le trou rectangulaire (17).
18. Raccorder le connecteur (YC2) sur la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) au connecteur (YC10) sur le MFP.

#### Instalación del PWB del relé del DP

14. Abra la cubierta del filtro (11) del MFP.
15. Quite los nueve tornillos (12) y, a continuación, desmonte la cubierta trasera superior (13).

16. Quite el tornillo (14) para extraer la cubierta del DP (15) en el MFP.

17. Inserte el conector (16) del PWB del relé del DP (I) a través del orificio rectangular (17).
18. Conecte el conector (YC2) del PWB del relé del DP (I) al conector (YC10) del MFP.

#### Installieren der DP-Relaisleiterplatte

14. Die Filterabdeckung (11) des MFP entfernen.
15. Entfernen Sie neun Schrauben (12), und nehmen Sie dann die obere hintere Abdeckung (13) ab.

16. Die Schraube (14) entfernen, um dann die DP-Abdeckung (15) abzunehmen.

17. Den Stecker (16) an der DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) in die Rechtecköffnung (17) schieben.
18. Den Stecker (YC2) an der DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) mit dem Stecker (YC10) am MFP verbinden

#### Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP

14. Rimuovere il coperchio del filtro (11) sull'MFP.
15. Rimuovere le nove viti (12) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio superiore posteriore (13).

16. Togliere la vite (14) per rimuovere il coperchio del DP (15) sull'MFP.

17. Collocare il connettore (16) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) attraverso il foro rettangolare (17).
18. Collegare il connettore (YC2) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) al connettore (YC10) sull'MFP.

#### 安装 DP 中继板

14. 拆下 MFP 上的过滤器盖板 (11)。
15. 拆下 9 颗螺钉 (12)，然后拆下上部后盖板 (13)。

16. 拆下螺钉 (14) 以拆下 MFP 上的 DP 盖板 (15)。

17. 将 DP 中继板 (I) 上的接插件 (16) 穿过矩形孔 (17)。
18. 将 DP 中继板 (I) 上的接插件 (YC2) 连接至 MFP 上的接插件 (YC10)。

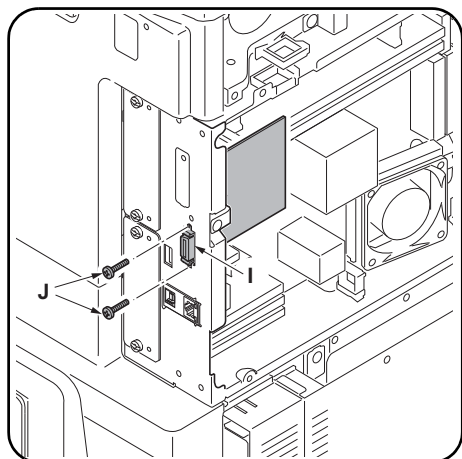
#### DP 中继基板的取り付け

14. MFP 本体のフィルタカバー (11) を取り外す。
15. ビス (12) 9 本を外し、MFP 本体の後上カバー (13) を取り外す。

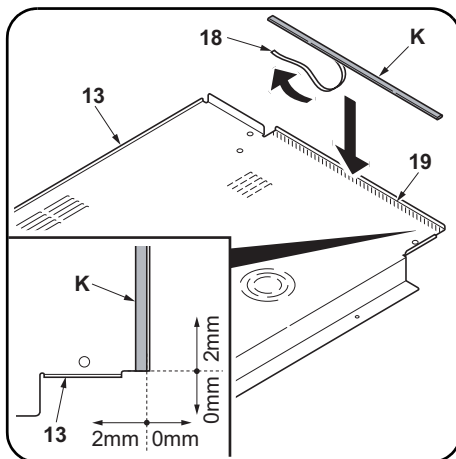
16. ビス (14) 1 本を外し、MFP 本体の DP フタ (15) を取り外す。

17. DP 中继基板 (I) のコネクタ (16) を、角穴 (17) に通す。
18. DP 中继基板 (I) のコネクタ (YC2) を、MFP 本体のコネクタ (YC10) に接続する。





19. Secure the DP relay PWB (I) with two M2.6 x 8 screws (J).



#### Installing the gasket

20. Peel the release paper (18) off the gasket (K).
21. Clean the shaded area (19) of the upper rear cover (13) with alcohol, and then adhere the gasket (K) as shown in the illustration.

22. Replace the upper rear cover (13) of the MFP using nine screws (12).
23. Reinstall the filter cover (11) of the MFP.

Proceed to step 30 on page 8

19. Fixer la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) avec deux vis M2.6 x 8 (J).

#### Installation de la garniture

20. Enlever le papier de protection (18) de la garniture (K).
21. Nettoyer la partie en grisé (19) du couvercle arrière supérieur (13) avec de l'alcool puis coller la garniture (K) en procédant comme illustré.

22. Reposer le couvercle arrière supérieur (13) du MFP à l'aide des huit vis (12).
23. Reposer le couvercle du filtre (11) du MFP.

Passer à l'étape 30 de la page 8

19. Asegure el PWB del relé del DP (I) con dos tornillos M2.6 x 8 (J).

#### Instalación de la junta

20. Despegue el papel (18) de la junta (K).
21. Limpie el área sombreada (19) de la cubierta trasera superior (13) con alcohol, y, después, adhiera la junta (K), como se muestra en la ilustración.

22. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior (13) del MFP, utilizando los ocho tornillos (12).
23. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta del filtro (11) del MFP.

Vaya al paso 30 de la página 8

19. Die DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) mit zwei M2.6 x 8 Schrauben (J) befestigen.

#### Anbringen der Dichtung

20. Das Deckpapier (18) von der Dichtung (K) abziehen.
21. Den schraffierten Bereich (19) der oberen hinteren Abdeckung (13) mit Alkohol reinigen, und dann die Dichtung (K) wie abgebildet ankleben.

22. Die obere hintere Abdeckung (13) des MFP mittels acht Schrauben (12) wieder anbringen.
23. Die Filterabdeckung (11) des MFP wieder anbringen.

Gehen Sie zum Schritt 30 auf Seite 8 weiter

19. Fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) con due viti M2.6 x 8 (J).

#### Installazione della guarnizione

20. Staccare la carta protettiva (18) dalla guarnizione (K).
21. Pulire l'area ombreggiata (19) del coperchio superiore posteriore (13) con alcool, e quindi far aderire la guarnizione (K) come mostrato nell'illustrazione.

22. Rimettere il coperchio superiore posteriore (13) dell'MFP utilizzando otto viti (12).
23. Reinstallare il coperchio del filtro (11) dell'MFP.

Procedere con il punto 30 a pagina 8

19. 用两颗 M2.6 x 8 螺钉 (J) 固定 DP 中继板 (I)。

#### 安装衬垫

20. 撕下衬垫 (K) 上的防粘纸 (18)。
21. 使用酒精清洁上部后盖板 (13) 上的阴影区域 (19)，然后如图所示粘贴衬垫 (K)。

22. 使用 9 颗螺钉 (12) 安装 MFP 的上部后盖板 (13)。
23. 重新安装 MFP 上的过滤器盖板 (11)。

进行第 8 页上的第 30 步



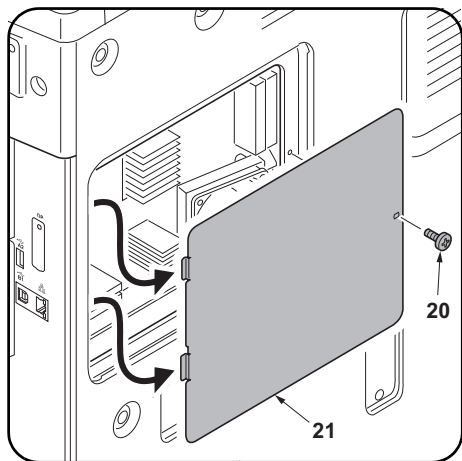
19. DP 中继基板 (I) をビス M2.6 x 8 (J) 2 本で固定する。

#### ガスケットの取り付け

20. ガスケット (K) の剥離紙 (18) を剥がす。
21. 後上カバー (13) の斜線部 (19) をアルコール清掃後、ガスケット (K) を図の通りに貼り付ける。

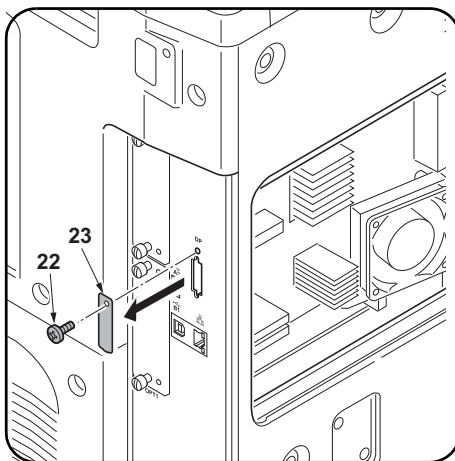
22. ビス (12) 9 本で、MFP 本体の後上カバー (13) を元通り取り付け。
23. MFP 本体のフィルタカバー (11) を元通り取り付け。

8 ページ手順 30 へ進む。

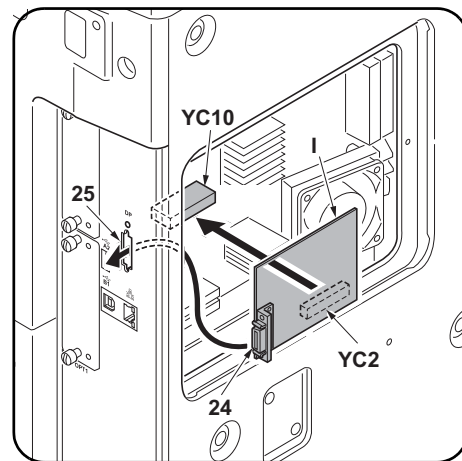


#### Installing the DP relay PWB

24. Remove the screw (20) and then remove the upper rear cover (21).



25. Remove the screw (22) to remove the DP cover (23) on the MFP.



26. Place connector (24) on the DP relay PWB (I) through the rectangular hole (25).

27. Connect connector (YC2) on the DP relay PWB (I) to connector (YC10) on the MFP.

#### Installation de la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP

24. Déposer la vis (20) puis le couvercle arrière supérieur (21).

25. Déposer la vis (22) pour libérer la couvercle du DP (23) sur le MFP.

26. Positionner le connecteur (24) sur la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) en passant par le trou rectangulaire (25).

27. Raccorder le connecteur (YC2) sur la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) au connecteur (YC10) sur le MFP.

#### Instalación del PWB del relé del DP

24. Quite el tornillo (20) y, a continuación, desmonte la cubierta trasera superior (21).

25. Quite el tornillo (22) para extraer la cubierta del DP (23) en el MFP.

26. Inserte el conector (24) del PWB del relé del DP (I) a través del orificio rectangular (25).

27. Conecte el conector (YC2) del PWB del relé del DP (I) al conector (YC10) del MFP.

#### Installieren der DP-Relaisleiterplatte

24. Entfernen Sie die Schrauben (20), und nehmen Sie dann die obere hintere Abdeckung (21) ab.

25. Die Schraube (22) entfernen, um dann die DP-Abdeckung (23) abzunehmen.

26. Den Stecker (24) an der DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) in die Rechtecköffnung (25) schieben.

27. Den Stecker (YC2) an der DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) mit dem Stecker (YC10) am MFP verbinden

#### Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP

24. Rimuovere la viti (20) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio superiore posteriore (21).

25. Togliere la vite (22) per rimuovere il coperchio del DP (23) sull'MFP.

26. Collocare il connettore (24) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) attraverso il foro rettangolare (25).

27. Collegare il connettore (YC2) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) al connettore (YC10) sull'MFP.

#### 安装 DP 中继板

24. 拆下螺钉 (20)，然后拆下上部后盖板 (21)。

25. 拆下螺钉 (22) 以拆下 MFP 上的 DP 盖板 (23)。

26. 将 DP 中继板 (I) 上的接插件 (24) 穿过矩形孔 (25)。

27. 将 DP 中继板 (I) 上的接插件 (YC2) 连接至 MFP 上的接插件 (YC10)。



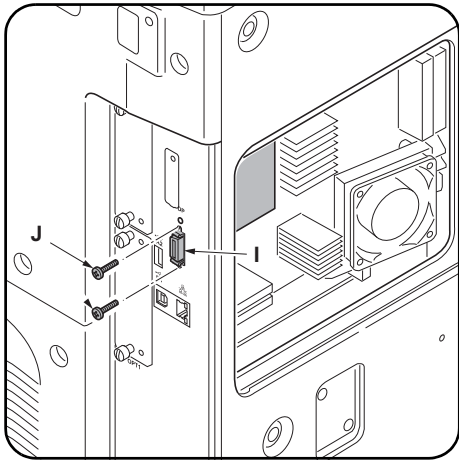
#### DP 中继基板的取り付け

24. ビス (20) 1 本を外し、MFP 本体の後上カバー (21) を取り外す。

25. ビス (22) 1 本を外し、MFP 本体の DP フタ (23) を取り外す。

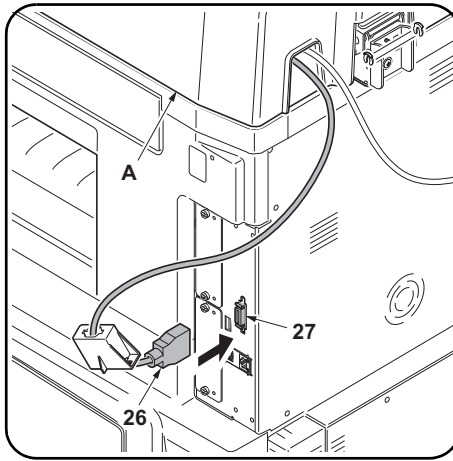
26. DP 中继基板 (I) のコネクタ (24) を、角穴 (25) に通す。

27. DP 中继基板 (I) のコネクタ (YC2) を、MFP 本体のコネクタ (YC10) に接続する。



28. Secure the DP relay PWB (I) with two M2.6 x 8 screws (J).

29. Replace the upper rear cover (21) of the MFP using the screw (20).



**Connect the signal lines.**

30. Connect data signal line (26) on the DP (A) to connector (27) on the DP relay PWB (I).

28. Fixer la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) avec deux vis M2.6 x 8 (J).

29. Reposer le couvercle arrière supérieur (21) du MFP à l'aide de 1 vis (20).

**Connecter les circuits de transmission.**

30. Raccorder la ligne de transmission des données (26) sur le DP (A) au connecteur (27) sur la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I).

28. Asegure el PWB del relé del DP (I) con dos tornillos M2,6 x 8 (J).

29. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior (21) del MFP, utilizando 1 tornillo (20).

**Conecte las líneas de señal.**

30. Conecte la línea de señal de datos (26) del DP (A) al conector (27) del PWB del relé del DP (I).

28. Die DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) mit zwei M2.6 x 8 Schrauben (J) befestigen.

29. Die obere hintere Abdeckung (21) des MFP mittels 1 Schrauben (20) wieder anbringen.

**Anschließen der Signalleitungen.**

30. Die Datensignalleitungen (26) des DP (A) an den Stecker (27) der DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) anschließen.

28. Fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) con due viti M2,6 x 8 (J).

29. Rimettere il coperchio superiore posteriore (21) dell'MFP utilizzando 1 viti (20).

**Connessione delle linee dei segnali.**

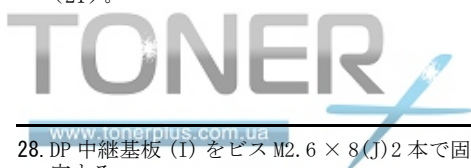
30. Connettere la linea del segnale dati (26) sul DP (A) al connettore (27) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I).

28. 用两颗 M2.6 x 8 螺钉 (J) 固定 DP 中继板 (I)。

29. 使用 9 颗螺钉 (20) 安装 MFP 的上部后盖板 (21)。

**连接信号线。**

30. 将 DP (A) 上的数据信号线 (26) 连接至 DP 中继板 (I) 上的接插件 (27)。

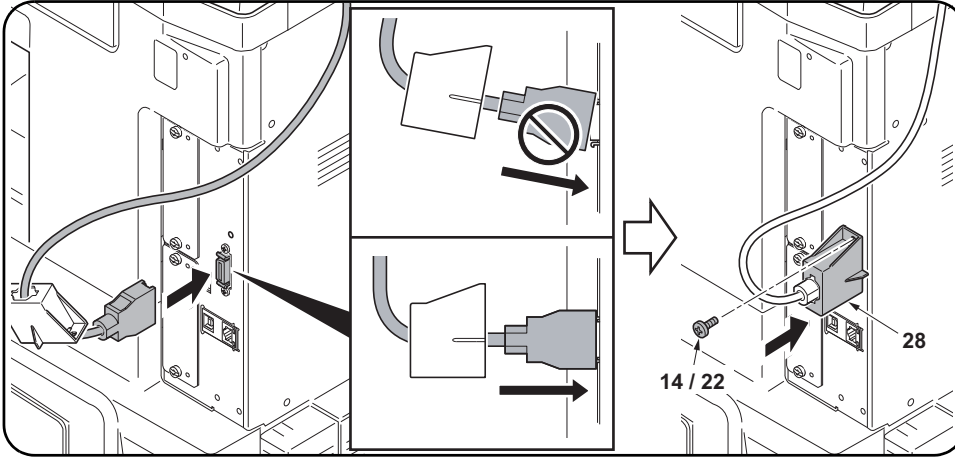


28. DP 中继基板 (I) をビス M2.6 x 8 (J) 2 本で固定する。

29. ビス (20) 1 本で、MFP 本体の後上カバー (21) を元通り取り付け。

**信号線の接続**

30. DP 本体 (A) のデータ信号線 (26) を DP 中继基板 (I) のコネクタ (27) に接続する。



31. Confirm that the signal line is firmly connected to the connector and secure the connector cover (28) with the screw (\*14 / 22) removed in step \*16 / 25.

\* : Full-color machines / Monochrome machines

31. Vérifier que le DP est bien connecté au moteur par le câble (28) et sécurisé grâce à la visse (\*14 / 22) vue dans l'étape \*16 / 25.

\* : Machines entièrement en couleurs / Machines monochromes

31. Asegúrese de que el conector esta conectado firmemente, deslice la cubierta protectora (28) y fijela con el tornillo (\*14 / 22) retirado en el paso \*16 / 25.

\* : Maquinas a todo color / Maquinas monocromaticas

31. Vergewissern Sie sich, dass das Kabel fest mit dem Stecker verbunden ist. Sichern Sie die Steck-  
erabdeckung (28) mit der Schraube (\*14 / 22), die in Schritt \*16 / 25 entfernt wurde.

\* : Vollfarbenkopierers / Monochrommaschinen

31. Vergewissern Sie sich, dass das Kabel fest mit dem Stecker verbunden ist. Sichern Sie die Steck-  
erabdeckung (28) mit der Schraube (\*14 / 22), die in Schritt \*16 / 25 entfernt wurde.

\* : un macchinario a colori / solo per le macchine

31. 在确保信号线和接插件牢固连接后,用步骤\*16/25卸下的螺钉(\*14/22)固定盖板接插件(28)。

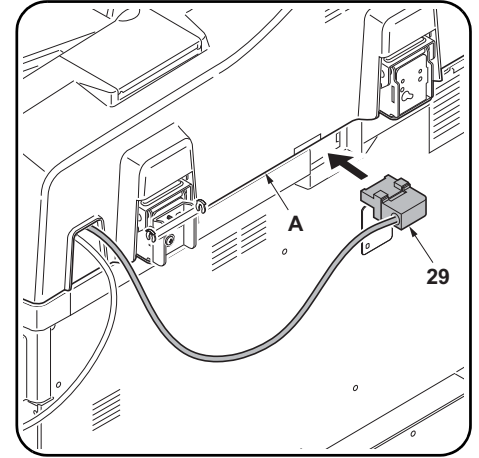
\* : 彩色机器 / 黑白机器

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

31. 信号線が確実にコネクタに接続しているか確認後、手順\*16/25で外したビス(\*14/22)でカバー  
コネクタ(28)を固定してください。

\* : カラー機/モノクロ機



**Connect the signal lines.**

32. Connect data signal line (29) on the DP (A) to the MFP.

**NOTICE:**

When moving the MFP, be sure to remove the data signal lines (26, 29). (This is to prevent them from getting caught.)

**Connecter les circuits de transmission.**

32. Raccorder la ligne de transmission des données (29) sur le DP (A) au MFP.

**AVIS:**

Quand le MFP est déplacé, ne pas oublier d'enlever les lignes de transmission des données (26, 29). (Cette précaution permettra d'éviter de les arracher.)

**Conecte las líneas de señal.**

32. Conecte la línea de señal de datos (29) del DP (A) al MFP.

**AVISO:**

Cuando mueva el MFP, asegúrese de desconectar las líneas de señal de datos (26, 29). (Esto es para evitar que queden atrapadas.)

**Anschließen der Signalleitungen.**

32. Die Datensignalleitung (29) des DP (A) an den MFP anschließen.

**HINWEIS:**

Zum Transportieren des MFP sollten vorher unbedingt die Datensignalleitungen (26, 29) entfernt werden. (Andernfalls könnten sie sich verfangen.)

**Connessione delle linee dei segnali.**

32. Connettere la linea del segnale dati (29) sul DP (A) all'MFP.

**NOTIFICA:**

Quando si sposta l'MFP, assicurarsi di rimuovere le linee dei segnali dati (26, 29). (Questo allo scopo di prevenire il loro impigliamento.)

**连接信号线。**

32. 将 DP (A) 上的数据信号线 (29) 连接至 MFP。

**注意事项:**

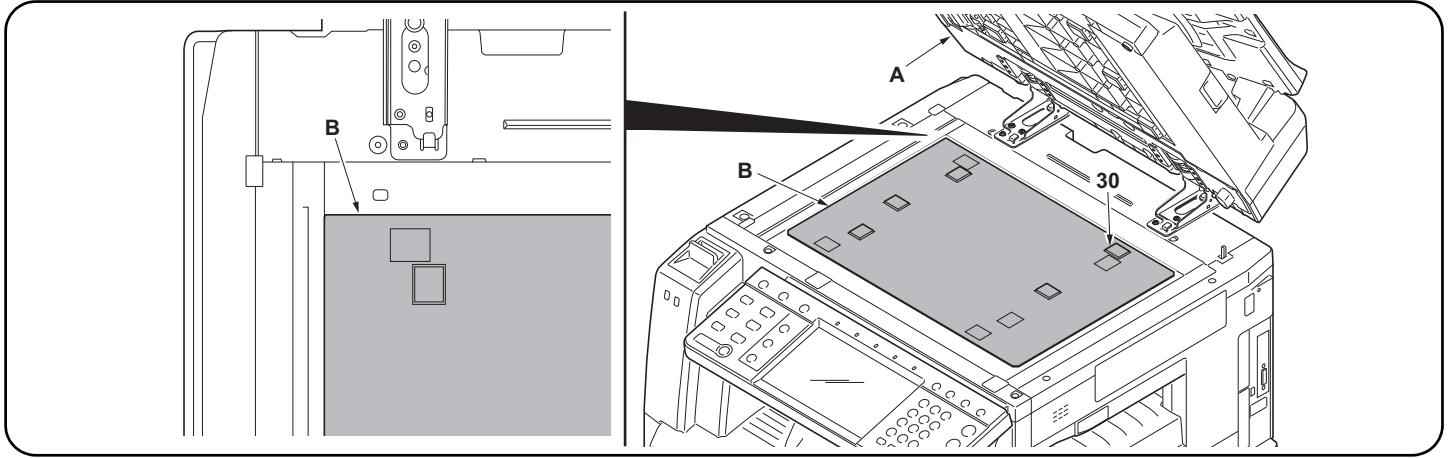
移动 MFP 时, 请确保拆下了数据信号线 (26, 29)。(防止数据信号线牵绊。)

**信号線の接続**

32. DP 本体 (A) のデータ信号線 (29) を MFP 本体に接続する。

**(注意)**

MFP 本体を移動する際は、データ信号線 (26, 29) を外すこと。(引っ掛かり防止のため)



#### Fasten the original mat.

33. Place original mat (B) with its Velcro (30) upward over the contact glass.

**Align original mat (B) corner that has 90 degrees of angle with the inner left corner of the original instruction panel.**

34. Close DP (A) and attach original mat (B) onto it with Velcro.

#### Fixer la plaque d'original.

33. Placer la plaque d'original (B) sur la vitre d'exposition, en orientant les bandes Velcro (30) vers le haut.

**Aligner le coin du plateau d'original (B) faisant un angle de 90 degrés avec le coin gauche interne du panneau d'instructions d'original.**

34. Abaisser le DP (A) et y fixer la plaque d'original (B) à l'aide des bandes Velcro.

#### Fije la alfombrilla para originales.

33. Coloque la alfombrilla para originales (B) con el velcro (30) hacia arriba sobre el cristal de contacto.

**Alinee la esquina que tiene un ángulo de 90 grados de la alfombrilla para originales (B) con la esquina interior izquierda del panel de instrucciones para el original.**

34. Cierre el DP (A) y fije la alfombrilla para originales (B) con el velcro.

#### Befestigen der Originalmatte.

33. Die Originalmatte (B) mit dem Klettband (30) nach oben über das Kontaktglas legen.

**Die Ecke der Originalmatte (B), die einen 90-Grad-Winkel aufweist, mit der linken, inneren Kante des Originalbedienfeldes ausrichten.**

34. Den DP (A) schließen und die Originalmatte (B) mit dem Klettband auf ihm befestigen.

#### Fissaggio del tappetino originale.

33. Posizionare il tappetino originale (B) con il velcro (30) rivolto verso l'alto sul vetro di appoggio.

**Allineare l'angolo di 90 gradi del coprioriginale (B) con l'angolo interno sinistro del pannello di controllo originale.**

34. Chiudere il DP (A) e applicarvi il tappetino originale (B) con il velcro.

#### 粘貼原稿墊。

33. 將原稿墊 (B) 放置在稿台玻璃上，并使魔术貼 (30) 向上。

**將原稿墊 (B) 的 90 度角對準原稿指示板的內部左角。**

34. 關閉 DP (A)，使原稿墊 (B) 粘貼到 DP 上。

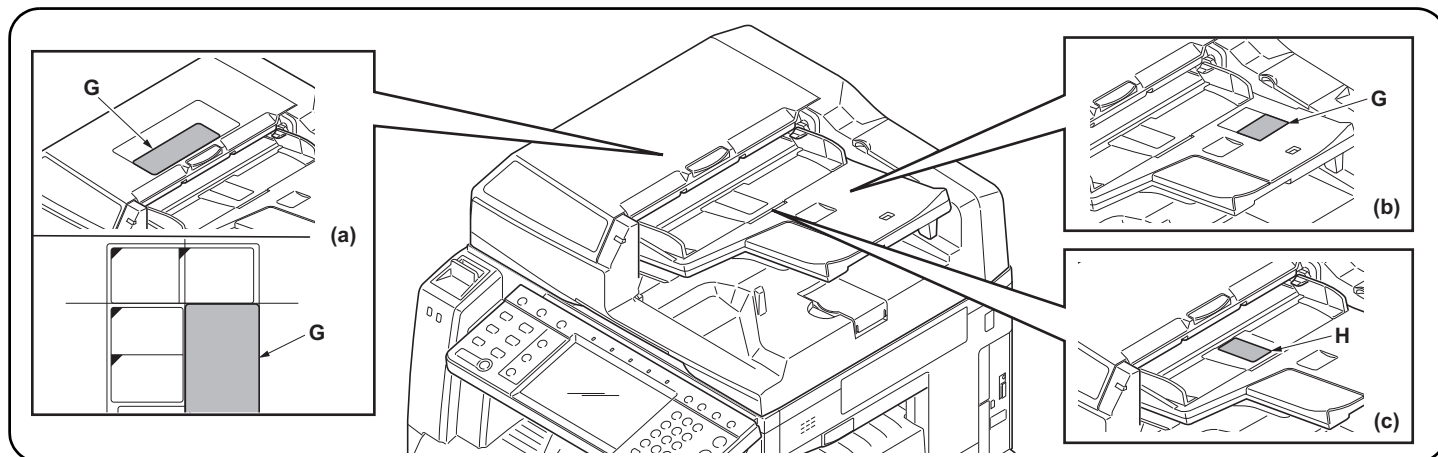


#### 原稿マットの貼り付け

33. マジックテープ (30) を上に向けて、原稿マット (B) をコンタクトガラス上に置く。

**原稿マット (B) は 90° になっている角を原稿指示板の左奥に合わせる。**

34. DP 本体 (A) を下ろし、原稿マット (B) を DP 本体 (A) に貼り付ける。



#### Adhere the label (except for 100 V models)

35. Clean the label on the DP upper cover with alcohol.  
Clean the label on the original table with alcohol.

36. Adhere Label "Operation procedure" (G) of which the language corresponding to the destination of the MFP onto the existing label on the DP upper cover and the original table. Figure (a/b)

37. Adhere Caution label "Original face up!" (H) of which the language corresponding to the destination of the MFP onto the label on the original table. Figure (c)

#### Coller l'étiquette relative (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)

35. Avec de l'alcool, nettoyer l'étiquette sur le couvercle supérieur du DP.  
Avec de l'alcool, nettoyer l'étiquette se trouvant sur le plateau d'original.

36. Coller l'étiquette "Processus opératoire" (G) dans la langue correspondant au destinataire du MFP sur l'étiquette existante sur le couvercle supérieur et le plateau d'original du DP. Figure (a/b)

37. Coller l'étiquette de mise en garde "Original en haut!" (H) dans la langue correspondant au destinataire du MFP sur l'étiquette du plateau d'original. Figure (c)

#### Pegue la etiqueta (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)

35. Limpie con alcohol la etiqueta de la cubierta superior del DP.  
Limpie con alcohol la etiqueta de la cubierta de originales.

36. Adhiera la etiqueta "Procedimiento operativo" (G) del idioma correspondiente al destino del MFP sobre la etiqueta que se encuentra sobre la cubierta superior del DP y la cubierta de originales. Figura (a/b)

37. Pegue la etiqueta de precaución "¡La cara del original hacia arriba!" (H), del idioma que corresponde al destino del MFP, sobre la etiqueta en la cubierta de originales. Figura (c)

#### Anbringen des Schildes (außer 100 V-Modelle)

35. Das Schild auf der oberen DP-Abdeckung mit Alkohol reinigen.  
Das Schild auf dem Originalbedienfeld mit Alkohol reinigen.

36. Das Schild „Funktionsanweisung“ (G) in der Sprache des jeweiligen Einsatzlandes des MFP auf das vorhandene Schild an der oberen DP-Abdeckung und auf dem Originalbedienfeld aufkleben. Abbildung (a/b)

37. Das Warnschild „Originalschriftseite nach oben!“ (H) in der Sprache des jeweiligen Einsatzlandes des MFP auf das vorhandene Schild auf dem Originalbedienfeld aufkleben. Abbildung (c)

#### Applicazione dell'etichetta (eccetto modelli 100 V)

35. Pulire con alcool l'etichetta sul pannello superiore del DP.  
Pulire con alcool l'etichetta sul piano originale.

36. Far aderire l'etichetta "Procedura di funzionamento" (G) corrispondente alla lingua di destinazione dell'MFP, sull'etichetta esistente sul pannello superiore del DP e sul piano originale. Figura (a/b)

37. Far aderire l'etichetta di avvertenza "Originale rivolto verso l'alto!" (H) corrispondente alla lingua di destinazione dell'MFP, sull'etichetta del piano originale. Figura (c)

#### 粘貼标签 (220V 规格以外)

35. 使用酒精清洁 DP 上盖板上的标签。使用酒精清洁原稿台上的标签。

36. 将“动作步骤”标签 (G) (其语言与对应的 MFP 销往目的地语言一致) 粘贴至 DP 上盖板和原稿台的现有标签上。图 (a/b)

37. 将小心标签原稿正面朝上! (H) (其语言与对应的 MFP 销往目的地语言一致) 粘贴至原稿台的标签上。图 (c)

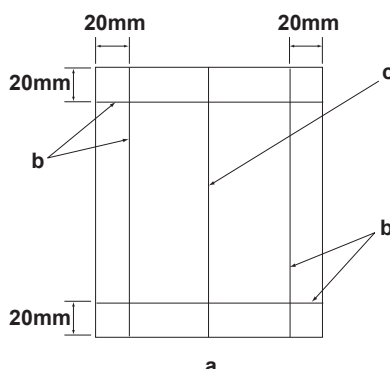


#### ラベルの貼り付け (100V 仕様以外)

35. DP 上カバーのラベル上をアルコール清掃する。  
原稿テーブルのラベル上をアルコール清掃する。

36. MFP 本体を使用する国の言語に合った操作ラベル (G) を DP 上カバーおよび原稿テーブルのラベル上に貼り付ける。図 (a/b)

37. MFP 本体を使用する国の言語に合った原稿表向きラベル (H) を原稿テーブルのラベル上に貼り付ける。図 (c)



#### [Operation check]

1. To check the machine operation, prepare original (a) where 4 lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges of the A3 sheet and 1 line (c) is drawn at its center.
2. Connect the power plug of the MFP into the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
3. Set the original (a) on the DP and perform a test copy to check the operation and the copy example.
4. Compare original (a) with the copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustments according to the type of the gap.

**Check images of the DP after checking and adjusting images of the MFP. For details, see the service manual.**

**NOTICE:** If there is any image fogging, adjust the U068 DP scanning position. If you change the scanning position with U068, adjust the U071 DP leading edge timing.

#### [Vérification du fonctionnement]

1. Pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, préparer un original (a) sur lequel sont tracées 4 lignes (b) à 20 mm des bords de la feuille A3 et 1 ligne (c) en son axe.
2. Brancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP sur la prise murale et mettre l'appareil sous tension.
3. Placer l'original (a) sur le DP et effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.
4. Comparer l'original (a) avec l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, effectuer les réglages suivants en fonction du type d'écart.

**Vérifier les images du DP après avoir contrôlé et réglé les images du MFP. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.**

**AVIS:** Si l'image est floue, régler la position de balayage de U068 du DP. Si la position de balayage de U068 est modifiée, régler la synchronisation du bord d'attaque de U071.

#### [Verifique el funcionamiento]

1. Para comprobar el funcionamiento del aparato, prepare un original (a) que contenga 4 líneas (b) dibujadas a 20 mm de los bordes de la hoja A3 y 1 línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y el ejemplo de copia.
4. Compare el original (a) con el ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realice los siguientes ajustes según el tipo de separación.

**Compruebe las imágenes del DP después de comprobar y ajustar las imágenes del MFP. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.**

**AVISO:** Si la imagen estuviera borrosa, ajuste la posición de escaneo U068 del DP. Si cambia la posición de escaneo con U068, ajuste la sincronización de borde superior U071 del DP.

#### [Funktionsprüfung]

1. Zum Prüfen der Gerätefunktion das Original (a) vorbereiten, auf das 4 Linien (b) 20 mm von den Kanten des A3-Blattes und 1 Linie (c) in der Mitte gezeichnet sind.
2. Den Netzstecker am MFP in die Steckdose stecken und den Strom einschalten.
3. Das Original (a) auf den DP legen und eine Testkopie erstellen, um die Funktion und das Kopierbeispiel zu prüfen.
4. Das Original (a) mit dem Kopierbeispiel vergleichen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, die folgenden Einstellungen gemäß dem Abstandstyp durchführen.

**Die Bilder des DP nach dem Prüfen und Einstellen der Bilder des MFP prüfen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.**

**HINWEIS:** Falls das Bild verschwommen wirkt, ist die U068 DP Scan-Position zu verstellen. Wenn Sie die Scan-Position mit U068 verstellen, müssen Sie das U071 DP-Vorderkanten-Timing entsprechend verstellen.

#### [Verifica del funzionamento]

1. Per verificare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare l'originale (a) tirando 4 linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi del foglio A3 e una linea (c) al centro.
2. Inserire la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa a muro, quindi posizionare l'interruttore principale su On.
3. Posizionare l'originale(a) sul DP ed eseguire una copia di prova per verificare il funzionamento e l'esempio di copia.
4. Confrontare l'originale (a) con l'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le seguenti regolazioni in funzione del tipo di scostamento.

**Controllare le immagini del DP dopo avere effettuato i controlli e le regolazioni delle immagini sull'MFP. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.**

**NOTIFICA:** Se è presente una qualsiasi sfocatura dell'immagine, regolare la posizione di scansione DP U068. Se si cambia la posizione di scansione con U068, regolare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP U071.

#### [動作確認]

1. 若要检查机器动作, 准备一张 A3 原稿 (a), 距纸张边缘 20mm 画出 4 条线 (b) 并且在原稿中心画出 1 条线 (c)。
2. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入墙壁插座并打开主电源。
3. 在 DP 上设定原稿 (a) 并进行测试复印, 确认机器动作和复印样本。
4. 对比复印样本和原稿 (a), 如果偏移值在标准值以上时, 对偏移原稿进行调整。

对 MFP 本体的图像确认和调整后, 再对 DP 的图像进行确认。详细内容请参见维修手册。

(注意)

如果图像出现底灰, 用 U068 来调整 DP 的扫描位置。如果用 U068 更改了扫描位置, 则再用 U071 对 DP 的前端定时进行调整。

#### [動作確認]

1. A3 サイズ用紙の端から 20mm の位置に線 (b) 4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c) 1 本を引いた、動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
2. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
3. 原稿 (a) を DP 本体にセットし、テストコピーを行い、動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。
4. 原稿 (a) とコピーサンプルを比較し、基準値以上のずれがある場合、ずれ方に応じて調整を行う。

MFP 本体の画像確認及び調整を行ってから DP 本体の画像確認を行うこと。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

(注意)

画像カブリが発生する場合、U068 DP 読み取り位置の調整を行う。U068 で読み取り位置を変更した場合、U071 DP 先端タイミング調整を行う。

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.

For checking the angle of leading edge, see page 14. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

For checking the angle of trailing edge, see page 17. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

For checking the magnification, see page 20. <Reference value> Within  $\pm 1.5\%$

For checking the leading edge timing, see page 22. <Reference value> Within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

For checking the center line, see page 24. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 2.0$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm

**When using the original for adjustment, automatic adjustment of magnification, leading edge timing and center line can be performed at a time.**

For the automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment, see page 27.

Veillez à effectuer le réglage en procédant dans l'ordre suivant. Sinon, il sera impossible d'obtenir un réglage correct.

Pour vérifier l'angle du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 14. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.; copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

Pour vérifier l'angle du bord arrière, reportez-vous à la page 17. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.; copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

Pour vérifier l'agrandissement, reportez-vous à la page 20. <Valeur de référence>  $\pm 1,5\%$  max.

Pour vérifier la synchronisation du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 22. <Valeur de référence>  $\pm 2,5$  mm max.

Pour vérifier la ligne médiane, reportez-vous à la page 24. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 2,0$  mm max.; copie recto verso:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.

**Lorsque vous utilisez l'original pour effectuer le réglage, vous pouvez effectuer automatiquement le réglage de l'agrandissement, de la synchronisation du bord avant et de la ligne médiane en une seule fois.**

Pour le réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage, reportez-vous à la page 27.

Asegúrese de ajustar en el siguiente orden. De lo contrario, el ajuste no puede hacerse correctamente.

Para verificar el ángulo del borde superior, vea la página 14. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Para verificar el ángulo del borde inferior, vea la página 17. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Para verificar el cambio de tamaño, vea la página 20. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Para verificar la sincronización del borde inferior, vea la página 22. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

Para verificar la línea central, vea la página 24. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 2,0$  mm; Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**Cuando utilice el original para el ajuste, puede hacerse un ajuste automático del cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y línea central al mismo tiempo.**

Para el ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste, vea la página 27.

Die Einstellung in der folgenden Reihenfolge durchführen. Anderenfalls kann die Einstellung nicht korrekt durchgeführt werden.

Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Vorderkante auf Seite 14. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Hinterkante auf Seite 17. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Angaben zur Prüfung der Vergrößerung auf Seite 20. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

Angaben zur Prüfung des Vorderkanten-Timings auf Seite 22. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

Angaben zur Prüfung der Mittellinie auf Seite 24. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 2,0$  mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**Bei Verwendung des Originals für die Einstellung können die automatischen Einstellungen für Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittellinie gleichzeitig durchgeführt werden.**

Angaben zur automatischen Einstellung mithilfe des Originals auf Seite 27.

Accertarsi di eseguire le regolazioni in questa sequenza: in caso contrario, la regolazione non può essere effettuata correttamente.

Per controllare l'angolo del bordo principale, vedere pagina 14. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Per controllare l'angolo del bordo di uscita, vedere pagina 17. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Per controllare l'ingrandimento, vedere pagina 20. <Valore di riferimento> Entro  $\pm 1,5\%$

Per controllare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale, vedere pagina 22. <Valore di riferimento> Entro  $\pm 2,5$  mm

Per controllare la linea centrale, vedere pagina 24. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 2,0$  mm; Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**Quando si utilizza l'originale per la regolazione, la regolazione automatica dell'ingrandimento, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e della linea centrale possono essere eseguiti contemporaneamente.**

Per la regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale, vedere pagina 27.

必须按照以下步骤进行调整，否则不能达到准确调整的要求。

• 确认前端倾斜度 第 14 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内, 双面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 确认后端倾斜度 第 17 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内, 双面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 确认等倍值 第 20 页 <标准值>  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

• 确认前端定时调整 第 22 页 <标准值>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

• 确认中心线 第 24 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内, 双面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

使用调整用的原稿时，可以同时自动进行等倍值，前端定时以及中心线的调整。

• 通过调整用原稿进行自动调整 第 27 页

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。

• 先端斜め確認 14 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内、両面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 後端斜め確認 17 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内、両面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

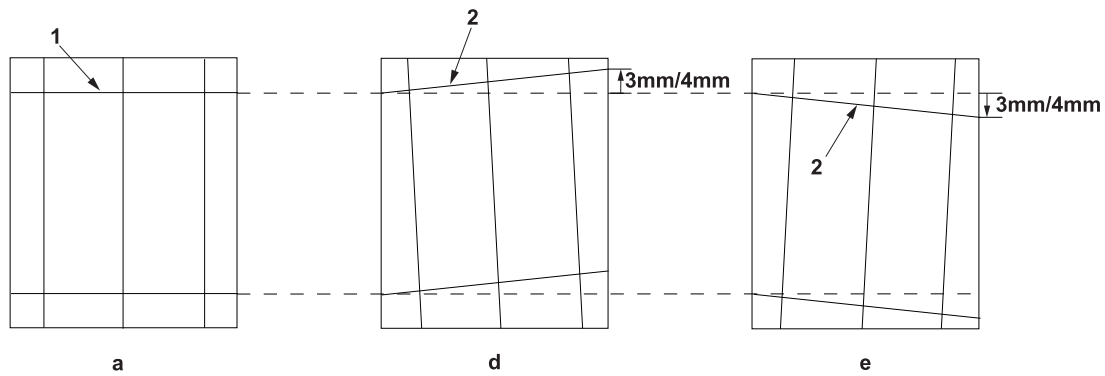
• 等倍値確認 20 ページ <基準値>  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

• 先端タイミング確認 22 ページ <基準値>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

• センターライン確認 24 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内、両面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

調整用原稿を使用すると、等倍値調整、先端タイミング調整、センターライン調整の自動調整が一度におこなえる。

• 調整用原稿による自動調整 27 ページ



#### [Checking the angle of leading edge]

1. Check the horizontal gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example positions. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

- <Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 3$  mm.  
For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 4$  mm.

#### [Vérification de l'angle du bord avant]

1. Vérifier l'écart horizontal entre la position de la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et celle de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

- <Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 3$  mm.  
Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 4$  mm.

#### [Verificación del ángulo del borde superior]

1. Compruebe la separación horizontal entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de las posiciones del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

- <Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 3$  mm.  
Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 4$  mm.

#### [Überprüfen des Winkels der Vorderkante]

1. Den horizontalen Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) der Kopierbeispielspositionen prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

- <Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 3$  mm liegen.  
Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 4$  mm liegen.

#### [Controllo dell'angolo del bordo principale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento orizzontale fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) delle posizioni dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

- <Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 3$  mm.  
Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 4$  mm.

#### [ 确认前端倾斜度 ]

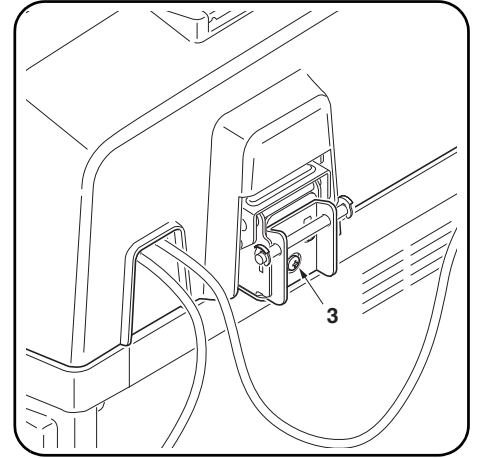
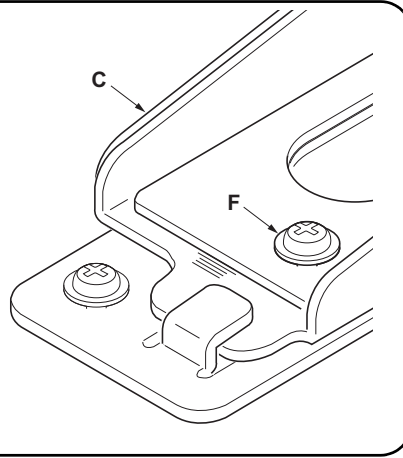
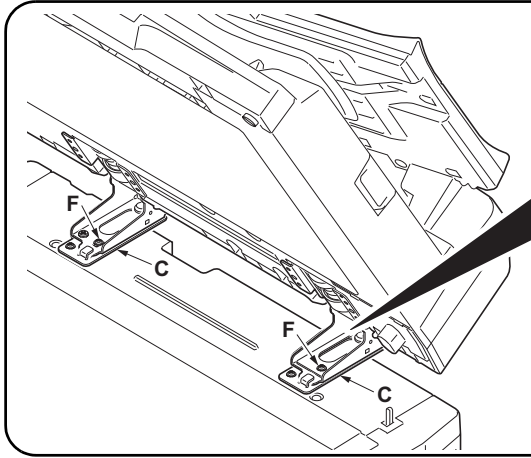
1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 的左右偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值，则按照下列步骤进行调整。

- <标准值> 单面复印时，线 (2) 的左右偏移值： $\pm 3$ mm 以内。  
双面复印时，线 (2) 的左右偏移值： $\pm 4$ mm 以内。

#### [ 先端斜め確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) の左右のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

- <基準値> 片面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ： $\pm 3$ mm 以内  
両面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ： $\pm 4$ mm 以内



#### Adjusting the DP

- Loosen two M4 × 14TP screws (F) of right and left fixing fittings (C).
- Turn adjusting screw (3) at the rear side of the right hinge to adjust the DP position.  
For copy example (d): Turn the adjusting screw counterclockwise and move the DP to the inner side.  
For copy example (e): Turn the adjusting screw clockwise and move the DP to the front side.  
Amount of change per scale: Approx. 1 mm
- Perform a test copy.

#### Réglage du DP

- Desserrer les deux vis TP M4 × 14 (F) des fixations (C) droite et gauche.
- Tourner la vis de réglage (3) à l'arrière de la charnière droite pour régler la position du DP.  
Pour l'exemple de copie (d) : tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'intérieur.  
Pour l'exemple de copie (e) : tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'avant.  
Changement par graduation d'échelle : environ 1 mm
- Effectuer une copie de test.

#### Ajuste del DP

- Afloje dos tornillos TP M4 × 14 (F) de los herrajes de fijación (C) derecho e izquierdo.
- Gire el tornillo de ajuste (3) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha para ajustar la posición del DP.  
Para el ejemplo de copia (d): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido antihorario y mueva el DP al lado interno.  
Para el ejemplo de copia (e): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido horario y mueva el DP al lado frontal.  
Magnitud del cambio por escala: aprox. 1 mm
- Haga una copia de prueba.

#### Einstellen des DP

- Die zwei M4 × 14TP Schrauben (F) an der rechten und linken Befestigungshalterung (C) lösen.
- Die Einstellschraube (3) an der Rückseite des rechten Scharniers einstellen, um die DP-Position einzustellen.  
Kopierbeispiel (d): Die Einstellschraube nach links drehen und den DP nach innen schieben.  
Kopierbeispiel (e): Die Einstellschraube nach rechts drehen und den DP nach vorne schieben.  
Änderung pro Maßstab: Ungefähr 1 mm
- Eine Testkopie erstellen.

#### Regolazione del DP

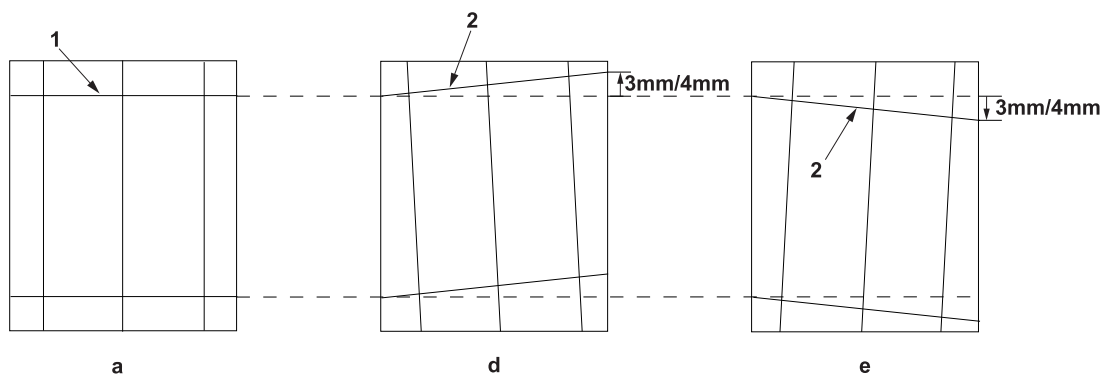
- Allentare le due viti M4 × 14TP (F) degli accessori di fissaggio (C) destro e sinistro.
- Ruotare la vite di regolazione (3) sul lato posteriore della cerniera destra per regolare la posizione del DP.  
Per l'esempio di copia (d): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso antiorario e spostare il DP verso l'interno.  
Per l'esempio di copia (e): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso orario e spostare il DP in avanti.  
Entità modifica per scala: circa 1 mm
- Eseguire una copia di prova.

#### 調整 DP

- 松开右侧和左侧的固定附件 (C) 的两颗 M4 × 14TP 螺钉 (F)。
- 旋转右侧铰链的后部的调整螺钉 (3) 以调整 DP 位置。  
对于复印样本 (d): 逆时针旋转调整螺钉并将 DP 移动到内侧。  
对于复印样本 (e): 顺时针旋转调整螺钉并将 DP 移动到正面。  
按比例尺的更改量: 约 1mm
- 进行测试复印。

#### DP の調整

- 左右の固定金具 (C) のビス M4 × 14TP (F) 2本を緩める。
- 右ヒンジ後側の調整ビス (3) を回し、DP 本体の位置を調整する。  
コピーサンプル (d) の場合: 調整ビスを左に回し、DP 本体を奥へ動かす  
コピーサンプル (e) の場合: 調整ビスを右に回し、DP 本体を手前へ動かす  
1目盛り当たりの変化量: 約 1mm
- テストコピーを行う。



5. Repeat the steps above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the following reference values.  
 <Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 3$  mm.  
 For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 4$  mm.
6. After adjustment is completed, retighten two M4  $\times$  14TP screws (F) that have been loosened in step 2.
7. Remove the original mat (B) and refit it (see steps 33 and 34 on page 10).

5. Répéter les étapes ci-dessus jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique les valeurs de référence suivantes.  
 <Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 3$  mm.  
 Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 4$  mm.
6. Une fois le réglage effectué, resserrer les deux vis TP M4  $\times$  14 (F) desserrées à l'étape 2.
7. Retirez le tapis d'original (B) et remettez-le en place. (Reportez-vous aux étapes 33 et 34 à la page 10.)

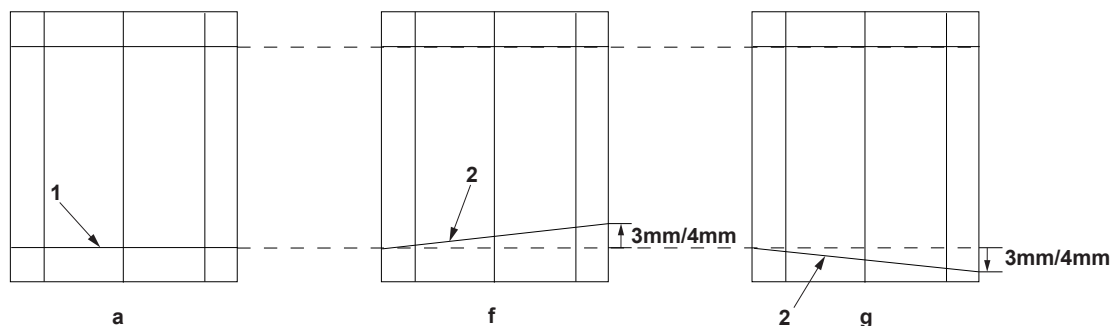
5. Repita los pasos anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente los siguientes valores de referencia.  
 <Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 3$  mm.  
 Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 4$  mm.
6. Una vez hecho el ajuste, vuelva a apretar los dos tornillos TP M4  $\times$  14 (F) que ha aflojado en el paso 2.
7. Desmonte la plancha de original (B) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 33 y 34 en la página 10).

5. Die obigen Schritte wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.  
 <Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 3$  mm liegen.  
 Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 4$  mm liegen.
6. Nach der Einstellung die zwei M4  $\times$  14TP Schrauben (F), die in Schritt 2 gelöst wurden, wieder festziehen.
7. Die Originalmatte (B) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 33 und 34 auf Seite 10).

5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento seguenti.  
 <Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 3$  mm.  
 Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 4$  mm.
6. Una volta conclusa la regolazione, serrare nuovamente le viti M4  $\times$  14TP (F) che erano state allentate al Punto 2.
7. Rimuovere il coprioriginale (B) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 33 e 34 a pagina 10).

5. 重复上述步骤直至复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值达到标准值范围内。  
 <标准值> 单面时, 线(2)的左右偏移值:  $\pm 3$ mm 以内  
 双面时, 线(2)的左右偏移值:  $\pm 4$ mm 以内
6. 调整完成后, 重新拧紧在步骤2中松开的两颗 M4  $\times$  14TP 螺钉(F)。
7. 拆下原稿垫(B), 参照第10页的步骤33和34再次装上。

5. コピーサンプルの線(2)ずれが基準値内になるまで、調整を繰り返す。  
 <基準値> 片面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3$ mm 以内  
 両面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:  $\pm 4$ mm 以内
6. 調整終了後、手順2で緩めたビス M4  $\times$  14TP(F)2本を締め付ける。
7. 原稿マット(B)を取り外し、10ページの手順33、34を参考に再度取り付ける。



#### [Checking the angle of trailing edge]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

<Reference value>

For simplex copying: Within  $\pm 3.0$  mm

For duplex copying: Within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

#### [Vérification de l'angle du bord arrière]

1. Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

<Valeur de référence>

Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.

Copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

#### [Verificación del ángulo del borde inferior]

1. Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.

<Valor de referencia>

Para copia simple: Dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm

Para copia duplex: Dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [Überprüfen des Winkels der Hinterkante]

1. Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

<Bezugswert>

Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [Controllo dell'angolo del bordo di uscita]

1. Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per copia simplex: Entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm

Per copia duplex: Entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [ 确认后端倾斜度 ]

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值。如果超过标准值时，必须进行调整。

<标准值> 单面时:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

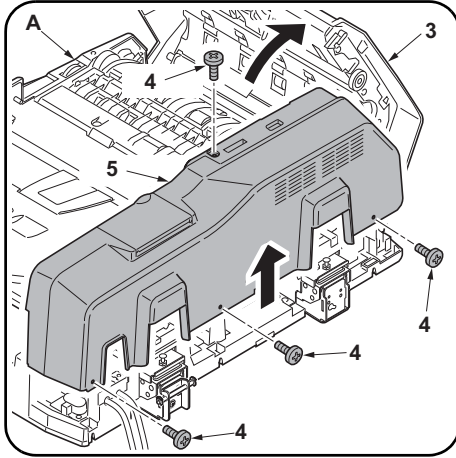
双面时:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

#### [ 後端斜め確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。

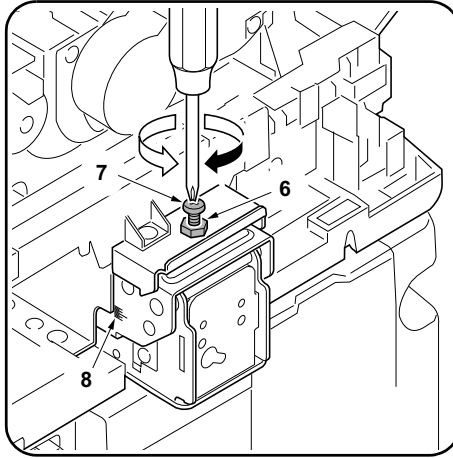
<基準値> 片面の場合:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内



### Adjusting the DP

2. Open the upper cover (3) of the DP (A).  
Remove four screws (4) to remove the rear cover (5).



3. Adjust the height of DP.  
Loosen the nut (6).  
For copy example (f): Loosen the adjusting screw (7).  
For copy example (g): Tighten the adjusting screw (7).  
Amount of change per scale: Approx. 0.5 mm (8)  
Retighten the nut (6).
4. Refit the rear cover (5) removed in step 2.
5. Remove the original mat (B) and refit it (see steps 33 and 34 on page 10).

### Réglage du DP

2. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur (3) du DP (A).  
Déposer les quatre vis (4) pour enlever le capot arrière (5).

3. Réglez la hauteur du DP.  
Desserrez l'écrou (6).  
Pour l'exemple de copie (f): Desserrez la vis de réglage (7).  
Pour l'exemple de copie (g): Serrez la vis de réglage (7).  
Quantité de changement par pas: environ 0,5 mm (8)  
Resserrez l'écrou (6).
4. Reposer le capot arrière (5) déposé à l'étape 2.
5. Retirez le tapis d'original (B) et remettez-le en place. (Reportez-vous aux étapes 33 et 34 à la page 10.)

### Ajuste del DP

2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) del DP (A).  
Quite los cuatro tornillos (4) para desmontar la cubierta trasera (5).

3. Ajuste la altura del DP.  
Afloje la tuerca (6).  
Para la copia de muestra (f): Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (7).  
Para la copia de muestra (g): Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (7).  
Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 0,5 mm (8)  
Vuelva a apretar la tuerca (6).
4. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (5) desmontada en el paso 2.
5. Desmonte la plancha de original (B) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 33 y 34 en la página 10).

### Einstellen des DP

2. Die obere Abdeckung (3) des DP (A) öffnen.  
Die vier Schrauben (4) entfernen, um die hintere Abdeckung (5) abzunehmen.

3. Die Höhe des DP einstellen.  
Lösen Sie die Mutter (6).  
Für Kopienmuster (f): Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (7).  
Für Kopienmuster (g): Die Einstellschraube (7) festziehen.  
Änderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: ca. 0,5 mm (8)  
Ziehen Sie die Mutter (6) wieder fest.
4. Die in Schritt 2 entfernte hintere Abdeckung (5) wieder anbringen.
5. Die Originalmatte (B) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 33 und 34 auf Seite 10).

### Regolazione del DP

2. Aprire il pannello superiore (3) del DP (A).  
Togliere le quattro viti (4) per rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (5).

3. egolazione dell'altezza del DP  
Allentare il dado (6).  
Per un esempio di copia (f): Allentare la vite di regolazione (7).  
Per un esempio di copia (g): Stringere la vite di regolazione (7).  
Variazione graduale: circa 0,5 mm (8)  
Stringere di nuovo il dado (6).
4. Reinserire il coperchio posteriore (5) rimosso nel passo 2.
5. Rimuovere il coprioriginale (B) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 33 e 34 a pagina 10).

### 調整 DP

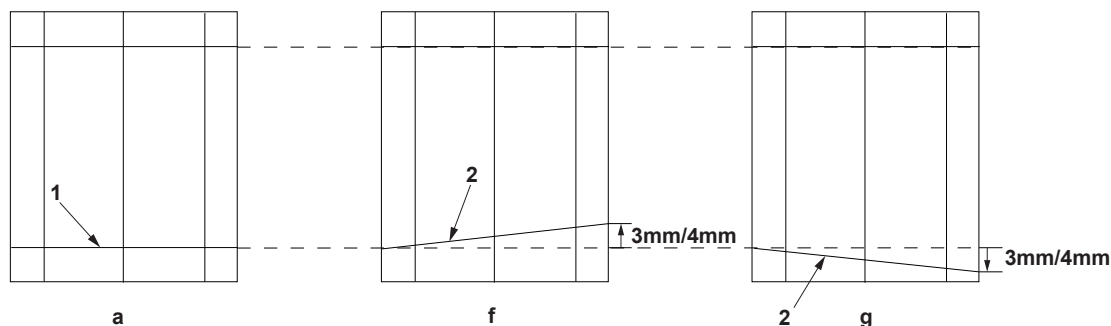
2. 打开 DP (A) 的上盖板 (3)。  
拆下 4 颗螺钉 (4) 以拆下后盖板 (5)。

3. 调整 DP 的高度。  
松弛螺母 (6)。  
测印件 (f) 时: 松弛调整螺丝 (7)。  
测印件 (g) 时: 紧固调整螺丝 (7)。  
每 1 格的移动量: 约 0.5mm (8)  
将螺母 (6) 按原样紧固好。
4. 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的后盖板 (5)。
5. 拆下原稿垫 (B), 参照第 10 页的步骤 33 和 34 再次装上。

### DP の調整

2. DP 本体 (A) の DP 上カバー (3) を開く。  
ビス (4) 4 本を外し、後カバー (5) を取り外す。

3. DP の高さを調整する。  
ナット (6) をゆるめる。  
コピーサンプル (f) の場合: 調整ビス (7) をゆるめる。  
コピーサンプル (g) の場合: 調整ビス (7) を締める。  
1 目盛り当たりの変化量: 約 0.5mm (8)  
ナット (6) を元通り締める。
4. 手順 2 で取り外した後カバー (5) を元通り取り付け。
5. 原稿マット (B) を取り外し、10 ページの手順 33、34 を参考に再度取り付け。



6. Make a proof copy again.

7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.

<Reference value>

For simplex copying: Within  $\pm 3.0$  mm

For duplex copying: Within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

6. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.

7. Répétez les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.

<Valeur de référence>

Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.

Copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

6. Haga otra copia de prueba.

7. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.

<Valor de referencia>

Para copia simple: Dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm

Para copia duplex: Dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

6. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.

7. Die Schritte 1 bis 6 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.

<Bezugswert>

Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

6. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.

7. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per copia simplex: Entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm

Per copia duplex: Entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

6. 再次进行测试复印。

7. 反复操作步骤 1~6, 直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。

<标准值> 单面时:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

双面时:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

TONER

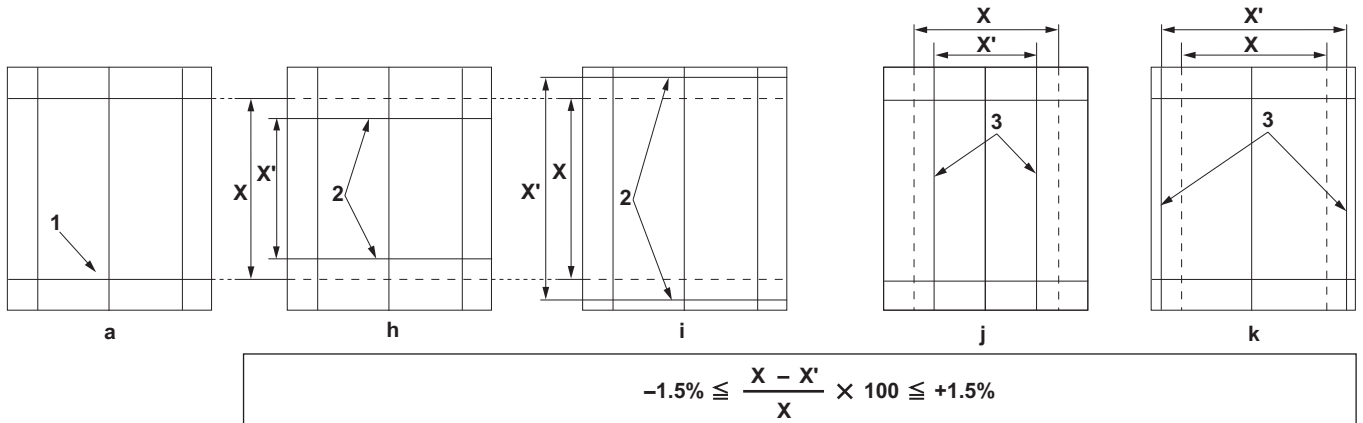
www.tonerplus.com.ua

6. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。

7. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 6 を繰り返す。

<基準値> 片面の場合:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内



#### [Checking the magnification]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) (3) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.  
<Reference value>  
For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 1.5\%$   
For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

#### Adjusting the DP magnification

\* : Full-color machines / Monochrome machines

2. Use the maintenance mode U070 to adjust the magnification.  
For the front page, adjust \* CONVEY SPEED1 / MOTOR ADJ(FRONT).  
(The back page for the reverse duplex is also adjusted at the same time)  
For the back page of the dual scan (CIS reading), adjust the \* CIS MAIN ADJ / Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) and the \* CIS SUB ADJ / X SCAN ZOOM(CIS).

#### [Vérification de l'agrandissement]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.  
<Valeur de référence>  
Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de  $\pm 1,5\%$   
Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de  $\pm 1,5\%$

#### Réglage de l'agrandissement du DP

\* : Machines entièrement en couleurs / Machines monochromes

2. Pour régler l'agrandissement, utilisez le mode entretien U070.  
Pour le côté recto, réglez \* CONVEY SPEED1 / MOTOR ADJ(FRONT). (Le verso pour les copies recto-verso est également réglé par cette opération.)  
Pour le verso des copies à balayage double (lecture CIS), réglez le \* CIS MAIN ADJ / Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) et le \* CIS SUB ADJ / X SCAN ZOOM(CIS).

#### [Verificación del cambio de tamaño]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.  
<Valor de referencia>  
Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$   
Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

#### Ajuste del cambio de tamaño

\* : Máquinas a todo color / Máquinas monocromáticas

2. Para ajustar la ampliación utilice el modo de mantenimiento U070.  
Para la página frontal, ajuste \* CONVEY SPEED1 / MOTOR ADJ(FRONT).  
(En el mismo momento se ajusta la página posterior del dúplex inverso).  
Para la página posterior del escaneado doble (lectura CIS), ajuste \* CIS MAIN ADJ / Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) y \* CIS SUB ADJ / X SCAN ZOOM(CIS).

#### [Überprüfen der Vergrößerung]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.  
<Bezugswert>  
Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$   
Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

#### Einstellen der DP-Vergrößerung

\* : Vollfarbemaschinen / Monochrommaschinen

2. Zum Einstellen der Vergrößerung den Wartungsmodus U070 verwenden.  
Für die Vorderseite die \* CONVEY SPEED1 / MOTOR ADJ(FRONT) einstellen. (Die Rückseite für Spiegelbild-Duplex wird damit ebenfalls eingestellt.)  
Für die Rückseite des Dual-Scans (CIS-Abtastung) sind \* CIS MAIN ADJ / Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) und \* CIS SUB ADJ / X SCAN ZOOM(CIS) einzustellen.

#### [Controllo dell'ingrandimento]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.  
<Valore di riferimento>  
Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$   
Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

#### Regolazione dell'ingrandimento DP

\* : Macchine a colori / Macchine in bianco e nero

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U070 per regolare l'ingrandimento.  
Per la pagina anteriore, regolare \* CONVEY SPEED1 / MOTOR ADJ(FRONT). (Nello stesso momento viene regolata anche la pagina posteriore per il duplex inverso.)  
Per la pagina posteriore della doppia scansione (lettura CIS), regolare \* CIS MAIN ADJ / Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) e \* CIS SUB ADJ / X SCAN ZOOM(CIS).

#### [ 确认等倍值 ]

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) (3) 之间的偏移值。  
如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。  
<标准值>  
对于副扫描方向, 线 (2) 的上下偏移值:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内  
对于主扫描方向, 线 (3) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

#### 调整 DP 等倍值

\* : 彩色机器 / 黑白机器

2. 使用维修模式 U070 调整等倍值。  
对于正面, 调整 \* CONVEY SPEED1/MOTOR ADJ (FRONT)。  
(反转双面的背面也同时调整)  
对于双扫描 (CIS 读取) 的背面, 调整 \* CIS MAIN ADJ/Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) 和 \* CIS SUB ADJ/X SCAN ZOOM(CIS)。

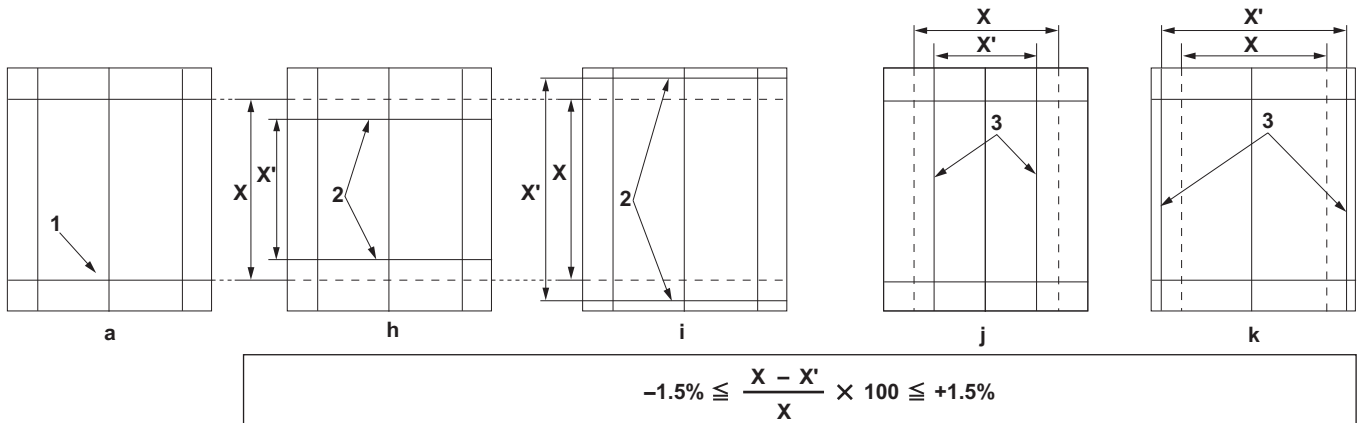
#### [ 等倍度確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値>  
副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内  
主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

#### DP 等倍度調整

\* : カラー機 / モノクロ機

2. メンテナンスモード U070 をセットし、調整を行う。  
表面の場合は、\* CONVEY SPEED1/MOTOR ADJ (FRONT) の調整を行う。  
(両面反転裏面も同時に調整される)  
両面同時裏面 (CIS 読込) の場合は、\* CIS MAIN ADJ/Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) および \* CIS SUB ADJ/X SCAN ZOOM(CIS) の調整を行う。



**3. Adjust the values.**

For the shorter length copy example (h)(j): Increases the value.

For the longer length copy example (i)(k): Decreases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.10 %

**4. Perform a test copy.**

**5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) (3) of copy example shows the reference value.**

<Reference value>

For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within ±1.5%

For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within ±1.5%

**3. Régler les valeurs.**

Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus courte (h)(j) : augmenter la valeur.

Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus longue (i)(k) : diminuer la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0.10 %

**4. Effectuer une copie de test.**

**5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.**

<Valeur de référence>

Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de ±1,5%

Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de ±1,5%

**3. Ajuste los valores.**

Para el ejemplo de copia más corto (h)(j): aumenta el valor.

Para el ejemplo de copia más largo (i)(k): disminuye el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0.10 %

**4. Haga una copia de prueba.**

**5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.**

<Valor de referencia>

Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de ±1,5%

Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de ±1,5%

**3. Die Werte einstellen.**

Für die kürzere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (h)(j): Den Wert erhöhen.

Für die längere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (i)(k): Den Wert verringern.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0.10 %

**4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.**

**5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.**

<Bezugswert>

Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb ±1,5%

Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb ±1,5%

**3. Regolare i valori.**

Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza inferiore (h)(j): aumenta il valore.

Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza superiore (i)(k): riduce il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,10 %

**4. Eseguire una copia di prova**

**5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.**

<Valore di riferimento>

Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra ±1,5%

Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra ±1,5%

**3. 調整設定値。**

在长度偏短时 复印样本 (h) (j): 调高设定值

在长度偏长时 复印样本 (i) (k): 调低设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量: 0.10%

**4. 进行测试复印。**

**5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2)、(3) 之间的偏移值达到标准值范围内。**

<标准值>

对于副扫描方向, 线 (2) 的上下偏移值: ± 1.5% 以内

对于主扫描方向, 线 (3) 的左右偏移值: ± 1.5% 以内

**3. 設定値を調整する。**

長さが短い場合 コピーサンプル (h) (j): 設定値を上げる

長さが長い場合 コピーサンプル (i) (k): 設定値を下げる

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.10%

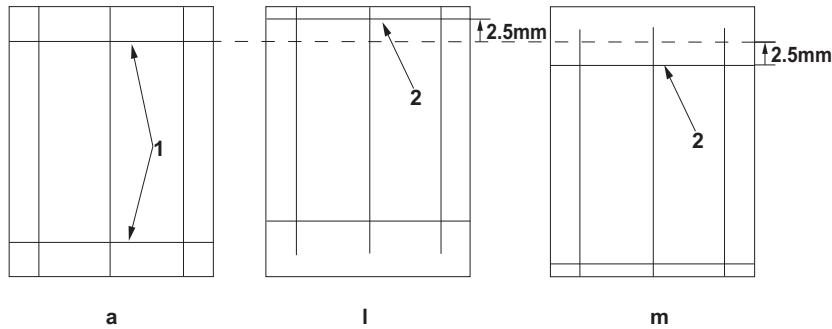
**4. テストコピーを行う。**

**5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。**

<基準値>

副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ: ± 1.5% 以内

主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ: ± 1.5% 以内



#### [Checking the leading edge timing]

1. Check the gap between line (1) on original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.  
<Reference value>  
Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

#### Adjusting the DP leading edge timing

\* : Full-color machines / Monochrome machines

2. Use the maintenance mode U071 to adjust the timing.  
For the front page, adjust \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD.  
For the back page of the reverse duplex, adjust \* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD.  
For the back page of the dual scan (CIS reading), adjust \* ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD(CIS).  
**NOTE: When adjusting the front page, be sure to check the back page of the reverse duplex and adjust (\* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD) as necessary.**  
When adjusting the back page of the reverse duplex, place the original in the DP by turning the leading edge and trailing edge upside down.

#### [Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.  
<Valeur de référence>  
Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 2.5$  mm

#### Réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant du DP

\* : Machines entièrement en couleurs / Machines monochromes

2. Pour régler la synchronisation, utilisez le mode entretien U071.  
Pour le côté recto, réglez \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD.  
Pour le verso des copies recto-verso, réglez \* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD.  
Pour le verso des copies à balayage double (lecture CIS), réglez \* ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD(CIS).  
**NOTE: au réglage du verso, vérifiez le verso des copies recto-verso et réglez (\* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD) si nécessaire.**  
Pour le réglage du verso des copies recto-verso, disposez l'original dans le DP en inversant le bord avant et le bord arrière.

#### [Cambio de la sincronización de borde superior]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.  
<Valor de referencia>  
Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

#### Ajuste de la sincronización de borde superior del DP

\* : Máquinas a todo color / Máquinas monocromáticas

2. Para ajustar la sincronización utilice el modo de mantenimiento U071.  
Para la página frontal ajuste \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD.  
Para la página posterior del dúplex inverso, ajuste \* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD.  
Para la página posterior del escaneado doble (lectura CIS), ajuste \* ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD(CIS).  
**NOTA: cuando ajuste la página frontal, asegúrese de comprobar la página posterior del dúplex inverso y ajustar (\* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD) si fuera necesario.**  
Cuando ajuste la página posterior del dúplex inverso, coloque el original en el DP poniendo el borde superior y el borde de arrastre boca abajo.

#### [Überprüfen des Vorderkanten-Timings]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.  
<Bezugswert>  
Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

#### Einstellen des DP-Vorderkanten-Timings

\* : Vollfarbenmaschinen / Monochrommaschinen

2. Zum Einstellen des Timing den Wartungsmodus U071 verwenden.  
Für die Vorderseite \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD einstellen.  
Für die Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex \* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD einstellen.  
Für die Rückseite des Dual-Scans (CIS-Abtastung) \* ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD(CIS) einstellen.  
**HINWEIS: Beim Einstellen der Vorderseite unbedingt die Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex überprüfen und nach Bedarf (\* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD) einstellen.**  
Beim Einstellen der Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex das Original so im DP einlegen, dass die Vorderkante und die Hinterkante umgekehrt platziert sind.

#### [Controllo della sincronizzazione del bordo principale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.  
<Valore di riferimento>  
Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 2,5$  mm

#### Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP

\* : Macchine a colori / Macchine in bianco e nero

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U071 per regolare la sincronizzazione.  
Per la pagina anteriore, regolare \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD.  
Per la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso, regolare \* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD.  
Per la pagina posteriore della doppia scansione (lettura CIS), regolare \* ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD(CIS).  
**NOTA: Quando si regola la pagina anteriore, accertarsi di controllare la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso e regolare (\* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD) come necessario.**  
Quando si regola la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso, collocare l'originale nel DP capovolgendo il bordo iniziale e il bordo finale.

#### [ 确认前端定时调整 ]

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。  
<标准值>  
线 (2) 的上下偏移值:  $\pm 2.5$  mm 以内

#### DP 前端定时调整

\* : 彩色机器 / 黑白机器

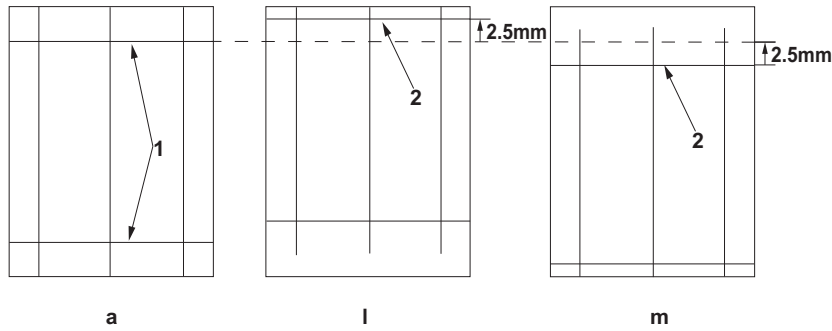
2. 使用维修模式 U070 调整定时。  
对于正面, 调整 \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD。  
对于反转双面的背面, 调整 \* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD。  
对于双扫描 (CIS 读取) 的背面, 调整 \* ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD (CIS)。  
**注 调整正面时, 请确保检查反转双面的背面, 并根据需要调整 (\* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD)。**  
调整反转双面的背面时, 通过将前端和后端上下倒转, 将原稿放入 DP 中。

#### [ 先端タイミング確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値>  
線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 2.5$  mm 以内

#### DP 先端タイミング調整 \* : カラー機 / モノクロ機

2. メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、調整を行う。  
表面の場合は、\* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD の調整を行う。  
両面反転裏面の場合は、\* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD の調整を行う。  
両面同時裏面 (CIS 読込) の場合は、\* ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD (CIS) の調整を行う。  
**表面調整後、両面反転の裏面を確認し、調整が必要な場合は \* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD の調整を行うこと。**  
**注意:** 両面反転裏面時の調整の場合は、原稿の先端 / 後端を逆向きにして、DP 本体にセットすること。



### 3. Adjust the values.

For the faster leading edge timing, copy examples (l): Decreases the value.

For the slower leading edge timing, copy examples (m): Increases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.17 mm

### 4. Perform a test copy.

### 5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.

<Reference value>

Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

### 3. Régler les valeurs.

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus rapide (l) : diminuer la valeur.

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus lente (m) : augmenter la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,17 mm

### 4. Effectuer une copie de test.

### 5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence>

Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 2.5$  mm

### 3. Ajuste los valores.

Para una sincronización más rápida de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (l): disminuye el valor.

Para una sincronización más lenta de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (m): aumenta el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,17 mm

### 4. Haga una copia de prueba.

### 5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia>

Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

### 3. Die Werte einstellen.

Für den schnelleren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (l): Den Wert verringern.

Für den langsameren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (m): Den Wert erhöhen.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,17 mm

### 4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

### 5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.

<Bezugswert>

Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

### 3. Regolare i valori.

Per accelerare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (l): riduce il valore.

Per rallentare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (m): aumenta il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,17 mm

### 4. Eseguire una copia di prova

### 5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento>

Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 2,5$  mm

### 3. 調整設定値。

在前端定时偏快时 复印样本 (1): 调低设定值

在前端定时偏慢时 复印样本 (m): 调高设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量: 0.17mm

### 4. 进行测试复印。

### 5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值达到标准值范围内。

<标准值>

线 (2) 的上下偏移值:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

### 3. 設定値を調整する。

先端タイミングが早い場合 コピーサンプル (1): 設定値を下げる

先端タイミングが遅い場合 コピーサンプル (m): 設定値を上げる

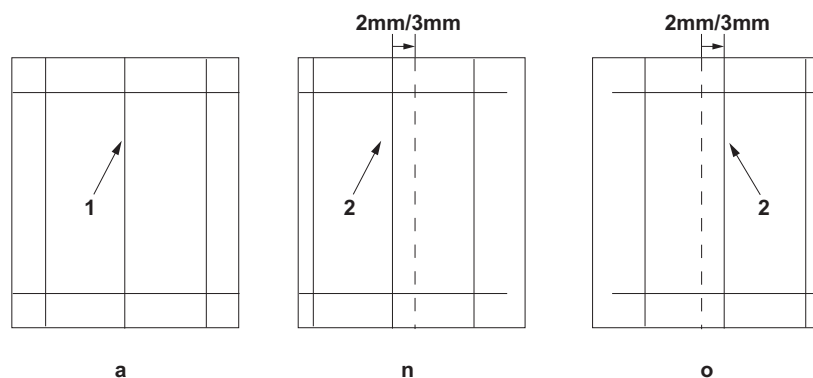
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.17mm

### 4. テストコピーを行う。

### 5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。

<基準値>

線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内



#### [Checking the center line]

1. Check the gap between center line (1) on original (a) and center line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value> Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying:  $\pm 2$  mm  
Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying:  $\pm 3$  mm

#### [Vérification de la ligne médiane]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre l'axe (1) de l'original (a) et l'axe (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence> Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto :  $\pm 2$  mm  
Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3$  mm

#### [Verificación de la línea central]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea de centro (1) del original (a) y la línea de centro (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia> Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2$  mm  
Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex:  $\pm 3$  mm

#### [Überprüfen der Mittellinie]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Mittellinie (1) des Originals (a) und der Mittellinie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert> Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2$  mm  
Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie:  $\pm 3$  mm

#### [Controllo della linea centrale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea centrale (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea centrale (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento> Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola:  $\pm 2$  mm  
Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex:  $\pm 3$  mm

#### [ 确认中心线 ]

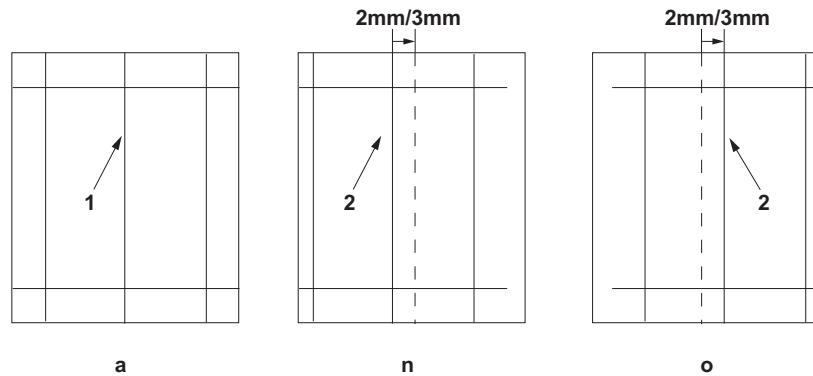
1. 确认原稿 (a) 中心线 (1) 和复印样本中心线 (2) 之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值，则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值> 单面复印时，中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值： $\pm 2$ mm 以内  
双面复印时，中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值： $\pm 3$ mm 以内

#### [ センターライン確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の中心線 (1) とコピーサンプルの中心線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値> 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ： $\pm 2$ mm 以内  
両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ： $\pm 3$ mm 以内



#### Adjusting the DP center line \* : Full-color machines / Monochrome machines

2. Use the maintenance mode U072 to adjust the center line.

For the front page, adjust \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT.

For the back page of the reverse duplex, adjust \* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK.

For the back page of the dual scan (CIS reading), adjust \* ADJUST DATA3 / CIS.

**NOTE: When adjusting the front page, be sure to check the back page of the reverse duplex and adjust (\* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK) as necessary.**

When adjusting the back page of the reverse duplex, place the original in the DP by turning the leading edge and trailing edge upside down.

#### Réglage de la ligne médiane du DP \* : Machines entièrement en couleurs / Machines monochromes

2. Pour régler la ligne médiane, utiliser le mode entretien U072.

Pour le côté recto, régler \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT.

Pour le verso des copies recto-verso, régler \* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK.

Pour le verso des copies à balayage double (lecture CIS), régler \* ADJUST DATA3 / CIS.

**NOTE: au réglage du verso, vérifier le verso des copies recto-verso et régler (\* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK) si nécessaire.**

Pour le réglage du verso des copies recto-verso, disposer l'original dans le DP en inversant le bord avant et le bord arrière.

#### Ajuste de la línea central del DP \* : Máquinas a todo color / Máquinas monocromáticas

2. Para ajustar la línea central utilice el modo de mantenimiento U072.

Para la página frontal ajuste \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT.

Para la página posterior del dúplex inverso, ajuste \* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK.

Para la página posterior del escaneado doble (lectura CIS), ajuste \* ADJUST DATA3 / CIS.

**NOTA: cuando ajuste la página frontal, asegúrese de comprobar la página posterior del dúplex inverso y ajustar (\* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK) si fuera necesario.**

Cuando ajuste la página posterior del dúplex inverso, coloque el original en el DP poniendo el borde superior y el borde de arrastre boca abajo.

#### Einstellen der DP-Mittellinie \* : Vollfarbenmaschinen / Monochrommaschinen

2. Zum Einstellen der Mittellinie den Wartungsmodus U072 verwenden.

Für die Vorderseite \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT einstellen.

Für die Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex \* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK einstellen.

Für die Rückseite des Dual-Scans (CIS-Abtastung) \* ADJUST DATA3 / CIS einstellen.

**HINWEIS: Beim Einstellen der Vorderseite unbedingt die Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex überprüfen und nach Bedarf (\* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK) einstellen.**

Beim Einstellen der Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex das Original so im DP einlegen, dass die Vorderkante und die Hinterkante umgekehrt platziert sind.

#### Regolazione della linea centrale del DP \* : Macchine a colori / Macchine in bianco e nero

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U072 per regolare la linea centrale.

Per la pagina anteriore, regolare \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT.

Per la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso, regolare \* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK.

Per la pagina posteriore della doppia scansione (lettura CIS), regolare \* ADJUST DATA3 / CIS.

**NOTA: Quando si regola la pagina anteriore, accertarsi di controllare la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso e regolare (\* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK) come necessario.**

Quando si regola la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso, collocare l'originale nel DP capovolgendo il bordo iniziale e il bordo finale.

#### 調整 DP 中心線 \* : 彩色機器 / 黑白機器

2. 使用維修模式 U072 調整中心線。

對於正面，調整 \* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT。

對於反轉雙面的背面，調整 \* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK。

對於雙掃描 (CIS 讀取) 的背面，調整 \* ADJUST DATA3 / CIS。

**注** 調整正面時，請確保檢查反轉雙面的背面，並根據需要調整 (\* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK)。

調整反轉雙面的背面時，通過將前端和後端上下倒轉，將原稿放入 DP 中。

#### DP センターライン調整 \* : カラー機 / モノクロ機

2. メンテナンスモード U072 をセットし、調整を行う。

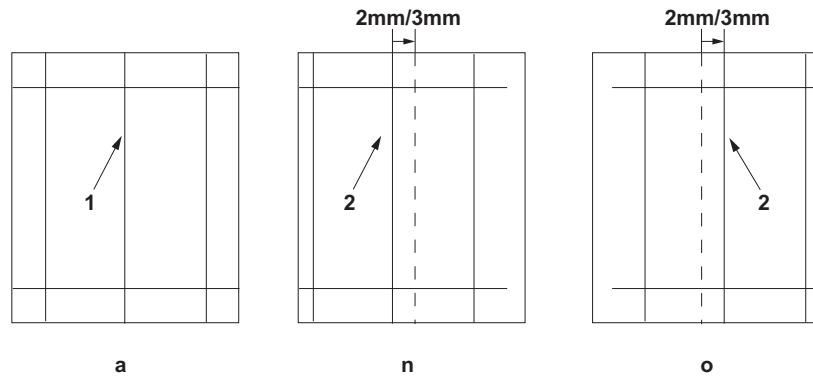
表面の場合は、\* ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT 調整を行う。

両面反転裏面の場合は、\* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK 調整を行う。

両面同時裏面 (CIS 読込) の場合は、\* ADJUST DATA3 / CIS 調整を行う。

**表面調整後、両面反転の裏面を確認し、調整が必要な場合は \* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK 調整を行うこと。**

**注意:** 両面反転裏面時の調整の場合は、原稿の先端 / 後端を逆向きにして、DP 本体にセットすること。



### 3. Adjust the values.

If the center moves more front, copy example (n): Increases the value.

If the center moves inner, copy sample (o): Decreases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.085 mm

### 4. Perform a test copy.

### 5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.

<Reference value> Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying:  $\pm 2$  mm

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying:  $\pm 3$  mm

### 3. Régler les valeurs.

Pour l'exemple de copie (n) dont l'axe se déplace davantage vers l'avant : augmenter la valeur.

Pour l'exemple de copie (o) dont l'axe se déplace vers l'intérieur : diminuer la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,085 mm

### 4. Effectuer une copie de test.

### 5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto :  $\pm 2$  mm

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3$  mm

### 3. Ajuste los valores.

Si el centro se desplace más hacia el frente, ejemplo de copia (n): aumenta el valor.

Si el centro se desplace hacia dentro, ejemplo de copia (o): disminuye el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,085 mm

### 4. Haga una copia de prueba.

### 5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2$  mm

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex:  $\pm 3$  mm

### 3. Die Werte einstellen.

Wenn die Mitte nach vorne verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (n): Den Wert erhöhen.

Wenn die Mitte nach innen verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (o): Den Wert verringern.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,085 mm

### 4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

### 5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.

<Bezugswert> Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2$  mm

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie:  $\pm 3$  mm

### 3. Regolare i valori.

Se il centro si sposta più avanti, esempio di copia (n): aumenta il valore.

Se il centro si sposta verso l'interno, esempio di copia (o): riduce il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,085 mm

### 4. Eseguire una copia di prova

### 5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento> Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola:  $\pm 2$  mm

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex:  $\pm 3$  mm

### 3. 調整設定値。

当中心向前偏移时 复印样本 (n): 调高设定值

当中心向内偏移时 复印样本 (o): 调低设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量: 0.085mm

### 4. 进行测试复印。

### 5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值达到标准值范围内。

<标准值> 单面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 2$ mm 以内

双面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 3$ mm 以内

### 3. 設定値を調整する。

センターが手前にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (n): 設定値を上げる

センターが奥にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (o) 設定値を下げる

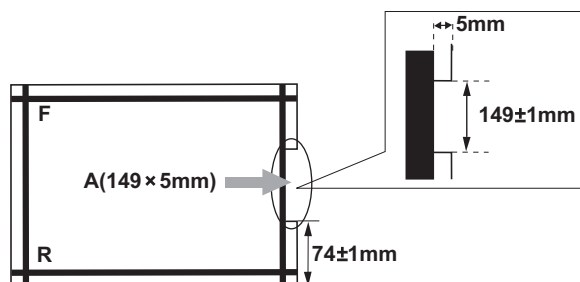
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.085mm

### 4. テストコピーを行う。

### 5. コピーサンプルの中心線 (2) ずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。

<基準値> 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 2$ mm 以内

両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3$ mm 以内



#### [Automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment]

1. Direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original upward, and set the original from the place where F and R are marked.
2. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the DP (FACE UP) key, the INPUT key and the START key in order to adjust the surface.
3. If COMPLETE appears on the display, the adjustment is completed.

If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 1 and 2 until COMPLETE appears.

**For details, see the service manual.**

#### [Réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage]

1. Diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le haut, puis placer l'original à partir de l'emplacement des repères F et R.
2. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U411. Appuyer sur les touches DP (FACE UP) (DP - face vers le haut), INPUT (entrer) et START (démarrer) pour régler la surface.
3. Si le message COMPLETE apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 1 et 2 jusqu'à ce que le message COMPLETE apparaisse.

**Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.**

#### [Ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste]

1. Dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia arriba, y coloque el original a partir del sitio en que están marcados F y R.
2. Active el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse la tecla DP (FACE UP) (cara arriba), la tecla INPUT (entrada) y la tecla START (inicio) para ajustar el anverso.
3. Si aparece COMPLETE en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 1 y 2 hasta que aparezca COMPLETE en la pantalla.

**Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.**

#### [Automatische Einstellung mithilfe des Originals]

1. F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach oben zeigen und das Original an die mit F und R markierte Stelle setzen.
2. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einstellen. Die Tasten DP (FACE UP) (DP SCHRIFTSEITE NACH OBEN), INPUT (EINGABE) und START der Reihe nach drücken, um die Oberfläche einzustellen.
3. Wenn am Display COMPLETE angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 1 und 2, bis COMPLETE angezeigt wird.

**Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.**

#### [Regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale]

1. Orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso l'alto e disporre l'originale rispetto ai punti in cui sono contrassegnati F e R.
2. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U411. Premere il tasto DP (FACE UP, FACCIAA SU), il tasto INPUT (IMMETTI) e il tasto START (AVVIA) per regolare la superficie.
3. Se COMPLETE appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 1 e 2 fino a quando appare COMPLETE.

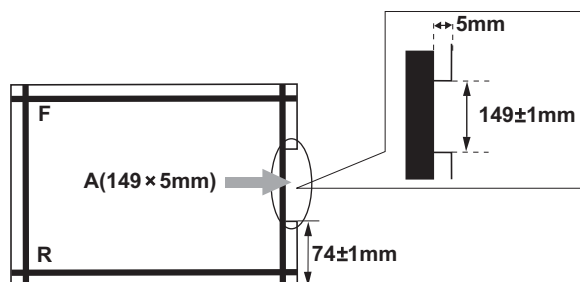
**Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.**

#### [通过调整用原稿进行自动调整]

1. 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上, 并把标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。
  2. 设定维修模式 U411。按 DP (FACE UP) (正面朝上) 键, INPUT (输入) 键和 START (开始) 键以调整正面。
  3. 如果屏幕上出现 COMPLETE (完成), 则表示调整完成。
- 如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX), 则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 1 和 2, 直到 COMPLETE (完成) 出现。
- 详细内容请参照维修手册。**

#### [調整用原稿による自動調整]

1. DP 自動調整原稿の F、R を上に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP 本体へセットする。
  2. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、DP (FACE UP) キー、INPUT キー、START の順に押し、表面の調整を行う。
  3. ディスプレイに COMPLETE が表示されれば調整完了となる。
- ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、COMPLETE が表示されるまで手順 1 ～ 2 を繰り返す。
- 詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。**



4. After completing the surface adjustment, direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original downward and set the original by inserting the side where the F and R are marked into the DP first.
5. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the DP (FACE DOWN), NORMAL TARGET, INPUT and START keys in that order to adjust the back side.
6. When RESULT OK 00 appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment is failed. Check the original set position and repeat the steps 4 to 5 until RESULT OK 00 appears.

**For details, see the service manual.**

4. Une fois le réglage de la surface effectué, diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le bas et placer l'original en introduisant en premier dans le DP le côté sur lequel F et R sont indiqués.
5. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U411. Pour régler le côté verso, appuyer sur les touches DP (FACE DOWN) (DP - FACE VERS LE BAS), NORMAL TARGET (CIBLE NORMALE), INPUT (ENTRER) et START (DÉMARRER) dans cet ordre.
6. Si le message COMPLETE apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 4 et 5 jusqu'à ce que le message COMPLETE apparaisse.

**Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.**

4. Una vez hecho el ajuste del anverso, dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia abajo y coloque el original insertando en el DP, en primer lugar, el lado en el que están marcados F y R.
5. Active el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas DP (FACE DOWN) (CARA ABAJO), NORMAL TARGET (DESTINO NORMAL), INPUT (ENTRADA) y START (INICIO) para ajustar el lado posterior.
6. Si aparece COMPLETE en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 4 y 5 hasta que aparezca COMPLETE en la pantalla.

**Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.**

4. Nach dem Abschluss der Oberflächeneinstellung F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach unten zeigen und das Original einstellen, indem die mit F und R markierte Seite zuerst in den DP eingeführt wird.
5. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einstellen. Die Tasten DP (FACE DOWN) (DP SCHRIFTSEITE NACH UNTEN), NORMAL TARGET (NORMALZIEL), INPUT (EINGABE) und START in dieser Reihenfolge drücken, um die Rückseite einzustellen.
6. Wenn am Display COMPLETE angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 4 und 5, bis COMPLETE angezeigt wird.

**Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.**

4. Una volta conclusa la regolazione della superficie, orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso il basso e disporre l'originale inserendo nel DP prima il lato su cui sono contrassegnati F e R.
5. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U411. Premere i tasti DP (FACE DOWN (FACCIATA SU)), NORMAL TARGET (DESTINAZIONE NORMALE), INPUT (IMMETTI) e START (AVVIA) in quest'ordine per regolare la facciata posteriore.
6. Se COMPLETE appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 4 e 5 fino a quando appare COMPLETE.

**Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.**

4. 完成正面调整后, 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向下, 并首先将标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。
5. 设定维修模式 U411。按 DP (FACE DOWN) (正面朝下) 键, NORMAL TARGET (正常目标) 键, INPUT (输入) 键和 START (开始) 键, 以调整背面。
6. 如果屏幕上出现了 COMPLETE (完成), 则表示调整完成。

如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX), 则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 4 和 5, 直到 COMPLETE (完成) 出现。

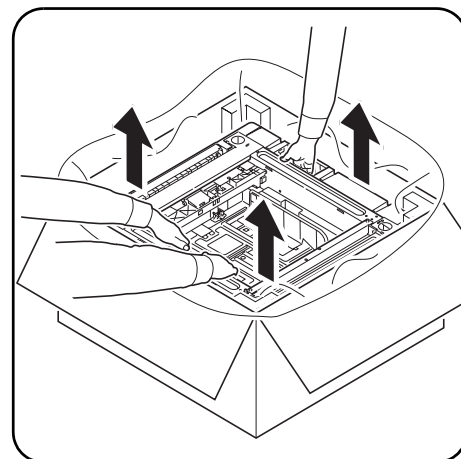
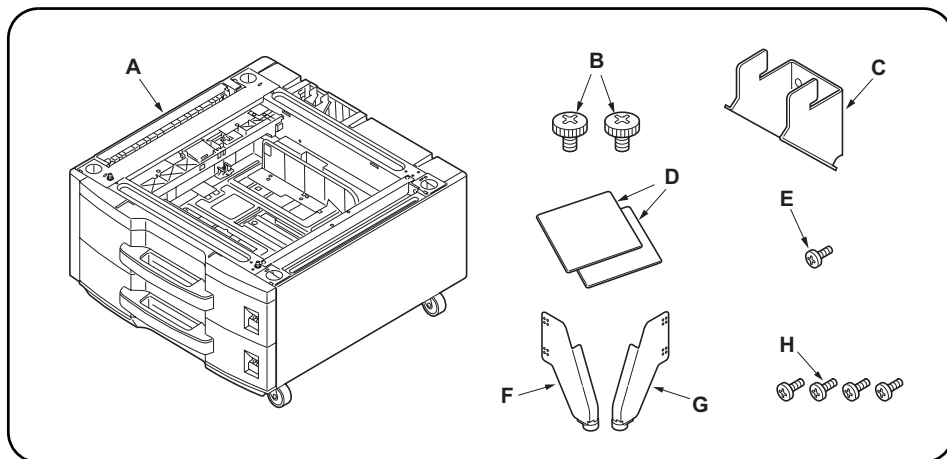
**详细内容请参照维修手册。**

4. 表面の調整完了後、DP 自動調整原稿の F、R を下に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP 本体へセットする。
5. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、DP (FACE DOWN) キー、NORMAL TARGET キー、INPUT キー、START キーの順に押し、裏面の調整を行う。
6. ディスプレイに COMPLETE が表示されれば調整完了となる。

如果出现 ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、COMPLETE が表示されるまで手順 4 ～ 5 を繰り返す。

**詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。**

# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR PAPER FEEDER



## English

### Supplied parts

A	Paper feeder	1
B	Pin	2
C	Retainer	1
D	Paper size plate	2
E	S Tite screw M4 × 10	1

F	Stopper R	1
G	Stopper L	1
H	S Tite screw M4 × 20	4

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

### Precaution for unpacking

Hold the positions shown in the figure and remove the paper feeder from the outer case.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A	Bureau papier	1
B	Broche	2
C	Élément de retenue	1
D	Plaque de format de papier	2

E	Vis S Tite M4 × 10	1
F	Butée R	1
G	Butée L	1
H	Vis S Tite M4 × 20	4

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

### Précaution pour le déballage

Saisir les emplacements indiqués sur l'illustration et retirer le bureau papier du boîtier extérieur.

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A	Alimentador de papel	1
B	Clavija	2
C	Retén	1
D	Placa de tamaño de papel	2

E	Tornillo S Tite M4 × 10	1
F	Tope R	1
G	Tope L	1
H	Tornillos S Tite M4 × 20	4

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

### Precauciones para el desembalaje

Sujete por las posiciones indicadas en la figura y desmonte el alimentador de papel de la caja de embalaje.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A	Papiereinzug	1
B	Stift	2
C	Halterung	1
D	Papierformatplatte	2

E	S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10	1
F	Anschlag R	1
G	Anschlag L	1
H	S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 20	4

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

### Vorsichtsmaßnahme beim Auspacken

Halten Sie den Papiereinzug an den in der Abbildung gezeigten Stellen, und heben Sie ihn aus dem äußeren Karton heraus.

## Italiano

### Parti di fornitura

A	Unità di alimentazione della carta	1
B	Perno	2
C	Fermo	1
D	Piastra formato carta	2

E	Vite S Tite M4 × 10	1
F	Fermo R	1
G	Fermo L	1
H	Vite S Tite M4 × 20	4

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

### Precauzioni per il disinballaggio

Mantenere le posizioni indicate nella figura e rimuovere l'unità di alimentazione della carta dall'involucro esterno.

## 简体中文

### 附属品

A	供纸盒	1
B	固定插销	2
C	安装板	1
D	复印纸尺寸托板	2

E	紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 10	1
F	限位器 R	1
G	限位器 L	1
H	紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 20	4

如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

### 开包时的注意事项

开包时，拿住图示的位置从外箱内取出。

## 日本語

### 同梱品

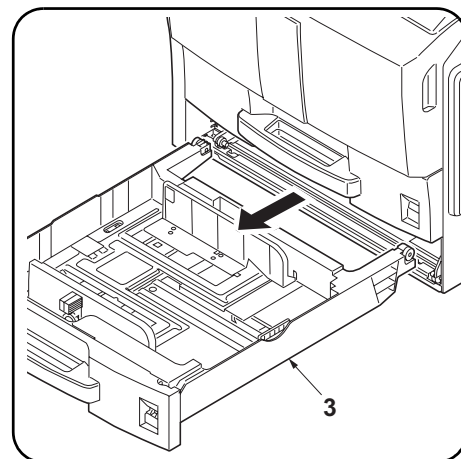
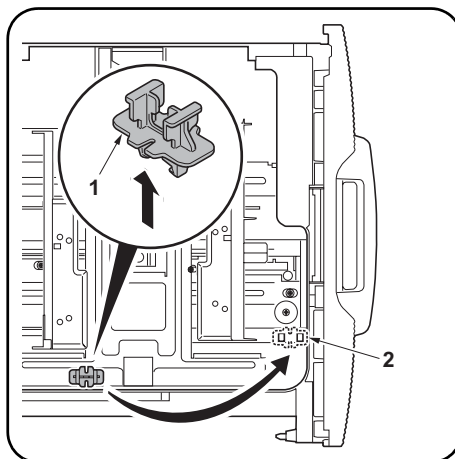
A	ペーパーフィーダ	1
B	ピン	2
C	取付板	1
D	ペーパーサイズプレート	2
E	ビス M4 × 10 S タイト	1

F	転倒防止金具 R (100V 仕様では使用しない)	1
G	転倒防止金具 L (100V 仕様では使用しない)	1
H	ビス M4 × 20 S タイト (100V 仕様では使用しない)	4

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

### 開梱時の注意

開梱時は、イラストの位置を持って外ケースから取り出す。



### Procedure

Be sure to turn the MFP main power switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the paper feeder.

1. Pull each cassette out and then remove the lift plate stopper (1) from each cassette and attach it to the storage location (2).
2. Gently close each cassette.

3. Remove the lower paper cassette (3) from the MFP.

### Procédure

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du bureau papier.

1. Tirer chaque tiroir vers l'extérieur puis retirer la butée de plaque d'élévation (1) de chaque tiroir et la fixer à l'emplacement de rangement (2).
2. Refermer progressivement chaque tiroir.

3. Retirer le tiroir inférieur (3) du MFP.

### Procedimiento

Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador de papel.

1. Abra la bandeja y quite el tope de la placa de elevación (1) de cada bandeja y colóquela en su lugar de depósito (2).
2. Cierre suavemente cada bandeja.

3. Quite el cajón de papel inferior (3) del MFP.

### Verfahren

Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

1. Die einzelnen Kassetten herausziehen, dann den Hebeplattenanschlag (1) von jeder Kasette entfernen und an der Speicherposition (2) anbringen.
2. Alle Kassetten sachte schließen.

3. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade (3) vom MFP ab.

### Procedura

Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

1. Estrarre ciascun cassetto e poi rimuovere il fermo della piastra di sollevamento (1) da ciascun cassetto e fissarlo nella posizione di immagazzinaggio (2).
2. Chiudere delicatamente ciascun cassetto.

3. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta (3) dall'MFP.

### 安装步骤

安装供纸盒时，必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

1. 拉出各供纸盒，拆下各 1 个升降板挡块 (1)，并安装在保管场所 (2) 上。
2. 轻轻地推入各供纸盒。

3. 取出 MFP 主机下部供纸盒 (3)。

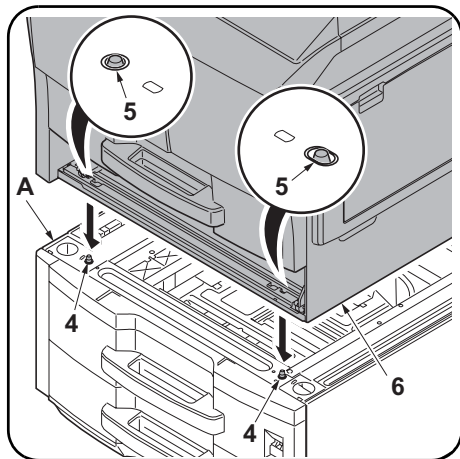


### 取付手順

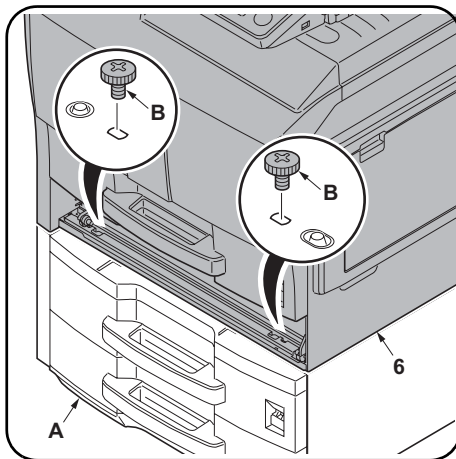
ペーパーフィーダを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。

1. 各カセットを引き出し、リフト板ストップ (1) 各 1 個を外して保管場所 (2) に取り付ける。
2. 各カセットを静かに押し込む。

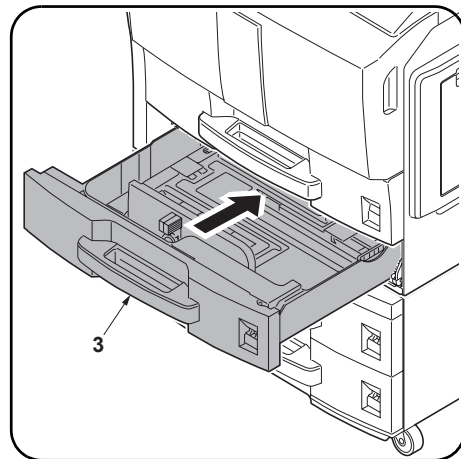
3. MFP 本体の下段カセット (3) を取り外す。



4. Place the MFP (6) on top of the paper feeder (A) with the positioning pins (4) at the front left and right of the paper feeder (A) aligned with the holes (5) in the base of the MFP.



5. Secure the MFP (6) to the paper feeder (A) using the two pins (B).



6. Refit the lower paper cassette (3) removed in step 3 to the MFP.

4. Placer le MFP (6) sur le bureau papier (A) en alignant les broches de positionnement (4) situées aux côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier (A) sur les orifices (5) à la base du MFP.

5. Fixer le MFP (6) sur le bureau papier (A) à l'aide des deux broches (B).

6. Remettre en place sur le MFP le tiroir inférieur (3) qui a été retiré auparavant à l'étape 3.

4. Coloque el MFP (6) sobre el alimentador de papel (A) con las clavijas de posicionamiento (4) de la parte frontal izquierda y derecha del alimentador de papel (A) alineadas con los huecos (5) de la base del MFP.

5. Asegure el MFP (6) al alimentador de papel (A) usando las dos clavijas (B).

6. Vuelva a colocar el cajón de papel inferior (3) desmontado en el paso 3 en el MFP.

4. Setzen Sie den MFP (6) auf den Papiereinzug (A), wobei die Positionsstifte (4) vorne links und rechts am Papiereinzug (A) mit den Löchern (5) in der Basis des MFP ausgerichtet sein müssen.

5. Befestigen Sie den MFP (6) mit den zwei Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).

6. Bringen Sie die untere Papierlade (3), die in Schritt 3 entfernt wurde, erneut am MFP an.

4. Installare l'MFP (6) sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A), mantenendo i perni di posizionamento (4) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) stessa allineati con i fori (5) situati sulla base dell'MFP.

5. Assicurare l'MFP (6) all'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) utilizzando i due perni (B).

6. Reinserire nell'MFP il cassetto inferiore della carta (3) rimosso al punto 3.

4. 供紙盒 (A) の左右前面の各挿销 (4) 分别对准 MFP 主机底面的各相应销孔 (5) 后, 将 MFP 主机 (6) 放在供纸盒 (A) 上。

5. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将 MFP 主机 (6) 固定在供纸盒 (A) 上。

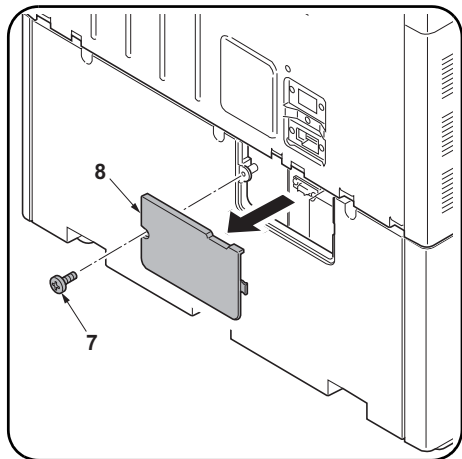
6. 在步骤 3 取下 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (3) 装回原来的位置。

**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

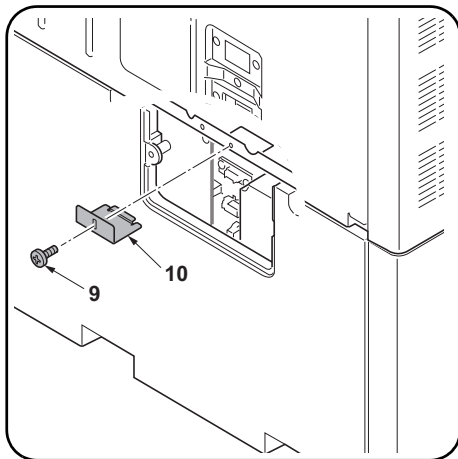
4. ペーパーフィーダ (A) の左右前方の各ピン (4) と MFP 本体のベースの穴 (5) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダ (A) に MFP 本体 (6) を載せる。

5. ピン (B) 2 本で MFP 本体 (6) をペーパーフィーダ (A) に固定する。

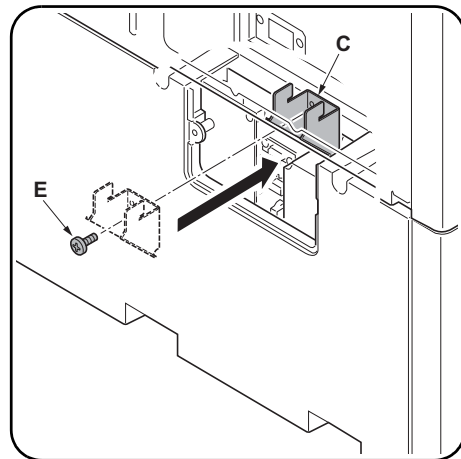
6. 手順 3 で取り外した MFP 本体の下段カセット (3) を元に戻す。



7. Remove the screw (7) at the rear side of the paper feeder to remove the cover (8).



8. Remove the screw (9) to remove the metal plate (10).



9. Secure the retainer (C) with the screw (E).

7. Retirer la vis (7) située sur le côté arrière du bureau papier pour retirer le couvercle (8).

8. Retirer la vis (9) pour déposer la plaque métallique (10).

9. Fixer le élément de retenue (C) à l'aide de la vis (E).

7. Quite el tornillo (7) en el lado trasero del alimentador de papel para desmontar la tapa (8).

8. Quite el tornillo (9) para desmontar la placa de metal (10).

9. Asegure la retén (C) con el tornillo (E).

7. Die Schraube (7) auf der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (8) abzunehmen.

8. Die Schraube (9) herausdrehen, um die Metallplatte (10) abzunehmen.

9. Die halterung (C) mit der Schraube (E) befestigen.

7. Rimuovere la vite (7) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta per togliere il coperchio (8).

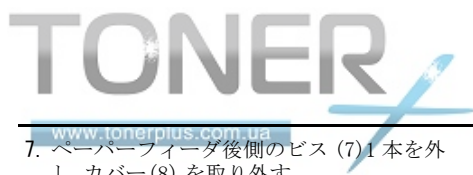
8. Rimuovere la vite (9) per togliere la piastra di metallo (10).

9. Fissare la fermo (C) con la vite (E).

7. 拆除供纸盒后侧的 1 个螺丝 (7)，拆下盖板 (8)。

8. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (9)，拆下金属件 (10)。

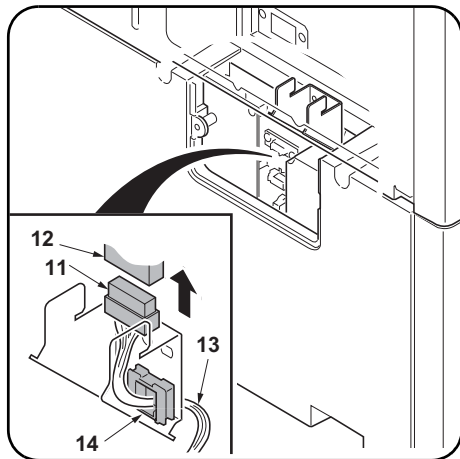
9. 使用螺丝 (E) 安装板 (C)。



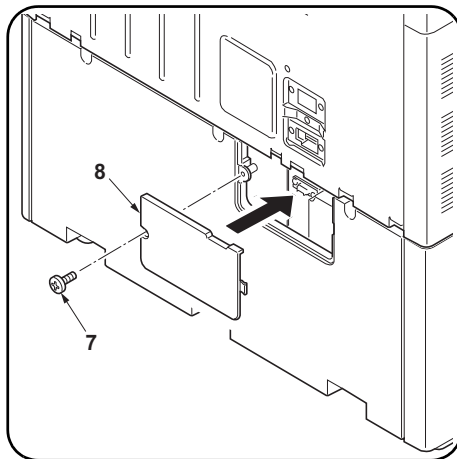
7. ペーパーフィーダ後側のビス (7) 1 本を外し、カバー (8) を取り外す。

8. ビス (9) 1 本を外し、金具 (10) を取り外す。

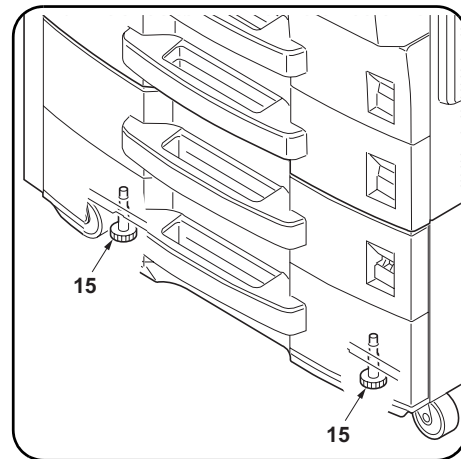
9. ビス (E) 1 本で取付板 (C) を固定する。



- 10.** Insert the 12-P connector (11) of the paper feeder into the connector (12) on the MFP.  
**11.** Route the harness (13) through the clamp (14) on the retainer (C).



- 12.** Refit the cover (8) using the screw (7) removed in step 7.



- 13.** Turn the adjusters on each corner (15) until they reach the floor and then secure the paper feeder.

- 10.** Insérer le connecteur à douze broches (11) du bureau papier dans le connecteur (12) du MFP.  
**11.** Faire passer le faisceau de câbles (13) par le collier (14) de l'élément de retenue (C).

- 12.** Remettre le couvercle (8) en place à l'aide de la vis (7) retirée auparavant à l'étape 7.

- 13.** Faire tourner les dispositifs de réglage de chacun des coins (15) jusqu'à ce qu'ils touchent le sol et fixer ensuite le bureau papier.

- 10.** Inserte el conector de 12 clavijas (11) del alimentador de papel en el conector (12) del MFP.  
**11.** Inserte el soporte (13) a través del sujetador (14) del retén (C).

- 12.** Vuelva a colocar la tapa (8) usando el tornillo (7) quitado en el paso 7.

- 13.** Gire los reguladores en cada esquina (15) hasta que lleguen al piso y, a continuación, asegure el alimentador de papel.

- 10.** Stecken Sie den 12poligen Steckverbinder (11) des Papiereinzugs in die Buchse am MFP.  
**11.** Führen Sie den Kabelbaum (13) durch die Klemme (14) auf der Halterung (C).

- 12.** Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (8) wieder mit der in Schritt (7) entfernten Schraube 7 an.

- 13.** Die Einsteller an jeder Ecke (15) drehen, bis sie den Boden berühren, und dann den Papiereinzug sichern.

- 10.** Inserire il connettore a 12 piedini (11) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta nel connettore (12) situato sull'MFP.  
**11.** Far passare i cavi (13) attraverso il morsetto (14) sul fermo (C).

- 12.** Inserire il pannello posteriore (8) usando le viti (7) rimosse al punto 7.

- 13.** Ruotare i regolatori (15) presenti su ciascun angolo finché vengano a contatto con il pavimento, e quindi fissare l'unità di alimentazione della carta.

- 10.** 将供纸盒的 12 脚接头 (11) 接于 MFP 主机上的接口 (12)。  
**11.** 将电线 (13) 插入安装板 (C) 上的夹钳 (14) 中而进行电线处理。

- 12.** 用步骤 7 拆除的 1 个螺丝 (7) 将盖板 (8) 装回原来的位置。

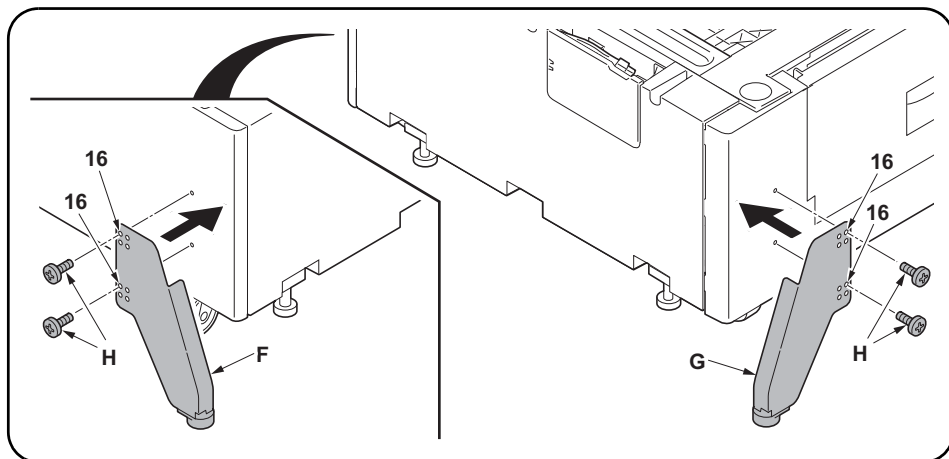
- 13.** 转动四角 (15) 上的调节器直至与地面接触, 然后再固定供纸盒。

**TONER**  
[www.tonerplus.com.ua](http://www.tonerplus.com.ua)

- 10.** ペーパーフィーダの 12P コネクタ (11) を MFP 本体のコネクタ (12) に接続する。  
**11.** 電線 (13) を取付板 (C) に付いているクランプ (14) に挿入し、電線処理をおこなう。

- 12.** 手順 7 で取り外したビス (7) 1 本でカバー (8) を元通りに取り付ける。

- 13.** 4 隅のアジャスタ (15) を床に接触する位置まで回し、ペーパーフィーダを固定する。



**Attaching the stays (For monochrome machines only , except for 100 V specifications)**

14. Select holes (16) and install each stopper (F,G) with 2 S Tite screws M4 × 20 (H) so that the stoppers will be grounded on the floor.

**Fixation des supports (Pour machines monochromes , sauf pour les spécifications 100 V)**

14. Sélectionner les trous (16) et installer chaque butée (F, G) avec 2 vis S Tite M4 × 20 (H) de sorte que les butées reposent sur le sol.

**Colocación de las bases (Sólo para máquinas monocromáticas , excepto especificaciones de 100 V)**

14. Seleccione los orificios (16) e instale cada tope (F,G) con los 2 tornillos S Tite M4 × 20 (H) de manera que los topes se conecten a tierra en el suelo.

**Anbringen der Stützen (Nur für Monochrommaschinen , außer 100-V-Spezifikationen)**

14. Wählen Sie die Öffnungen (16) und befestigen Sie jeden Anschlag (F, G) mit den 2 S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 20 (H) so an, dass die Anschläge am Boden aufsitzen.

**Inserimento delle sospensioni (Solo per le macchine in bianco e nero , eccetto specifiche per 100 V)**

14. Selezionare i fori (16) ed installare ogni fermo (F,G) con le 2 viti S Tite M4 × 20 (H) in modo che i fermi siano posti a terra sul pavimento.

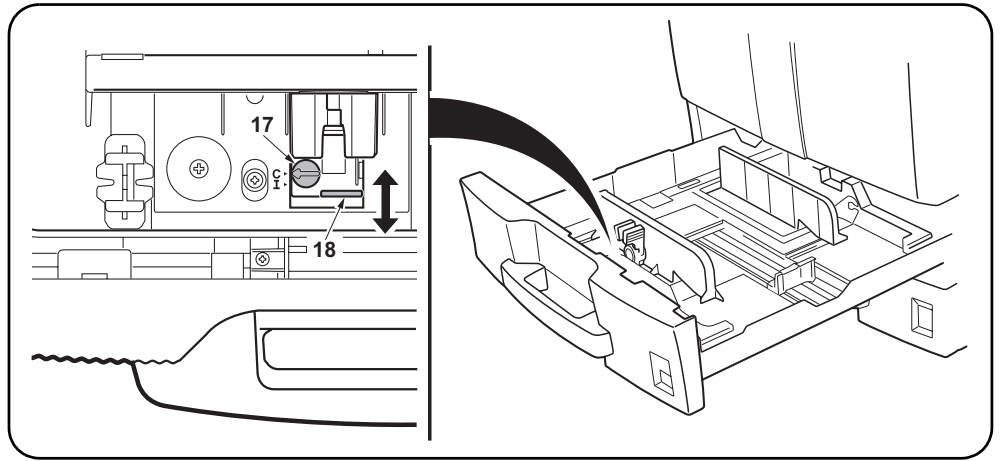
**防倒金属件的安裝（仅限黑白机，100 V 规格除外）**

14. 在孔（16）处各用 2 顆 M4 × 20 紧固型 S 螺丝（H）安装限位器（F,G），使之和地板接触。

**TONER**

**転倒防止金具の取り付け（モノクロ機のみ、100V 仕様以外）**

14. 転倒防止金具（F, G）が床面に接地するように、穴（16）を選択してビス M4 × 20 S タイト（H）各 2 本で取り付ける。



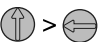
### Changing paper size

To change between inch size and metric size, follow the steps below to adjust the size switch.

1. Holding the paper width adjusting tab, move the paper width guide to a position other than that of the paper.
2. Turn the size switch (17) 90°.



3. Move the size lever (18) up (C) or down (I).  
C: metric size (centimeters)  
I: inch size
4. Turn the size lever 90° to lock it.



### Modification du format du papier

Pour sélectionner un format en pouces ou un format métrique, procéder comme suit pour régler le sélecteur de format.

1. En tenant l'onglet de réglage de largeur du papier, déplacer le guide de largeur du papier dans une position différente de celle du papier.
2. Faire tourner le sélecteur de format (17) de 90°.



3. Déplacer le levier (18) vers le haut (C) ou vers le bas (I).  
C: format métrique (centimètres)  
I: format en pouces
4. Faire tourner le sélecteur de format de 90° pour le verrouiller.



### Cómo cambiar el tamaño del papel

Para cambiar entre tamaño en pulgadas y tamaño métrico, realice los siguientes pasos para ajustar el interruptor de tamaño:

1. Sujete la lengüeta de ajuste de la anchura del papel y mueva la guía de ajuste de la anchura hasta una posición distinta a la del papel.
2. Gire 90° el interruptor de tamaño (17).



3. Mueva la palanca de tamaño (18) hacia arriba (C) o abajo (I).  
C: tamaño métrico (centímetros)  
I: tamaño en pulgadas
4. Gire 90° el interruptor de tamaño para bloquearlo.



### Ändern des Papierformats

Um zwischen Zollgrößen und metrischen Größen umzuschalten, gehen Sie wie folgt vor, um den Formatschalter anzupassen.

1. Halten Sie die Breitereinstellung für das Papier fest und schieben Sie sie an eine Stellung außerhalb der Papierfläche.
2. Drehen Sie den Formatschalter (17) um 90°.



3. Schieben Sie den Formathebel (18) nach oben (C) oder unten (I).  
C: Metrisches Format (für Europa) (cm)  
I: US Format
4. Drehen Sie den Formatschalter um 90°, um ihn zu verriegeln.



### Cambio del formato della carta

Per commutare tra formato in pollici e metrico, attenersi alla seguente procedura per regolare lo switch del formato.

1. Reggendo la linguetta di regolazione della larghezza carta, spostare la guida di larghezza carta su una posizione diversa da quella della carta.
2. Ruotare lo switch di regolazione formato (17) di 90°.



3. Spostare la leva formato (18) verso l'alto (C) o verso il basso (I).  
C: formato in unità metriche decimali (centimetri)  
I: formato in pollici
4. Ruotare lo switch di regolazione formato di 90° per bloccarlo in posizione.



### 纸张大小的更改

当需变更英制尺寸纸张和公制尺寸纸张时，请按照下面的步骤变更尺寸转换开关。

1. 按住横向尺寸变更旋钮，使纸张宽度导板对准纸张尺寸以外的位置。
2. 把尺寸转换开关 (17) 旋转 90°。



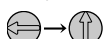
3. 把尺寸转换杆 (18) 向上 (C) 或向下 (I) 移动。  
C: 公制尺寸  
I: 英制尺寸
4. 把尺寸转换开关旋转 90° 后再固定。



### 用紙サイズ変更

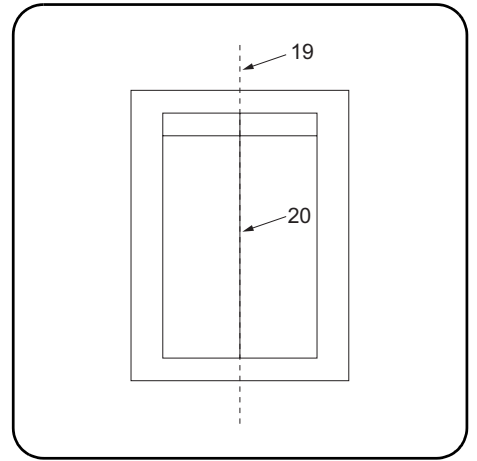
インチサイズとセンチサイズの用紙を変更するときは、次の手順でサイズ切替スイッチを変更してください。

1. 横サイズ変更つまみを持って、用紙幅ガイドを用紙サイズ以外の位置に合わせる。
2. サイズ切替スイッチ (17) を 90° 回す。



3. サイズ切替レバー (18) を上 (C) または下 (I) に移動させる。  
C: センチサイズ  
I: インチサイズ
4. サイズ切替スイッチを 90° 回して固定する。





### Checking the center line

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main power switch on.
2. Load paper into the cassette and make a test copy to check the operation.
3. Select maintenance mode U402 and print the test pattern.
4. If the center of the paper (19) and that of the test pattern output (20) do not meet the reference value, perform the following adjustment.  
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

### Vérification de la ligne médiane

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
2. Mettre du papier dans le tiroir et effectuer une copie d'essai pour vérifier le fonctionnement.
3. Sélectionner le mode maintenance U402 et imprimer la mire d'essai.
4. Si le centre du papier (19) et celui de la sortie de mire (20) ne correspondent à la valeur de référence, effectuer le réglage suivant.  
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

### Verificación de la línea central

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
2. Introduzca papel en el cajón y haga una copia de prueba para verificar la operación.
3. Seleccione el modo de mantenimiento U402 e imprima el patrón de prueba.
4. Si el centro del papel (19) y aquél de la salida del patrón de prueba (20) no cumplen con el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.  
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

### Überprüfen der Mittellinie

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Legen Sie Papier in die Papierlade ein und machen Sie eine Testkopie, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.
3. Den Wartungsmodus U402 wählen und das Testmuster ausdrucken.
4. Falls die Mitte des Papiers (19) und des ausgegebenen Testmusters (20) nicht mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.  
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

### Controllare la linea centrale

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Caricare la carta nel cassetto ed eseguire una copia di prova per controllare il funzionamento.
3. Selezionare la modalità manutenzione U402 e stampare il modello di prova.
4. Se il centro della carta (19) e quello del modello di prova (20) non rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento, eseguire la seguente regolazione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

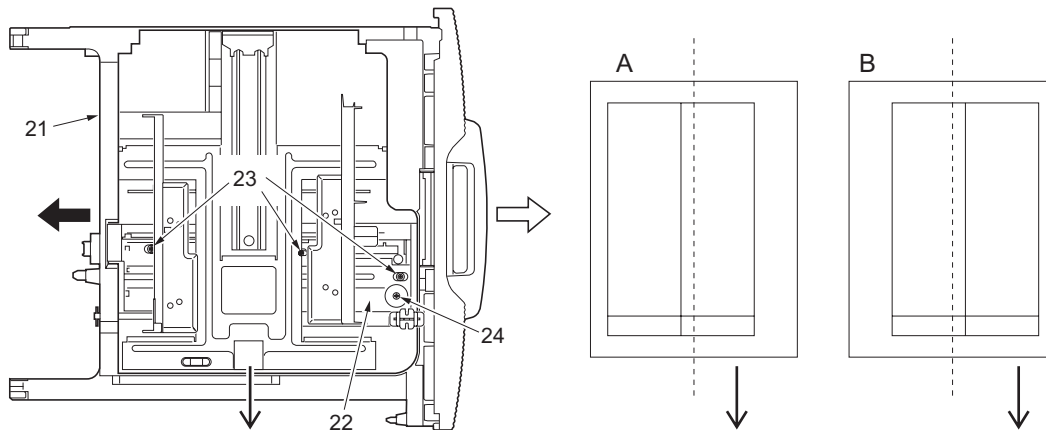
### 中心线的确认

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 在供纸盒内装入复印纸。进行测试复印，以确定复印动作状态。
3. 选择维修模式 U402，打印测试图案。
4. 如果复印纸的中心位置 (19) 与测试图案的中心位置 (20) 为标准值以外时，必须进行下列的调整项目。  
(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下



### センターライン確認

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. カセットに用紙をセットする。テストコピーをおこない、動作を確認する。
3. メンテナンスモード U402 を選び、テストパターンを出力する。
4. 用紙のセンター (19) とテストパターンのセンター (20) が基準値外の時は、次の調整をおこなう。  
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下



### Adjusting the center line

1. Open the cassette (21) of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws (23) securing the adjuster (22).
2. If the test pattern output example looks like A, turn the adjusting screw (24) clockwise, move the adjuster (22) in the direction of the black arrow (➡), and retighten the three screws (23).
3. If the test pattern output example looks like B, turn the adjusting screw (24) counterclockwise, move the adjuster (22) in the direction of the white arrow (⇐), and retighten the three screws (23).

4. Output the test pattern again.
5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern meet the reference value.  
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

### Réglage de la ligne médiane

1. Ouvrir le tiroir (21) du bureau papier et desserrer les trois vis (23) qui fixent le dispositif de réglage (22).
2. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à A, tourner la vis de réglage (24) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (22) dans la direction de la flèche noire (➡), et resserrer les trois vis (23).
3. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à B, tourner la vis de réglage (24) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (22) dans la direction de la flèche blanche (⇐), et resserrer les trois vis (23).

4. Reproduire une nouvelle mire
5. Répéter les étapes 1 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le centre du papier et celui de la mire correspondent à la valeur de référence.  
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

### Ajuste de la línea central

1. Abra el cajón de papel (21) del alimentador de papel y suelte los tres tornillos (23) que aseguran el regulador (22).
2. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a A, gire el tornillo de ajuste (24) en sentido horario, mueva el regulador (22) en la dirección que indica la flecha negra (➡) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (23).
3. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a B, gire el tornillo de ajuste (24) en antihorario, mueva el regulador (22) en la dirección que indica la flecha blanca (⇐) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (23).

4. Saque un patrón de prueba nuevamente.
5. Repita los pasos 1 a 4 hasta que los centros de papel y el patrón de prueba cumplan con el valor de referencia.  
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

### Einstellen der Mittenlinie

1. Öffnen Sie den Auszug (21) der Papierlade und lösen Sie die drei Schrauben (23), die den Anpasser (22) halten.
2. Wenn die Testmuster Ausgabe aussieht wie A, drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (24) im Uhrzeigersinn, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (22) in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (➡), und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (23) wieder fest.
3. Wenn die Testmuster Ausgabe aussieht wie B, drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (24) entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (22) in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (⇐), und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (23) wieder fest.

### Regolazione della linea centrale

1. Aprire il cassetto (21) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta e, allentando le tre viti (23), assicurare il regolatore (22).
2. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto A, girare la vite di regolazione (24) in senso orario, spostare il regolatore (22) nella direzione della freccia nera (➡) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (23).
3. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto B, girare la vite di regolazione (24) in senso antiorario, spostare il regolatore (22) nella direzione della freccia bianca (⇐) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (23).

4. Drucken Sie erneut ein Testmuster aus.
5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 4, bis die Mitte des Papiers und des Testmusters mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt.  
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

4. Stampare nuovamente il modello di prova.
5. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 4 fino a quando i centri della carta e del modello di prova rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento.  
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

### 中心线的调整

1. 拉出供纸盒 (21) 后, 松开调整板 (22) 上的 3 个螺丝 (23)。
2. 测试图案为 A 画面时, 将调整螺丝 (24) 向右旋转, 按箭头 (➡) 方向移动调整板 (22), 并紧固 3 个螺丝 (23)。
3. 测试图案为 B 画面时, 将调整螺丝 (24) 向左旋转, 按箭头 (⇐) 方向移动调整板 (22), 并紧固 3 个螺丝 (23)。

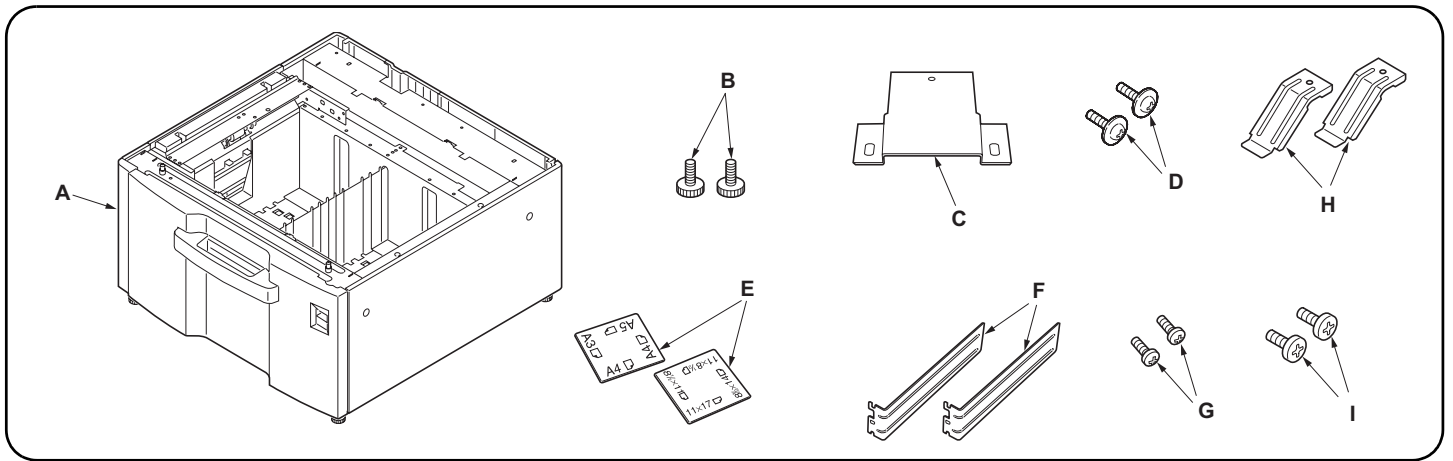
4. 再次进行测试图案的输出。
5. 反复操作步骤 1 至 4, 直到复印纸的中心与测试图案的中心为标准值内为止。  
<标准值> 左右偏移: 1.5mm 以下

### センターライン調整

1. ペーパーフィーダのカセット (21) を引き出し、調整板 (22) のビス (23) 3 本を緩める。
2. テストパターンが A 画像の場合、調整ネジ (24) を右に回し、矢印 (➡) の向きに調整板 (22) を動かし、ビス (23) 3 本を締め付ける。
3. テストパターンが B 画像の場合、調整ネジ (24) を左に回し、矢印 (⇐) の向きに調整板 (22) を動かし、ビス (23) 3 本を締め付ける。

4. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。
5. 用紙のセンターとテストパターンのセンターが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 4 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 3000 SHEETS PAPER FEEDER**



## English

### Supplied parts

A Paper feeder.....	1
B Pin .....	2
C Retainer .....	1
D TP screw, M4 × 06.....	2
E Paper size plate.....	2

F Longitudinal size adjuster (inch specifications only) .....	2
G Round cross-head tapping screw, M3 × 8 (inch specifications only) .....	2
H Stopper (except for 100 V specifications) .....	2
I S Tite screws M4 × 8 (except for 100 V specifications) .....	2

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Bureau papier .....	1
B Broche .....	2
C Élément de retenue .....	1
D Vis TP, M4 × 06 .....	2
E Plaque de format de papier .....	2

F Dispositif de réglage du format longitudinal (spécifications en pouces seulement) .....	2
G Vis de connexion à tête cruciforme ronde, M3 × 8 (spécifications en pouces seulement) .....	2
H Butée (sauf pour les spécifications 100 V) .....	2
I Vis S Tite M4 × 8 (sauf pour les spécifications 100 V) .....	2

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Alimentador de papel.....	1
B Clavija.....	2
C Retén.....	1
D Tornillo TP, M4 × 06.....	2
E Placa de tamaño de papel.....	2

F Regulador de tamaño longitudinal (sólo especificaciones de pulgadas).....	2
G Tornillo de roscado de cabeza en cruz redonda, M3 × 8 (sólo especificaciones de pulgadas).....	2
H Tope (excepto especificaciones de 100 V).....	2
I Tornillos S Tite M4 × 8 (excepto especificaciones de 100 V).....	2

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Papiereinzug .....	1
B Stift .....	2
C Halterung.....	1
D TP-Schraube, M4 × 06 .....	2
E Papierformatplatte .....	2

F Längsgrößen-Einsteller (nur Zollspezifikationen) .....	2
G Kreuzschlitz-Rundkopf-Schneidschraube, M3 × 8 (nur Zollspezifikationen) .....	2
H Anschlag (außer 100-V-Spezifikationen) ..	2
I S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 8 (außer 100-V-Spezifikationen) .....	2

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

## Italiano

### Parti di fornitura

A Unità di alimentazione della carta .....	1
B Perno .....	2
C Fermo .....	1
D Vite TP, M4 × 06 .....	2
E Piastra formato carta .....	2

F Regolatore della misura longitudinale (solo per le specifiche in pollici).....	2
G Vite autofilettante circolare a croce, M3 × 8 (solo per le specifiche in pollici).....	2
H Fermo (eccetto specifiche per 100 V) .....	2
I Vite S Tite M4 × 8 (eccetto specifiche per 100 V) .....	2

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

## 简体中文

### 附属品

A 供纸工作台 .....	1
B 固定插销.....	2
C 安装板.....	1
D TP 螺丝 M4 × 06.....	2

E 复印纸尺寸标示板 .....	2
F 纵向尺寸板 (仅适用于英寸尺寸的产品) .....	2
G 十字槽盘头自攻螺丝 M3 × 8 (仅适用于英寸尺寸的产品) .....	2
H 限位器 (100 V 规格除外) .....	2
I 紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 8 (100 V 规格除外) .....	2

如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

www.tonerplus.com.ua

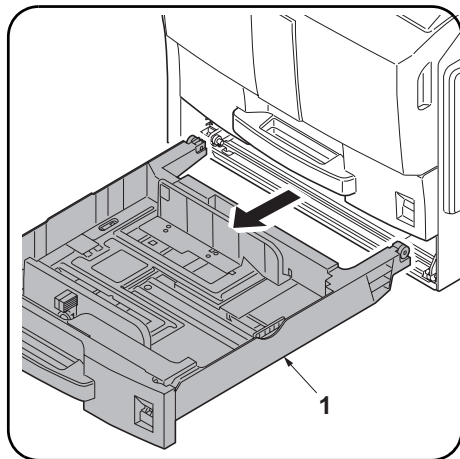
## 日本語

### 同梱品

A ペーパーフィーダ .....	1
B ピン .....	2
C 取付板 .....	1
D ビス TP M4 × 06 .....	2

E ペーパーサイズプレート .....	2
F 縦幅サイズ板 (インチ仕様のみ) .....	2
G ビス + ナベ M3 × 8 タッピング (インチ仕様のみ) .....	2
H 転倒防止金具 (100V 仕様以外) .....	2
I ビス M4 × 8 S タイト (100V 仕様以外) ..	2

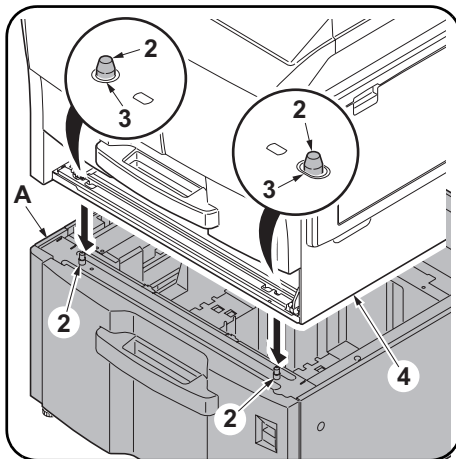
同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



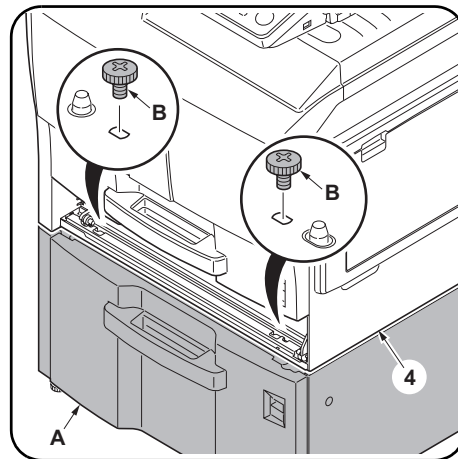
### Procedure

Be sure to turn the MFP main power switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the paper feeder.

1. Remove the lower paper cassette (1) from the MFP.



2. Place the MFP (4) on top of the paper feeder (A) with the positioning pins (2) at the front left and right of the paper feeder (A) aligned with the holes (3) in the base of the MFP (4).



3. Secure the MFP (4) to the paper feeder (A) using the two pins (B).

### Procédure

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du bureau papier.

1. Retirer le tiroir inférieur (1) du MFP.

2. Placer le MFP (4) sur le bureau papier (A) en alignant les broches de positionnement (2) situées aux côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier (A) sur les orifices (3) à la base du MFP (4).

3. Fixer le MFP (4) sur le bureau papier (A) à l'aide des deux broches (B).

### Procedimiento

Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador de papel.

1. Quite el cajón de papel inferior (1) del MFP.

2. Coloque el MFP (4) sobre el alimentador de papel (A) con las clavijas de posicionamiento (2) de la parte frontal izquierda y derecha del alimentador de papel (A) alineadas con los huecos (3) de la base del MFP (4).

3. Asegure el MFP (4) al alimentador de papel (A) usando las dos clavijas (B).

### Verfahren

Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

1. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade (1) vom MFP ab.

2. Setzen Sie den MFP (4) auf den Papiereinzug (A), wobei die Positionsstifte (2) vorne links und rechts am Papiereinzug (A) mit den Löchern (3) in der Basis des MFP (4) ausgerichtet sein müssen.

3. Befestigen Sie den MFP (4) mit den zwei Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).

### Procedura

Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

1. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta (1) dall'MFP.

2. Installare l'MFP (4) sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A), mantenendo i perni di posizionamento (2) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) stessa allineati con i fori (3) situati sulla base dell'MFP (4).

3. Assicurare l'MFP (4) all'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) utilizzando i due perni (B).

### 【 安装步骤 】

安装供纸工作台时，必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

1. 取出 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (1)。

2. 供纸工作台 (A) 的左右前面的各插销 (2) 分别对准 MFP 主机 (4) 底面的各相应销孔 (3) 后，将 MFP 主机 (4) 放在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

3. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将 MFP 主机 (4) 固定在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

### 【 取付手順 】

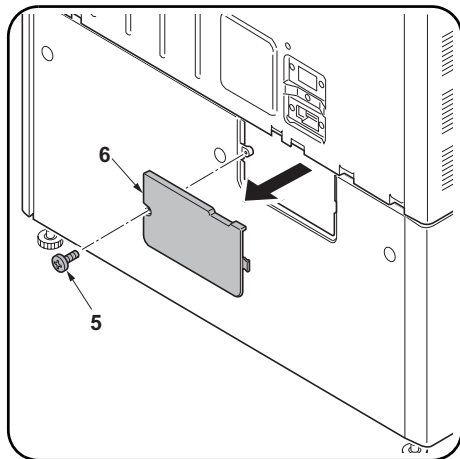
ペーパーフィーダを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、MFP 本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。

1. MFP 本体の下段カセット (1) を取り外す。

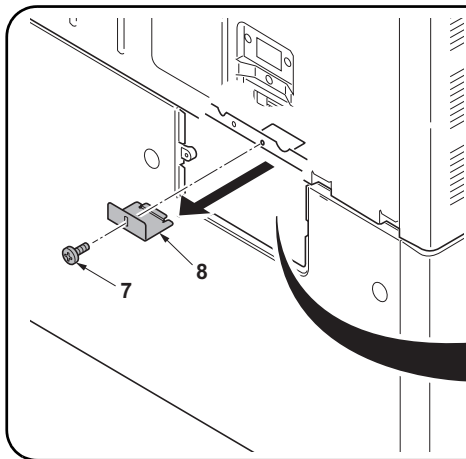
2. ペーパーフィーダ (A) の左右前方の各ピン (2) と MFP 本体 (4) のベースの穴 (3) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダ (A) に MFP 本体 (4) を載せる。

3. ピン (B) 2 本で MFP 本体 (4) をペーパーフィーダ (A) に固定する。

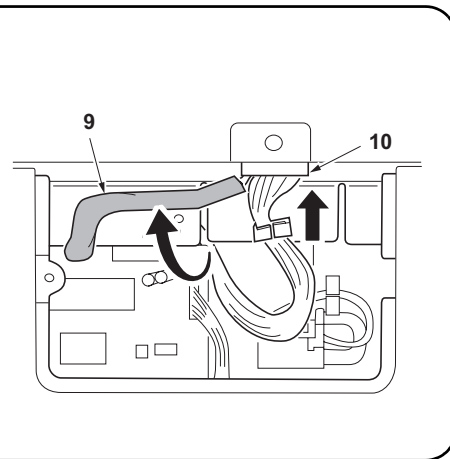




4. Refit the lower paper cassette (1) removed in step 1 to the MFP.
5. Remove the screw (5) and then the cover (6) from the rear of the paper feeder.



6. Remove the screw (7) to remove the metal plate (8).
7. Pull out the wire (9) covered with the black tube in front of the frame.
8. Connect the 12-P connector (10) to the connector on the MFP.



4. Remettre en place sur le MFP le tiroir inférieur (1) qui a été retiré auparavant à l'étape 1.
5. Retirer la vis (5) puis le couvercle (6) de l'arrière du bureau papier.

6. Retirer la vis (7) pour déposer la plaque métallique (8).
7. Tirer le câble (9) recouvert par le tube noir à l'avant du cadre.
8. Connecter le connecteur à douze broches (10) au connecteur du MFP.

4. Vuelva a colocar el cajón de papel inferior (1) desmontado en el paso 1 en el MFP.
5. Quite el tornillo (5) y luego la tapa (6) de la parte trasera del alimentador de papel.

6. Quite el tornillo (7) para desmontar la placa de metal (8).
7. Saque el cable (9) cubierto con el tubo negro en el frente del bastidor.
8. Conecte el conector de 12 clavijas (10) en el conector del MFP.

4. Bringen Sie die untere Papierlade (1), die in Schritt 1 entfernt wurde, erneut am MFP an.
5. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (5) und dann die Abdeckung (6) von der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs.

6. Die Schraube (7) herausdrehen, um die Metallplatte (8) abzunehmen.
7. Ziehen Sie das mit dem schwarzen Mantel umhüllte Kabel (9) auf der Vorderseite des Rahmens heraus.
8. Schließen Sie den 12-poligen Steckverbinder (10) an den Steckverbinder am MFP an.

4. Reinserire nell'MFP il cassetto inferiore della carta (1) rimosso al punto 1.
5. Rimuovere la vite (5) e quindi il pannello (6) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.

6. Rimuovere la vite (7) per togliere la piastra di metallo (8).
7. Tirare fuori, davanti al telaio, il cavo (9) coperto con il tubo nero.
8. Collegare il connettore a 12 piedini (10) al connettore sull'MFP.

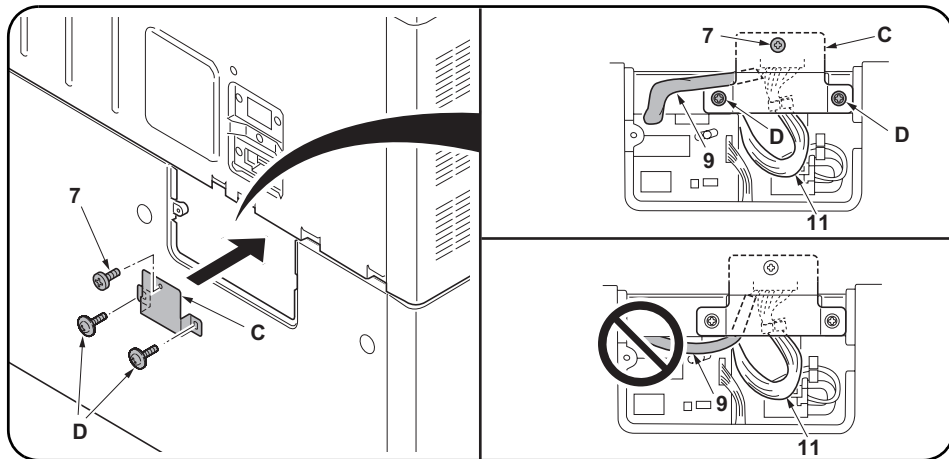
4. 在步骤 1 取下的 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (1) 装回原来的位置。
5. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (5)，拆下供纸工作台的后部盖板 (6)。

6. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (7)，拆下金属件 (8)。
7. 将用黑套管包覆的电线 (9) 拉至机架前。
8. 将 12 脚接头 (10) 与 MFP 主机上的接口连接。



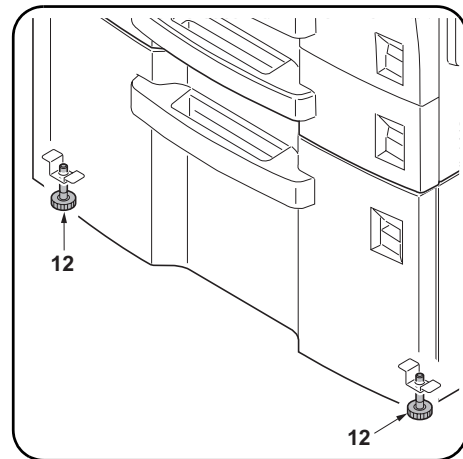
4. 手順 1 で取り外した MFP 本体の下段カセット (1) を元に戻す。
5. ビス (5) 1 本を外し、ペーパーフィーダ後部のカバー (6) を取り外す。

6. ビス (7) 1 本を外し、金具 (8) を取り外す。
7. 黒いチューブで覆われた電線 (9) を、フレームの手前に引き出す。
8. 12P コネクタ (10) を MFP 本体のコネクタに接続する。



9. Separate the wire (9) covered with the black tube and the signal wires as shown on the above drawing, and install the retainer (C) using the screw (7) removed in step 6 and the two M4 x 06 TP screws (D).

10. Refit the cover (6) using the screw (5) removed in step 5.



11. Turn the adjusters on each corner (12) until they reach the floor and then secure the paper feeder.

9. Séparer le câble (9) recouvert par le tube noir et les câbles de signaux comme montré dans le dessin ci-dessus et installer l'élément de retenue (C) à l'aide de la vis (7) retirée à l'étape 6 et les deux vis TP M4 x 06 (D).

10. Remettre le couvercle (6) en place à l'aide de la vis (5) retirée auparavant à l'étape 5.

11. Faire tourner les dispositifs de réglage de chacun des coins (12) jusqu'à ce qu'ils touchent le sol et fixer ensuite le bureau papier.

9. Separe el cable (9) cubierto con el tubo negro y los cables de señal tal como aparece en el dibujo de arriba e instale el retén (C) usando el tornillo (7) removido en el paso 6 y los dos tornillos TP M4 x 06 (D).

10. Vuelva a colocar la tapa (6) usando el tornillo (5) quitado en el paso 5.

11. Gire los reguladores en cada esquina (12) hasta que lleguen al piso y, a continuación, asegure el alimentador de papel.

9. Trennen Sie das mit dem schwarzen Mantel umhüllte Kabel (9) und die Signalkabel, wie in der obigen Zeichnung gezeigt, und installieren Sie die Halterung (C), indem Sie die Schraube (7) benutzen, die Sie in Schritt 6 entfernt haben, sowie die zwei M4 x 06 TP-Schrauben (D).

10. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (6) wieder mit der in Schritt (5) entfernten Schraube 5 an.

11. Die Einsteller an jeder Ecke (12) drehen, bis sie den Boden berühren, und dann den Papiereinzug sichern.

9. Separare il cavo (9) coperto con il tubo nero e i cavi del segnale come indicato nel disegno qui sopra, e installare il fermo (C) utilizzando la vite (7) rimossa al passo 6 e le due viti TP M4 x 06 (D).

10. Inserire il pannello posteriore (6) usando le viti (5) rimosse al punto 5.

11. Ruotare i regolatori (12) presenti su ciascun angolo finché vengano a contatto con il pavimento, e quindi fissare l'unità di alimentazione della carta.

9. 将用黑套管包覆的电线 (9) 如图示要求那样使电线分离, 用步骤 6 中拆除的 1 个螺丝 (7) 和两个 TP 螺丝 M4 x 06 (D) 来进行安装板 (C) 的安装工作。

10. 用步骤 5 拆除的 1 个螺丝 (5) 将盖板 (6) 装回原来的位置。

11. 转到四角上的调节器 (12) 直至与地面接触, 然后再固定供纸工作台。

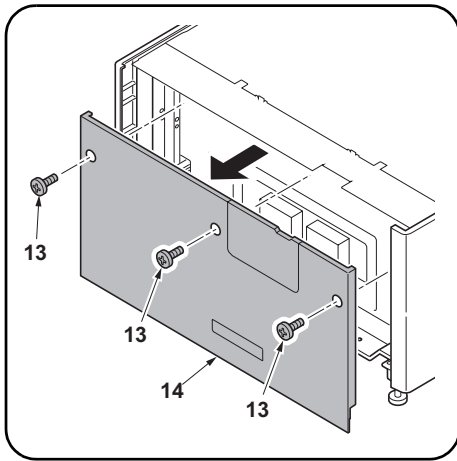
TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

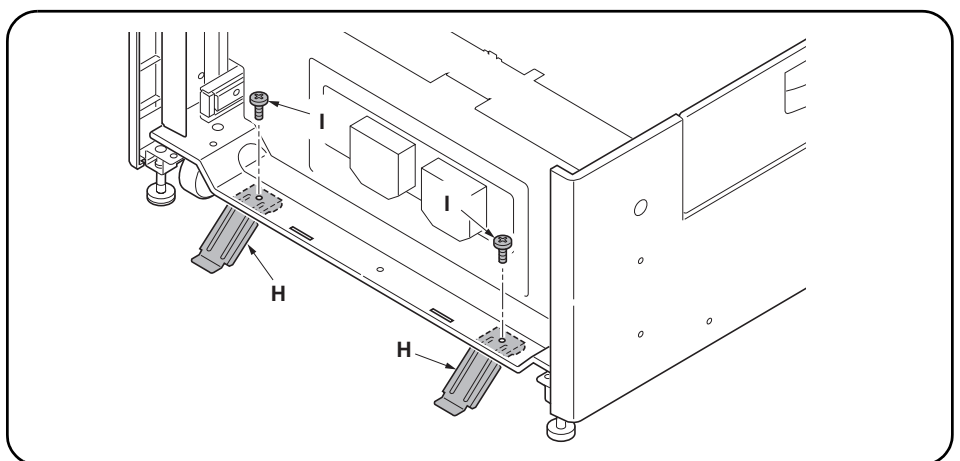
9. 黒いチューブで覆われた電線 (9) と電線 (11) を図のように分離させ、手順 6 で外したビス (7) 1 本と、ビス TP M4 x 06 (D) 2 本で取付板 (C) を取り付ける。

10. 手順 5 で取り外したビス (5) 1 本でカバー (6) を元通りに取り付ける。

11. 四隅のアジャスタ (12) を床に接触する位置まで回し、ペーパーフィーダを固定する。



**Steps 12 to 14 below are only for monochrome machines. 110, 120 and 220 - 240V specifications only**  
**12.** Remove 3 screws (13), and then remove the back cover (14).



**13.** Install each stopper (H) with 1 S Tite screw M4 × 8 (I).

**14.** Refit the back cover (14) using the 3 screws (13) removed in step 12.

**Les étapes 12 à 14 ci-dessous concernent les machines monochromes seulement. spécifications 110, 120 et 220 - 240 V uniquement**

**12.** Déposer 3 vis (13) puis enlever le capot arrière (14).

**13.** Installer chacune des butes (H) l'aide de 1 vis S Tite M4 x 8 (I).

**14.** Remettre le capot arrière (14) en place à l'aide des 3 vis (13) retirée auparavant à l'étape 12.

**Los pasos 12 a 14 a continuación son sólo para máquinas monocromáticas. especificaciones de 110, 120 y 220 - 240 V, solamente**

**12.** Quite 3 tornillos (13) y, después, desmonte la cubierta posterior (14).

**13.** Instale cada uno de los topes (H) con 1 tornillo S Tite M4 x 8 (I).

**14.** Vuelva a colocar la cubierta posterior (14) por medio de los 3 tornillos (13) desmontados en el paso 12.

**Die folgenden Schritte 12 bis 14 gelten nur für Monochrommaschinen. nur 110, 120 und 220 - 240 V Spezifikationen**

**12.** Entfernen Sie 3 Schrauben (13) und nehmen Sie dann die hintere Abdeckung (14) ab.

**13.** Befestigen Sie jeden Anschlag (H) mit 1 S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 8 (I).

**14.** Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (14) wieder mit den in Schritt 12 entfernten 3 Schrauben (13) an.

**I seguenti passi da 12 a 14 sono solo per le macchine in bianco e nero. solo specifiche 110, 120 e 220 - 240 V**

**12.** Rimuovere le 3 viti (13), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (14).

**13.** Installare ciascun fermo (H) con 1 vite S Tite M4 × 8 (I).

**14.** Inserire il coperchio posteriore (14) usando le 3 viti (13) rimosse al punto 12.

[ 步骤 12 ~ 14 仅限于黑白机 ]  
 [ 仅限 110V、120V 及 220-240V 规格 ]

**12.** 取下 3 颗螺丝 (13)，然后拆下后盖板 (14)。

**13.** 使用 1 颗紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 8 (I) 安装各限位器 (H)。

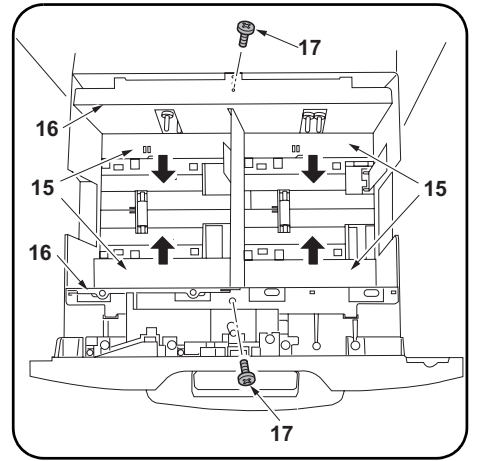
**14.** 使用在步骤 12 中取下的 3 颗螺丝 (13) 重新安装后盖板 (14)。

**TONER**  
[www.tonerplus.com.ua](http://www.tonerplus.com.ua)  
 [ 手順 12 ~ 14 はモノクロ機のみ ]  
 [ 110V/120V/220-240V 仕様のみ ]

**12.** ビス (13) 3 本を外し、後カバー (14) を取り外す。

**13.** 転倒防止金具 (H) をビス M4 × 8 S タイプ (I) 各 1 本で取り付け。

**14.** 手順 12 で取り外したビス (13) 3 本で後カバー (14) を元通り取り付け。



### Setting the paper size

At the time of shipping, the paper size is set to Letter for inch specifications and A4 for metric specifications. To change the size, follow the procedure below.

1. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder. Remove the lower paper cassette from the MFP.

2. Move the sliders(15) at the machine front and rear inward (two at each point).
3. Remove the screw (17) from each of the front and rear lateral size adjusters(16).

### Réglage de la taille du papier

Au moment de l'expédition, le format du papier est réglé à Lettre pour les spécifications en pouces, et à A4 pour les spécifications métriques. Pour changer le format, procéder comme suit.

1. Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi. Retirer le tiroir inférieur du MFP.

2. Déplacer les curseurs(15), à l'avant et à l'arrière de la machine, vers l'intérieur (deux à chaque endroit).
3. Retirer la vis (17) de chaque dispositif de réglage du format latéral avant et arrière (16).

### Configuración del tamaño de papel

Al momento de la salida de fábrica, el tamaño de papel está ajustado a Carta para las especificaciones de pulgadas y A4 para las especificaciones métricas. Para cambiar el tamaño, siga el procedimiento de abajo.

1. Abra el casete del alimentador de papel. Quite el cajón de papel inferior del MFP.

2. Mueva los graduadores(15) del frente y parte trasera de la máquina hacia adentro (dos en cada punto).
3. Quite el tornillo(17) de cada regulador de tamaño lateral frontal y trasero(16).

### Einstellen der Papiergröße

Das Papierformat wurde vor dem Versand auf Letter für Zollspezifikationen und A4 für metrische Spezifikationen eingestellt. Um das Format zu ändern, gehen Sie folgendermaßen vor.

1. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade aus dem Papiereinzug. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade vom MFP ab.

2. Bewegen Sie die Schieber(15) an der Vorder- und Rückseite des Gerätes nach innen (zwei an jedem Punkt).
3. Entfernen Sie die Schraube(17) von jedem der vorderen und hinteren Quergrößen-Einsteller(16).

### Impostazione della dimensione della carta

Al momento della spedizione, il formato della carta è impostato su Lettera per le specifiche in pollici e A4 per le specifiche metriche. Per cambiare formato, seguire la procedura qui in basso.

1. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentatore della carta. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta dall'MFP.

2. Spostare verso l'interno gli scivoli (15) nella parte anteriore e posteriore della macchina (due in ciascun punto).
3. Rimuovere la vite(17) da ciascuno dei regolatori della misura laterale anteriori e posteriori (16).

### 【 尺寸設定 】

出厂时，英寸尺寸的产品设定为 Letter，厘米尺寸的产品设定为 A4。需要变更尺寸时，按照以下顺序进行操作。

1. 拉出供纸工作台的供纸盒。取出 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒。

2. 把前后各 2 张的滑板 (15) 往内侧移动。
3. 拆除横向尺寸板 (16) 上前后的各 1 个螺丝 (17)。

### 【 サイズ設定 】

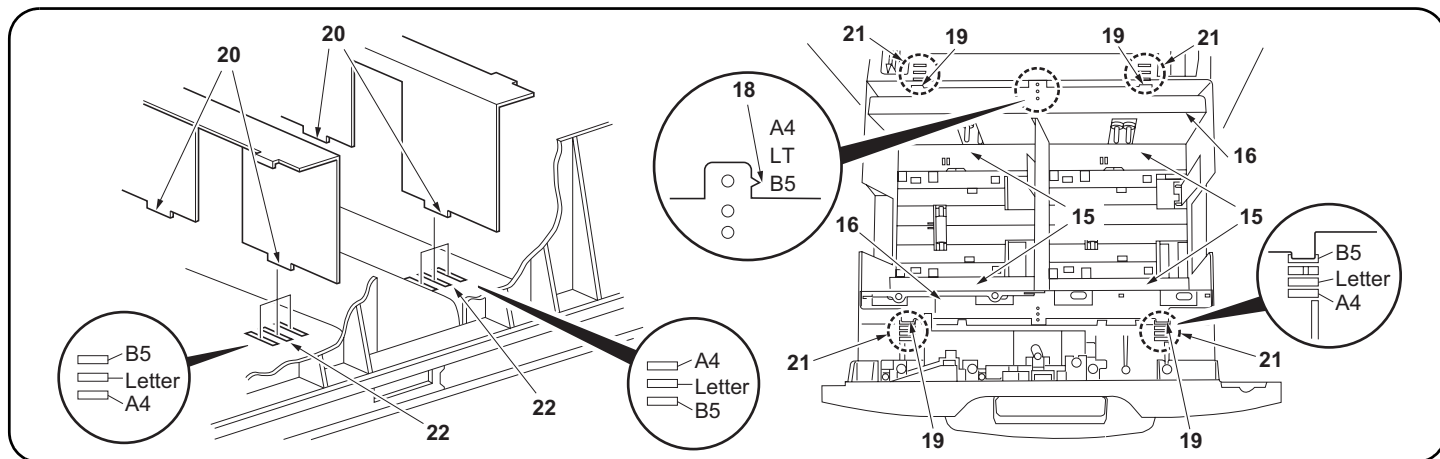
出荷時、インチ仕様は Letter、センチ仕様は A4 に設定されています。サイズを変更する場合は次の手順をおこなってください。

1. ペーパーフィーダのカセットを引き出す。MFP 本体の下段カセットを取り外す。

2. 前後各 2 枚のスライド板 (15) を内側にずらす。
3. 前後の横幅サイズ板 (16) より各ビス (17) 1 本を外す。



www.tonerplus.com.ua



4. Insert the upper tabs (19) and lower tabs (20) of the front and rear lateral size adjusters (16) into the upper slots (21) and lower slots (22) respectively such that the size indicators (18) point to the size of paper to be used. Secure the lateral size adjusters using the screw (17) for each. Check the paper size at the position with the front and rear upper tabs (19) inserted into the upper slots (21).  
Upper slots (21) positions on the front side: Front (A4), middle (Letter), rear (B5)  
Upper slots (21) positions on the rear side: Front (B5), middle (Letter), rear (A4)
5. Move the front and rear sliders (15) (two at each point) outward until they make contact with the lateral size adjusters (16).

4. Insérer les pattes supérieures (19) et inférieures (20) des dispositifs de réglage du format latéral avant et arrière (16), dans les fentes supérieures (21) et inférieures (22) respectivement, de façon à ce que les indicateurs de format (18) pointent à la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage du format latéral à l'aide de leur vis (17).  
Vérifier le format du papier en position avec les pattes supérieures avant et arrière (19) insérées dans les fentes supérieures (21).  
Positions des fentes supérieures (21) sur le côté avant: Avant (A4), milieu (Lettre), arrière (B5)  
Positions des fentes supérieures (21) sur le côté arrière: Avant (B5), milieu (Lettre), arrière (A4)
5. Déplacer les curseurs avant et arrière (15), (deux à chaque endroit), vers l'extérieur jusqu'à ce qu'ils entrent en contact avec les dispositifs de réglage du format latéral (16).

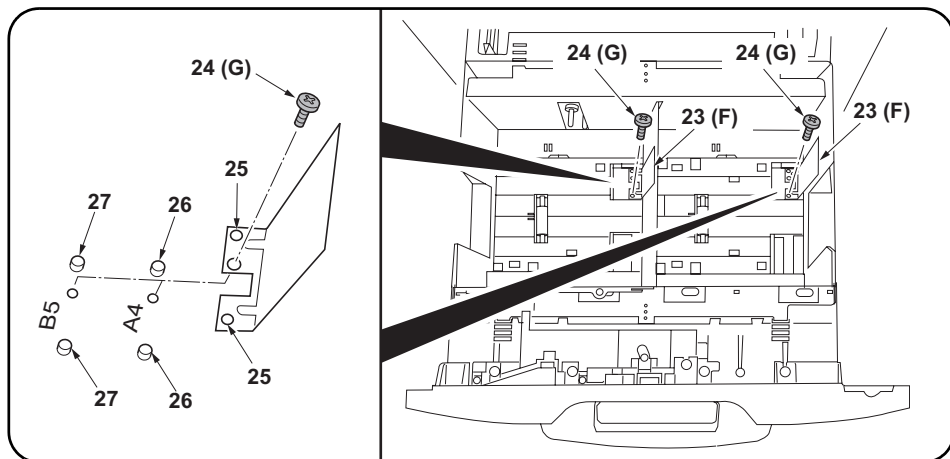
4. Inserte las lengüetas superiores (19) y las lengüetas inferiores (20) de los reguladores de tamaño laterales frontales y traseros (16) en las ranuras superiores (21) y las ranuras inferiores (22) respectivamente de modo que los indicadores de tamaño (18) apunten al tamaño de papel a ser usado. Asegure los reguladores de tamaño laterales usando el tornillo (17) para cada uno.  
Compruebe el tamaño de papel en la posición con las lengüetas frontales y traseras superiores (19) insertadas en las ranuras superiores (21).  
Posiciones de las ranuras superiores (21) en el lado delantero: Adelante (A4), medio (carta), atrás (B5)  
Posiciones de las ranuras superiores (21) en el lado trasero: Adelante (B5), medio (Carta), atrás (A4)
5. Mueva los graduadores frontales y traseros (15) (dos en cada punto) hacia fuera hasta que hagan contacto con los reguladores de tamaño laterales (16).

4. Führen Sie die oberen Laschen (19) und die unteren Laschen (20) der vorderen und hinteren Quergrößen-Einsteller (16) jeweils in die oberen Schlitze (21) und unteren Schlitze (22), so daß die Größenanzeiger (18) auf die zu benutzende Papiergröße zeigen. Sichern Sie die Quergrößen-Einsteller mit jeweils einer Schraube (17).  
Die Papiergröße an der Stelle überprüfen, wo vorderen und hinteren oberen Laschen (19) in den oberen Schlitzen (21) sitzen.  
Positionen der oberen Schlitze (21) auf der Vorderseite: vorne (A4), Mitte (Letter), hinten (B5)  
Positionen der oberen Schlitze (21) auf der Rückseite: Vorne (B5), Mitte (Letter), Hinten (A4)
5. Bewegen Sie die vorderen und hinteren Schieber (15) (zwei an jedem Punkt) nach außen, bis sie mit den Quergrößen-Einstellern (16) in Kontakt kommen.

4. Inserire le linguette superiori (19) e le linguette inferiori (20) dei regolatori della misura laterale anteriori e posteriori (16) nelle scanalature superiori (21) e nelle scanalature inferiori (22) rispettivamente, in modo tale che gli indicatori della misura (18) puntino alla dimensione della carta da utilizzare. Fissare i regolatori della misura laterale utilizzando la vite (17) per ciascuno di essi.  
Controllare il formato della carta alla posizione delle linguette superiori anteriori e posteriori (19) inserite nelle scanalature superiori (21).  
Posizioni delle scanalature superiori (21) sul lato anteriore: anteriore (A4), centrale (Letter), posteriore (B5)  
Posizioni delle scanalature superiori (21) sul lato posteriore: Anteriore (B5), centrale (Lettera), posteriore (A4)
5. Spostare verso l'esterno gli scivoli anteriori e posteriori (15) (due in ciascun punto) fino a quando non vengano a contatto con i regolatori della misura laterale (16).

4. 将前后横向尺寸板 (16) 的上卡爪 (19)、下卡爪 (20) 分别插入上槽 (21) 和下槽 (22)，再用 1 个螺丝 (17) 固定，让尺寸指示爪 (18) 表示所使用的复印纸尺寸。  
检查前后上卡爪 (19) 插入上槽 (21) 位置时的纸张尺寸。  
前面的上槽 (21) 的位置：前面 (A4)、中央 (Letter)、里侧 (B5)  
后面的上槽 (21) 的位置：前面 (B5)、中央 (Letter)、里侧 (A4)
5. 向外移动前后各 2 张滑板 (15)，直到碰到横向尺寸板 (16) 为止。

4. サイズ指示爪 (18) が使用する用紙サイズを示すように、前後の横幅サイズ板 (16) の上爪 (19)、下爪 (20) を上溝 (21)、下溝 (22) に差し込み、ビス (17) 1 本で固定する。  
前後の上爪 (19) を上溝 (21) の差し込む位置で用紙サイズを確認する。  
前側の上溝 (21) の位置：手前 (A4)、中央 (Letter)、奥 (B5)  
後側の上溝 (21) の位置：手前 (B5)、中央 (Letter)、奥 (A4)
5. 前後各 2 枚のスライド板 (15) を、横幅サイズ板 (16) に当たるまで外側にずらす。



6. Remove the screw (24) and remove the longitudinal size adjusters (23). (metric specifications only)
7. Depending on the paper size, align either the A4 pins (26) or the B5 pins (27) with the pin holes (25) in the longitudinal size adjusters (23), fit the adjusters and secure each of them with a screw (24).
- For inch specifications, align either the A4 pins (26) or the B5 pins (27) with the pin holes (25) in the longitudinal size adjusters (F), fit the adjusters and secure each of them with a round pan-head M3 x 8 tapping screw (G).

8. Return the paper feeder cassette and the lower cassette in the MFP to their original positions.
9. Run maintenance item U208 and set the paper size for the paper feeder (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Déposer la vis (24) et déposer les dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal (23). (spécifications métriques seulement)
7. Selon le format du papier, aligner les broches A4 (26) ou B5 (27) avec les trous de broche (25) dans les dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal (23), ajuster les dispositifs de réglage et les fixer chacun avec une vis (24).
- Pour les spécifications en pouces, aligner les broches A4 (26) ou B5 (27) avec les trous de broche (25) des dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal (F), ajuster les dispositifs de réglage et les fixer chacun à l'aide d'une vis autotaraudeuse à tête cruciforme ronde M3 x 8 (G).

8. Ramener la cassette du bureau papier et la cassette inférieure dans leur position d'origine dans le MFP.
9. Exécuter l'élément d'entretien U208 et régler la taille du papier pour le bureau papier (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Quite el tornillo (24) y desmonte los reguladores de tamaño longitudinal (23). (sólo especificaciones métricas)
7. Dependiendo del tamaño del papel, alinee las clavijas A4 (26) o las clavijas B5 (27) con los orificios para las clavijas (25) en los reguladores de tamaño longitudinal (23), inserte los reguladores y asegúrelos con un tornillo (24).
- En el caso de especificaciones de pulgadas, alinee las clavijas A4 (26) o las clavijas B5 (27) con los orificios para las clavijas (25) en los reguladores de tamaño longitudinal (F), encaje los reguladores y asegúrelos con un tornillo de roscado de cabeza redonda plana M3 x 8 (G).

8. Vuelva a colocar el cajón del alimentador de papel y el cajón inferior del MFP en sus posiciones originales.
9. Haga el ítem de mantenimiento U208 y configure el tamaño de papel para el alimentador de papel (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Die Schraube (24) entfernen und die Längsgrößen-Einsteller (23) abnehmen. (nur metrische Spezifikationen)
7. Je nach Papiergröße entweder die A4-Stifte (26) oder die B5-Stifte (27) auf die Stiftlöcher (25) in den Längsgrößen-Einstellern (23) ausrichten, die Einsteller einsetzen und jeden mit einer Schraube (24) sichern.
- Richten Sie die Stiftlöcher (25) im linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einsteller (F) für Zollspezifikationen auf die A4-Stifte (26) oder B5-Stifte (27) aus, abhängig von der zu verwendenden Papiergröße. Sichern Sie die Einsteller mit jeweils einer Kreuzschlitz- Rundkopf-Schneidschraube M3 x 8 (G).

8. Die Papierlade des Papiereinzugs und die untere Papierlade im MFP wieder wie ursprünglich einsetzen.
9. Führen Sie Wartungspunkt U208 aus und stellen Sie die Papiergröße für den Papiereinzug (B5/A4/Letter) ein.

6. Rimuovere la vite (24) e quindi rimuovere i regolatori della misura longitudinale (23). (solo specifiche metriche)
7. Dipendentemente dal formato della carta, allineare i perni A4 (26) o i perni B5 (27) con i fori dei perni (25) nei regolatori della misura longitudinale (23), adattare i regolatori e fissare ciascuno di loro con una vite (24).
- Per le specificazioni in pollici, allineare i perni A4 (26) o i perni per B5 (27) con i fori dei perni (25) nei regolatori della misura longitudinale (F), adattare i regolatori e fissare ciascuno di loro con una vite filettante a testa piana M3 x 8 (G).

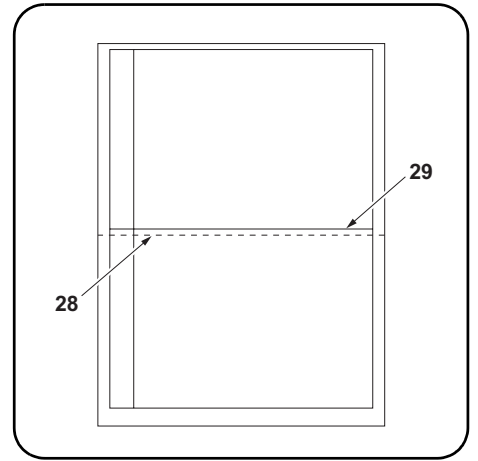
8. Riportare la cassetta dell'unità di alimentazione della carta e la cassetta inferiore dell'MFP alle loro posizioni originali.
9. Eseguire l'opzione di manutenzione U208 ed impostare la dimensione della carta della relativa unità di alimentazione (B5/A4/Letter).

6. 拆下螺丝 (24), 然后拆下纵向尺寸板 (23)。(仅适用于厘米尺寸的产品)
7. 根据纸张尺寸, 将 A4 插销 (26) 和 B5 插销 (27) 与纵向尺寸板 (23) 上的插销孔 (25) 对齐, 装上纵向尺寸板, 并用螺丝 (24) 将每个尺寸板都固定。
- 对于英制规格的机器, 将 A4 插销 (26) 和 B5 插销 (27) 与纵向尺寸板 (F) 上的插销孔 (25) 对齐, 装上纵向尺寸板, 并用圆盘面 M3 x 8 自攻螺丝 (G) 将每个尺寸板都固定。

8. 将供纸工作台供纸盒和 MFP 的下部供纸盒装回至原来的位置。
9. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中, 打开主电源开关。
- 使用维修模式 U208 设定供纸工作台所使用的复印纸尺寸 (B5/A4/Letter)。

6. 各ビス (24) 1 本を外し、縦幅サイズ板 (23) を取り外す。(センチ仕様のみ)
7. 用紙サイズに応じて、縦幅サイズ板 (23) のピン穴 (25) を A4 ビン (26) または B5 ビン (27) に合わせて取り付け、ビス (24) 1 本で固定する。
- インチ仕様では、用紙サイズに応じて、縦幅サイズ板 (F) のピン穴 (25) を A4 ビン (26) または B5 ビン (27) に合わせて取り付け、ビス + ナベ M3 x 8 タッピング (G) 1 本で固定する。

8. ペーパーフィーダのカセットおよび MFP 本体の下段カセットを元に戻す。
9. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
- メンテナンスモード U208 でペーパーフィーダにセットする用紙のサイズ (B5 / A4 / Letter) を設定する。



### Checking the center line

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main power switch on.

2. Select maintenance mode U402 and print the test pattern.

3. If the center of the paper (28) and that of the test pattern output (29) do not meet the reference value, perform the following adjustment.  
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

### Vérification de la ligne médiane

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.

2. Sélectionner le mode maintenance U402 et imprimer la mire d'essai.

3. Si le centre du papier (28) et celui de la sortie de mire (29) ne correspondent à la valeur de référence, effectuer le réglage suivant.  
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

### Verificación de la línea central

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.

2. Seleccione el modo de mantenimiento U402 e imprima el patrón de prueba.

3. Si el centro del papel (28) y aquel de la salida del patrón de prueba (29) no cumplen con el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.  
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

### Überprüfen der Mittellinie

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.

2. Den Wartungsmodus U402 wählen und das Testmuster ausdrucken.

3. Falls die Mitte des Papiers (28) und des ausgegebenen Testmusters (29) nicht mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.  
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

### Controllare la linea centrale

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.

2. Selezionare la modalità manutenzione U402 e stampare il modello di prova.

3. Se il centro della carta (28) e quello del modello di prova (29) non rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento, eseguire la seguente regolazione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

### [ 中心線の確認 ]

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。

2. 选择维修模式 U402，打印测试图案。

3. 如果复印纸的中心位置 (28) 与测试图案的中心位置 (29) 为标准值以外时，必须进行下列的调整项目。  
(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

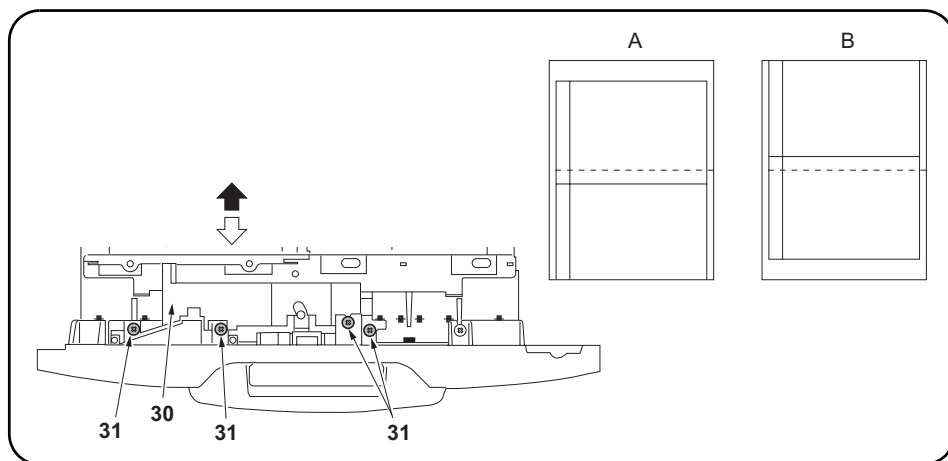


### [ センターライン確認 ]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。

2. メンテナンスモード U402 を選び、テストパターンを出力する。

3. 用紙のセンター(28) とテストパターンのセンター(29) が基準値外の場合は、次の調整をおこなう。  
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下



#### Adjusting the center line

4. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws (31) securing the adjuster (30).

#### A and B: test pattern output examples

5. If the test pattern output looks like A, move the adjuster (30) in the direction of the black arrow (⇐) and retighten the three screws (31).  
If the test pattern output looks like B, move the adjuster (30) in the direction of the white arrow (⇒) and retighten the three screws (31).

6. Output a test pattern again.

7. Repeat steps 4 to 6 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern meet the reference value.

<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

#### Réglage de la ligne médiane

4. Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi et desserrer les trois vis (31) fixant le dispositif de réglage (30).

#### A et B: exemples de sortie de mieres

5. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à A, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (30) dans la direction de la flèche noire (⇐) et resserrer les trois vis (31).  
Si la sortie de mire ressemble à B, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (30) dans la direction de la flèche blanche (⇒) et resserrer les trois vis (31).

6. Reproduire une nouvelle mire.

7. Répéter les étapes 4 à 6 jusqu'à ce que le centre du papier et celui de la mire correspondent à la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

#### Ajuste de la línea central

4. Abra el casete del alimentador de papel y suelte los tres tornillos (31) que aseguran el regulador (30).

#### A y B: ejemplos de salidas de patrones de prueba

5. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a A, mueva el regulador (30) en la dirección que indica la flecha negra (⇐) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (31).  
Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecido a B, mueva el regulador (30) en la dirección que indica la flecha blanca (⇒) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (31).

6. Saque un patrón de prueba nuevamente.

7. Repita los pasos 4 a 6 hasta que los centros de papel y el patrón de prueba cumplan con el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

#### Einstellen der Mittenlinie

4. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade des Papiereinzugs heraus und lösen Sie die drei Schrauben (31), die den Anpasser (30) halten.

#### A und B: Beispiele von Testmusterangaben

5. Wenn die Testmusterangabe wie A aussieht, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (30) in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (⇐) und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (31) wieder fest.  
Wenn die Testmusterangabe wie B aussieht, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (30) in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (⇒) und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (31) wieder fest.

6. Drucken Sie erneut ein Testmuster aus.

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 4 bis 6, bis die Mitte des Papiers und des Testmusters mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt.

<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

#### Regolazione della linea centrale

4. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentazione della carta ed allentare le tre viti (31) assicurando il regolatore (30).

#### A e B: esempi di stampa del modello di prova

5. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto A, spostare il regolatore (30) nella direzione della freccia nera (⇐) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (31).  
Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto B, spostare il regolatore (30) nella direzione della freccia bianca (⇒) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (31).

6. Stampare nuovamente un modello di prova.

7. Ripetere i passi da 4 a 6 fino a quando i centri della carta e del modello di prova rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento.  
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

#### 中心线的调整

4. 拉出供纸工作台的供纸盒，再松开调整板 (30) 上的 3 个螺丝 (31)。

#### A, B 测试图案

5. 测试图案为 A 时，按箭头 (⇐) 方向移动调整板 (30)，并紧固 3 个螺丝 (31)。  
测试图案为 B 时，按箭头 (⇒) 方向移动调整板 (30)，并紧固 3 个螺丝 (31)。

6. 再次进行测试图案的输出。

7. 反复操作步骤 4 至 6，直到复印纸的中心与测试图案的中心为标准值内为止。  
(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

#### センターライン調整

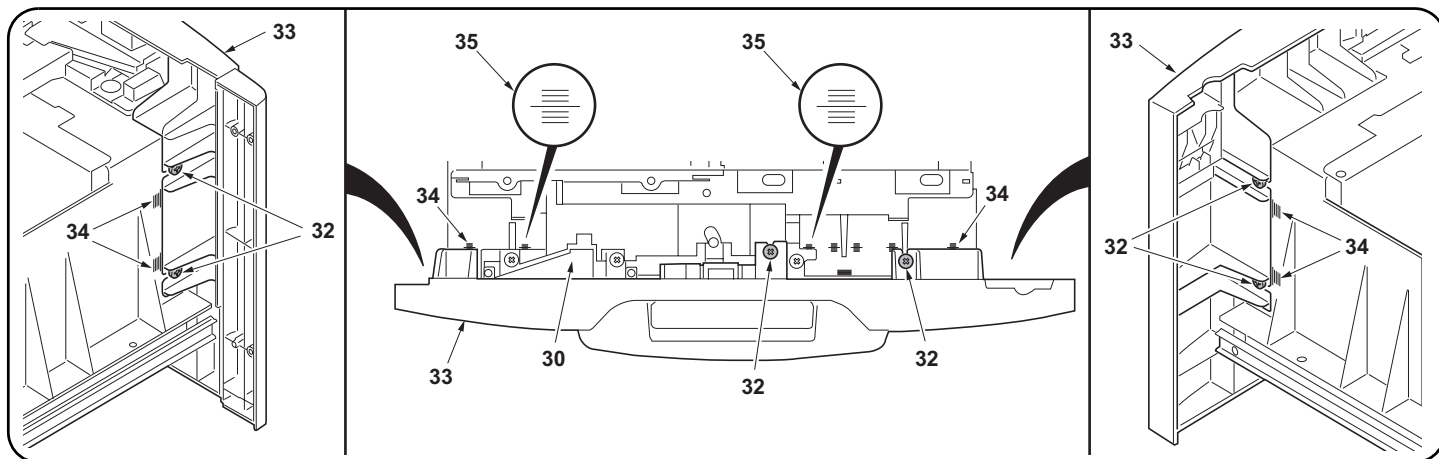
4. ペーパーフィーダのカセットを引き出し、調整板 (30) のビス (31) 3 本を緩める。

#### A, B: テストパターン

5. A 画像の場合、矢印 (⇐) の向きに調整板 (30) を動かし、ビス (31) 3 本を締め付ける。  
B 画像の場合、矢印 (⇒) の向きに調整板 (30) を動かし、ビス (31) 3 本を締め付ける。

6. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。

7. 用紙のセンターとテストパターンのセンターが基準値内になるまで、手順 4 ~ 6 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下



### Adjusting the front cover position

#### Note:

If the position of the adjuster is changed, adjust the front cover position.

If the front cover position is not proper, the cassette may not be fixed with the magnet or the gap between the front cover and the paper feeder body may be opened.

8. Loosen the six screws (32).

9. Move the position of the front cover (33) by the amount of divisions of the level that corresponds to the movement of the adjuster (30) (amount of movement of the level (35)) using the level (34).

10. Retighten the six screws (32).

### Réglage de la position du couvercle avant

#### Remarque:

Si la position du dispositif de réglage est changée, régler la position du couvercle avant.

Si la position du couvercle avant est incorrecte, le tiroir risquera de ne pas être fixé par l'aimant, ou un écart risquera de s'ouvrir entre le couvercle avant et le corps du bureau papier.

8. Desserrer les six vis (32).

9. Déplacer la position du couvercle avant (33) de la quantité de divisions du niveau correspondant au mouvement du dispositif de réglage (30) (quantité de mouvement du niveau (35)) en utilisant le niveau (34).

10. Resserrer les six vis (32).

### Ajuste de la posición de la tapa frontal

#### Nota:

Si cambia la posición del regulador, ajuste la posición de la tapa frontal.

Si la posición de la tapa frontal no es la adecuada, el casete puede no fijarse con la imagen o la separación entre la tapa frontal y el cuerpo del alimentador de papel puede abrirse.

8. Afloje los seis tornillos (32).

9. Mueva la posición de la tapa frontal (33) en la cantidad de divisiones del nivel que corresponde al movimiento del regulador (30) (cantidad de movimiento del nivel (35)) utilizando el nivel (34).

10. Vuelva a apretar los seis tornillos (32).

### Einstellen der Position der Frontabdeckung

#### Hinweis:

Falls die Position des Einstellers geändert wird, muss die Position der Frontabdeckung geändert werden.

Falls die Position der Frontabdeckung nicht stimmt, wird die Papierlade eventuell nicht mit dem Magneten gesichert, oder der Spalt zwischen der Frontabdeckung und dem Papiereinzug kann sich öffnen.

8. Die sechs Schrauben (32) lösen.

9. Die Position der Frontabdeckung (33) mithilfe der Ebene (34) um den Teilungsbetrag der Ebene verschieben, welcher der Bewegung des Anpassers (30) entspricht (Bewegungsbetrag der Ebene (35)).

10. Die sechs Schrauben (32) wieder anziehen.

### Regolare la posizione del pannello anteriore

#### Nota

Se la posizione del regolatore viene cambiata, regolare la posizione del pannello anteriore.

Se la posizione del pannello anteriore non è corretta, non sarà possibile fissare il cassetto con il magnete o potrebbe aprirsi uno spazio tra il pannello anteriore e il corpo dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.

8. Allentare le sei viti (32).

9. Muovere la posizione del pannello anteriore (33) di tante posizioni del livello quanto è necessario per farlo corrispondere al movimento del regolatore (30) (movimento del livello (35)) utilizzando il livello (34).

10. Ristringere le sei viti (32).

### 前盖板位置的调整

#### 注意

如果调整板的位置变更时，必须进行前盖板位置的调整。

如果前盖板的位置调整不一致时，供纸盒就不能在磁铁处停住，并会在前盖板和供纸工作台主机之间出现间隙。

8. 松开 6 个螺丝 (32)。

9. 用刻度 (34) 移动前面盖板 (33) 的位置。但是，只限调整板 (30) 移动的刻度量 (刻度 (35) 的移动值)。

10. 重新紧固 6 个螺丝 (32)。

### 前カバーの位置調整

#### 注意

調整板の位置を変更した場合は、前カバーの位置調整をおこなう。

前カバーの位置が正しくないと、カセットがマグネットで止まらなくなったり、前カバーとペーパーフィーダ本体との間に隙間が開いたりする。

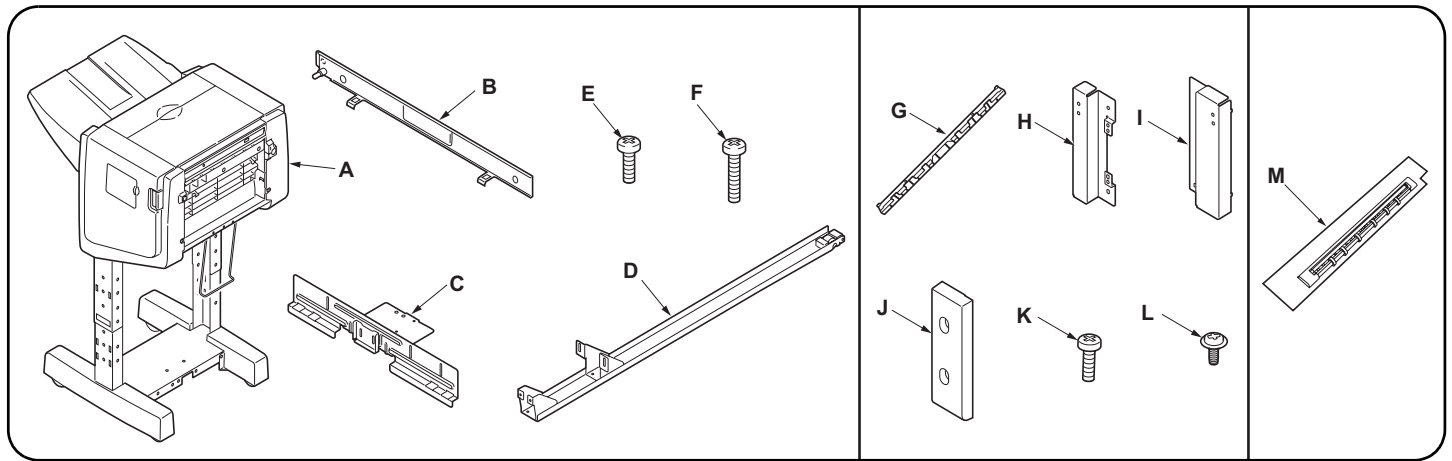
8. ビス (32) 6 本を緩める。

9. 調整板 (30) を移動させた目盛り (目盛り (35) の移動値) だけ、前カバー (33) の位置を、目盛り (34) を使って移動させる。

10. ビス (32) 6 本を締め付ける。

# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT FINISHER

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.  
Output: 587 VA max.  
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cable/  
P/N: 305JA71610



## English

### Supplied parts

A Document finisher	1
B Latch catch	1
C Rail retainer	1
D Guide rail	1
E Binding screw M4 x 6	4

F Binding screw M4 x 14	2
G Guide plate	1
H Fixing plate F	1
I Fixing plate R	1
J Cover AT	1
K S-Tite screw M4 x 10	9
L Shoulder screw	1
M Curl eliminator	1

When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, use parts (G), (H), (I), (J), (K) and (L) supplied with the job separator.

For monochrome machines, part (M) is needed separately.

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Retoucheur de document	1
B Pontet du loquet	1
C Élément de rétention du rail	1
D Glissière	1
E Vis de raccordement M4 x 6	4

F Vis de raccordement M4 x 14	2
G Plaque guide	1
H Plaque de fixation avant	1
I Plaque de fixation arrière	1
J Couvercle AT	1
K Vis S-Tite M4 x 10	9
L Vis d'épaule	1
M Élément d'élimination des boucles	1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de documents sur une MFP polychrome, les pièces (G), (H), (I), (J), (K) et (L) avec le séparateur de travaux sont requises.

Sur les machines monochromes, il faut utiliser la pièce (M) séparément.

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Finalizador de documentos	1
B Cerrojo	1
C Retén del carril	1
D Carril guía	1
E Tornillo de sujeción M4 x 6	4

F Tornillo de sujeción M4 x 14	2
G Placa guía	1
H Placa de fijación F	1
I Placa de fijación R	1
J Cubierta AT	1
K Tornillo S-Tite M4 x 10	9
L Tornillo de hombro	1
M Eliminador de enrollado	1

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una MFP a todo color serán necesarias las partes (G), (H), (I), (J), (K), y (L) suministradas con el separador de tareas.

Para las máquinas monocromáticas, es necesario por separado la pieza (M). Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Dokument Finishers	1
B Riegelschloßbausatz	1
C Schienenhalterungseinheit	1
D Führungsschieneneneinheit	1
E Verbundschraube M4 x 6	4

F Verbundschraube M4 x 14	2
G Führungsplatte	1
H Fixierplatte F	1
I Fixierplatte R	1
J Abdeckung AT	1
K S-Tite-Schraube M4 x 10	9
L Bundschraube	1
M Glättungseinrichtung	1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Farbmultifunktionsgerät angebracht wird, sind die Teile (G), (H), (I), (J), (K) und (L), die mit dem Jobtrenner geliefert werden erforderlich.

Für Monochrommaschinen wird Teil (M) getrennt benötigt. Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

## Italiano

### Parti fornite

A Finitrice di documenti	1
B Dispositivo di arresto	1
C Fermo della guida	1
D Guida della rotaia	1
E Vite di serraggio M4 x 6	4

F Vite di serraggio M4 x 14	2
G Piastra della guida	1
H Piastra di fissaggio F	1
I Piastra di fissaggio R	1
J Coperchio AT	1
K Vite S-Tite M4 x 10	9
L Vite a colletto	1
M Eliminatore di pieghe	1

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un MFP a colori, sono necessarie le parti (G), (H), (I), (J), (K) e (L) fornite in dotazione con il separatore dei lavori.

Per le macchine in bianco e nero, separatamente è necessaria la parte (M). Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

## 简体中文

### 附属品

A 装订器	1
B 挂钩支架	1
C 轨道座	1
D 导向轨道	1
E M4 x 6 固结螺钉	4

F M4 x 14 固结螺钉	2
G 导向板	1
H 固定板 F	1
I 固定板 R	1
J 盖板 AT	1
K 紧固螺钉 M4 x 10S	9
L 阶梯螺钉	1
M 防卷曲部件	1

全彩色 MFP 上安装装订器时, 请使用作业分离器上附属的部件 (G)、(H)、(I)、(J)、(K) 和 (L)。

黑白机时, 不需要安装 (M) 部件。如果同部品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必取下。

www.tonerplus.com.ua

## 日本語

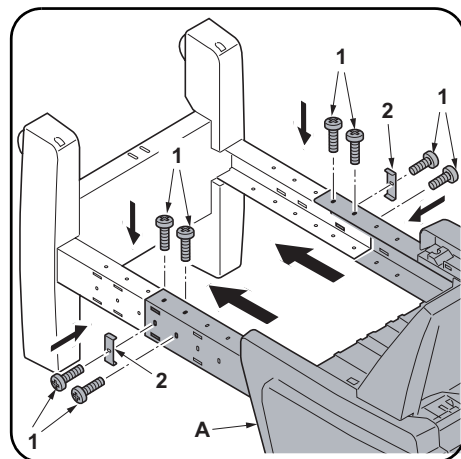
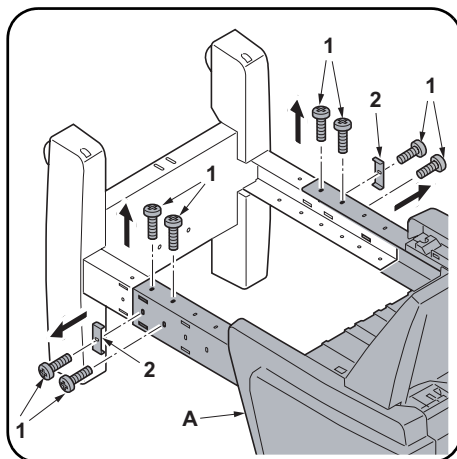
### 同梱品

A ドキュメントフィニッシャー	1
B ラッチ受け板	1
C レール取付板	1
D ガイドレール	1
E ビス M4 x 6 バインド	4

F ビス M4 x 14 バインド	2
G ガイド板	1
H 固定板 F	1
I 固定板 R	1
J カバー AT	1
K ビス M4 x 10 S タイト	9
L 段付きビス	1
M デカーラー	1

フルカラー-MFP 機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合、ジョブセパレータに付属する (G)、(H)、(I)、(J)、(K)、(L) が必要となる。

モノクロ機では、(M) が別途必要です。同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



### Procedure

Before installing the document finisher, first attach the job separator.  
Be sure to turn the MFP main power switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the document finisher.

### [Steps 1 to 5 below are only for full-color machines.]

1. Place the document finisher (A) sideways, remove the eight screws (1), and remove the two pieces of fittings (2).

2. To align the document finisher with the paper outlet of the MFP, slide the legs of the document finisher (A) to the uppermost positions indicated in the illustration, attach the two pieces of fittings (2) that have been removed in step 1, and secure them using the eight screws (1).

### Procédure

Avant d'installer le retoucheur de document, fixer d'abord le séparateur de travaux.  
Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du retoucheur de document.

### [Les étapes 1 à 5 ci-dessous concernent les machines entièrement en couleurs seulement.]

1. Placer le retoucheur de document (A) sur le côté, retirer les huit vis (1), et retirer les deux pièces de fixation (2).

2. Pour aligner le retoucheur de document sur la sortie de papier du MFP, faire glisser les pieds du retoucheur de document (A) jusqu'aux positions les plus hautes indiquées sur l'illustration, fixer les deux pièces de fixation (2) qui avaient été retirées auparavant à l'étape 1, et les fixer à l'aide des huit vis (1).

### Procedimiento

Antes de instalar el finalizador de documentos, coloque primero el separador de trabajos.  
Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación del MFP de la toma de corriente de la pared, antes de empezar a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

### [Los pasos 1 a 5 a continuación son solo para máquinas a todo color.]

1. Apoye el finalizador de documentos (A) sobre un lado, saque los ocho tornillos (1) y saque dos piezas de herrajes (2).

2. Para alinear el finalizador de documentos con la salida de papel del MFP, deslice las patas del finalizador de documentos (A) a las posiciones superiores indicadas en la figura, instale las dos piezas de herrajes (2) desmontadas en el paso 1 y asegúrelos con los ocho tornillos (1).

### Verfahren

Vor dem Installieren des Dokument Finishers ist zuerst der Jobtrenner anzubringen.  
Schalten Sie den MFP-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den MFP-Netzstecker von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Dokument Finishers beginnen.

### [Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 5 gelten nur für Vollfarbemaschinen.]

1. Den Dokument Finisher (A) auf die Seite legen, die acht Schrauben (1) entfernen, und die zwei Befestigungsteile (2) abnehmen.

2. Um den Dokument Finisher auf den Papierausslass des MFP auszurichten, die Beine des Dokument Finishers (A) auf die in der Abbildung gezeigte oberste Position schieben, dann die zwei in Schritt 1 entfernten Befestigungsteile (2) anbringen und mit den acht Schrauben (1) befestigen.

### Procedura

Prima di installare la finitrice di documenti, installare prima il separatore dei lavori.  
Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione della finitrice di documenti, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e disinserire la spina dell'MFP dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

### [I seguenti passi da 1 a 5 sono solo per le macchine a colori.]

1. Collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) lateralmente, rimuovere le otto viti (1) e rimuovere i due pezzi di raccordo (2).

2. Per allineare la finitrice di documenti con l'uscita della carta dell'MFP, fare scivolare i piedini della finitrice di documenti (A) sulle posizioni più in alto indicate nel disegno, montare i due pezzi di raccordo (2) che sono stati rimossi nel passo 1 e fissarli utilizzando le otto viti (1).

### 安裝步驟

安裝裝訂器前，首先安裝作業分離器。  
當安裝裝訂器時，必須事先將 MFP 主機的總電源关掉並將 MFP 主機的電源插頭從插座上拔掉。

### [步驟 1 ~ 5 仅限于全彩色机]

1. 將裝訂器 (A) 橫向放置，卸下 8 個螺釘 (1)，然後，取下 2 個固定件 (2)。

2. 為了對准主機排紙口，先將裝訂器 (A) 的機腳滑動到最上面的位置（如圖所示的位置），然後，安裝在步驟 1 取下的 2 個固定件 (2)，并用 8 個螺釘 (1) 加以固定。

**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

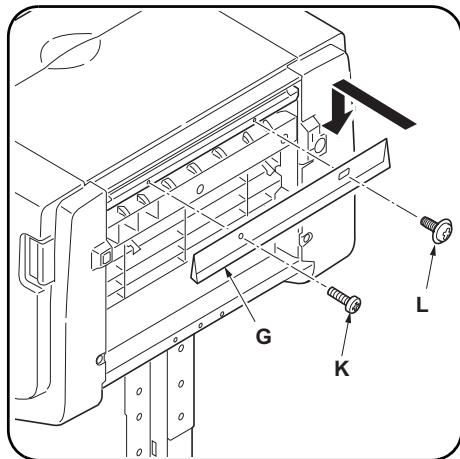
### 取付手順

ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける際には、先にジョブセパレータを装着すること。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなうこと。

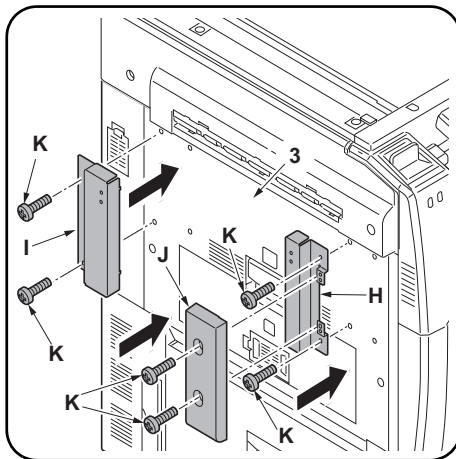
### [手順 1 ~ 5 はフルカラー機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) を横向きにおき、ビス (1) 8 本を外し、固定金具 (2) 2 個を取り外す。

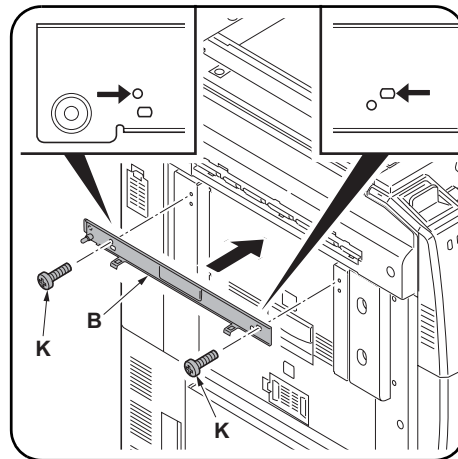
2. 本体用紙排出口に合わせる為、ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の脚を最上の位置 (図の位置) までスライドさせ、手順 1 で取り外した固定金具 (2) 2 個を取り付け、ビス (1) 8 本で固定する。



3. Secure the guide plate (G) using the shoulder screw (L) and an S Tite screw M4 x 10 (K).



4. Fit the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) to the left cover (3) using two S Tite screws M4 x 10 (K) for each and fit the cover AT (J) to the fixing plate F (H) using two S Tite screws M4 x 10 (K).



5. Fit the latch catch (B) to the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) using two S Tite screws M4 x 10 (K). Attach with the upper screw holes underneath fixing plates F (H) and R (I).  
**When using a full-color machine: Proceed to step 7 on page 5**

3. Fixez la plaque guide (G) à l'aide de la vis d'épaule (L) et d'une vis S Tite M4 x 10 (K).

4. Fixer la plaque de fixation avant (H) et la plaque de fixation arrière (I) sur le couvercle de gauche (3) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 x 10 (K) chaque et fixer le couvercle AT (J) sur la plaque de fixation avant (H) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 x 10 (K).

5. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) sur la plaque de fixation avant (H) et sur la plaque de fixation arrière (I) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 x 10 (K). Fixer à partir des trous de vis supérieurs se trouvant sous les plaques de fixation avant (H) et arrière (I).

**Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs: passer à l'étape 7 de la page 5**

3. Asegure la placa guía (G) utilizando el tornillo de hombro (L) y un tornillo S Tite M4 x 10 (K).

4. Encaje la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) en la cubierta izquierda (3) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 x 10 (K) para cada una y encaje la cubierta AT (J) en la placa de fijación F (H) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 x 10 (K).

5. Encaje el cerrojo (B) en la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) utilizando los dos tornillos S Tite M4 x 10 (K). Fije con los orificios para tornillos superiores debajo de las placas de fijación F (H) y R (I).

**Cuando utilice una máquina a todo color: Vaya al paso 7 de la página 5**

3. Die Führungsplatte (G) mit der Bundschraube (L) und einer S-Tite-Schraube M4 x 10 (K) befestigen.

4. Die Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) mit je zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 x 10 (K) an der linken Abdeckung (3) anbringen, und die Abdeckung AT (J) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 x 10 (K) an der Fixierplatte F (H) anbringen.

5. Die Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 x 10 (K) an der Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) anbringen. Mit den oberen Schraublöchern unter den Fixierplatten F (H) und R (I) anbringen.

**Bei Verwendung eines Vollfarbenkopierers: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 7 auf Seite 5 weiter**

3. Fissare la piastra della guida (G) utilizzando la vite a colletto (L) e la vite S Tite M4 x 10 (K).

4. Montare la piastra di fissaggio F (H) e la piastra di fissaggio R (I) sul coperchio sinistro (3) usando due vite S Tite M4 x 10 (K) per ciascuna di esse e montare il coperchio AT (J) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) usando due vite S Tite M4 x 10 (K).

5. Montare il dispositivo di arresto (B) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) e sulla piastra di fissaggio R (I) usando due vite S Tite M4 x 10 (K). Collegare con i fori per le viti superiori, sotto le piastre di fissaggio F (H) e R (I).

**IN caso si utilizzi un macchinario a colori: Procedere con il punto 7 a pagina 5**

3. 在用阶梯螺钉 (L) 和紧固螺钉 M4 x 10S (K) 各 1 个固定导板 (G)。

4. 将固定板 F (H) 和固定板 R (I) 分别用 2 个紧固螺钉 M4 x 10S (K) 固定在左盖板 (3) 上, 将盖板 AT (J) 用 2 个紧固螺钉 M4 x 10S (K) 固定在固定板 F (H) 上。

5. 挂钩承支架 (B) 用 2 个紧固螺丝 M4 x 10S (K) 固定在固定板 F (H) 和固定板 R (I) 上。把固定板 F (H) 和 R (I) 固定在上侧的螺丝孔处。

**使用全彩色机时: 进行第 5 页上的第 7 步**

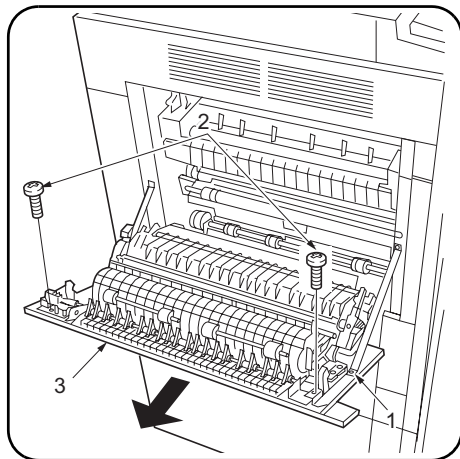
**TONER**

3. ガイド板 (G) を段付きビス (L) とビス M4 x 10S タイプ (K) 各 1 本で固定する。

4. 固定板 F (H) と固定板 R (I) を左カバー (3) にビス M4 x 10S タイプ (K) 各 2 本で固定し、カバー AT (J) をビス M4 x 10S タイプ (K) 2 本で固定板 F (H) に固定する。

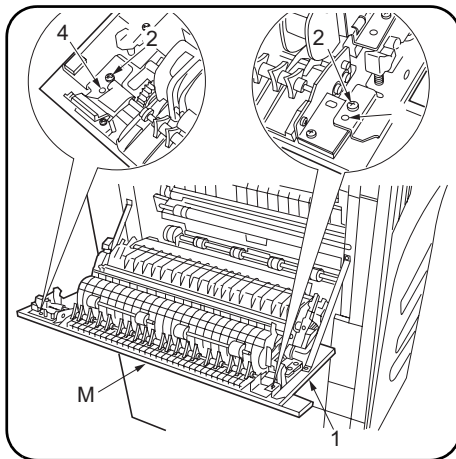
5. ラッチ受け板 (B) をビス M4 x 10S タイプ (K) 2 本で固定板 F (H) と固定板 R (I) に固定する。固定板 F (H) と固定板 R (I) の上側のビス穴で固定すること。

**フルカラー機の場合: 5 ページ手順 7 へ進む。**

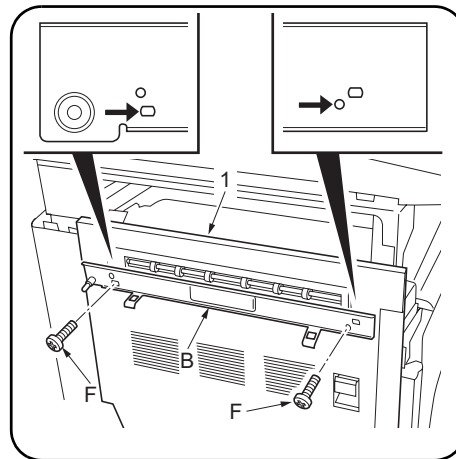


**[Steps 1 to 6 below are only for monochrome machines.]**

1. Open the eject cover (1) of the MFP or the printer.
2. Remove the two screws (2) securing the feedshift guide assembly (3) and then the assembly.



3. Fit the curl eliminator (M) to the eject cover (1) such that the projections (4) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (M).
4. Secure the curl eliminator (M) using the two screws (2) removed in step 2.



5. Close the eject cover (1).
6. Fit the latch catch (B) to the eject cover (1) using two M4 x 10 binding screws (F).

**[Les étapes 1 à 6 ci-dessous concernent les machines monochromes seulement.]**

1. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (1) du MFP ou imprimante.
2. Retirer les deux vis (2) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (3) puis retirer l'assemblage.

3. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (M) au couvercle d'éjection (1) de telle façon que les projections (4) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de cet élément (M).
4. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (M) à l'aide des deux vis (2) retirées à l'étape 2.

5. Fermer le couvercle d'éjection (1).
6. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) au couvercle d'éjection (1) à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 x 10 (F).

**[Los pasos 1 a 6 a continuación son sólo para máquinas monocromáticas.]**

1. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (1) del MFP o impresora.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (2) que aseguran el ensamble guía de la unidad de cambio de alimentación de papel (3) y luego el ensamble.

3. Coloque el eliminador de enrollamiento (M) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) de modo que las proyecciones (4) de la cubierta encajen en los dos extremos del eliminador de enrollamiento (M).
4. Asegure el eliminador de enrollamiento (M) usando los dos tornillos (2) que quitó en el paso 2.

5. Cierre la cubierta de expulsión (1).
6. Coloque el cerrojo (B) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 x 10 (F).

**[Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 6 gelten nur für Monochrommaschinen.]**

1. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1) des MFP oder Drucker.
2. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (2), die den Zuführungswechsel-Bausatz (3) befestigen und dann den Bausatz.

3. Bringen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (M) so an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an, daß die Vorsprünge (4) auf der Abdeckung in die zwei Enden des Wellenverhinderers (M) passen.
4. Befestigen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (M) mittels der in Schritt 2 entfernten zwei Schrauben (2).

5. Schliessen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1).
6. Bringen Sie den Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mittels der zwei M4 x 10 Verbundschrauben (F) an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an.

**[I seguenti passi da 1 a 6 sono solo per le macchine in bianco e nero.]**

1. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (1) dell'MFP o stampatore.
2. Rimuovere le due viti (2) che fissano il gruppo di guida di cambio alimentazione (3) e quindi il gruppo.

3. Inserire l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (M) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) in modo tale che le proiezioni (4) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (M).
4. Fissare l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (M) utilizzando le due viti (2) rimosse al punto 2.

5. Chiudere la copertura dell'uscita carta (1).
6. Inserire il dispositivo di arresto (B) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) utilizzando due viti di serraggio M4 x 10 (F).

**[ 步骤 1 ~ 6 仅限于黑白机 ]**

1. 将 MFP 或打印机的出纸盖板 (1) 打开。
2. 将两个小螺钉 (2) 摘下, 并将分支导向组件 (3) 卸下。

3. 将带凸肩压板的凸部 (4) 嵌入防卷曲部件 (M) 两端后, 将防卷曲部件 (M) 安装于出纸盖板 (1) 上。
4. 用依步骤 2 摘下的两个小螺钉 (2) 来固定防卷曲部件 (M)。

5. 将出纸盖板 (1) 关上。
6. 用两个 M4 x 10 固结螺钉 (F) 将挂钩承支架 (B) 安装于出纸盖板 (1) 上。

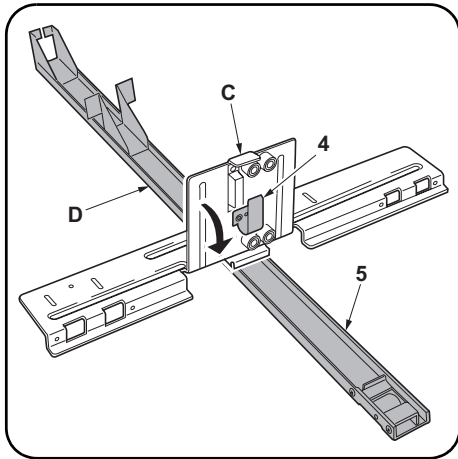
**TONER**

**[ 手順 1 ~ 6 はモノクロ機のみ ]**

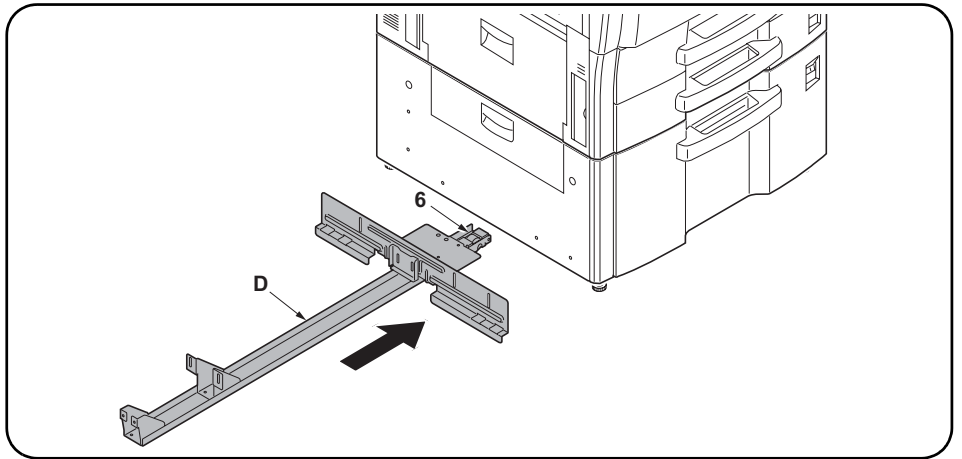
1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の排出カバー (1) を開く。
2. ビス (2) 2 本を外し、分岐ガイド組立 (3) を取り外す。

3. デカーラー (M) の両端に半押し (4) がはまる位置で、デカーラー (M) を排出カバー (1) に取り付ける。
4. 手順 2 で外したビス (2) 2 本でデカーラー (M) を固定する。

5. 排出カバー (1) を閉じる。
6. ラッチ受け板 (B) をビス M4 x 10 バインド (F) 2 本で排出カバー (1) に取り付ける。



7. Tip the rail retainer (C) over in the direction of the arrow so that the retainer fits into the groove in the guide rail (D). Ensure that the plate spring (4) fits into the groove and that the edge (5) of the guide rail (D) fits between the rollers behind the rail retainer (C).



8. Orient the guide rail (D) such that its pulley (6) is positioned toward the MFP.

7. Retourner l'élément de rétention du rail (C) dans la direction de la flèche de sorte que l'élément de rétention s'insère dans la rainure de la glissière (D). S'assurer que le ressort de plaque (4) s'insère dans la rainure et que le bord (5) de la glissière (D) s'insère entre les rouleaux se trouvant derrière l'élément de rétention du rail (C).

8. Orienter la glissière (D) de manière que sa poulie (6) soit orientée vers le MFP.

7. Incline el retén del carril (C) en la dirección de la flecha de forma tal que el retén encaje en la acanaladura del carril guía (D). Asegúrese de que el resorte de la placa (4) encaje en la acanaladura y de que el borde (5) del carril guía (D) encaje entre los rodillos detrás del retén del carril (C).

8. Oriente el carril guía (D) de modo que su polea (6) se encuentre ubicada hacia el MFP.

7. Die Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) so weit in Pfeilrichtung neigen, dass die Halterung in die Rille der Führungsschieneneneinheit (D) greift. Darauf achten, dass die Tellerfeder (4) in die Rille passt, und dass die Kante (5) der Führungsschieneneneinheit (D) zwischen den Rollen auf der Rückseite der Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) sitzt.

8. Richten Sie die Führungsschiene (D) so aus, daß die Riemenscheibe (6) zum MFP ausgerichtet ist.

7. Capovolgere il fermo della guida (C) nella direzione della freccia, in modo che il fermo si inserisca nella scanalatura della guida della rotaia (D). Assicurarsi che la molla della piastra (4) si inserisca nella scanalatura, e che il bordo (5) della guida della rotaia (D) si inserisca tra i rulli dietro il fermo della guida (C).

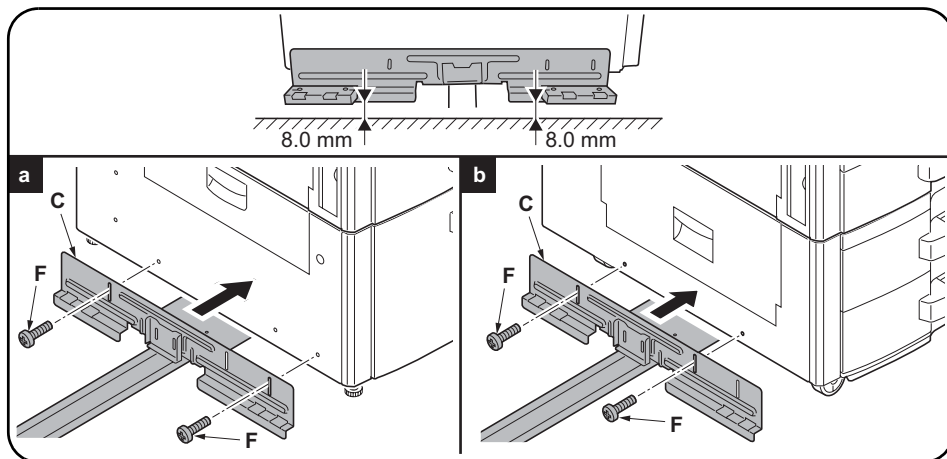
8. Orientare la guida della rotaia (D) in modo da posizionare la puleggia (6) in direzione dell'MFP.

7. 将轨道座 (C) 沿箭头所示方向翻倒, 使轨道座嵌入导向轨道 (D) 的凹槽中。请确保板簧 (4) 嵌入凹槽中, 并且导向轨道 (D) 的边缘 (5) 嵌入轨道座 (C) 背面的滚轮和滚轮中间。

8. 使导向轨道 (D) 的滚轮部 (6) 朝向 MFP 主机。

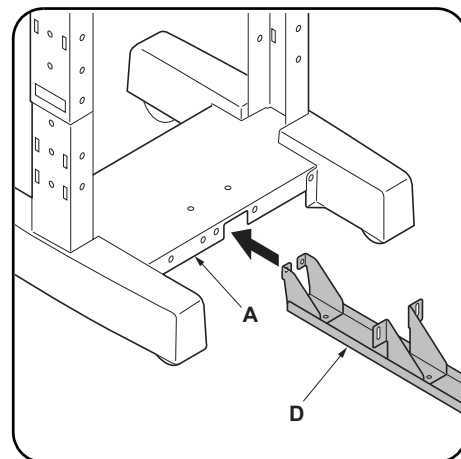
7. レール取付板 (C) を矢印方向に倒し、レール取付板 (C) をガイドレール (D) の溝に合わせてはめ込む。板バネ部 (4) が溝の中に入り、レール取付板 (C) 裏側のコロとコロの間にガイドレール (D) の端 (5) が入るようにする。

8. ガイドレール (D) のコロ部 (6) を MFP 本体側に向ける。



**9. Secure the rail retainer (C) to the MFP using two M4 x 10 binding screws (F) such that the front and the rear gaps between the floor and the rail retainer (C) are approximately 8.0 mm.**

- a: When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used  
b: When the paper feeder of 500 sheets x 2 is used



**10. Insert the guide rail (D) into the bottom of the document finisher (A).**

**9. Fixer l'élément de rétention du rail (C) au MFP à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 x 10 (F) de manière que les écarts avant et arrière entre le sol et l'élément de rétention du rail (C) soient d'environ 8.0 mm.**

- a: Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles  
b: Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 500 feuilles x 2

**10. Insérer la glissière (D) en bas du retoucheur de document (A).**

**9. Asegure el retén del carril (C) a el MFP usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 x 10 (F) de modo que los espacios frontal y trasero entre el piso y el retén del carril (C) sean de aproximadamente 8.0 mm.**

- a: Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 3000 hojas  
b: Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 500 hojas x 2

**10. Inserte el carril de guía (D) en la parte inferior del finalizador de documentos (A).**

**9. Bringen Sie die Schienenhalterung (C) am MFP mit zwei M4 x 10 Verbundschrauben (F) so an, daß die vorderen und hinteren Abstände zwischen Boden und Schienenhalterung (C) etwa 8.0 mm betragen.**

- a: Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter  
b: Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 500 Blätter x 2

**10. Die Führungsschiene (D) in das Unterteil des Dokument Finishers (A) einschieben.**

**9. Assicurare il fermo della guida (C) all'MFP utilizzando le due viti di serraggio M4 x 10 (F), in modo che la distanza anteriore e posteriore tra il pavimento ed il fermo della guida (C) sia di circa 8.0 mm.**

- a: Quando si utilizza l'alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli  
b: Quando si utilizza l'alimentatore di carta da 500 fogli x 2

**10. Inserire la guida della rotaia (D) nella parte inferiore della finitrice di documenti (A).**

**9. 用两个 M4 x 14 固结螺钉 (F) 将轨道座 (C) 固定于 MFP 主机上, 此时, 轨道座 (C) 与地板之间的距离应约为 8.0 毫米。**

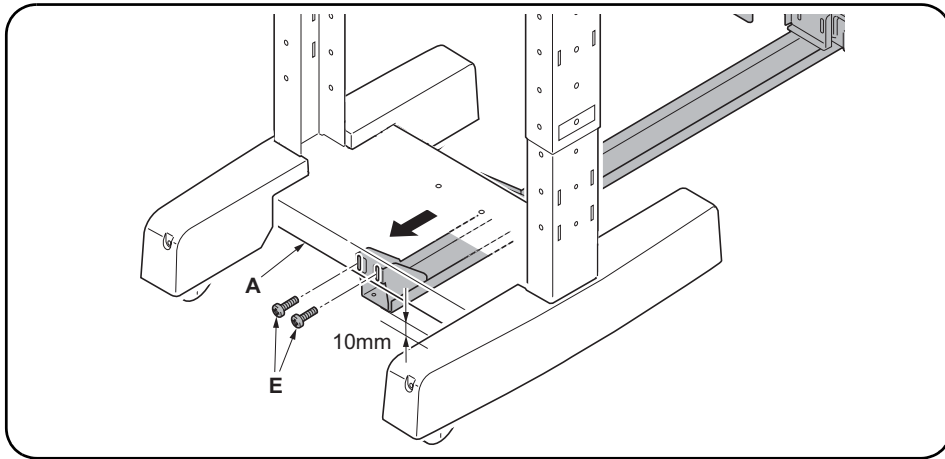
- a: 使用 3000 张供纸盒时  
b: 使用 500 张 x 2 个供纸盒时

**10. 将导向轨道 (D) 插入装订器 (A) 的底部。**

**9. レール取付板 (C) と床面の前後隙間が約 8.0mm になるように、レール取付板 (C) を MFP 本体にビス M4 x 14 バインド (F) 2 本で固定する。**

- a: 3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合  
b: 500 枚 x 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合

**10. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の底部にガイドレール (D) を挿入する。**

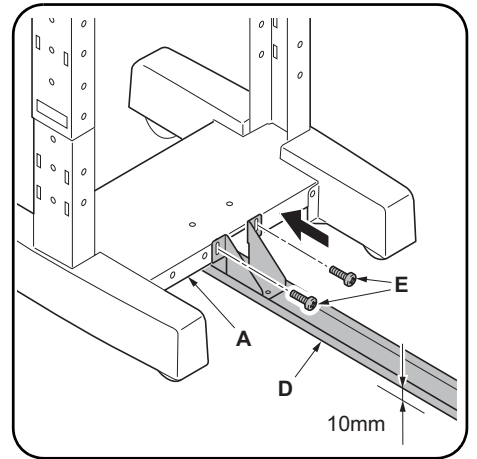


#### Fitting and adjusting the guide rail

11. While pressing the guide rail (D) to the document finisher (A) so that the gap between the guide rail (D) and the floor is approximately 10 mm, secure it using two M4 x 6 binding screws (E).

#### Note

If the guide rail is not properly adjusted, the guide rail may not move when the document finisher is separated.



12. Secure the guide rail (D) with the two M4 x 6 binding screws (E) so that there is a gap of approximately 10 mm between the rail and the floor.

#### Fixation et réglage de la glissière

11. Tout en pressant la glissière (D) contre le retoucheur de document (A) de façon que l'écart entre la glissière (D) et le sol soit d'environ 10 mm, la fixer à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 x 6 (E).

#### Remarque

Si la glissière n'est pas réglée correctement, la glissière risquera de ne pas se déplacer lorsque le retoucheur de document sera séparé.

12. Fixer la glissière (D) à l'aide des deux vis de fixation M4 x 6 (E) de sorte à ménager un espace d'environ 10 mm entre la glissière et le sol.

#### Fijación y ajuste del carril de guía

11. Mientras presiona el carril de guía (D) en el finalizador de documentos (A) para que la separación entre el carril de guía (D) y el piso sea de unos 10 mm, asegúrelo utilizando dos tornillos de fijación M4 x 6 (E).

#### Nota

Si el carril de guía no está bien ajustado, el carril de guía puede no moverse cuando se separa el finalizador de documentos.

12. Asegure el carril guía (D) con dos tornillos de sujeción M4 x 6 (E) de forma tal que exista un espacio de aproximadamente 10 mm entre el carril y el piso.

#### Anbringen und Einstellen der Führungsschieneneneinheit

11. Die Führungsschiene (D) gegen den Dokument Finisher (A) gedrückt halten, so dass der Abstand zwischen der Führungsschiene (D) und dem Boden ca. 10 mm beträgt, und mit zwei M4 x 6 Befestigungsschrauben (E) sichern.

#### Hinweis

Falls die Führungsschieneneneinheit nicht korrekt eingestellt ist, bewegt sie sich beim Trennen des Dokument Finishers eventuell nicht.

12. Die Führungsschieneneneinheit (D) mit den beiden M4 x 6 Verbundschrauben (E) so sichern, dass ein Abstand von etwa 10 mm zwischen Schiene und Boden vorhanden ist.

#### Montaggio e regolazione della guida della rotaia

11. Mentre si tiene premuta la guida della rotaia (D) alla finitrice di documenti (A) in modo che lo spazio tra la guida della rotaia (D) e il pavimento sia di circa 10 mm, fissarla a mezzo di due viti di serraggio M4 x 6 (E).

#### Nota

Se la guida della rotaia non è regolata correttamente, potrebbe non muoversi quando il separatore la finitrice di documenti verrà staccato.

12. Fissare la guida della rotaia (D) con le due viti di serraggio M4 x 6 (E) in modo che ci sia una distanza di circa 10 mm tra la rotaia e il pavimento.

#### 导向轨道的安装调整

11. 调整导向轨道 (D) 与地板之间的间距为 10 毫米左右, 将导向轨道 (D) 插入装订器 (A) 到底, 用两个 M4 x 6 固结螺钉 (E) 进行固定。

#### 注意

如果不能正确调整导向轨道的话, 在分离装订器时, 可能会发生导向轨道不能移动的情况。

12. 用 2 个 M4 x 6 固结螺钉 (E) 将导向轨道 (D) 固定, 确保轨道和地面之间有约 10 毫米的距离。

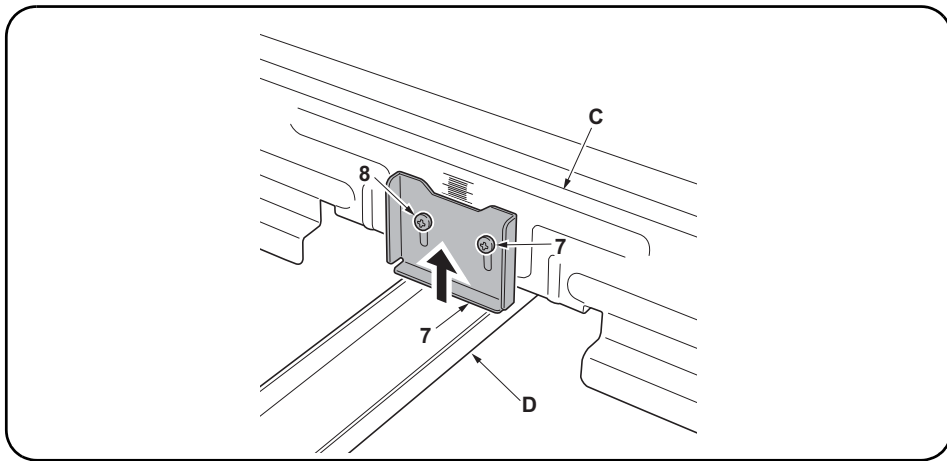
#### ガイドレールの取付調整

11. ガイドレール (D) と床面の隙間が約 10mm になるように、ガイドレール (D) をドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) に突き当てながら、ビス M4 x 6 バインド (E) 2 本で固定する。

#### 注意

正しく調整しないと、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの切り離し時、ガイドレールが動かない恐れがある。

12. ガイドレール (D) と床面の隙間が約 10mm になるように、ビス M4 x 6 バインド (E) 2 本で固定する。



13. Loosen temporarily the two screws (8) that secure the sheet metal (7) of the rail mounting plate (C) on the MFP, raise the sheet metal (7) by two divisions of the scale from the guide rail (D), and tighten the two screws (8).

**Note**

If the guide rail (D) is not adjusted correctly, it will not move and could cause the document finisher to fall over.

14. Slide the document finisher to engage it with the latch catch of the MFP. If the document finisher and the MFP do not engage securely, perform the following document finisher height adjustment.

13. Desserrer provisoirement les deux vis (8) qui fixent la feuille métallique (7) de la plaque de montage du rail (C) sur le MFP, élever la feuille métallique (7) de deux crans sur l'échelle de la glissière (D), puis resserrer les deux vis (8).

**Remarque**

Si la glissière (D) n'est pas ajustée proprement, elle ne va pas se déplacer et le retoucheur de document risque de tomber.

14. Faire glisser le retoucheur de document pour l'engager dans le pontet du loquet du MFP. Si le retoucheur de document et le MFP ne s'engagent pas correctement, effectuer le réglage de hauteur suivant sur le retoucheur de document.

13. Afloje temporalmente los dos tornillos (8) que aseguran la hoja de metal (7) de la placa de montaje de carril (C) en el MFP, levante la hoja de metal (7) con dos divisiones de la escala del carril de guía (D) y apriete los dos tornillos (8).

**Nota**

Si no se ajusta correctamente el carril guía (D), éste no se moverá y puede provocar que el finalizador de documentos se caiga.

14. Deslice el finalizador de documentos hasta que enganche con el cerrojo del MFP. Si el finalizador de documentos y el MFP no se acoplan de manera segura, realice el siguiente ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos.

13. Die zwei Schrauben (8), die das Blech (7) der Schienenmontageplatte (C) am MFP sichern, vorübergehend lösen, das Blech (7) um zwei Teilstriche der Skala von der Führungsschiene (D) aus anheben, und die zwei Schrauben (8) wieder anziehen.

**Hinweis**

Falls die Führungsschieneinheit (D) nicht ordnungsgemäß eingestellt ist, kann sie sich nicht bewegen und könnte dazu führen, dass der Dokument Finisher umfällt.

14. Den Dokument Finisher verschieben, um ihn mit dem Riegelschloßbausatz des MFP in Eingriff zu bringen. Wenn der Dokument Finisher und der MFP nicht richtig ineinander eingreifen, führen Sie die folgende Höheneinstellung für den Dokument Finisher aus.

13. Allentare temporaneamente le due viti (8) che fissano il foglio metallico (7) della piastra di montaggio della rotaia (C) dell'MFP, sollevare il foglio di metallo (7) di due posizioni sulla guida della rotaia (D) e serrare le due viti (8).

**Nota**

Se la guida della rotaia (D) non è regolata correttamente, essa non si muoverà e potrà causare la caduta della finitrice di documenti.

14. Fare scivolare la finitrice di documenti per farla innestare con il dispositivo di arresto dell'MFP. Qualora la finitrice di documenti e l'MFP non si innestino saldamente, osservare la seguente procedura di regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

13. 松动固定在 MFP 主机侧轨道座 (C) 的金属板 (7) 上的两支固接螺钉 (8), 在金属板 (7) 碰及导向轨道 (D) 的状态下, 抬升到第 2 个刻度的位置, 然后用两支螺钉 (8) 固定。

**注意**

如果没有正确调整导向轨道, 它将无法移动, 并有可能导致装订器倾覆。

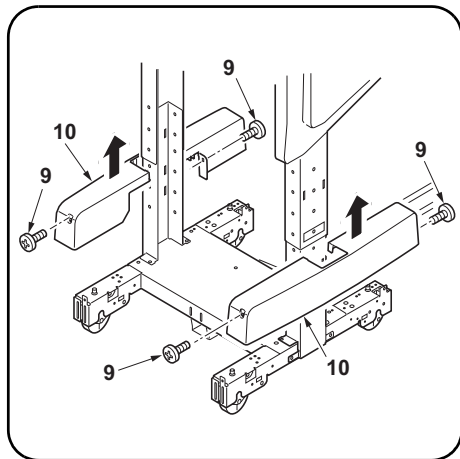
14. 滑动装订器并连接于 MFP 主机的挂钩支架上。  
如没有完全连接, 请按下述步骤调整装订器的高度。

13. MFP 本体側のレール取付板 (C) の板金 (7) を固定しているビス (8) 2 本をいったん緩め、板金 (7) をガイドレール (D) に当てた状態から 2 目盛り上の位置にあげて、ビス (8) 2 本を固定する。

**注意**

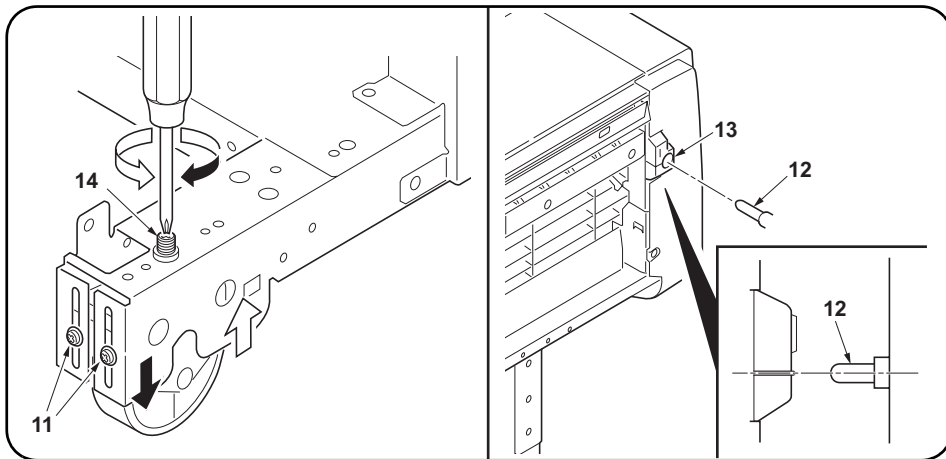
正しく調整しないと、ガイドレールが動かない。又ドキュメントフィニッシャが倒れる恐れがある。

14. ドキュメントフィニッシャをスライドさせて MFP 本体のラッチ受け板に連結させる。確実に連結しない場合は、次のドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整をおこなう。



### Adjusting the height of the document finisher

1. Remove two screws (9) and remove the covers (10) from the document finisher (A).



2. Loosen the two screws (11) on the rear right caster of the document finisher (A). Adjust the height of the rear right caster by turning its adjustment bolt (14) using a cross-headed screwdriver so that the axis of the pin (12) of the latch catch is aligned with the marking of the slot (13) of the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP (viewed from the machine front). Turning the adjustment bolt (14) clockwise lifts the document finisher (A), while turning it counterclockwise lowers the document finisher (A).

### Réglage de la hauteur du retoucheur de document

1. Déposer les deux vis (9) et les capots (10) du retoucheur de document (A).

2. Desserrer les deux vis (11) de la roulette arrière droite du retoucheur de document (A). Régler la hauteur de la roulette arrière droite en tournant son boulon de réglage (14) à l'aide d'un tournevis cruciforme de manière que l'axe de la broche (12) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur la marque de la fente (13) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP (vue à partir de l'avant de la machine). Si l'on tourne le boulon de réglage (14) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'élève; si on le tourne dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'abaisse.

### Ajuste de altura del finalizador de documentos

1. Quite los dos tornillos (9) y desmonte las cubiertas (10) del finalizador de documentos (A).

2. Afloje los dos tornillos (11) en la rueda trasera del finalizador de documentos (A). Ajuste la altura de la rueda trasera derecha girando su perno de ajuste (14) utilizando un destornillador de punta en cruz para que el eje del pasador (12) en el pestillo esté alineado con la marca de la ranura (13) del finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) esté unido a el MFP (vista del frente de la máquina). Al girar el perno de ajuste (14) en la dirección de las manecillas del reloj se levanta el finalizador de documentos (A) y al girar contra las manecillas del reloj baja el finalizador de documentos (A).

### Einstellen der Dokument Finisherhöhe

1. Die beiden Schrauben (9) entfernen und die Abdeckungen (10) vom Dokument Finisher (A) abnehmen.

2. Die zwei Schrauben (11) an der hinteren rechten Laufrolle des Dokument Finishers (A) lösen. Die Höhe der hinteren rechten Laufrolle durch Drehen ihrer Einstellschraube (14) mit einem Kreuzschlitzschraubenzieher so einstellen, dass die Achse des Stifts (12) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Markierung des Schlitzes (13) des Dokument Finishers (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP angesetzt ist (von der Gerätevorderseite gesehen). Durch Drehen der Einstellschraube (14) im Uhrzeigersinn wird der Dokument Finisher (A) angehoben, während er durch Drehen entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn abgesenkt wird.

### Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti

1. Rimuovere le due viti (9) e quindi rimuovere i coperchi (10) dalla finitrice di documenti (A).

2. Allentare le due viti (11) sulla ruota orientabile posteriore destra della finitrice di documenti (A). Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile posteriore destra ruotandone il suo bullone di regolazione (14) a mezzo di un cacciavite a croce, in modo che l'asse del perno (12) del dispositivo di arresto risulti allineato ai contrassegni del foro (13) della finitrice di documenti (A) una volta che la finitrice stessa (A) viene unita all'MFP (vista dal lato frontale della macchina). Ruotando il bullone di regolazione (14) in senso orario si solleva la finitrice di documenti (A), mentre ruotandolo in senso antiorario si abbassa la finitrice di documenti (A).

### [ 調整装订器的高度 ]

1. 拆下 2 个螺钉 (9)，然后从装订器 (A) 上拆下盖板 (10)。

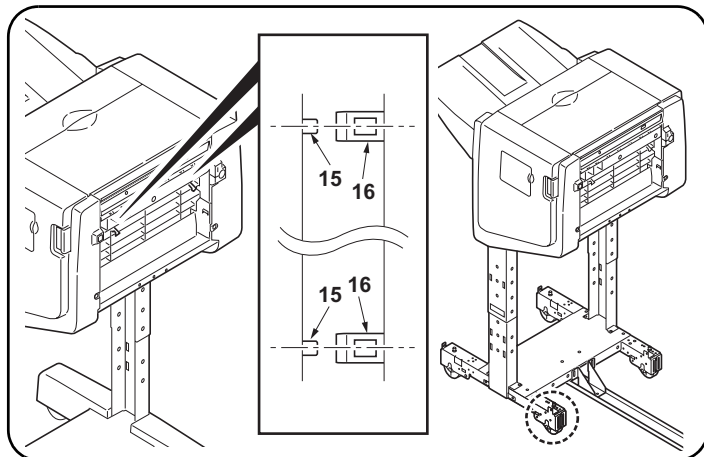
2. 将装订器 (A) 右后侧滚轮的两支固定螺钉 (11) 拧松。将装订器 (A) 与 MFP 主机连接，为了使 ( 从前面看 ) 挂钩承支架销 (12) 的中心与装订器 (A) 的长孔 (13) 的刻度相对准，用十字螺丝刀旋转调节用螺钉 (14)，对后右侧滚轮的高度进行调整。将调节用螺钉 (14) 往顺时针方向旋转时，可调高装订器 (A)，而往逆时针方向旋转螺钉时，则可调低高度。



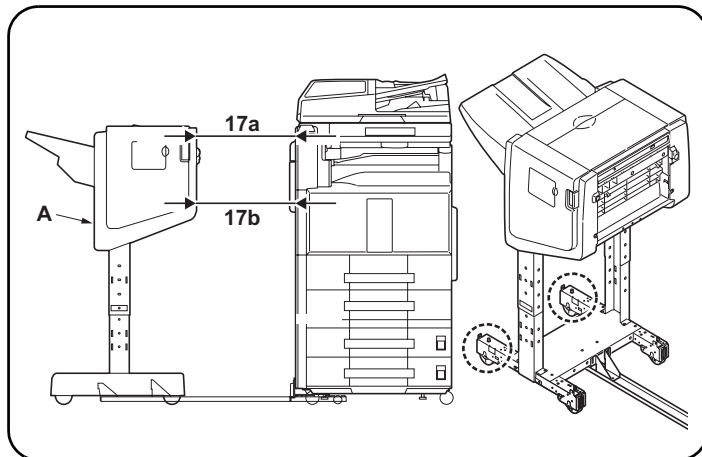
### [ ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整 ]

1. ビス (9) 各 2 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) のカバー (10) を取り外す。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) 右後のキャストの固定ビス (11) 2 本を緩める。ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を MFP 本体に連結し、前から見た時に、ラッチ受け板のピン (12) の中心が、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の長穴 (13) の刻印に合うように、プラスドライバーを用いて調整用ボルト (14) を回し、右後のキャストの高さ調整をおこなう。調整用ボルト (14) を時計方向に回すとドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) が上がり、反時計方向に回すと下がる。



3. Adjust the height of the front right caster in the same manner as in step 2 so that each center of the hooking portions (16) of the latch catch is aligned with the center of the two hooks (15) on the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP (viewed from above).



4. Adjust the height of the left two casters in the same manner as in step 2 so that the gaps (17a) and (17b) between the document finisher (A) and the MFP are the same when the document finisher (A) is detached from the MFP.
5. Reattach the removed parts to their original positions.

3. Régler la hauteur de la roulette avant droite en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que chacun des centres des parties d'accrochage (16) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur le centre des deux crochets (15) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP (vue à partir du haut).

4. Régler la hauteur des deux roulettes gauches en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que les écarts (17a) et (17b) entre le retoucheur de documents (A) et la MFP soient identiques lorsque le retoucheur de documents (A) est détaché de MFP.
5. Remettez les pièces enlevées à leur position d'origine.

3. Ajuste la altura de la rueda delantera derecha de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que cada centro de las partes de enganche (16) de cada pestillo esté alineado con el centro de los dos ganchos (15) en el finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está nido a el MFP (vista de arriba).

4. Ajuste la altura de las dos ruedas izquierdas de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que las separaciones (17a) y (17b) entre el finalizador de documentos (A) y la MFP sean las mismas cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está soltado de la MFP.
5. Vuelva a instalar las piezas desmontadas en sus posiciones originales.

3. Die Höhe der vorderen rechten Laufrolle auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Mitte der Rasten (16) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Mitte der zwei Haken (15) am Dokument Finisher (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP angesetzt ist (von oben gesehen).

4. Die Höhe der beiden linken Laufrollen auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Abstände (17a) und (17b) zwischen dem Dokument Finisher (A) und dem MFP gleich groß sind, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) vom MFP abgenommen wird.
5. Die entfernten Teile wieder an ihren ursprünglichen Positionen anbringen.

3. Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile anteriore destra allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che ciascun centro delle parti di aggancio (16) del dispositivo di arresto sia allineato al centro dei due ganci (15) della finitrice di documenti (A), una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene unita all'MFP (vista dall'alto).

4. Regolare l'altezza delle due ruote orientabili sinistre allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che le distanze (17a) e (17b) tra la finitrice di documenti (A) e l'MFP siano le stesse una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene separata dall'MFP.
5. Rimontare le parti rimosse nelle loro posizioni originali.

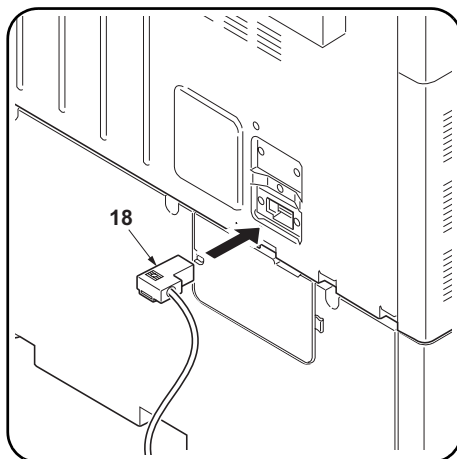
3. 将装订器 (A) 与 MFP 主机连接, 使 (从上面看时) 装订器 (A) 的两个挂钩 (15) 与挂钩承支架的孔 (16) 中心相对准, 并按与步骤 2 相同的方法来调整前右侧滚轮的高度。

4. 按照步骤 2 中相同的方式调整左侧两个轮脚的高度, 使得装订器 (A) 和 MFP 主机之间的间隙 (17a) 和 (17b) 在从 MFP 主机上拆下装订器 (A) 时为相同的。
5. 卸下的部件按原样装上。

TONER

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を MFP 本体に連結し、上から見た時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) のフック (15) 2ヶ所とラッチ受け板の引っ掛け部 (16) の中心が合うように、手順 2 と同様に右前のキャスタの高さ調整をおこなう。

4. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を MFP 本体から切り離れた時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) と MFP 本体の間隔 (17a) (17b) が等しくなるように、手順 2 と同様に左側のキャスタ 2 カ所の高さ調整をおこなう。
5. 取り外した部品を元通りに取り付ける。



6. After completing the installation, return to pages 7 to 8 of the installation procedure and loosen the four M4 x 6 binding screws (E) in steps 11 to 12. Then loosen the two screws (8) in step 13 and adjust the guide rail installation.

#### Connecting the signal cable

1. Connect the signal cable (18) of the document finisher (A) to the MFP.

#### Operation check

1. Insert the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
2. Check that the paper is fed and that the document finisher (A) operates correctly.

6. Une fois l'installation terminée, revenir aux pages 7 et 8 du processus d'installation et desserrer les quatre vis de fixation M4 x 6 binding screws (E) aux étapes 11 et 12. Desserrer ensuite les deux vis (8) à l'étape 13 et régler l'installation de la glissière.

#### Connexion du câble d'interconnexion

1. Connecter le câble d'interconnexion (18) du retoucheur de document (A) au MFP.

#### Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP ou imprimante dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Vérifier que le papier est fourni et que le retoucheur de document (A) fonctionne correctement.

6. Después de finalizada la instalación, vuelva a las páginas 7 a 8 del procedimiento de instalación y afloje los cuatro tornillos de sujeción M4 x 6 (E) de los pasos 11 y 12. Después, afloje los dos tornillos (8) del paso 13 y ajuste la instalación del carril guía.

#### Conexión del cable de señal

1. Conecte el cable de señal (18) del finalizador de documentos (A) en el MFP.

#### Comprobación operacional

1. Inserte el enchufe del MFP o impresora en el receptáculo de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Asegúrese de que avance el papel y verifique que el finalizador de documentos (A) funcione correctamente.

6. Nach Abschluss der Installation noch einmal zu den Seiten 7 bis 8 der Installationsprozedur zurückkehren und die vier M4 x 6 Verbundschrauben (E) gemäß Schritt 11 bis 12 lösen. Dann die beiden Schrauben (8) in Schritt 13 lösen und die Befestigungsposition der Führungsschieneneneinheit korrigieren.

#### Anschließen des Signalkabels

1. Das Signalkabel (18) des Dokument Finishers (A) an den MFP anschließen.

#### Betriebstest

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP oder Drucker in die Netzsteckdose ein und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter ein.
2. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert und dass der Dokument Finisher (A) einwandfrei funktioniert.

6. Dopo aver completato il montaggio, ritornare alle pagine 7 e 8 della procedura di installazione e allentare le quattro viti di serraggio M4 x 6 (E) nei passi 11 e 12. Quindi allentare le due viti (8) nel passo 13 e regolare l'installazione della guida della rotaia.

#### Connessione del cavo del segnale

1. Collegare il cavo del segnale (18) della finitrice di documenti (A) all'MFP.

#### Controllo del funzionamento

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP o stampatore nella presa di rete e quindi premere il pulsante generale di accensione.
2. Verificare che la carta di prova sia alimentata e controllare che la finitrice di documenti (A) funzioni correttamente.

6. 安装完成后, 返回安装手册的第 7、8 页, 把步骤 11 ~ 12 的 4 个 M4x6 固结螺钉 (E) 和步骤 13 中的 2 个螺钉 (8) 拧松后, 对导向轨道进行安装调整。

#### [ 连接信号电线 ]

1. 装订器 (A) 的信号电线 (18) 连接在 MFP 主机上。

#### [ 确认运作 ]

1. 将 MFP 主机的电源插头插入插座后, 开启总电源。
2. 确认已经送纸并且装订器 (A) 运行正常。

TONER

6. 作業終了後、設置手順書の 7 ~ 8 頁に戻り、手順 11 ~ 12 のビス M4 x 6 バインド (E) 4 本及び、手順 13 のビス (8) 2 本を緩め、ガイドレールの取付調整をおこなう。

#### [ 信号線の接続 ]

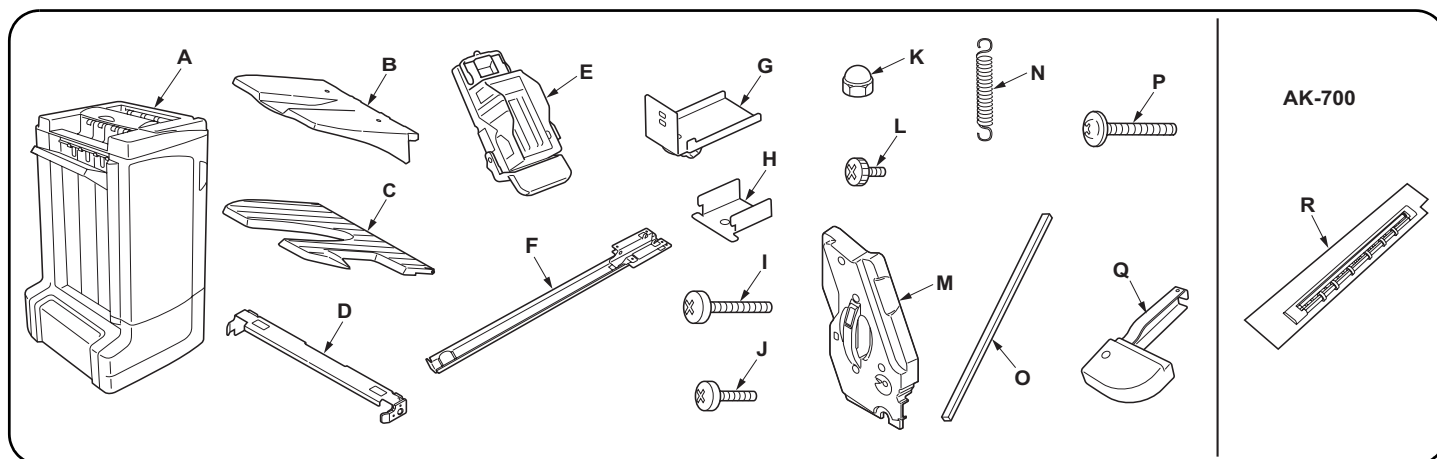
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の信号線 (18) を MFP 本体に接続する。

#### [ 動作確認 ]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. 通紙確認をおこない、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) が正常に動作することを確認する。

# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 3000 SHEETS DOCUMENT FINISHER

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.  
Output: 587 VA max.  
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cable/  
P/N: 303LT46210



## English

### Supplied parts

A Document finisher	1
B Tray A	1
C Tray B	1
D Connecting plate	1
E Staple cartridge	1

F Base slider A	1
G Base slider B	1
H Plate	1
I M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw	7
J M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw	4
K Nut	2
L Pin	2
M Internal tray cover	1

N Spring hook	1
O Sponge	1
P M4 × 14TP coarse thread screw	1
Q Plate foot R	1

When installing the document finisher to the monochrome machine

R Curl eliminator	1
-------------------	---

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Retoucheur de document	1
B Bac A	1
C Bac B	1
D Plaque de connexion	1
E Cartouche d'agrafes	1

F Règle de base A	1
G Règle de base B	1
H Plaque	1
I Vis S taraudée M4 × 10	7
J Vis S taraudée M4 × 8	4
K Erou	2
L Broche	2
M Capot de bac interne	1

N Crochet de ressort	1
O Eponge	1
P Vis à filet normal M4 x 14TP	1
Q Pied de plaque R	1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine monochrome

R L'élément d'élimination des boucles	1
---------------------------------------	---

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Finalizador de documentos	1
B Bandeja A	1
C Bandeja B	1
D Placa de conexión	1
E Cartucho de grapas	1

F Deslizador A	1
G Deslizador B	1
H Placa	1
I Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10	7
J Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8	4
K Tuerca	2
L Pasador	2
M Cubierta de bandeja interna	1

N Gancho de resorte	1
O Esponja	1
P Tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP	1
Q Pedal R	1

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una máquina de blanco y negro

R Eliminador de curvatura del papel	1
-------------------------------------	---

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Dokument-Finisher	1
B Fach A	1
C Fach B	1
D Verbindungsplatte	1
E Heftklammerkassette	1

F Basis-Schieber A	1
G Basis-Schieber B	1
H Platte	1
I M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube	7
J M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube	4
K Mutter	2
L Stift	2
M Innenfach	1

N Federhaken	1
O Schwamm	1
P M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube	1
Q Plattenfuß R	1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf der Monochrommaschine angebracht wird

R Glättungseinrichtung	1
------------------------	---

## Italiano

### Parti di fornitura

A Finitrice di documenti	1
B Vassoio A	1
C Vassoio B	1
D Piastra di connessione	1
E Cartuccia pinzatrice	1

F Scivolo di base A	1
G Scivolo di base B	1
H Piastra	1
I Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10	7
J Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 8	4
K Dad	2
L Perno	2
M Pannello del vassoio interno	1

N Gancio a molla	1
O Spugna	1
P Vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP	1
Q Piedino di sostegno R	1

In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un apparecchio in bianco e nero

R L'eliminatore di arricciature	1
---------------------------------	---

## 简体中文

### 附属品

A 装订器	1
B 托盘 A	1
C 托盘 B	1
D 连接板	1
E 订书针盒	1

F 底座滑板 A	1
G 底座滑板 B	1
H 板	1
I M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝	7
J M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝	4
K 螺母	2
L 销	2
M 内部托盘盖板	1

N 弹簧挂钩	1
O 海绵	1
P M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝	1
Q 将板脚座 R	1

将装订器安装至黑白机器时

R 防纸张卷曲装置	1
-----------	---

www.tonerplus.com.ua

## 日本語

### 同梱品

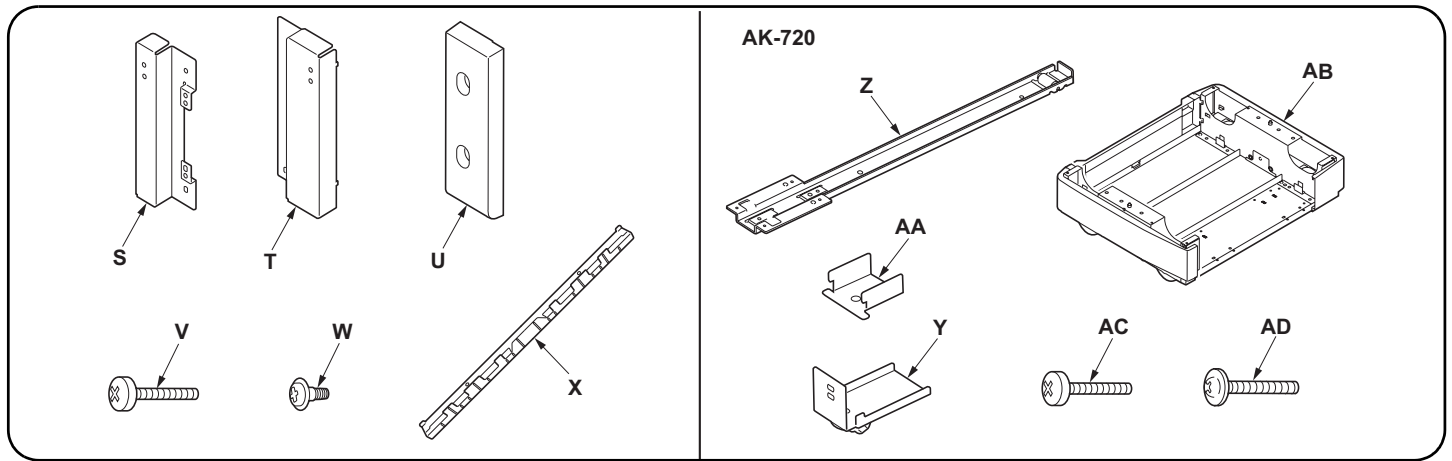
A ドキュメントフィニッシャー	1
B トレイ A	1
C トレイ B	1
D 連結板	1
E ステープルカートリッジ	1

F ベーススライダ A	1
G ベーススライダ B	1
H プレート	1
I ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S	7
J ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S	4
K ナット	2
L ピン	2
M 内部トレイカバー	1

N バネフック	1
O スポンジ	1
P ビス M4 × 14TP 並目	1
Q プレートフット R	1

モノクロ機へドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合

R デカーラ	1
--------	---



When installing the document finisher, (S), (T), (U) and eight (V) supplied with the job separator are needed.

Remaining parts (V), (W), and (X) are required only when installing DF-720.

S Fixing plate F .....	1
T Fixing plate R .....	1
U Cover AT .....	1

V M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw .....	9
W Shoulder screw .....	1
X Guide plate .....	1

When installing the document finisher, (Y), (Z), (AA), (AB), (AC) and (AD) are needed.

Y Base slider B .....	1
Z Base slider V .....	1

AA Plate .....	1
AB Assembly base .....	1
AC M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw .....	8
AD M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw .....	1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de documents sur une MFP polychrome, les pièces (S), (T), (U) et 8 des 9 (V) fournies avec le séparateur de travaux sont requises. Les pièces restantes (V), (W) et (X) ne sont requises que pour l'installation de DF-720.

S Plaque de fixation avant .....	1
T Plaque de fixation arrière .....	1

U Couverture AT .....	1
V Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 .....	9
W Vis d'épaule .....	1
X Plaque guide .....	1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur une machine entièrement en couleurs, les pièces (Y), (Z), (AA), (AB), (AC) et (AD) sont requises en plus.

Y Règle de base B .....	1
Z Règle de base V .....	1
AA Plaque .....	1
AB Base d'ensemble .....	1
AC Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 .....	8
AD Vis à filet normal M4 x 14TP .....	1

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una MFP a todo color serán necesarias las partes (S), (T) y (U), y ocho de los nueve tornillos (V) suministrados con el separador de tareas. El resto de las partes (V), (W) y (X) sólo serán necesarias cuando se instale el DF-720.

S Placa de fijación F .....	1
T Placa de fijación R .....	1

U Cubierta AT .....	1
V Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 .....	9
W Tornillo de hombro .....	1
X Placa guía .....	1

Cuando el finalizador de documentos se instale en una máquina a todo color serán necesarias también las partes (Y), (Z), (AA), (AB) (AC) y (AD).

Y Deslizador de base B .....	1
Z Deslizador de base V .....	1
AA Placa .....	1
AB Base del conjunto .....	1
AC Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 .....	8
AD Tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP .....	1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Farbmultifunktionsgerät angebracht wird, sind die Teile (S), (T), (U) und acht von neun (V) Schrauben die mit dem Jobtrenner geliefert werden erforderlich. Die verbleibenden Teile (V), (W), und (X) sind nur dann erforderlich, wenn der DF-720 aufgestellt wird.

S Fixierplatte F .....	1
T Fixierplatte R .....	1

U Abdeckung AT .....	1
V M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube .....	9
W Bundschraube .....	1
X Führungsplatte .....	1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Vollfarbentkopierer angebracht wird, so sind zusätzlich die Teile (Y), (Z), (AA), (AB), (AC) und (AD) erforderlich.

Y Basis-Schieber B .....	1
Z Basis-Schieber V .....	1
AA Platte .....	1
AB Bauteile-Basis .....	1
AC M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	8
AD M4 x 14 TP Grobgeschraubenschraube .....	1

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un MFP a colori, sono necessarie le parti (S), (T), (U) e otto su nove (V) fornite in dotazione con il separatore dei lavori. Le rimanenti parti (V), (W) e (X) sono necessarie solo nel caso di installazione del DF-720.

S Piastra di fissaggio F .....	1
T Piastra di fissaggio R .....	1

U Coperchio AT .....	1
V Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 .....	9
W Vite a colletto .....	1
X Piastra della guida .....	1

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti in un macchinario a colori, sono necessarie in aggiunta le parti (Y),(Z),(AA),(AB),(AC) e (AD).

Y Scivolo di base B .....	1
Z Scivolo di base V .....	1
AA Piastra .....	1
AB Base di assemblaggio .....	1
AC Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 .....	8
AD Vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP .....	1

安装装订器时，需使用随作业分离器附带的 (S)、(T)、(U) 部件和 8 颗 (V) 螺丝。只有安装 DF-720 时才需要使用剩余的部件 (V)、(W) 和 (X)。

S 固定板 F .....	1
T 固定板 R .....	1
U 盖板 AT .....	1
V M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 .....	9

W 带肩螺丝 .....	1
X 导向板 .....	1

安装装订器时，需要使用 (Y)、(Z)、(AA)、(AB)、(AC) 和 (AD)。

Y 底座滑板 B .....	1
Z 底座滑板 V .....	1
AA 板 .....	1

AB 组装底座 .....	1
AC M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 .....	8
AD M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝 .....	1

ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合、ジョブセパレータに付属する (S)、(T)、(U)、(V) 8 本が必要となる。DF-720 を設置する場合のみ (V)、(W)、(X) が必要となる。

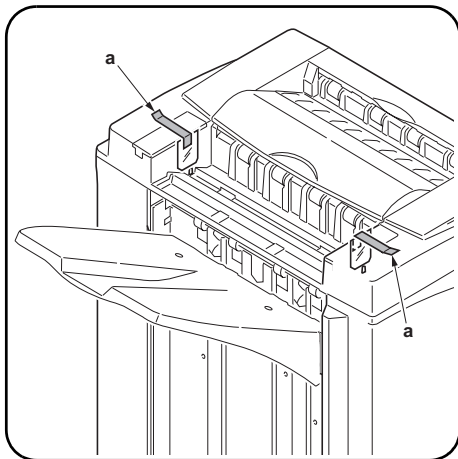
S 固定板 F .....	1
T 固定板 R .....	1
U カバーAT .....	1

V ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S .....	9
W 段付きビス .....	1
X ガイド板 .....	1

ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合、(Y)、(Z)、(AA)、(AB)、(AC)、(AD) が必要となる。

Y ベーススライダ B .....	1
Z ベーススライダ V .....	1

AA プレート .....	1
AB 組立ベース .....	1
AC ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S .....	8
AD ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 .....	1



#### Precautions

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.  
Do not remove the two fixing tapes (a) from the document finisher. (Remove them at step 88 in page 26.)

#### Procedure

When installing the document finisher, install the job separator in advance.

Be sure to install the document finisher before installing the center-folding unit.  
Before installing the document finisher, make sure that the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.

#### Précautions

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.  
Ne pas enlever les deux pièces de bande adhésive de fixation (a) du retoucheur de document. (Les enlever au moment de l'étape 88 de la page 26.)

#### Procédure

Avant d'installer le retoucheur de document, installer d'abord le séparateur de travaux.

Veiller à installer le retoucheur de document avant d'installer la plieuse.  
Avant d'installer le retoucheur de document, s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le cordon d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.

#### Precauciones

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.  
No quite las dos cintas de fijación (a) del finalizador de documentos. (Quítelas en el paso 88 de la página 26.)

#### Procedimiento

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos, instale primero el separador de trabajos.

Asegúrese de instalar el finalizador de documentos antes de instalar la unidad de plegado central.  
Antes de instalar el finalizador de documentos, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que su cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente.

#### Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.  
Entfernen Sie nicht die beiden Klebebänder (a) vom Dokument Finisher. (Nehmen Sie sie erst bei Schritt 88 von Seite 26 ab.)

#### Verfahren

Montieren Sie bei der Installation des Dokument Finishers zuerst den Jobtrenner.

Stellen Sie sicher, dass der Dokument-Finisher vor der Mittenfalteinheit angebracht wird.  
Vor dem Einbau des Dokument-Finishers muss der MFP-Hauptschalter aktiviert, und das Netzkabel von der Steckdose abgezogen sein.

#### Precauzioni

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.  
Non rimuovere i due nastri adesivi (a) dalla finitrice di documenti. (Rimuoverli al passo 88 a pagina 26.)

#### Procedura

Quando si installa la finitrice di documenti, installare prima il separatore dei lavori.

Assicurarsi di installare la finitrice di documenti prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.  
Prima di installare la finitrice di documenti, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della MFP sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.

#### 注意事項

如果附属品上带有固定胶带和 / 或缓冲材料, 请务必取下。  
请勿拆下装订器上的 2 根固定胶带 (a)。  
(在第 26 页的步骤 88 中将其拆下。)

#### 安裝步驟

安裝装订器時, 請先安裝作業分離器。

请务必在安装中缝折叠单元前安装装订器。  
安装装订器前, 请确定 MFP 的主电源开关已经关闭并且电源线已从电源插座上拔下。

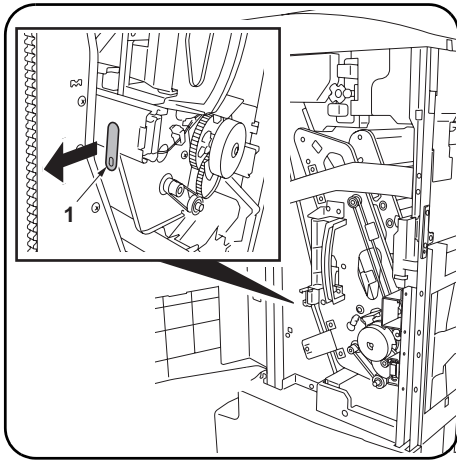
#### 注意事項

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャの固定テープ(a)2本は剥がさないこと。(P. 26 手順 88 で剥がす。)

#### 取付手順

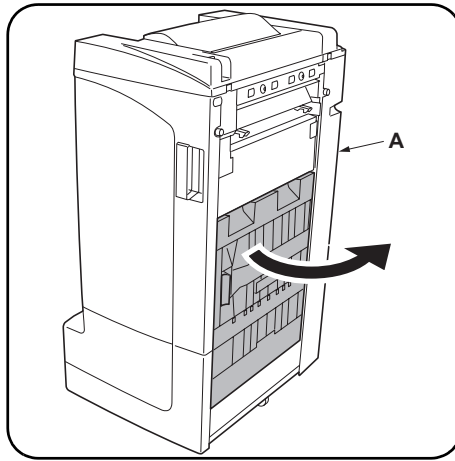
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置するときは、先にジョブセパレータを設置しておくこと。

ドキュメントフィニッシャの設置は、必ず中折りユニットの設置前に行うこと。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

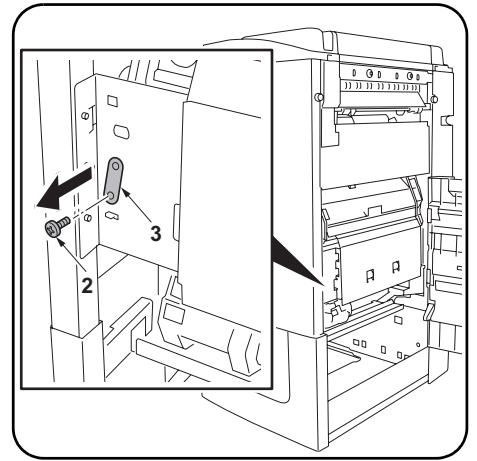


#### Removing the slider fixing pin

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).  
Remove the fixing tape from the slider of the inner tray and remove the slider fixing pin A (1).



2. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).



3. Remove the screw (2) to remove the slider fixing pin B (3).

#### Enlèvement de la broche de fixation de la règle

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de documents (A).  
Retirer la bande de fixation de la règle du plateau interne et retirer la broche de fixation A (1).

2. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

3. Retirer la vis (2) pour retirer la broche de fixation de la règle B (3).

#### Extracción del pasador de fijación del deslizador

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).  
Quite la cinta de fijación del deslizador de la bandeja interior y quite el pasador de fijación del deslizador A (1).

2. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

3. Quite el tornillo (2) para quitar el pasador de fijación del deslizador B (3).

#### Entfernen des Schieber-Fixierstifts

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).  
Entfernen Sie das Klebeband vom Schieber des Innenfachs, und bauen Sie danach den Schieber-Fixierstift A (1) aus.

2. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

3. Lösen Sie die Schraube (2), um den Fixierstift B (3) vom Schieber zu entfernen.

#### Rimozione del perno di fissaggio dello scivolo

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).  
Togliere il nastro adesivo dallo scivolo del vassoio interno e rimuovere il perno di fissaggio dello scivolo A (1).

2. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

3. Togliere la vite (2) per rimuovere il perno di fissaggio dello scivolo B (3).

#### 拆下滑板固定销

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。  
从内部托盘的滑板上拆下固定胶带并拆下滑板固定销 A (1)。

2. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。

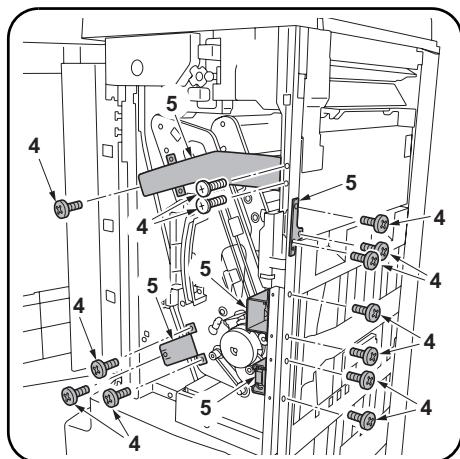
3. 取下螺丝 (2) 以便拆下滑板固定销 B (3)。

#### スライダ固定ピンの取り外し

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。  
内部トレイのスライダの固定テープを剥がし、スライダ固定ピン A (1) を取り外す。

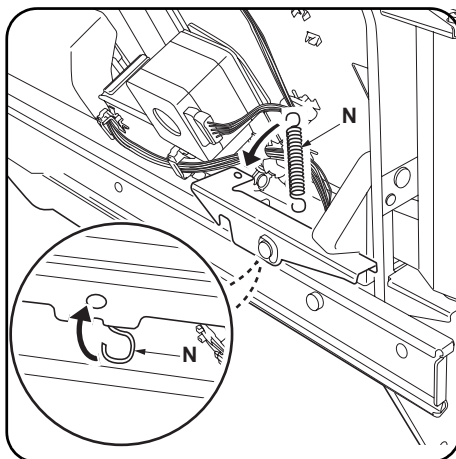
2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。

3. ビス (2) 1 本を外し、スライダ固定ピン B (3) を取り外す。



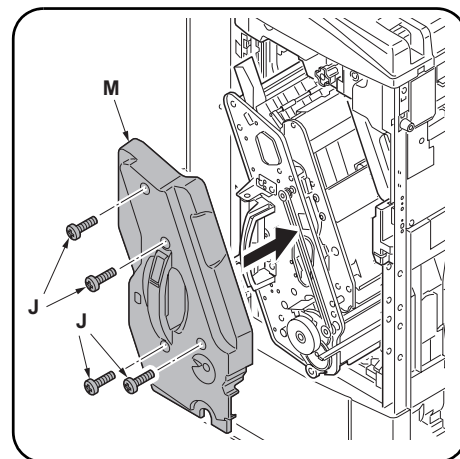
#### Removing the fittings

4. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
5. Remove 13 screws (4) to remove five fittings (5).  
A yellow label is pasted on the fittings.



#### 6. Pull the internal tray out.

7. Remove the fixing tape from the handle of the internal tray and attach the spring hook (N).



#### Installing the internal tray cover

8. Install the internal tray cover (M) using the four M4 x 8 tap Tight S Screw (J).

#### Enlèvement des fixations

4. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
5. Retirer 13 vis (4) pour retirer cinq fixations (5).  
Une étiquette jaune et collée sur les fixations.

#### 6. Faire ressortir le bac interne.

7. Retirer la bande de fixation de la poignée du bac interne et fixer le crochet de ressort (N).

#### Installation du capot du bac interne

8. Installer le capot du bac interne (M) à l'aide des quatre vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (J).

#### Extracción de los accesorios

4. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
5. Quite los 13 tornillos (4) para quitar los cinco accesorios (5).  
Hay una etiqueta amarilla pegada en los accesorios.

#### 6. Saque la bandeja interna.

7. Quite la cinta de fijación del mango de la bandeja interior y coloque el gancho de resorte (N).

#### Instalación de la cubierta de bandeja interna

8. Instale la cubierta de bandeja interna (M) utilizando los cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (J).

#### Entfernen der Befestigungselemente

4. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
5. Entfernen Sie die 13 Schrauben (4) um die Befestigungselemente (5) zu entfernen.  
Ein gelber Aufkleber ist an den Befestigungselementen angebracht.

#### 6. Ziehen Sie das Innenfach heraus.

7. Ziehen Sie das Klebeband vom Griff des Innenfachs, und den Federhaken (N) anbringen.

#### Entfernen der Innenfachabdeckung

8. Bringen Sie die Innenfachabdeckung (M) mit den vier M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (J) an.

#### Rimozione dei pezzi di raccordo

4. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
5. Togliere 13 viti (4) per rimuovere i cinque pezzi di raccordo (5).  
Un'etichetta gialla è incollata sui pezzi di raccordo (5).

#### 6. Estrarre il vassoio interno.

7. Staccare il nastro adesivo dalla maniglia del vassoio interno e fissare il gancio a molla (N).

#### Installazione del pannello del vassoio interno

8. Installare il pannello del vassoio interno (M) utilizzando le quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (J).

#### 拆下固定件

4. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
5. 取下 13 颗螺丝 (4) 以便拆下 5 个固定件 (5)。  
在固定件上贴有黄色标签。

#### 6. 拉出内部托盘。

7. 从内部托盘上拆下把手固定胶带, 然后安装弹簧挂钩 (N)。

#### 安装内部托盘盖板

8. 使用 4 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 (J) 安装内部托盘盖板 (M)。

#### 固定金具の取り外し

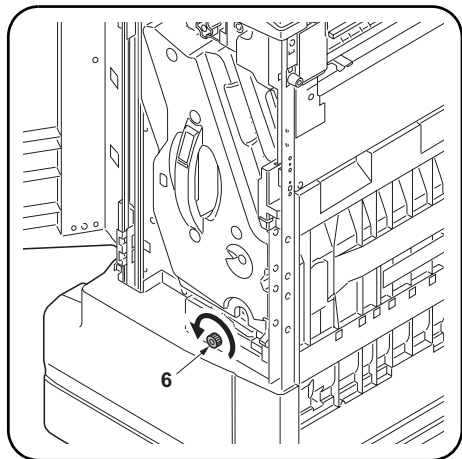
4. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の前カバーを開く。
5. ビス (4) 13 本を外し、固定金具 (5) 5 個を取り外す。  
固定金具には、黄色のシールを貼っています。

#### 6. 内部トレイを引き出す。

7. 内部トレイの取手の固定テープを剥がし、パネフック (N) を取り付け。

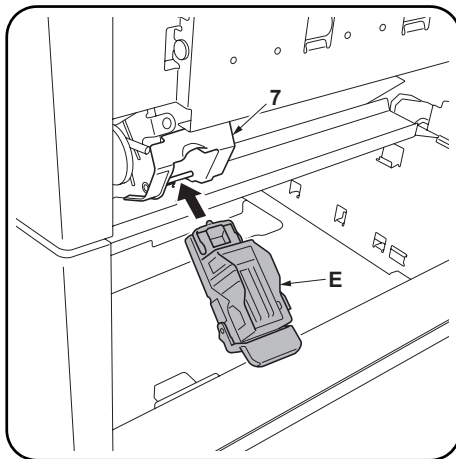
#### 内部トレイカバーの取り付け

8. ビス M4 x 8 タップタイト S (J) 4 本で、内部トレイカバー (M) を取り付け。



#### Removing the fixing pin

9. Turn the fixing pin (6) counterclockwise to remove it.
10. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).



#### Installing the staple cartridge

11. Remove the fixing tape from the staple cartridge holder (7).
12. Insert the staple cartridge (E) into the staple cartridge holder (7).
13. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).

14. When using a full-color machine, move to step 48 on page 14.

#### Enlèvement de la broche de fixation

9. Faire tourner la broche de fixation (6) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre pour la retirer.
10. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

#### Installation de la cartouche d'agrafes

11. Retirer la bande de fixation du porte-cartouche d'agrafes (7).
12. Insérer la cartouche d'agrafes (E) dans le porte-cartouche d'agrafes (7).
13. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

14. Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs, passer à l'étape 48 de la page 14.

#### Extracción del pasador de fijación

9. Gire el pasador de fijación (6) hacia la izquierda para quitarlo.
10. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

#### Instalación del cartucho de grapas

11. Quite la cinta de fijación del portacartucho de grapas (7).
12. Inserte el cartucho de grapas (E) en el portacartucho de grapas (7).
13. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

14. Cuando utilice una máquina a todo color, vaya al paso 48 de la página 14.

#### Entfernen des Fixierstifts

9. Drehen Sie den Fixierstift (6) gegen den Uhrzeigersinn, um ihn zu entfernen.
10. Schließen sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

#### Anbringen der Heftklammerkassette

11. Ziehen Sie das Klebeband von der Heftklammer-Kassettenhalterung (7) ab.
12. Setzen Sie die Heftklammerkassette (E) in die Kassettenhalterung (7) ein.
13. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

14. Bei Verwendung einer Vollfarbenmaschine gehen Sie zu Schritt 48 auf Seite 14 weiter.

#### Rimozione del perno di fissaggio

9. Per rimuovere il perno di fissaggio (6) ruotarlo in senso antiorario.
10. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

#### Installazione della cartuccia pinzatrice

11. Staccare il nastro adesivo dal contenitore della cartuccia pinzatrice (7).
12. Inserire la cartuccia pinzatrice (E) nel contenitore (7).
13. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

14. In caso si utilizzi un macchinario a colori, procedere con il punto 48 a pagina 14.

#### 拆下固定销

9. 逆时针旋转固定销 (6)，将其拆下。
10. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

#### 安装订书针盒

11. 从订书针盒支架 (7) 上拆下固定胶带。
12. 将订书针盒 (E) 插入订书针盒支架 (7)。
13. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。

14. 全彩色机器时，请进入第 14 页的步骤 48。



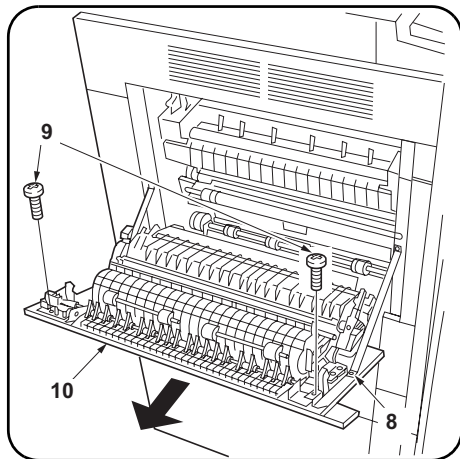
#### 固定ピンの取り外し

9. 固定ピン (6) を左に回して取り外す。
10. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。

#### ステーブルカートリッジの取り付け

11. ステーブルカートリッジホルダ (7) の固定テープを剥がす。
12. ステーブルカートリッジホルダ (7) にステーブルカートリッジ (E) を挿入する。
13. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを閉じる。

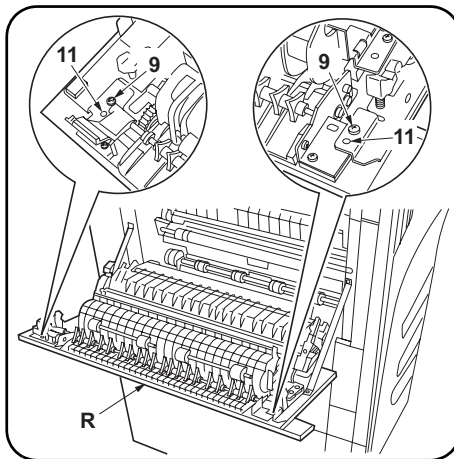
14. フルカラー機の場合、14 ページ手順 48 へ進む。



**[When installing the document finisher to the monochrome machine]**

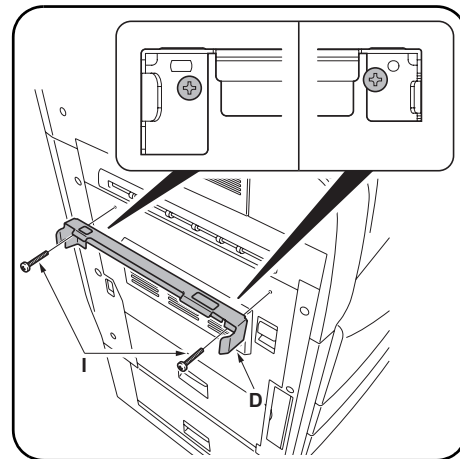
**Installing the curl eliminator**

15. Open the eject cover (8) of the MFP or the printer.
16. Remove two screws (9) securing the feedshift guide assembly (10) to remove the assembly.



17. Fit the curl eliminator (R) to the eject cover (8) such that the projections (11) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (R).

18. Secure the curl eliminator (R) using two screws (9) removed in step 16.



**Installing the connecting plate**

19. Install the connecting plate (D) to the left side of the MFP or the printer using two M4 x 10 tap Tight S Screws (I).

**[Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine monochrome]**

**Installation de l'élément d'élimination des boucles**

15. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (8) de la MFP ou de l'imprimante.
16. Retirer deux vis (9) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (10) pour retirer l'assemblage.

17. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (R) sur le couvercle d'éjection (8) de façon à ce que les saillies (11) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de l'élément d'élimination des boucles (R).

18. Asegure el eliminador de curvatura del papel (R) utilizando dos tornillos (9) quitados en el paso 16.

**Installation de la plaque de connexion**

19. Installer la plaque de connexion (D) sur le côté gauche du MFP ou imprimante à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (I).

**[Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una máquina de blanco y negro]**

**Instalación del eliminador de curvatura del papel**

15. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (8) de la MFP o de la impresora.
16. Quite dos tornillos (9) que aseguran el conjunto de la guía de cambio de alimentación (10) para quitar el conjunto.

17. Coloque el eliminador de curvatura del papel (R) en la cubierta de expulsión (8) de forma que los resaltes (11) de la cubierta se coloquen en los dos extremos del eliminador de curvatura del papel (R).

18. Asegure el eliminador de curvatura del papel (R) utilizando dos tornillos (9) quitados en el paso 16.

**Instalación de la placa de conexión**

19. Instale la placa de conexión (D) en el lado izquierdo de la MFP o impresora utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (I).

**[Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf der Monochrommaschine angebracht wird]**

**Anbringen der Glättungseinrichtung**

15. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (8) des MFP oder des Druckers.
16. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (9), welche die Papiervorschub-Umschalt-Führungseinheit (10) befestigt, um diese auszubauen.

17. Setzen Sie die Glättungseinrichtung (R) so auf die Auswurfabdeckung (8) auf, dass die Vorsprünge (11) der Abdeckung in die beiden Enden der Glättungseinrichtung (R) eingreifen.

18. Befestigen Sie die Glättungseinrichtung (R) mit den im Schritt 16 entfernten Schrauben (9).

**Anbringen der Verbindungsplatte**

19. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (D) auf der linken Seite des MFP oder Druckers mit den beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbinderschrauben (I) an.

**[In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un apparecchio in bianco e nero]**

**Installazione dell'eliminatore di arricciature**

15. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (8) della MFP o dello stampatore.
16. Togliere le due viti (9) che fissano il gruppo di guida di cambio alimentazione (10) e rimuovere il gruppo.

17. Montare l'eliminatore di arricciature (R) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (8) in modo tale che le parti sporgenti (11) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore di arricciature (R).

18. Fissare l'eliminatore di arricciature (R) utilizzando le due viti (9) rimosse al punto 16.

**Installazione della piastra di connessione**

19. Installare la piastra di connessione (D) sul lato destro della MFP o stampatore utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (I).

**[ 将装订器安装至黑白机器时 ]**

**安装防纸张卷曲装置**

15. 打开 MFP 或打印机的出纸盖板 (8)。
16. 拆下固定供纸换向导板组件 (10) 的 2 颗螺丝 (9) 以便拆下该组件。

17. 将防纸张卷曲装置 (R) 固定在出纸盖板 (8) 上, 使盖板上的突出部 (11) 嵌入防纸张卷曲装置 (R) 的两端。

18. 使用步骤 16 中拆下的 2 颗螺丝 (9) 固定防纸张卷曲装置 (R)。

**安装连接板**

19. 使用 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 (I) 将连接板 (D) 安装至 MFP 或打印机的左侧。

**[ モノクロ機ヘッドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合 ]**

**デカーラの取り付け**

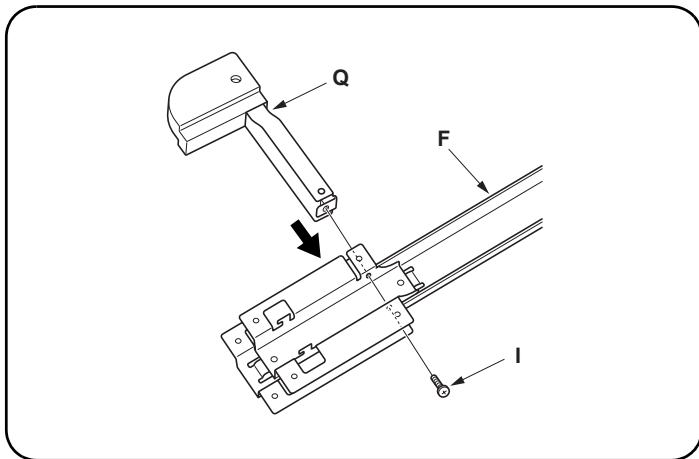
15. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の排出カバー (8) を開く。
16. ビス (9) 2 本を外し、分岐ガイド組立 (10) を取り外す。

17. デカーラ (R) の両端に半押し (11) がはまる位置で、デカーラ (R) を排出カバー (8) に取り付ける。

18. 手順 16 で外したビス (9) 2 本でデカーラ (R) を固定する。

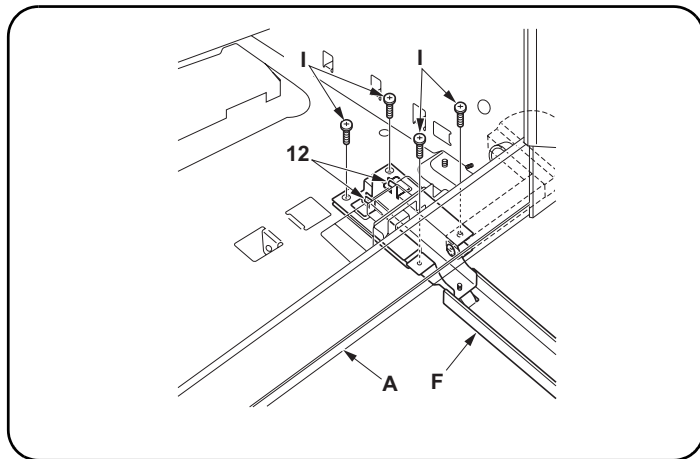
**連結板の取り付け**

19. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左側にビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (I) 2 本で連結板 (D) を取り付ける。



#### Assembling the base slider

20. Install plate foot R (Q) to base slider A (F) using M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I).
21. Follow each procedure below suitable for the paper feeder type attached to your MFP or printer.  
When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets: Move to step 22  
When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets: Move to step 31



#### Installing the base slider

##### When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets

22. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
23. Insert base slider A (F) into the lower right of the document finisher (A) and hook the tabs (12).
24. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I).

#### Assemblage de la règle de base

20. Installer le pied de plaque R (Q) sur la règle de base A (F) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).
21. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous convenant au type d'alimenteur de papier fixé sur le MFP ou imprimante.  
Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles: passer à l'étape 22  
Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles: passer à l'étape 31

#### Installation de la règle de base

##### Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles

22. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
23. Insérer la règle de base A (F) dans la partie inférieure droite du retoucheur de document (A) et accrocher les onglets (12).
24. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).

#### Ensamblaje del deslizador de base

20. Instale el pedal R (Q) en el deslizador A (F) utilizando el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).
21. Siga el procedimiento indicado abajo que sea más adecuado al tipo de alimentador de papel colocado en su MFP o impresora.  
Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas: Vaya al paso 22  
Cuando utilice el alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas: Vaya al paso 31

#### Instalación del deslizador de base

##### Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas

22. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
23. Inserte el deslizador A (F) en la parte inferior derecha del finalizador de documentos (A) y enganche las lengüetas (12).
24. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).

#### Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

20. Bringen Sie den Plattenfuß R (Q) am Basis-Schieber A (F) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) an.
21. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, das für den am MFP oder Drucker angebrachten Papiervorschubtyp zutreffend ist.  
Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 22 weiter  
Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 31 weiter

#### Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

##### Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter

22. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
23. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) auf der unteren rechten Seite des Dokument-Finishers (A) ein und rasten Sie die Laschen (12) ein.
24. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I).

#### Assemblaggio dello scivolo di base

20. Installare il piedino di sostegno R (Q) allo scivolo di base A (F) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).
21. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda del tipo di alimentatore di carta in dotazione alla vostra MFP o stampatore.  
In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli: Andare al punto 22  
In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli: Andare al punto 31

#### Installare lo scivolo di base

##### In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli

22. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
23. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) nella parte inferiore destra della finitrice di documenti (A) e agganciare le linguette (12).
24. Fissare lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).

#### 组装底座滑板

20. 使用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 (I) 将板脚座 R (H) 安装至底座滑板 A (F)。
21. 根据 MFP 或打印机上安装的供纸盒类型, 执行下列相应的步骤。  
使用 2 个 500 张供纸盒时: 转至步骤 22  
使用 3000 张供纸盒时: 转至步骤 31

#### 安装底座滑板

##### 使用 2 个 500 张供纸盒时

22. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
23. 将底座滑板 A (F) 插入装订器 (A) 的右下侧并挂上簧片 (12)。
24. 使用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F)。

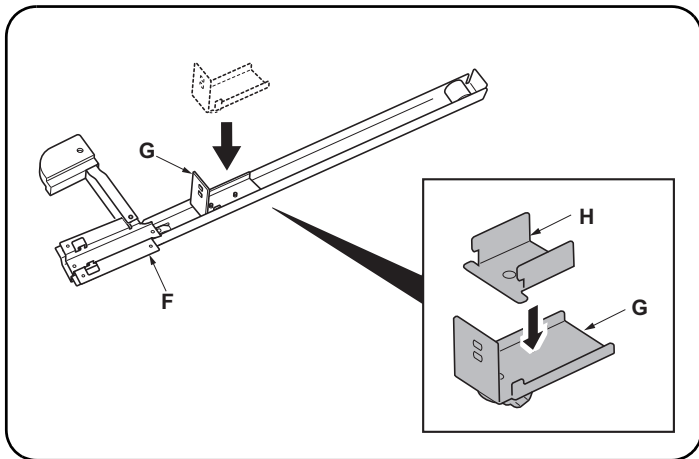
#### ベーススライダの組立

20. ベーススライダ A (F) にプレートフット R (Q) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で取り付ける。
21. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に取り付けられているペーパーフィーダ別に、下記の手順へ進む。  
500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 22 へ  
3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 31 へ

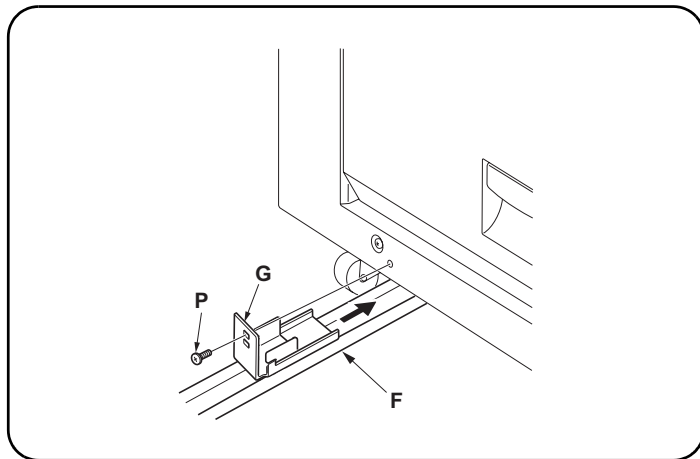
#### ベーススライダの取り付け

##### 500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合

22. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。
23. ベーススライダ A (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右下へ差し込み、ツメ (12) を引っ掛ける。
24. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で固定する。



25. Place base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F).  
26. Put plate (H) onto base slider B (G).



27. Insert the base slider A (F), and then the base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.  
28. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P). Put M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P) through the upper hole of base slider B (G).  
29. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).  
30. Move to step 39 on page 12.

25. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F).  
26. Poser la plaque (H) sur la règle de base B (G).

27. Insérer la règle de base A (F), puis la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.  
28. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P). Faire passer la vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P) par l'orifice supérieur de la règle de base B (G).  
29. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).  
30. Passer à l'étape 39 de la page 12.

25. Ponga el deslizador B (G) sobre el deslizador A (F).  
26. Coloque la placa (H) sobre el deslizador de base B (G).

27. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y luego el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.  
28. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P). Ponga un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P) a través del agujero superior del deslizador B (G).  
29. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).  
30. Vaya al paso 39 de la página 12.

25. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) am Basis-Schieber A (F) an.  
26. Setzen Sie die Platte (H) auf den Basis-Schieber B (G).

27. Setzen Sie zuerst den Basis-Schieber A (F) und dann den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links am MFP oder Drucker ein.  
28. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P). Stecken Sie die M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P) durch das obere Loch des Basis-Schiebers B (G).  
29. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).  
30. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 39 auf Seite 12 weiter.

25. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sopra lo scivolo di base A (F).  
26. Collocare la piastra (H) sullo scivolo di base B (G).

27. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP o stampatore.  
28. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P). Far passare la vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P) attraverso il foro superiore dello scivolo di base B (G).  
29. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).  
30. Andare a pagina 12, punto 39.

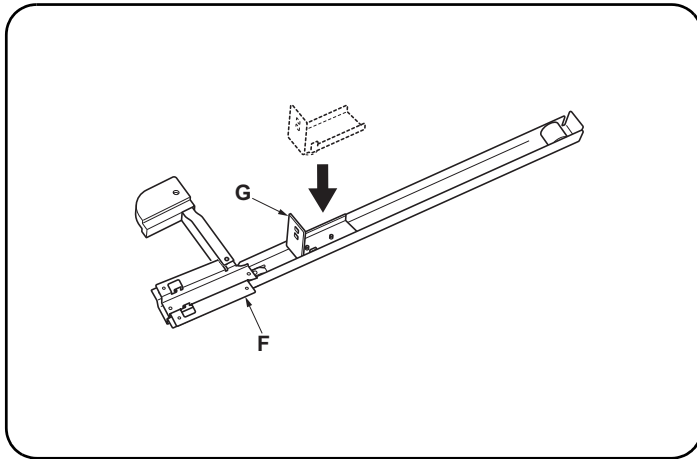
25. 将底座滑板 B (G) 置于底座滑板 A (F) 上。  
26. 将板 (H) 至于底座滑板 B (G) 上。

27. 插入底座滑板 A (F)，然后将底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。  
28. 使用 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝 (P) 固定底座滑板 B (G)。将 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝 (P) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) 的上部孔。  
29. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。  
30. 转至第 12 页的步骤 39。

**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

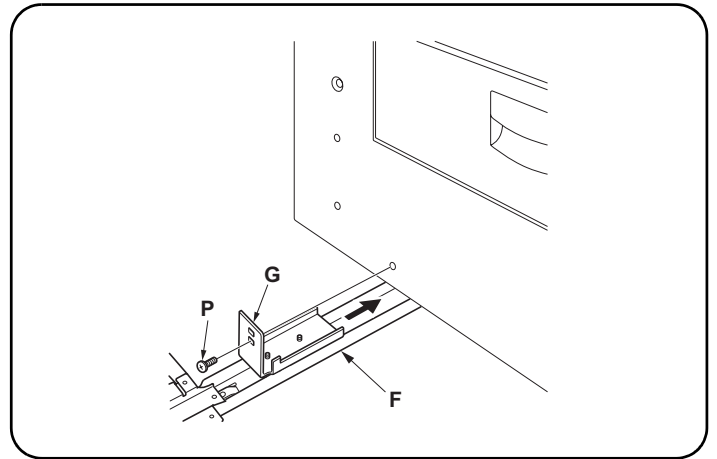
25. ベーススライダ A (F) にベーススライダ B (G) を置く。  
26. ベーススライダ B (G) にブレード (H) を置く。

27. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下にベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、次にベーススライダ B (G) を差し込む。  
28. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P) 1 本で固定する。ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P) は、ベーススライダ B (G) の上の穴に通すこと。  
29. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを閉じる。  
30. 12 ページ手順 39 へ進む。



**When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets**

31. Place base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F).



32. Insert the base slider A (F), and then the base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.

33. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P). Put M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P) through the lower hole of the base sliders B (G).

**Lors de l'utilisation d'un alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles**

31. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F).

32. Insérer la règle de base A (F), puis la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.

33. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P). Faire passer la vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P) par l'orifice inférieur de la règle de base B (G).

**Cuando utilice un alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas**

31. Ponga el deslizador B (G) sobre el deslizador A (F).

32. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y luego el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.

33. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P). Ponga un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P) a través del agujero inferior del deslizador B (G).

**Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter**

31. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) am Basis-Schieber A (F) an.

32. Setzen Sie zuerst den Basis-Schieber A (F) und dann den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf der unteren linken Seite des MFP oder Drucker ein.

33. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P). Stecken Sie die M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P) durch das untere Loch des Basis-Schiebers B (G).

**In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli**

31. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sopra lo scivolo di base A (F).

32. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP o stampatore.

33. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P). Far passare la vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P) attraverso il foro inferiore dello scivolo di base B (G).

**使用 3000 张供纸盒时**

31. 将底座滑板 B (G) 置于底座滑板 A (F) 上。

32. 插入底座滑板 A (F)，然后将底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。

33. 使用 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝 (P) 固定底座滑板 B (G)。将 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝 (P) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) 的下部孔。

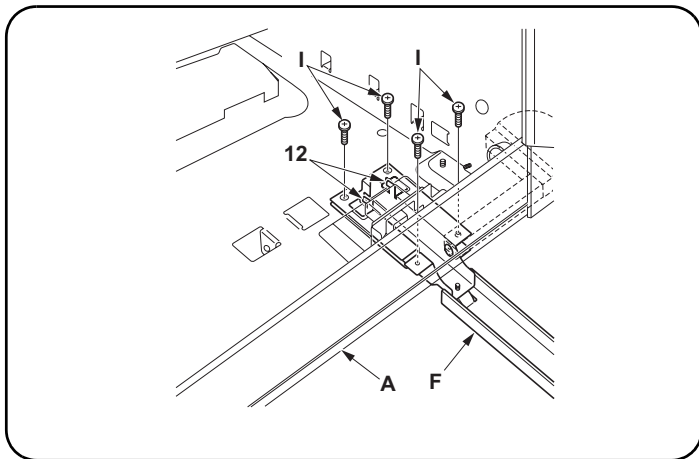


**3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合**

31. ベーススライダ A (F) にベーススライダ B (G) を置く。

32. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下にベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、次にベーススライダ B (G) を差し込む。

33. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P) 1 本で固定する。ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P) は、ベーススライダ B (G) の下の穴に通すこと。



34. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
35. Insert base slider A (F) under the document finisher (A) and hook the tabs (12).
36. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I).
37. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).
38. Move to step 39 on page 12.

- 
34. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
  35. Insérer la règle de base A (F) sous le retoucheur de document (A) et accrocher les onglets (12).
  36. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).
  37. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
  38. Passer à l'étape 39 de la page 12.

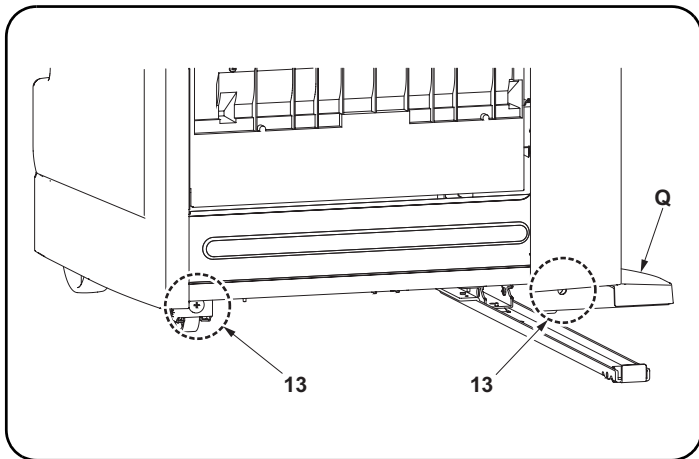
- 
34. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
  35. Inserte el deslizador A (F) debajo del finalizador de documentos (A) y enganche las lengüetas (12).
  36. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).
  37. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
  38. Vaya al paso 39 de la página 12.

- 
34. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
  35. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter dem Dokument-Finisher (A) ein und rasten Sie die Laschen (12) ein.
  36. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I).
  37. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
  38. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 39 auf Seite 12 weiter.

- 
34. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
  35. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) sotto la finitrice di documenti (A) e agganciare le linguette (12).
  36. Fissare lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).
  37. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
  38. Andare a pagina 12, punto 39.

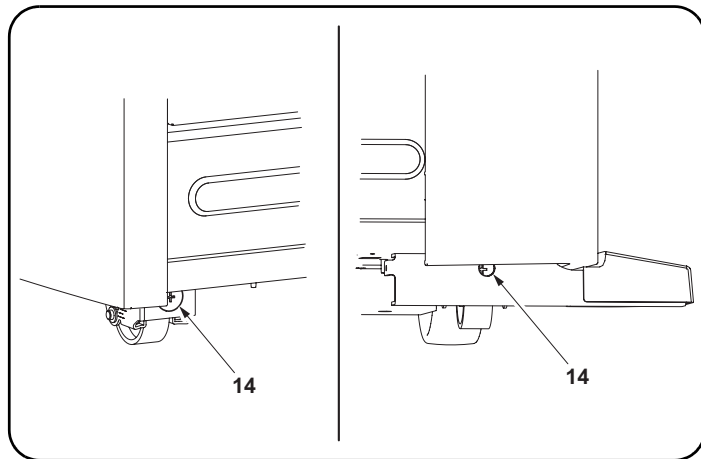
- 
34. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
  35. 将底座滑板 A (F) 插至装订器 (A) 下方并挂上簧片 (12)。
  36. 使用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F)。
  37. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
  38. 转至第 12 页的步骤 39。

- 
34. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。
  35. ベーススライダ A (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の下へ差し込み、ツメ (12) を引っ掛ける。
  36. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で固定する。
  37. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを閉じる。
  38. 12 ページ手順 39 へ進む。



#### [Document finisher height adjustment method]

39. Adjust the height by turning the pin on the caster sections of the 2 slider hooking portions (13).
40. The front adjustment section is located at the lower right on the front of the document finisher.
41. The rear adjustment section is adjusted by inserting a screwdriver into the hole in plate foot R (Q) fixed to the slider.



#### 42. Locate the adjustment pins (14).

Adjusting the pin on the front and rear sides will change the height of the document finisher.

#### [Méthode de réglage de hauteur du retoucheur de document]

39. Ajuster la hauteur par rotation de la broche sur les sections des roulettes des 2 côtés de suspension des glissières (13).
40. La section de réglage avant se trouve au bas à droite de l'avant du retoucheur de document.
41. La section de réglage arrière s'ajuste par insertion d'un tournevis dans le trou du pied de plateau R (Q) fixé à la glissière.

#### 42. Localiser les broches de réglage (14).

Le réglage de la broche à l'avant et à l'arrière change la hauteur du retoucheur de document.

#### [Método de ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos]

39. Ajuste la altura girando el pasador en las secciones de rueda de las 2 partes con ganchos del deslizador (13).
40. La sección de ajuste frontal está ubicada en la porción inferior derecha del frente del finalizador de documentos.
41. La sección de ajuste trasera se ajusta insertando un destornillador en el orificio de la pata de placa R (Q) que se encuentra fijada al deslizador.

#### 42. Ubique los pasadores de ajuste (14).

El ajuste del pasador en los lados frontal y trasero cambiará la altura del finalizador de documentos.

#### [Vorgehen zur Höheneinstellung des Dokument-Finishers]

39. Stellen Sie die Höhe ein, indem Sie den Stift an den Laufrollenbereichen der 2 Schiebereinheiten (13) verdrehen.
40. Der vordere Einstellbereich befindet sich unten rechts an der Vorderseite des Dokument-Finishers.
41. Der hintere Einstellbereich wird eingestellt, indem man einen Schraubendreher in die Öffnung des am Schieber angebrachten Plattenfußes R (Q) steckt.

#### 42. Lokalisieren Sie die Einstellstifte (14).

Durch Verstellen des Stifts an der Vorderseite bzw. Rückseite lässt sich die Höhe des Dokument-Finishers korrigieren.

#### [Metodo di regolazione altezza della finitrice di documenti]

39. Regolare l'altezza ruotando il perno sulle sezioni delle ruote orientabili delle 2 porzioni (13) al lato di aggancio dello scivolo.
40. La sezione di regolazione anteriore si trova a destra in basso sulla parte anteriore della finitrice di documenti.
41. La sezione di regolazione posteriore viene regolata inserendo un cacciavite nel foro nel piedino della piastra R (Q) fissato allo scivolo.

#### 42. Individuare i perni di regolazione (14).

Regolando il perno sui lati anteriore e posteriore, si cambierà l'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

#### [装订器高度调节方法]

39. 通过旋转 2 个滑板卡扣部 (13) 轮脚部分的销钉来调节高度。
40. 前侧调节部位位于装订器正面的右下部。
41. 将螺丝刀插入固定至滑板的板脚座 R (Q) 的孔中，以调节后侧调节部。

#### 42. 确认调节销 (14) 的位置。

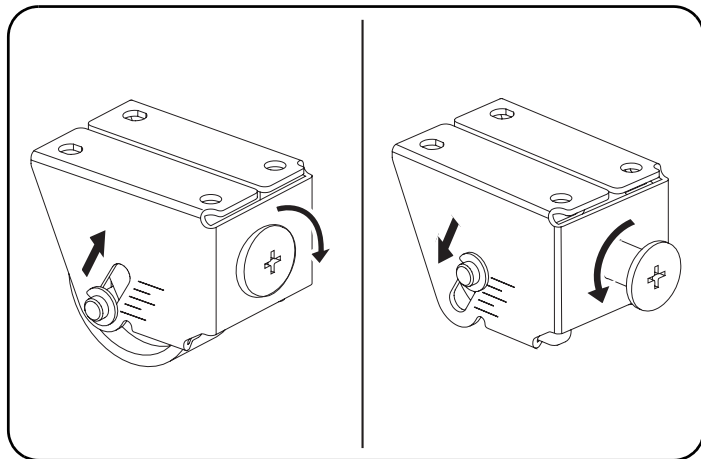
调节位于前、后侧的销钉可改变装订器高度。

#### [ドキュメントフィニッシャ高さ調整方法]

39. スライダ取付側 2ヶ所のキャスタ部のピンを回して調整する。(13)
40. 前側の調整部は、ドキュメントフィニッシャ正面の右下部にある。
41. 後側の調整部は、スライダ部固定のプレートフット R (Q) の穴にドライバを挿入し調整する。

#### 42. 調整ピン (14) の位置を確認する。

前側と後側の 2ヶ所の調整でドキュメントフィニッシャの高さが変わる。



43. In the case of the left illustration, turning the pin to the right allows the caster's axle holder to be movable in the direction of the arrow, enabling the height of the document finisher to be lowered.
44. In the case of the right illustration, turning the pin to the left allows the caster's axle holder to be movable in the direction of the arrow, enabling the height of the document finisher to be raised.

The default position is setting for document finisher to position above.

43. Dans le cas de l'illustration gauche, une rotation de la broche vers la droite permet de faire tourner le support d'axe de la roulette dans le sens de la flèche et d'abaisser la hauteur du retoucheur de document.
44. Dans le cas de l'illustration droite, une rotation de la broche vers la gauche permet de faire tourner le support d'axe de la roulette dans le sens de la flèche et d'élever la hauteur du retoucheur de document.

La position par défaut du réglage du retoucheur de document est la position haute.

43. En el caso de la ilustración de la izquierda, si se gira el pasador hacia la derecha, el soporte del eje de la rueda se moverá en la dirección que muestra la flecha, permitiendo disminuir la altura del finalizador de documentos.
44. En el caso de la ilustración de la derecha, si se gira el pasador hacia la izquierda, el soporte del eje de la rueda se moverá en la dirección que muestra la flecha, permitiendo aumentar la altura del finalizador de documentos.
- La posición predeterminada es ajustar el finalizador de documentos a la posición anterior.
43. Wie aus der Abbildung links zu ersehen, kann man durch Drehen des Stifts nach rechts den Achshalter der Laufrolle in der Pfeilrichtung verstellbar machen, wodurch die Höhe des Dokument-Finishers gesenkt werden kann.
44. Wie aus der Abbildung rechts zu ersehen, kann man durch Drehen des Stifts nach links den Achshalter der Laufrolle in der Pfeilrichtung verstellbar machen, wodurch die Höhe des Dokument-Finishers angehoben werden kann.
- In der Grundeinstellung befindet sich der Dokument-Finisher in der obersten Position.

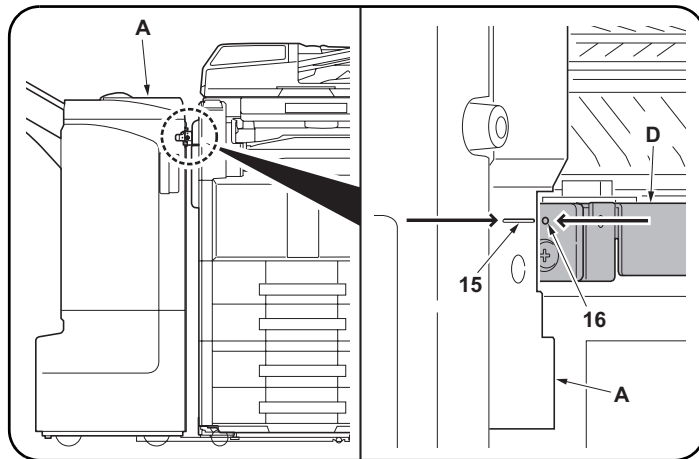
43. Nel caso dell'illustrazione sinistra, ruotando il perno a destra si permette al supporto asse della ruota orientabile di spostarsi nella direzione della freccia, consentendo l'abbassamento in altezza della finitrice di documenti.
44. Nel caso dell'illustrazione destra, ruotando il perno a sinistra si permette al supporto asse della ruota orientabile di spostarsi nella direzione della freccia, consentendo l'innalzamento in altezza della finitrice di documenti.

La posizione di default per la finitrice di documenti è impostata alla posizione più alta.

43. 如果出现左图所示情况, 则向右转动销钉, 以便能够沿着箭头方向移动轮脚的轴固定器, 从而降低装订器高度。
44. 如果出现右图所示情况, 则向左转动销钉, 以便能够沿着箭头方向移动轮脚的轴固定器, 从而升高装订器高度。

装订器的初始位置设定为最高位置。

43. 左図の場合、ピンを右方向に回転させることで、キャストの軸保持部が矢印方向に可動し、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さを下げることが出来る。
44. 右図の場合、ピンを左方向に回転させることで、キャストの軸保持部が矢印方向に可動し、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さを上げることが出来る。
- 初期位置はドキュメントフィニッシャが最上位になるように設定されている。



45. Adjust so that the hole (16) on the side of the connecting plate (D) on the MFP levels with the rib (15) on the document finisher (A) when the connection is seen from the front.
46. Perform the previous steps to adjust the 2 sections at front and rear.
47. Move to step 84 on page 25.

45. Ajuster la hauteur de sorte que le trou (16) sur le côté de la plaque de connexion (D) du MFP soit de niveau avec le repère (15) sur le retoucheur de document (A) quand le montage est vu de l'avant.
46. Effectuer les mêmes étapes pour ajuster les 2 sections à l'avant et à l'arrière.
47. Passer à l'étape 84 de la page 25.

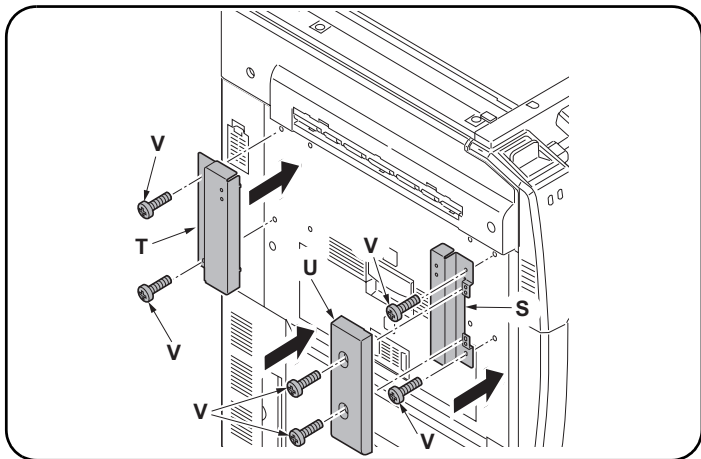
45. Ajuste de forma tal que el orificio (16) en el lado de la placa de conexión (D) del MFP quede nivelado con la nervadura (15) del finalizador de documentos (A), mirando la conexión desde el frente.
46. Realice los pasos anteriores para ajustar las 2 secciones en el frente y la parte trasera.
47. Vaya al paso 84 de la página 25.

45. Stellen Sie so ein, dass das Loch (16) auf der Seite der Anschlussplatte (D) auf dem MFP mit der Rippe (15) am Dokument-Finisher (A) fluchtet, wenn man vorne auf den Anschluss blickt.
46. Führen Sie die vorigen Schritte aus, um die 2 Bereiche vorne und hinten einzustellen.
47. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 84 auf Seite 25 weiter.

45. Regolare in modo che il foro (16) sul lato della piastra di connessione (D) sull' MFP sia a livello con il segno in rilievo (15) sulla finitrice di documenti (A) quando la connessione viene vista frontalmente.
46. Eseguire i punti precedenti per regolare le 2 sezioni alle parti anteriore e posteriore.
47. Andare a pagina 25, punto 84.

45. 调节装订器高度, 使 MFP 上的连接板 (D) 一侧的孔 (16) 与装订器 (A) 上的肋片 (15) 对齐 (从正面观察)。
46. 执行上述步骤, 调节前侧和后侧的 2 个部分。
47. 转至第 25 页的步骤 84。

45. 連結部を前から見た時に、MFP 本体の連結板 (D) 側面の穴 (16) とドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) のリブ (15) の高さが合うようにする。
46. 前後 2ヶ所の調整を行う。
47. 25 ページ手順 84 へ進む。



**[When installing the document finisher to the full-color machine]  
Installing the fixing and connecting plates**

48. Install fixing plates F (S) and R (T) to the MFP using two M4 x 10 tap Tight S Screws (V) for each plate.
49. Install cover AT (U) to fixing plate F (S) using two M4 x 10 tap Tight S Screws (V).

**[Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine entièrement en couleurs]**

**Installation des plaques de fixation et de connexion**

48. Installer les plaques de fixation avant (S) et arrière (T) sur le MFP à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (V) par plaque.
49. Installer le couvercle AT (U) sur la plaque de fixation avant (S) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (V).

**[Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en la máquina a todo color]**

**Instalación de las placas de fijación y conexión**

48. Instale las placas de fijación F (S) y R (T) en la MFP utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (V) para cada placa.
49. Instale la cubierta AT (U) en la placa de fijación F (S) utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (V).

**[Wenn der Dokument-Finisher an der Vollfarbenmaschine angebracht wird]**

**Anbringen der Fixier- und Verbindungsplatten**

48. Bringen Sie die Fixierplatten F (S) und R (T) am MFP mit den beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbandschrauben (V) für jede Platte an.
49. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung AT (U) auf der Fixierplatte F (S) mit den beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbandschrauben (V) an.

**[In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un macchinario a colori]**

**Installazione delle piastre di fissaggio e di connessione**

48. Installare le piastre di fissaggio F (S) e R (T) alla MFP utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (V) per ciascuna piastra.
49. Installare il coperchio AT (U) alla piastra di fissaggio F (S) utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (V).

**[ 将装订器安装至全彩色机器时 ]**

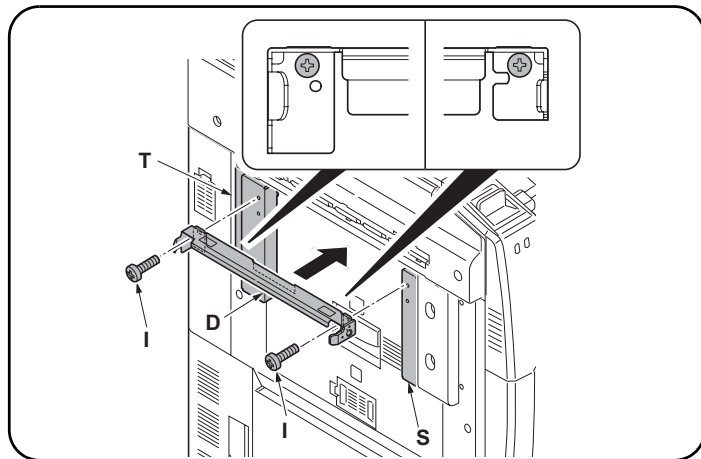
**安装固定板和连接板**

48. 各用 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 (V) 将固定板 F (S) 和 R (T) 安装至 MFP。
49. 使用 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 (V) 将盖板 AT (U) 安装至固定板 F (S)。

**[ フルカラー機ヘッドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合 ]**

**固定板と連結板の取り付け**

48. MFP 本体に固定板 F (S) と固定板 R (T) をビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (V) 各 2 本で取り付ける。
49. 固定板 F (S) にカバー AT (U) をビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (V) 2 本で取り付ける。



50. Install the connecting plate (D) to fixing plates F (S) and R (T) using two M4 x 10 tap Tight S Screws (I). Attach with the upper screw holes underneath fixing plates F (S) and R (T).

50. Installer la plaque de connexion (D) sur les plaques de fixation avant (S) et arrière (T) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (I). Fixer à partir des trous de vis supérieurs se trouvant sous les plaques de fixation avant (S) et arrière (T).

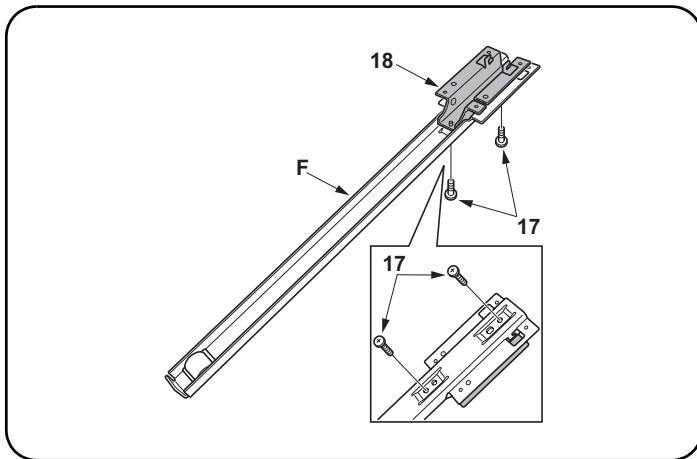
50. Instale la placa de conexión (D) en las placas de fijación F (S) y R (T) utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (I). Fije con los orificios para tornillos superiores debajo de las placas de fijación F (S) y R (T).

50. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (D) auf den Fixierplatten F (S) und R (T) mit den beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbandschrauben (I) an. Mit den oberen Schraublöchern unter den Fixierplatten F (S) und R (T) anbringen.

50. Installare la piastra di connessione (D) alle piastre di fissaggio F (S) e R (T) utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (I). Collegare con i fori per le viti superiori, sotto le piastre di fissaggio F (S) e R (T).

50. 使用 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 (I) 将连接板 (D) 安装至固定板 F (S) 和 R (T)。把固定板 F (S) 和 R (T) 固定在上侧的螺丝孔处。

50. 固定板 F (S) と固定板 R (T) に連結板 (D) をビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (I) 2 本で取り付ける。固定板 F (S) と固定板 R (T) の上側のビス穴で固定すること。



#### Disassembling the base slider

51. Remove the two screws (17) from the base slider A (F) to remove the stay foot (18).
52. Follow each procedure below suitable for the paper feeder type attached to your MFP or printer.  
When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets: Move to step 53  
When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets: Move to step 60

#### Démontage de la règle de base

51. Retirer les deux vis (17) de la règle de base A (F) pour retirer le pied de la retenue (18).
52. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous convenant au type d'alimenteur de papier fixé sur le MFP ou imprimante.  
Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles: passer à l'étape 53  
Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles: passer à l'étape 60

#### Desmontaje del deslizador de base

51. Quite los dos tornillos (17) del deslizador A (F) para quitar la pata de apoyo (18).
52. Siga cada procedimiento de abajo dependiendo del tipo de alimentador de papel colocado en su MFP o impresora.  
Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas: Vaya al paso 53  
Cuando utilice un alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas: Vaya al paso 60

#### Zerlegen des Basis-Schiebers

51. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (17) vom Basis-Schieber A (F), um den Strebenfuß (18) auszubauen.
52. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, das für den am MFP oder Drucker angebrachten Papiervorschubtyp zutreffend ist.  
Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 53 weiter.  
Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 60 weiter.

#### Smontaggio dello scivolo di base

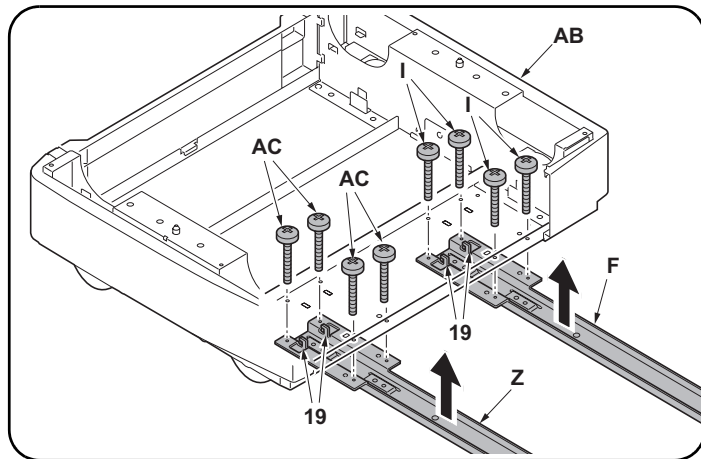
51. Togliere le due viti (17) dallo scivolo di base A (F) per rimuovere il piedino di bloccaggio (18).
52. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda del tipo di alimentatore di carta in dotazione alla vostra MFP o stampatore.  
In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli: Andare al punto 53  
In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli: Andare al punto 60

#### 拆卸底座滑板

51. 取下底座滑板 A (F) 上的 2 顆螺絲 (17) 以便拆下支腳 (18)。
52. 根據 MFP 或打印機上安裝的供紙盒類型，執行下列相應的步驟。  
使用 2 個 500 張供紙盒時：轉至步驟 53  
使用 3000 張供紙盒時：轉至步驟 60

#### ベーススライダの分解

51. ベーススライダ A (F) のビス 2 本 (17) を外し、ステイフット (18) を取り外す。
52. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に取り付けられているペーパーフィーダ別に、下記の手順へ進む。  
500 枚×2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 53 へ  
3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 60 へ



#### Installing the base slider

##### When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets

53. Insert base slider V (Z) and base slider A (F) under the assembly base (AB) and hook the tabs (19).
54. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I) and fix base slider V (Z) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (AC) respectively.

#### Installation de la règle de base

##### Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles

53. Insérer la règle de base V (Z) et la règle de base A (F) sous la base d'ensemble (AB) et accrocher les languettes (19).
54. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base V (Z) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (AC) respectivement.

#### Instalación del deslizador de base

##### Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas

53. Inserte el deslizador de base V (Z) y el deslizador de base A (F) debajo de la base del conjunto (AB) y enganche las lengüetas (19).
54. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y fije el deslizador de base V (Z) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (AC) respectivamente.

#### Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

##### Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter

53. Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber V (Z) und den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter die Bauteile-Basis (AB), und haken Sie die Klinken (19) ein.
54. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I) sowie den Basis-Schieber V (Z) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (AC).

#### Installazione dello scivolo di base

##### In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli

53. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (Z) e lo scivolo di base A (F) sotto la base di assemblaggio (AB) e agganciare le linguette (19).
54. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base V (Z) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (AC).

#### 安裝底座滑板

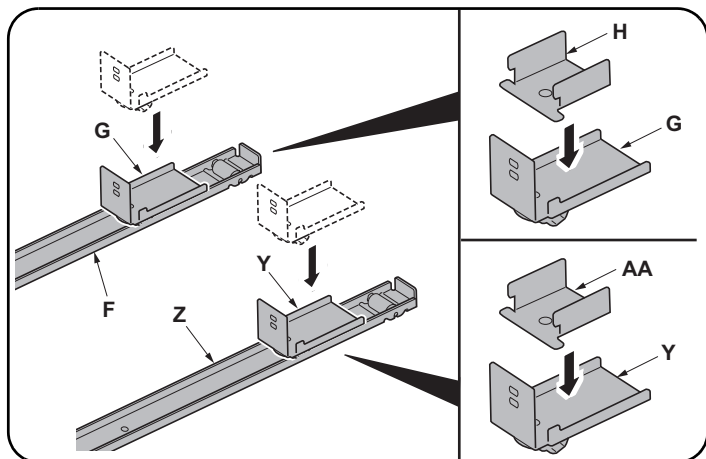
##### 使用 2 個 500 張供紙盒時

53. 將底座滑板 V (Z) 和底座滑板 A (F) 插至組裝底座 (AB) 的下方並掛上簧片 (19)。
54. 分別使用 4 顆 M4 × 10 攻絲緊固型 S 螺絲 (I) 和 (AC) 固定底座滑板 A (F) 和 V (Z)。

#### ベーススライダの取り付け

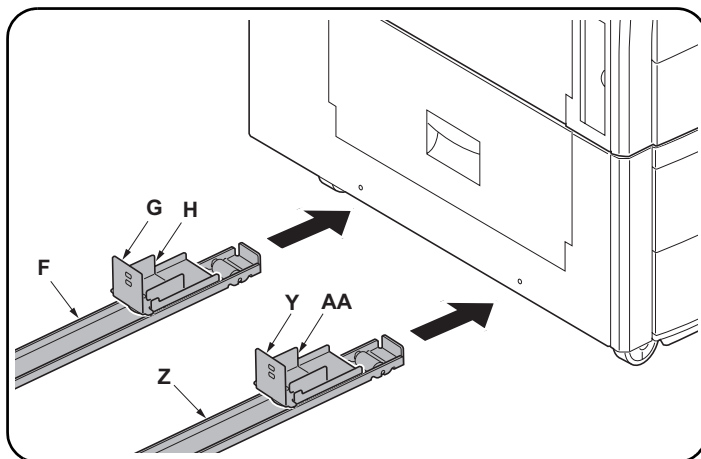
##### 500 枚×2 ペーパーフィーダの場合

53. 組立ベース (AB) の下にベーススライダ V (Z) と、ベーススライダ A (F) を差込み、ツメ (19) を引っ掛ける。
54. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で、ベーススライダ V (Z) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (AC) 4 本でそれぞれ固定する。



**55.** Put base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F). In the same way, put base slider B (Y) onto base slider V (Z).

**56.** Put plate (H) onto base slider B (G). In the same way, put plate (AA) onto base slider B (Y).



**57.** Insert base slider A (F), base slider B (G) and plate (H) into the lower left of the paper feeder.

**58.** Insert base slider V (Z), base slider B (Y) and plate (AA) into the lower right of the paper feeder.

**55.** Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F). De la même façon, mettre la règle de base B (Y) en place sur la règle de base V (Z).

**56.** Poser la plaque (H) sur la règle de base B (G). En procédant de la même manière, poser la plaque (AA) sur la règle de base B (Y).

**57.** Insérer la règle de base A (F), la règle de base B (G) et la plaque (H) en bas et à gauche de l'alimenteur de papier.

**58.** Insérer la règle de base V (Z), la règle de base B (Y) et la plaque (AA) en bas et à droite de l'alimenteur de papier.

**55.** Ponga el deslizador de base B (G) sobre el deslizador de base A (F). De la misma forma, ponga el deslizador de base B (Y) sobre el deslizador de base V (Z).

**56.** Coloque la placa (H) sobre el deslizador de base B (G). De la misma forma, ponga la placa (AA) sobre el deslizador de base B (Y).

**57.** Inserte el deslizador de base A (F), el deslizador de base B (G) y la placa (H) en la parte inferior izquierda del alimentador de papel.

**58.** Inserte el deslizador de base V (Z), el deslizador de base B (Y) y la placa (AA) en la parte inferior derecha del alimentador de papel.

**55.** Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf den Basis-Schieber A (F). Stecken Sie desgleichen den Basis-Schieber B (Y) auf den Basis-Schieber V (Z).

**56.** Setzen Sie die Platte (H) auf den Basis-Schieber B (G). Stecken Sie desgleichen die Platte (AA) auf den Basis-Schieber B (Y).

**57.** Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F), den Basis-Schieber B (G) und die Platte (H) in den linken unteren Bereich des Papiervorschubs.

**58.** Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber V (Z), den Basis-Schieber B (Y) und die Platte (AA) in den rechten unteren Bereich des Papiervorschubs.

**55.** Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sullo scivolo di base A (F). Alla stessa maniera, collocare lo scivolo di base B (Y) sullo scivolo di base V (Z).

**56.** Collocare la piastra (H) sullo scivolo di base B (G). Alla stessa maniera, collocare la piastra (AA) sullo scivolo di base B (Y).

**57.** Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F), lo scivolo di base B (G) e la piastra (H) nel lato sinistro inferiore dell'alimentatore di carta.

**58.** Inserire lo scivolo di base V (Z), lo scivolo di base B (Y) e la piastra (AA) nel lato destro inferiore dell'alimentatore di carta.

**55.** 将底座滑板 B (G) 置于底座滑板 A (F) 上。以同样的方式将底座滑板 B (Y) 至于底座滑板 V (Z) 上。

**56.** 将板 (H) 至于底座滑板 B (G) 上。以同样的方式将板 (AA) 至于底座滑板 B (Y) 上。

**57.** 将底座滑板 A (F)、底座滑板 B (G) 和板 (H) 插入供纸盒的左下侧。

**58.** 将底座滑板 V (Z)、底座滑板 B (Y) 和板 (AA) 插入供纸盒的右下侧。

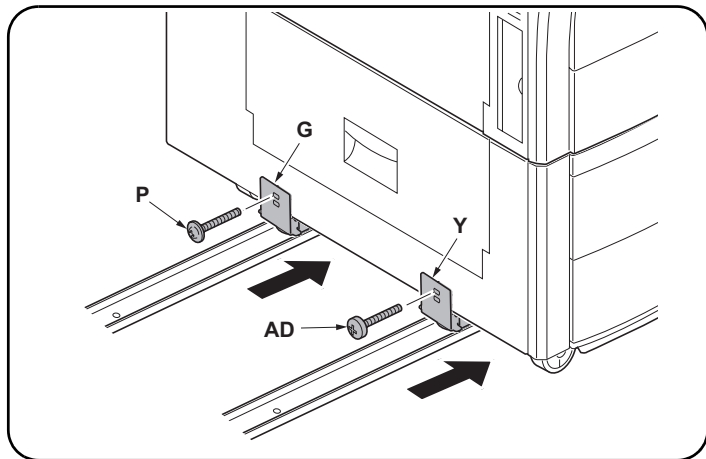
**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

**55.** ベーススライダ A (F) にベーススライダ B (G) を置く。同様にベーススライダ V (Z) にベーススライダ B (Y) を置く。

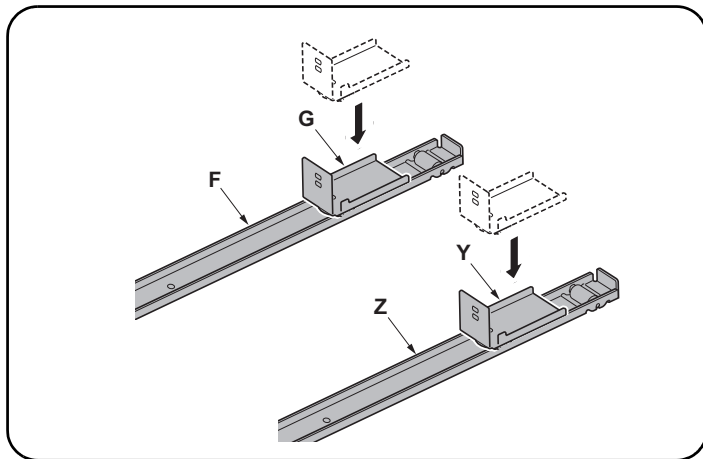
**56.** ベーススライダ B (G) にプレート (H) を置く。同様にベーススライダ B (Y) にプレート (AA) を置く。

**57.** ベーススライダ A (F) とベーススライダ B (G) / プレート (H) をペーパーフィーダの左下へ差し込む。

**58.** ベーススライダ V (Z) とベーススライダ B (Y) / プレート (AA) をペーパーフィーダの右下に差し込む。



**59.** Secure base slider B (G) with a M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P) and base slider B (Y) with a M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (AD). Put the M4 x 14TP coarse thread screws (P, AD) through the upper holes of base sliders B (G, Y).



**When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used**

**60.** Put base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F). In the same way, put base slider B (Y) onto base slider V (Z).

**59.** Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P) et la règle de base B (Y) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (AD). Faire passer les vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P, AD) dans les trous supérieurs des règles de base B (G, Y).

**Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles**

**60.** Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F). De la même façon, mettre la règle de base B (Y) en place sur la règle de base V (Z).

**59.** Asegure el deslizador de base B (G) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P) y el deslizador de base B (Y) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (AD). Inserte los tornillos de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P, AD) a través de los orificios superiores de los deslizadores de base B (G, Y).

**Cuando utilice el alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas**

**60.** Ponga el deslizador de base B (G) sobre el deslizador de base A (F). De la misma forma, ponga el deslizador de base B (Y) sobre el deslizador de base V (Z).

**59.** Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit einer M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P) und den Basis-Schieber B (Y) mit einer M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (AD). Stecken Sie die M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschrauben (P, AD) durch die oberen Löcher der Basis-Schieber B (G, Y).

**Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter**

**60.** Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf den Basis-Schieber A (F). Stecken Sie desgleichen den Basis-Schieber B (Y) auf den Basis-Schieber V (Z).

**59.** Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P), e lo scivolo di base B (Y) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (AD). Collocare le viti con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P, AD) attraverso i fori superiori degli scivoli di base B (G, Y).

**In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli**

**60.** Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sullo scivolo di base A (F). Alla stessa maniera, collocare lo scivolo di base B (Y) sullo scivolo di base V (Z).

**59.** 分別使用 1 顆 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺絲 (P) 和 (AD) 固定底座滑板 B (G) 和 (Y)。將 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺絲 (P, AD) 穿過底座滑板 B (G, Y) 的上部孔。

**使用 3000 張供紙盒時**

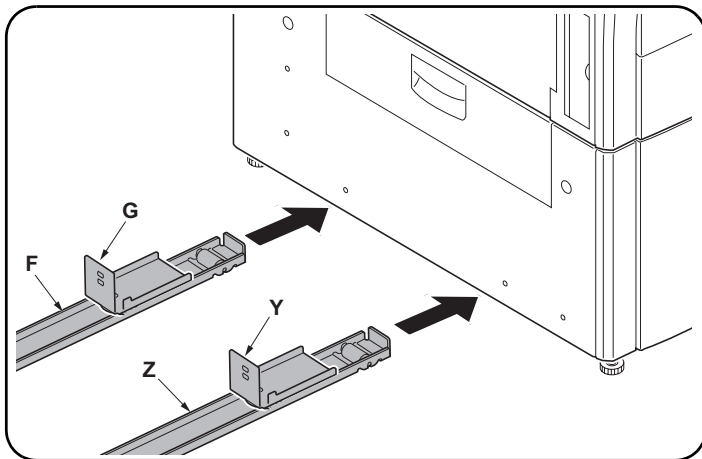
**60.** 將底座滑板 B (G) 置於底座滑板 A (F) 上。以同樣的方式將底座滑板 B (Y) 至於底座滑板 V (Z) 上。

**TONER**

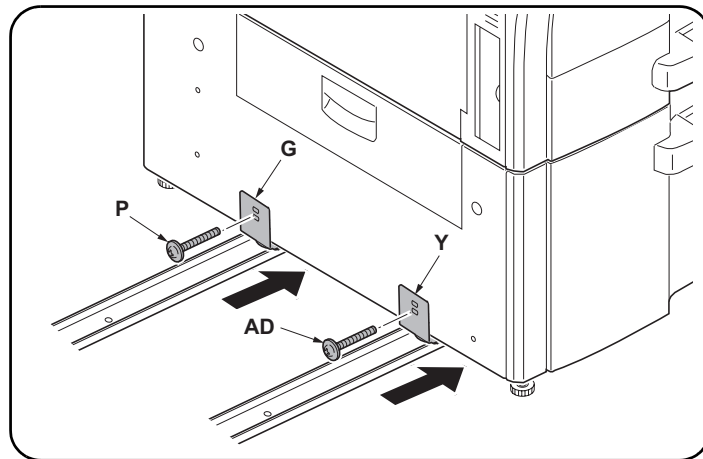
**59.** ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P) 1 本で、ベーススライダ B (Y) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (AD) 1 本でそれぞれ固定する。ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P, AD) は、ベーススライダ B (G, Y) の上の穴に通すこと。

**3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合**

**60.** ベーススライダ A (F) にベーススライダ B (G) を置く。同様にベーススライダ V (Z) にベーススライダ B (Y) を置く。



- 61.** Insert base slider A (F) and base slider B (G) into the lower left of the paper feeder.
- 62.** Insert base slider V (Z) and base slider B (Y) into the lower right of the paper feeder.



- 63.** Secure base slider B (G) with a M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P) and base slider B (Y) with a M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (AD). Put the M4 x 14TP coarse thread screws (P, AD) through the lower holes of base sliders B (G, Y).

- 61.** Insérer la règle de base A (F) et la règle de base B (G) en bas et à gauche de l'alimenteur de papier.
- 62.** Insérer la règle de base V (Z) et la règle de base B (Y) en bas et à droite de l'alimenteur de papier.

- 63.** Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P) et la règle de base B (Y) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (AD). Faire passer les vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P, AD) dans les trous inférieurs des règles de base B (G, Y).

- 61.** Inserte el deslizador de base A (F) y el deslizador de base B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda del alimentador de papel.
- 62.** Inserte el deslizador de base V (Z) y el deslizador de base B (Y) en la parte inferior derecha del alimentador de papel.

- 63.** Asegure el deslizador de base B (G) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P) y el deslizador de base B (Y) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (AD). Inserte los tornillos de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P, AD) a través de los orificios inferiores de los deslizadores de base B (G, Y).

- 61.** Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber B (G) in den linken unteren Bereich des Papiervorschubs.
- 62.** Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber V (Z) und den Basis-Schieber B (Y) in den rechten unteren Bereich des Papiervorschubs.

- 63.** Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit einer M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P) und den Basis-Schieber B (Y) mit einer M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (AD). Stecken Sie die M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschrauben (P, AD) durch die unteren Löcher der Basis-Schieber B (G, Y).

- 61.** Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nel lato inferiore sinistro dell'alimentatore di carta.
- 62.** Inserire lo scivolo di base V (Z) e lo scivolo di base B (Y) nel lato inferiore destro dell'alimentatore di carta.

- 63.** Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P), e lo scivolo di base B (Y) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (AD). Collocare le viti con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P, AD) attraverso i fori inferiori degli scivoli di base B (G, Y).

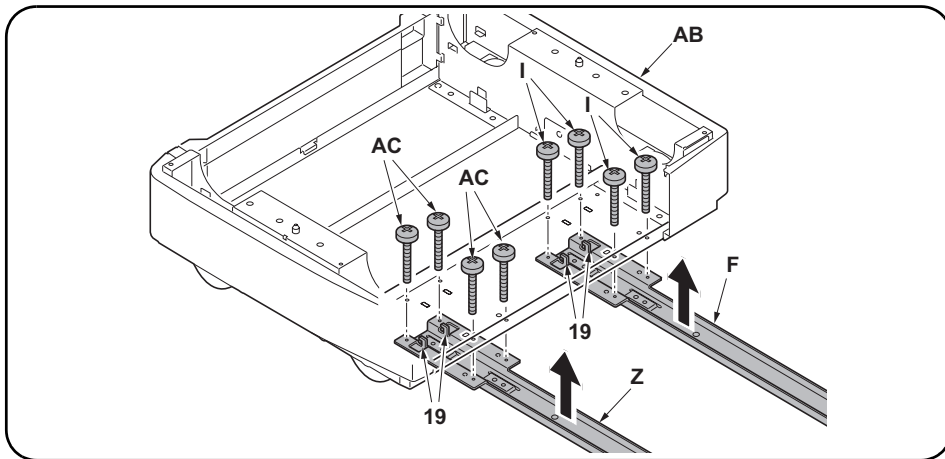
- 61.** 将底座滑板 A (F) 和底座滑板 B (G) 插入供纸盒的左下侧。
- 62.** 将底座滑板 V (Z) 和底座滑板 B (Y) 插入供纸盒的左下侧。

- 63.** 分别用 1 颗 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝 (P) 和 (AD) 固定底座滑板 B (G) 和 B (Y)。  
将 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝 (P, AD) 穿过底座滑板 B (G, Y) 的下部孔。

**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

- 61.** ベーススライダ A (F) とベーススライダ B (G) をペーパーフィーダの左下へ差し込む。
- 62.** ベーススライダ V (Z) とベーススライダ B (Y) をペーパーフィーダの右下に差し込む。

- 63.** ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P) 1 本で、ベーススライダ B (Y) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (AD) 1 本でそれぞれ固定する。ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P, AD) は、ベーススライダ B (G, Y) の下の穴に通すこと。



- 64.** Insert base slider V (Z) and base slider A (F) under the assembly base (AB) and hook the tabs (19).  
**65.** Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I) and fix base slider V (Z) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (AC) respectively.

- 64.** Insérer la règle de base V (Z) et la règle de base A (F) sous la base d'ensemble (AB) et accrocher les languettes (19).  
**65.** Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base V (Z) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (AC) respectivement.

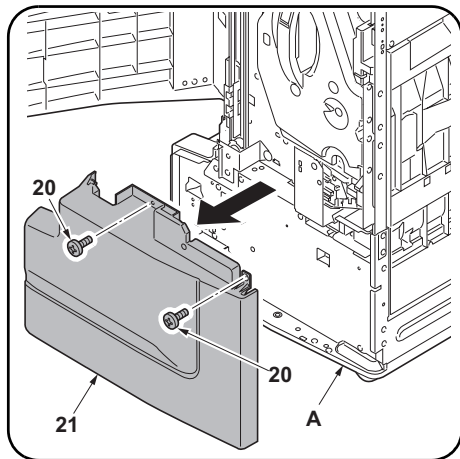
- 64.** Inserte el deslizador de base V (Z) y el deslizador de base A (F) debajo de la base de conjunto (AB) y enganche las lengüetas (19).  
**65.** Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y el deslizador de base V (Z) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (AC) respectivamente.

- 64.** Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber V (Z) und den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter die Bauteile-Basis (AB), und haken Sie die Klinken (19) ein.  
**65.** Befestigen den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I), und befestigen Sie danach den Basis-Schieber V (Z) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (AC).

- 64.** Inserire lo scivolo di base V (Z) e lo scivolo di base A (F) sotto la base di assemblaggio (AB) e agganciare le linguette (19).  
**65.** Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base V (Z) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (AC).

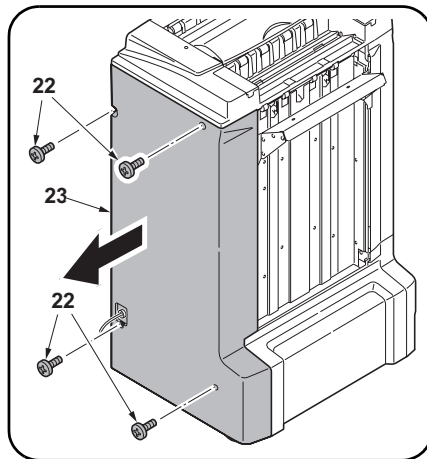
- 64.** 将底座滑板 V (Z) 和底座滑板 A (F) 插至组装底座 (AB) 的下方并挂上簧片 (19)。  
**65.** 分别使用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 (I) 和 (AC) 固定底座滑板 A (F) 和 V (Z)。

- 64.** 組立ベース (AB) の下にベーススライダ V (Z) と、ベーススライダ A (F) を差込み、ツメ (19) を引っ掛ける。  
**65.** ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で、ベーススライダ V (Z) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (AC) 4 本でそれぞれ固定する。



#### Removing the cover

66. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
67. Remove two screws (20) to remove the lower front cover (21).



68. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).
69. Remove four screws (22) to remove the back cover (23) from the document finisher (A).

#### Enlèvement du capot

66. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
67. Retirer les deux vis (20) pour retirer le capot inférieur avant (21).

68. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
69. Retirer quatre vis (22) pour retirer le capot arrière (23) du retoucheur de document (A).

#### Extracción de la cubierta

66. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
67. Quite los dos tornillos (20) para quitar la cubierta delantera inferior (21).

68. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
69. Quite los cuatro tornillos (22) para quitar la cubierta trasera (23) del finalizador de documentos (A).

#### Entfernen der Abdeckung

66. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung am Dokument-Finisher (A).
67. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (20), um die untere vordere Abdeckung (21) zu entfernen.

68. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
69. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (22), um die hintere Abdeckung (23) vom Dokument-Finisher (A) abzunehmen.

#### Rimozione del pannello

66. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
67. Togliere due viti (20) per rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (21).

68. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
69. Togliere quattro viti (22) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (23) dalla finitrice di documenti (A).

#### 拆下盖板

66. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
67. 取下 2 颗螺丝 (20) 以便拆下前下盖板 (21)。

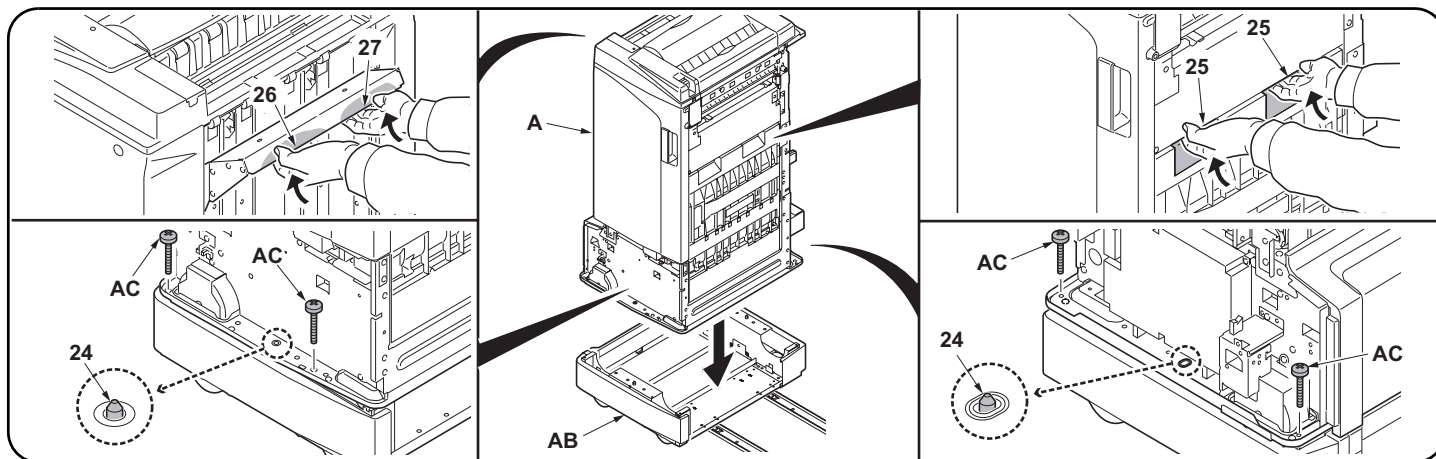
68. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
69. 从装订器 (A) 上取下 4 颗螺丝 (22) 以便拆下后盖板 (23)。



#### カバーの取り外し

66. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の前カバーを開く。
67. ビス (20) 2 本を外し、前下カバー (21) を取り外す。

68. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の前カバーを閉じる。
69. ビス (22) 4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の後カバー (23) を取り外す。



#### Installing the assembly base (Be sure to perform this by two service personnel)

70. Align the projection (24) on the assembly base (AB) with the hole of the document finisher (A) and place the document finisher (A) on the assembly base (AB).  
Lift up the document finisher (A) by two service personnel simultaneously by one to hold (25) and the other to hold (26) and (27). Be sure to perform this step by two service personnel, not by one personnel.
71. Fix the document finisher (A) to the assembly base (AB) using four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (AC).

#### Installation de la base d'ensemble (Bien faire procéder à cette opération simultanément par deux agents d'entretien.)

70. Aligner la saillie (24) de la base d'ensemble (AB) sur l'orifice du retoucheur de document (A) et mettre le retoucheur de document (A) en place sur la base d'ensemble (AB).  
Faire soulever le retoucheur de document (A) par deux employés de service ensemble, l'un tenant (25) et l'autre Tenant (26) et (27). Veiller à ce que cette étape soit effectuée par deux employés de service et non par un seul.
71. Fixer le retoucheur de document (A) sur la base d'ensemble (AB) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (AC).

#### Instalación de la base del conjunto (Asegúrese de que este procedimiento lo realicen dos personas del personal de servicio)

70. Alinee el resalto (24) de la base del conjunto (AB) con el agujero del finalizador de documentos (A) y ponga el finalizador de documentos (A) en la base del conjunto (AB).  
El finalizador de documentos (A) deberá ser levantado simultáneamente por dos personas del personal de servicio, una de ellas sujetando la parte (25) y la otra las partes (26) y (27). Asegúrese de que este paso lo lleven a cabo dos personas del personal de servicio, no una sola.
71. Fije el finalizador de documentos (A) en la base del conjunto (AB) utilizando cuatro tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (AC).

#### Anbringen der Bauteil-Basis (Diese Arbeit sollte unbedingt von zwei Personen ausgeführt werden.)

70. Richten Sie den Vorsprung (24) auf der Bauteile-Basis (AB) mit dem Loch im Dokument-Finisher (A) aus, und setzen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) danach auf die Bauteile-Basis (AB).  
Heben Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) zusammen mit einer zweiten Person gleichzeitig an. Eine Person hält die Stelle (25) fest, während die andere Person die Stellen (26) und (27) festhält. Führen Sie diesen Schritt unbedingt mit zwei Personen durch.
71. Befestigen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) an die Bauteile-Basis (AB) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (AC).

#### Installazione della base di assemblaggio (Assicurarsi di eseguire questa installazione in due persone)

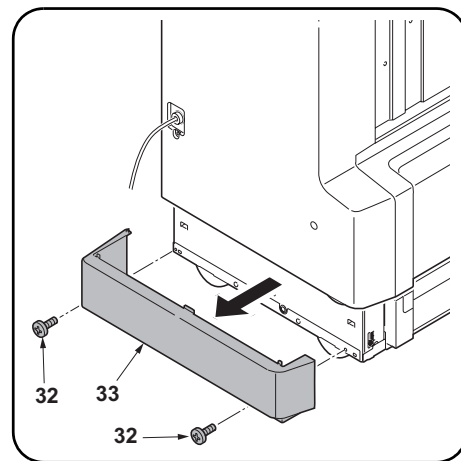
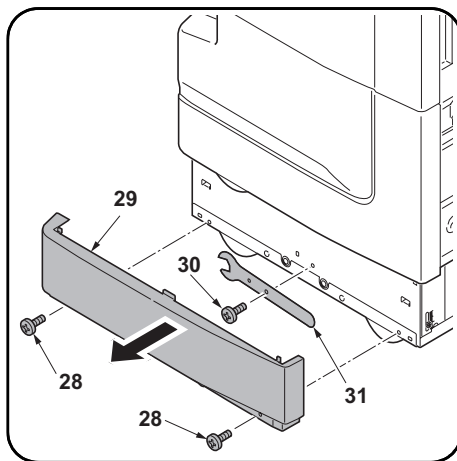
70. Allineare la parte sporgente (24) della base di assemblaggio (AB) al foro della finitrice di documenti (A) e collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) sopra la base di assemblaggio (AB).  
Due membri del personale sollevino la finitrice di documenti (A) simultaneamente, uno reggendo (25) e l'altro reggendo (26) e (27). Assicurarsi che ad eseguire questo punto siano due membri del personale e non una persona sola.
71. Fissare la finitrice di documenti (A) alla base di assemblaggio (AB) utilizzando quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (AC).

#### 安装组装底座（务必由两名维修人员执行此操作）

70. 将组装底座 (AB) 上的突起 (13) 对准装订器 (A) 的孔, 并将装订器 (A) 至于组装底座 (AB) 上。  
由两名维修人员同时抬起装订器 (A), 一人抓握 (14) 所示的位置, 另一人抓握 (15) 和 (16) 所示的位置。务必由两名维修人员执行此步骤, 不可单人独自完成。
71. 使用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 (AC) 将装订器 (A) 固定至组装底座 (AB)。

#### 組立ベースの取り付け（必ず2人で行うこと）

70. 組立ベース (AB) の突起 (24) とドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の穴を合わせ、組立ベース (AB) にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を乗せる。  
1 人が (25) の部分を、もう 1 人が (26), (27) の部分を持ち、2 人で同時にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を持ち上げる。  
必ず 2 人で作業を行い、1 人では行わないこと。
71. ビス M4 × 10 タップタイツ S (AC) 4 本で組立ベース (AB) にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を固定する。



#### Installing the cover

72. Use four screws (22) removed from the document finisher in step 69 to reinstall the back cover (23).
73. Use two screws (20) removed from the document finisher in step 67 to reinstall the lower front cover (21).

#### [Adjusting the document finisher height]

74. Remove the two screws (28) to remove front cover S (29).
75. Remove the screw (30) to remove the spanner (31).

76. Remove the two screws (32) to remove rear cover S (33).

#### Installation du capot

72. Utiliser cinq vis (22) retirées du retoucheur de document à l'étape 69 pour réinstaller le capot arrière (23).
73. Utiliser deux vis (20) retirées du retoucheur de document à l'étape 67 pour réinstaller le capot inférieur avant (21).

#### [Ajustement de la hauteur du retoucheur de document]

74. Déposer les deux vis (28) pour enlever le couvercle avant S (29).
75. Déposer la vis (30) pour libérer la clé (31).

76. Déposer les deux vis (32) pour enlever le couvercle arrière S (33).

#### Instalación de la cubierta

72. Utilice cuatro tornillos (22) quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 69 para volver a instalar la cubierta trasera (23).
73. Utilice dos tornillos (20) quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 67 para volver a instalar la cubierta delantera inferior (21).

#### [Ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos]

74. Extraiga los dos tornillos (28) para quitar la cubierta frontal S (29).
75. Quite el tornillo (30) para extraer la llave inglesa (31).

76. Extraiga los dos tornillos (32) para quitar la cubierta trasera S (33).

#### Anbringen der Abdeckung

72. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (22), welche Sie im Schritt 69 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt haben, um die hintere Abdeckung (23) wieder anzubringen.
73. Verwenden Sie die beiden Schrauben (20), welche Sie im Schritt 67 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt haben, um die vordere Abdeckung (21) wieder anzubringen.

#### [Einstellen der Höhe des Dokument-Finishers]

74. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (28), um die vordere Abdeckung S (29) abzunehmen.
75. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (30), um den Schlüssel (31) abzunehmen.

76. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (32), um die hintere Abdeckung S (33) abzunehmen.

#### Installazione del pannello

72. Utilizzare le quattro viti (22) rimosse dalla finitrice di documenti al punto 69 per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (23).
73. Utilizzare le due viti (20) rimosse dalla finitrice di documenti al punto 67 per reinstallare il pannello inferiore anteriore (21).

#### [Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti]

74. Rimuovere le due viti (28) per rimuovere il pannello anteriore S (29).
75. Rimuovere la vite (30) per rimuovere la chiave (31).

76. Rimuovere le due viti (32) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore S (33).

#### 安装盖板

72. 用在步骤 69 中从装订器上取下的 4 颗螺丝 (22) 重新安装后盖板 (23)。
73. 用在步骤 67 中从装订器上取下的 2 颗螺丝 (20) 重新安装前下盖板 (21)。

#### [调节装订器高度]

74. 取下 2 颗螺丝 (28) 以便拆下前盖板 S (29)。
75. 取下螺丝 (30) 以便拆下扳手 (31)。

76. 取下 2 颗螺丝 (32) 以便拆下后盖板 S (33)。

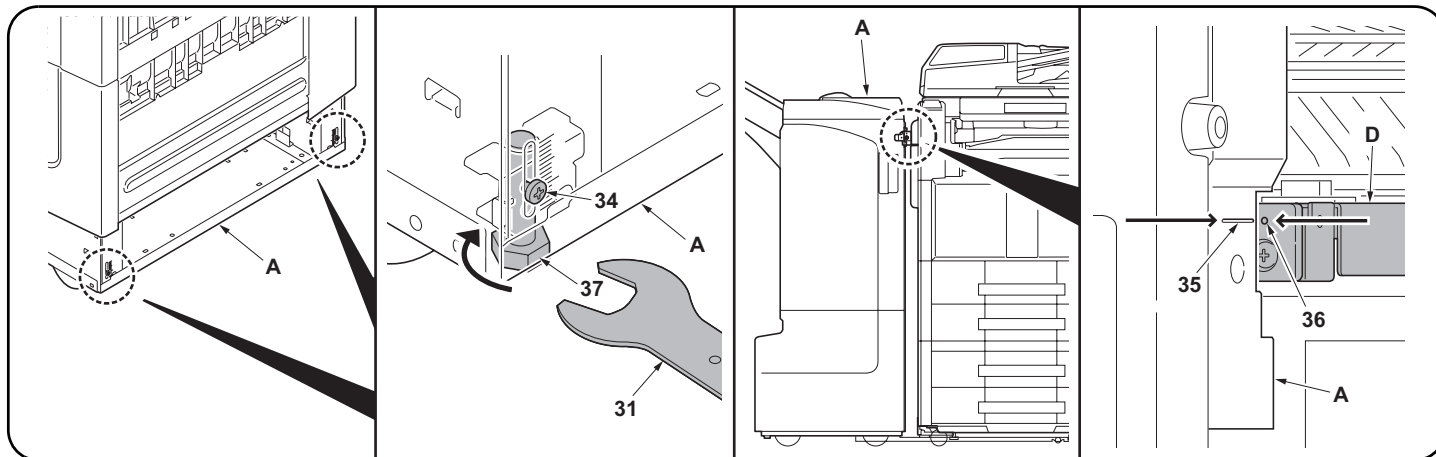
#### カバールの取り付け

72. 手順 69 で外した後カバー (23) をビス (22) 4 本で元通り取り付け。
73. 手順 67 で外した前下カバー (21) をビス (20) 2 本で元通り取り付け。

#### [ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整]

74. ビス (28) 2 本を外し、カバー前 S (29) を取り外す。
75. ビス (30) 1 本を外し、スパナ (31) を取り外す。

76. ビス (32) 2 本を外し、カバー後 S (33) を取り外す。



77. Loosen the fixing screw (34) on the front right and rear right of the document finisher (A).
78. Adjust the height of the document finisher (A) by turning the bolt (37) using the spanner (31) so that the hole (36) on the side of the connecting plate (D) on the MFP levels with the rib (35) on the document finisher (A) when the connection is seen from the front.  
The document finisher lowers when you turn the bolt (37) in the direction of the arrow.
79. When you have finished adjusting the height, tighten the fixing screw (34) on the front right and rear right of the document finisher (A).

77. Desserrer la vis de fixation (34) à l'avant droit et à l'arrière droit du retoucheur de document (A).
78. Ajuster la hauteur du retoucheur de document (A) par rotation du boulon (37) avec la clé (31) de sorte que le trou (36) sur le côté de la plaque de connexion (D) du MFP soit de niveau avec le repère (35) sur le retoucheur de document (A) quand le montage est vu depuis l'avant.  
Le retoucheur de document descend quand le boulon (37) est tourné dans la direction de la flèche.
79. Une fois la hauteur réglée, resserrer la vis de fixation (34) à l'avant droit et à l'arrière droit du retoucheur de document (A).

77. Afloje el tornillo de fijación (34) en la parte frontal derecha y trasera derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
78. Ajuste la altura del finalizador de documentos (A) girando el perno (37) con la llave inglesa (31) de forma tal que el orificio (36) en el lado de la placa de conexión (D) en el MFP quede nivelado con la nervadura (35) del finalizador de documentos (A) mirando la conexión desde el frente.  
El finalizador de documentos baja cuando gira el perno (37) en la dirección que muestra la flecha.
79. Cuando haya terminado de ajustar la altura, apriete el tornillo de fijación (34) en la parte frontal derecha y trasera derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

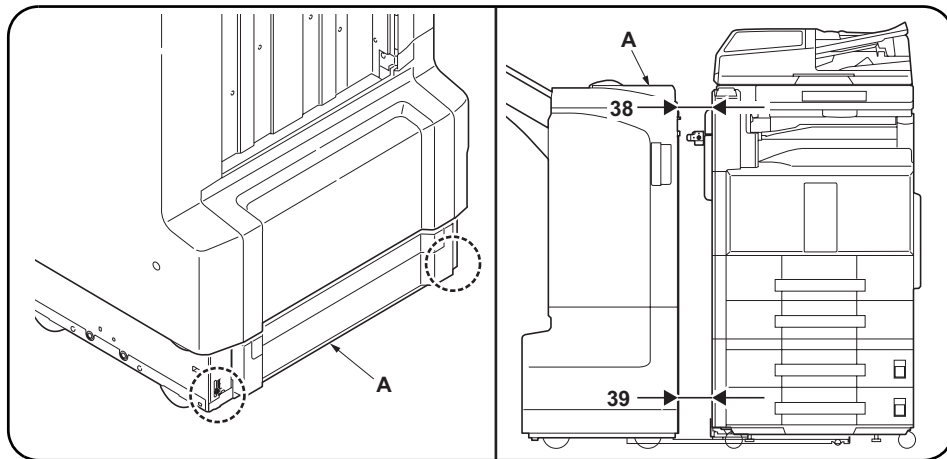
77. Lösen Sie die Befestigungsschraube (34) vorne rechts und hinten rechts am Dokument Finisher (A).
78. Stellen Sie die Höhe des Dokument Finishers (A) ein, indem Sie mit dem Schlüssel (31) die Schraube (37) so weit verstellen, dass das Loch (36) auf der Seite der Anschlussplatte (D) auf dem MFP mit der Rippe (35) am Dokument Finisher (A) fluchtet, wenn man vorne auf den Anschluss blickt.  
Der Dokument Finisher wird fesenkt, wenn man die Schraube (37) in der Pfeilrichtung dreht.
79. Ziehen Sie die Befestigungsschraube (34) vorne rechts und hinten rechts am Dokument Finisher (A) an, nachdem Sie die Höhe korrigiert haben.

77. Allentare la vite di fissaggio (34) alla parte destra anteriore e posteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
78. Regolare l'altezza della finitrice di documenti (A) ruotando il bullone (37) utilizzando la chiave (31), in modo che il foro (36) sul lato della piastra di connessione (D) sull'MFP sia a livello con il segno in rilievo (35) sulla finitrice di documenti (A) quando la connessione viene vista frontalmente.  
La finitrice di documenti si abbassa quando si ruota il bullone (37) nella direzione della freccia.
79. Quando si è completata la regolazione dell'altezza, stringere la vite di fissaggio (34) alla parte destra anteriore e posteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

77. 拧松装订器 (A) 右前侧和右后侧的固定螺丝 (34)。
78. 使用扳手 (31) 转动螺栓 (37) 以调节装订器 (A) 的高度, 使 MFP 上的连接板 (D) 一侧的孔 (36) 与装订器 (A) 上的肋片 (35) 对齐 (从正面观察)。  
沿箭头所示方向转动螺栓 (37) 可降低装订器高度。
79. 完成高度调节后, 拧紧装订器 (A) 右前侧和右后侧的固定螺丝 (34)。

**TONER**

77. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右前および右後の固定ビス (34) を緩める。
78. 連結部を前から見た時に、MFP 本体の連結板 (D) 側面の穴 (36) とドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) のリブ (35) の高さが合うように、スパナ (31) でボルト (37) を回し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の高さを調整する。  
ボルト (37) は、矢印方向に回すほど、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さが低くなる。
79. 高さ調整が終了したら、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右前および右後の固定ビス (34) を締める。



80. Adjust the height of the front left and rear left in the same way as steps 77 to 79 so that the gaps (38, 39) are equal to each other when the document finisher (A) and the MFP are connected together.
81. Replace rear cover S (33) removed in step 76 using the two screws (32).
82. Replace the spanner (31) removed in step 75 using the screw (30).
83. Replace front cover S (29) removed in step 74 using the two screws (28).

- 
80. Ajuster la hauteur à l'avant et à l'arrière gauche en procédant de la même manière qu'aux étapes 77 à 79 de sorte que l'écartement (38, 39) soit le même de chaque côté quand le retoucheur de document (A) et le MFP sont connectés l'un à l'autre.
  81. Reposer le couvercle arrière S (33) déposé à l'étape 76 et le fixer à l'aide de deux vis (32).
  82. Remettre en place la clé (31) déposée à l'étape 75 et la fixer à l'aide de sa vis (30).
  83. Reposer le couvercle avant S (29) déposé à l'étape 74 et le fixer à l'aide de deux vis (28).

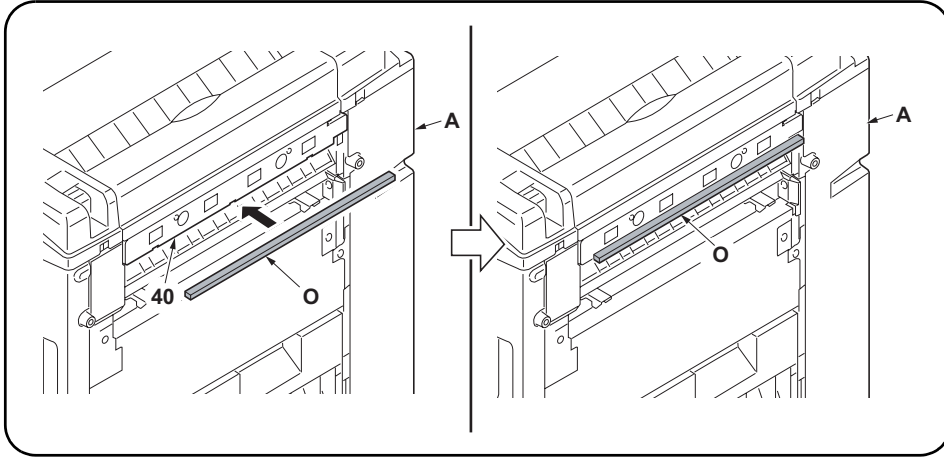
- 
80. Ajuste la altura de las partes frontal izquierda y trasera izquierda de la misma forma que indican los pasos 77 a 79, de forma tal que las separaciones (38, 39) sean iguales cuando se conecten el finalizador de documentos (A) y el MFP
  81. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera S (33) quitada en el paso 76, utilizando los dos tornillos (32).
  82. Coloque en su lugar la llave inglesa (31) extraída en el paso 75, por medio del tornillo (30).
  83. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta frontal S (29) quitada en el paso 74, utilizando los dos tornillos (28).

- 
80. Stellen Sie die Höhe vorne links und hinten links auf die gleiche Weise wie bei Schritt 77 bis 79 ein, so dass die Abstände (38, 39) gleich groß sind, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) und der MFP miteinander verbunden sind.
  81. Bringen Sie mit den zwei Schrauben (32) wieder die bei Schritt 76 abgenommene hintere Abdeckung S (33) an.
  82. Bringen Sie mit der Schraube (30) wieder den bei Schritt 75 abgenommenen Schlüssel (31) an.
  83. Bringen Sie mit den zwei Schrauben (28) wieder die bei Schritt 74 abgenommene vordere Abdeckung S (29) an.

- 
80. Regolare l'altezza del lato sinistro anteriore e posteriore alla stessa maniera come riportato nei passi da 77 a 79, in modo che gli spazi (38, 39) siano uguali tra loro quando la finitrice di documenti (A) e l'MFP sono collegati insieme.
  81. Ricollocare il pannello posteriore S (33) rimosso al passo 76 utilizzando le due viti (32).
  82. Ricollocare la chiave (31) rimossa al passo 75 utilizzando la vite (30).
  83. Ricollocare il pannello anteriore S (29) rimosso al passo 74 utilizzando le due viti (28).

- 
80. 以与步骤 77 至 79 相同的方式调节左前方和左后方的高度，使相互连接的装订器 (A) 和 MFP 之间的间隙 (31, 32) 相等。
  81. 使用 2 颗螺丝 (32) 重新安装在步骤 76 中拆下的后盖板 S (33)。
  82. 使用螺丝 (30) 重新安装在步骤 75 中拆下的扳手 (31)。
  83. 使用 2 颗螺丝 (28) 重新安装在步骤 74 中拆下的前盖板 S (29)。

- 
80. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) と MFP 本体を連結したときに、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) と MFP 本体の間隔 (38) および (39) が等しくなるように手順 77 ~ 79 と同様にして、左前、左後の高さ調整をおこなう。
  81. 手順 76 で取り外したカバー後 S (33) をビス (32) 2 本で元通り取り付け。
  82. 手順 75 で取り外したスパナ (31) をビス (30) 1 本で元通り取り付け。
  83. 手順 74 で取り外したカバー前 S (29) をビス (28) 2 本で元通り取り付け。



#### Installing the sponge

84. Clean the sheet metal section under the upper cover (40) of the document finisher (A) with alcohol.
85. Peel the release paper off the sponge (O) and adhere the sponge as shown in the illustration.

#### Installation de l'éponge

84. Nettoyer la partie en feuille de métal du capot supérieur (40) du retoucheur de document (A) avec de l'alcool.
85. Arracher le papier de protection de l'éponge (O) et coller l'éponge comme illustré ici.

#### Instalación de la esponja

84. Limpie con alcohol la sección de la hoja metálica situada debajo de la cubierta superior (40) del finalizador de documentos (A).
85. Despegue el papel de la esponja (O) y pegue la esponja como se muestra en la ilustración.

#### Anbringen des Schwamms

84. Reinigen Sie den Metallbereich unter der oberen Abdeckung (40) des Dokument-Finishers (A) mit Alkohol.
85. Ziehen Sie die Klebeschutzfolie vom Schwamm (O) ab, und kleben Sie den Schwamm wie dargestellt an.

#### Installazione della spugna

84. Pulire con alcool la sezione in lamiera sotto il pannello superiore (40) della finitrice di documenti (A).
85. Staccare la carta protettiva dalla spugna (O) e far aderire la spugna come mostrato nell'illustrazione.

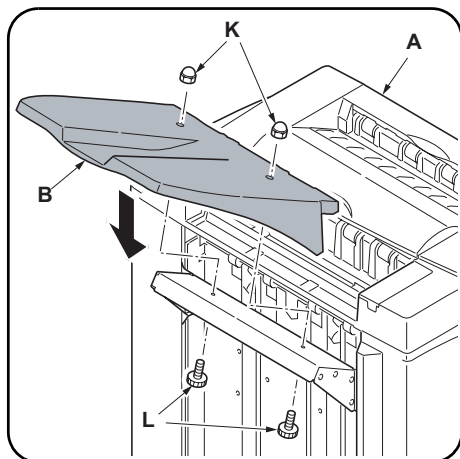
#### 安装海绵

84. 使用酒精清洁装订器 (A) 上盖板 (40) 下方的金属板部位。
85. 剥离海绵 (O) 上的隔离纸, 将海绵粘至如图所示位置。



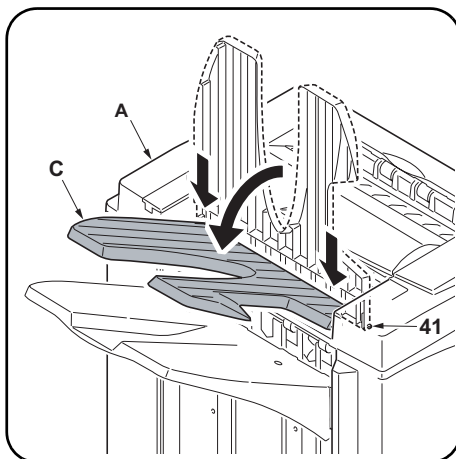
#### スポンジの貼り付け

84. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の上カバー (40) の下の板金部をアルコール清掃する。
85. スポンジ (O) の剥離紙を剥ぎ取り、イラストのように貼り付ける。

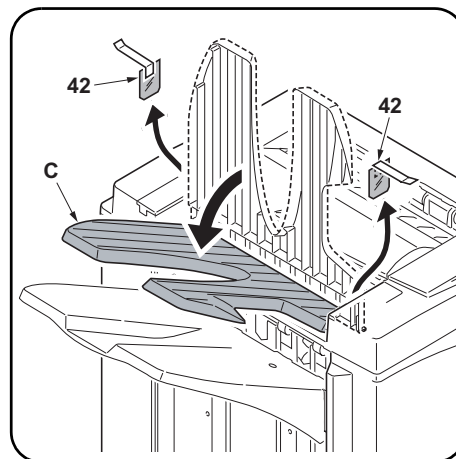


#### Installing the trays

86. Use two nuts (K) and two pins (L) to install the tray A (B) to the document finisher (A).



87. the right and left projections (41) of the tray B (C) onto the document finisher (A) from its top. Fit the tray with the Lumiror films (42) remaining attached.



88. Lower tray B (C) and remove the two Lumiror films (42).

#### Installation des bacs

86. Utiliser deux écrous (K) et deux broches (L) pour installer le bac A (B) sur le retoucheur de document (A).

87. Fixer les saillies droite et gauche (41) du bac B (C) sur le retoucheur de document (A) depuis le haut. Insérer le bac avec les films Lumiror (42) bien en place.

88. Abaisser le bac B (C) et enlever les deux films Lumiror (42).

#### Instalación de las bandejas

86. Utilice dos tuercas (K) y dos pasadores (L) para instalar la bandeja A (B) en el finalizador de documentos (A).

87. Coloque los resaltos derecho e izquierdo (41) de la bandeja B (C) sobre el finalizador de documentos (A) desde su parte superior. Inserte la bandeja con las películas Lumiror (42) colocadas.

88. Baje la bandeja B (C) y quite las dos películas Lumiror (42).

#### Anbringen der Fächer

86. Verwenden Sie die beiden Muttern (K) und die beiden Stifte (L), um das Fach A (B) in den Dokument-Finisher (A) einzubauen.

87. Setzen Sie die rechten und linken Vorsprünge (41) des Fachs B (C) von oben auf den Dokument-Finisher (A). Setzen Sie das Fach mit noch angebrachten Lumiror-Folien (42) ein.

88. Senken Sie das Fach B (C), und entfernen Sie die beiden Lumiror-Folien (42).

#### Installazione dei vassoi

86. Utilizzare due dadi (K) e due perni (L) per installare il vassoio A (B) alla finitrice di documenti (A).

87. Inserire dall'alto della finitrice di documenti (A) le parti sporgenti destra e sinistra (41) del vassoio B (C) nella finitrice stessa. Inserire il vassoio con i film Lumiror (42) annessi.

88. I Abbassare il vassoio B (C) e rimuovere i due film Lumiror (42).

#### 安装托盘

86. 使用 2 颗螺母 (K) 和 2 个销钉 (L) 将托盘 A (B) 安装至装订器 (A)。

87. 将托盘 B (C) 左右两侧的突出部 (41) 固定至装订器 (A) 的顶部。使用粘贴在装订器上的导光膜 (42) 固定托盘。

88. 降低托盘 B (C) 并拆下 2 条导光膜 (42)。

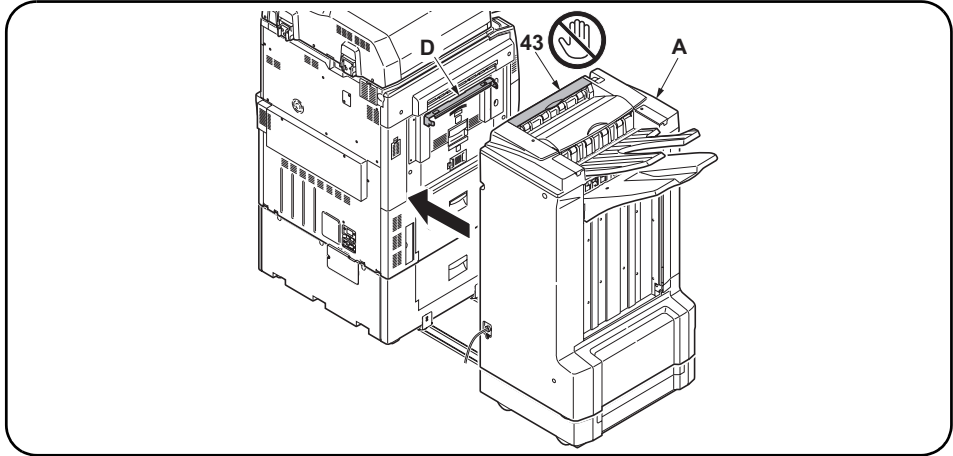


#### トレイの取り付け

86. ナット (K) 2 個とピン (L) 2 個でドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) にトレイ A (B) を取り付けする。

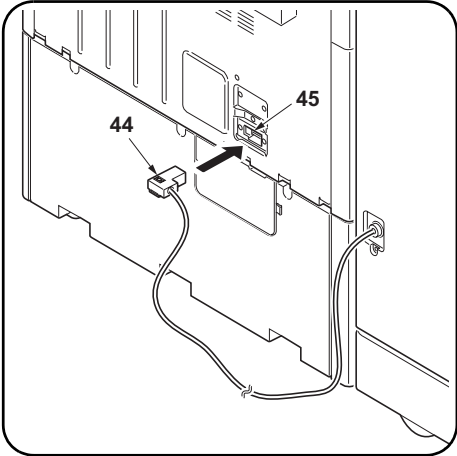
87. トレイ B (C) の左右の突起 (41) をドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) へ上からはめ込む。ルミラ (42) は剥がさず、付けたままはめ込むこと。

88. トレイ B (C) を倒し、ルミラ (42) 2 枚を取り外す。



**[Installing the document finisher and the MFP]**

89. Slide the document finisher (A) and connect it to the connecting plate (D) on the MFP.  
When making the connection, never hold the upper cover (43) of the document finisher (A).



**Connecting the signal line**

90. Connect the signal line (44) of the document finisher (A) to the connector (45) at the back of the MFP.

**[Installation du retoucheur de document et du MFP]**

89. Faire glisser le retoucheur de document (A) et le raccorder à la plaque de connexion (D) sur le MFP.  
A l'exécution de cette opération, ne jamais tenir le couvercle supérieur (43) du retoucheur de document (A).

**Connexion de la ligne d'interconnexion**

90. Connecter la ligne d'interconnexion (44) du retoucheur de document (A) au connecteur (45) à l'arrière du MFP

**[Instalación del finalizador de documentos y la MFP]**

89. Deslice el finalizador de documentos (A) y conéctelo a la placa de conexión (D) en el MFP.  
Cuando realice la conexión, nunca sostenga la cubierta superior (43) del finalizador de documentos (A).

**Conexión de la línea de señales**

90. Conecte la línea de señales (44) del finalizador de documentos (A) al conector (45) de la parte trasera de la MFP.

**[Anbringen des Dokument-Finishers und des MFP]**

89. Schieben Sie den Dokument Finisher (A) ein, und schließen Sie ihn an die Anschlussplatte (D) am MFP an.  
Halten Sie beim Anschließen auf keinen Fall die obere Abdeckung (43) des Dokument Finishers (A) fest.

**Anschließen der Signalleitung**

90. Schließen Sie die Signalleitung (44) des Dokument-Finishers (A) am Stecker (45) auf der Rückseite des MFP an.

**[Installazione della finitrice di documenti e della MFP]**

89. Slittare la finitrice di documenti (A) e collegarla alla piastra di connessione (D) sull'MFP.  
Quando si esegue il collegamento, non tenere mai il pannello superiore (43) della finitrice di documenti (A).

**Connessione del cavo del segnale**

90. Collegare il cavo del segnale (44) della finitrice di documenti (A) al connettore (45) sul retro della MFP.

**[ 安装装订器和 MFP ]**

89. 滑入装订器 (A) 并将其连接至 MFP 上的连接板 (D)。  
连接时切勿抓握装订器 (A) 的上盖板 (43)。

**连接信号线**

90. 将装订器 (A) 的信号线 (44) 连接至 MFP 后面的接口 (45)。

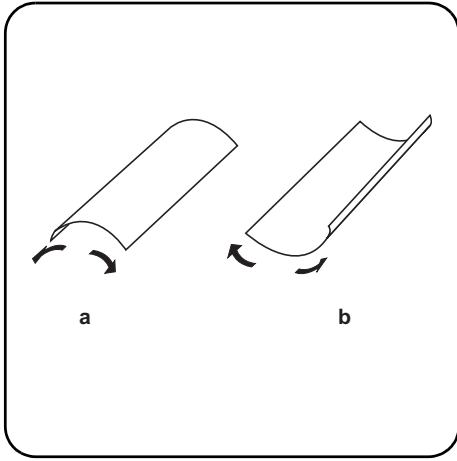


**[ ドキュメントフィニッシャと MFP 本体の取り付け ]**

89. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) をスライドさせて MFP 本体側の連結板 (D) に連結させる。  
連結する際、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の上カバー (43) を絶対に持たないこと。

**信号線の接続**

90. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の信号線 (44) を MFP 本体後側のコネクタ (45) に接続する。



#### [Checking the curl]

**91.** Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.

**92.** Perform a test copy to check the paper is fed.

**93.** Check the curl of the copy sample, and if the curl is tight, follow the next step to adjust it.

#### [Vérification de la boucle]

**91.** Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.

**92.** Effectuer une copie de test pour s'assurer que le papier est alimenté.

**93.** Vérifier la boucle sur l'échantillon de copie et si la boucle est serrée, suivre l'étape suivante pour l'ajuster.

#### [Comprobación de la curvatura del papel]

**91.** Enchufe la MFP a una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.

**92.** Haga una copia de prueba para asegurarse de que avance el papel.

**93.** Compruebe la curvatura del papel de la muestra de la copia y si ésta es mucha, siga el paso siguiente para ajustarla.

#### [Überprüfen der Papierwellung]

**91.** Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an, und aktivieren Sie den Geräteschalter.

**92.** Machen Sie eine Testkopie, um sich zu vergewissern, dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.

**93.** Überprüfen Sie die Testkopie auf Wellung. Falls das Papier zu stark aufgerollt ist, folgen Sie dem nächsten Schritt zur Einstellung.

#### [Controllo dell'arricciatura]

**91.** Collegare la MFP alla presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.

**92.** Eseguire una copia di prova per verificare che la carta sia alimentata.

**93.** Controllare l'arricciatura della copia di prova e, se è notevole, procedere come indicato nel punto successivo per regolarla.

#### [ 检查卷曲状态 ]

**91.** 插入 MFP 的电源, 打开主电源开关。

**92.** 进行测试复印以检查送纸。

**93.** 检查复印样本的卷曲状态, 如果卷曲严重, 按照下一步进行调整。

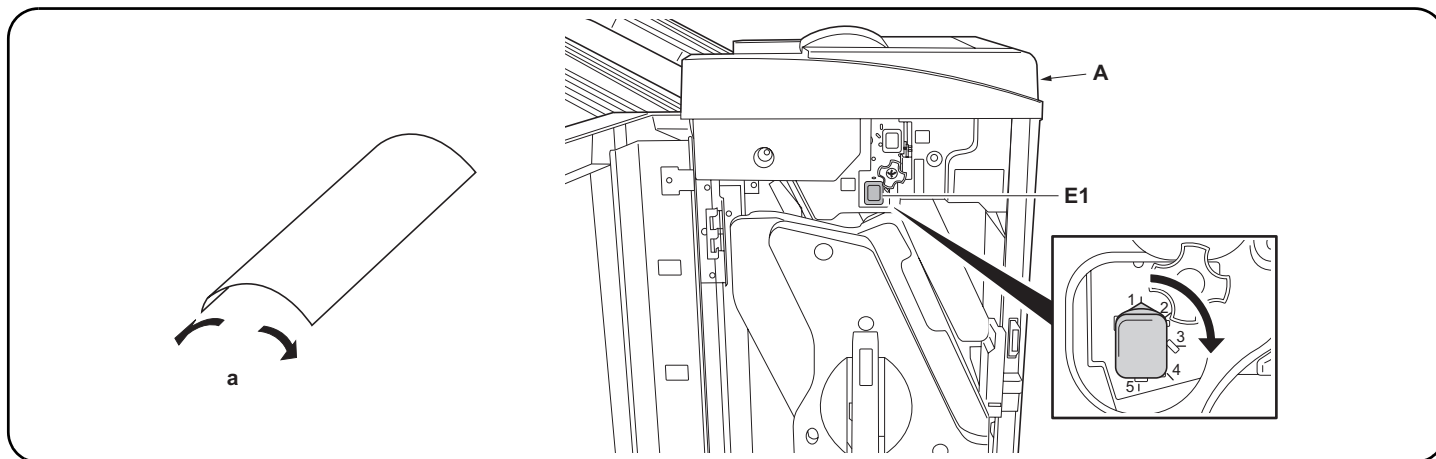


#### [ カール状態の確認 ]

**91.** MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。

**92.** 通紙を確認する。

**93.** コピーサンプルのカール状態を確認し、カールが大きい場合、次の手順で調整を行う。



#### Checking the curl

**If the ejected paper is tightly curled face-down (a)**

94. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).

95. Pull the pressure roller bottom adjusting knob E1 to your side and turn the knob by 1 scale in increasing order.

96. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).

97. Check the paper is fed.

98. Repeat steps 94 to 97 until the paper becomes straight.

#### Vérification de la boucle

**Si on enroule vers le bas les papiers sur la sortie (a)**

94. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

95. Tirer la molette de réglage inférieure du rouleau de pression E1 vers soi et faire tourner la molette pour l'augmenter d'un cran.

96. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

97. S'assurer que le papier est fourni.

98. Répéter les étapes 94 à 97 jusqu'à ce que le papier soit plat.

#### Comprobación de la curvatura

**Si el papel de la salida está curvado hacia abajo (a)**

94. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

95. Tire del control de ajuste inferior del rodillo de presión E1 hacia donde está usted y gire el control 1 posición en el orden de aumento.

96. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

97. Asegúrese de que avance el papel.

98. Repita los pasos 94 a 97 hasta que el papel quede derecho.

#### Überprüfen der Papierwellung

**Wenn der Papier auf dem Auslass nach unten aufgerollt wird (a)**

94. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

95. Ziehen Sie den unteren Andruckwalzenreglerknopf E1 gegen sich, und drehen Sie den Knopf um eine Stufe in aufsteigender Richtung.

96. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

97. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.

98. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 94 bis 97, bis das Papier sich glättet.

#### Controllo dell'arricciatura

**Se la carta all'uscita è rivolta verso il basso arricciata (a)**

94. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

95. Tirare la manopola di regolazione inferiore del rullo di pressione E1 verso di voi e ruotarla di una tacca in ordine crescente.

96. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

97. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.

98. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 94 al punto 97 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

#### 检查卷曲状态

**如果输出的纸张正面朝下且卷曲严重 (a)**

94. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

95. 将压辊底部调节旋钮 E1 朝你所在的方向拉, 并顺时针旋转旋钮 1 个刻度。

96. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

97. 检查送纸。

98. 重复步骤 94 至 97, 直至纸张不再卷曲。

#### カール状態の調整

**排出された用紙のカールが下向きに大きい場合 (a)**

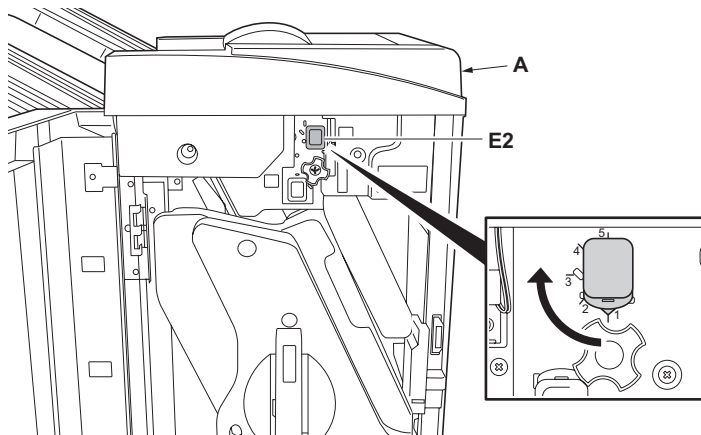
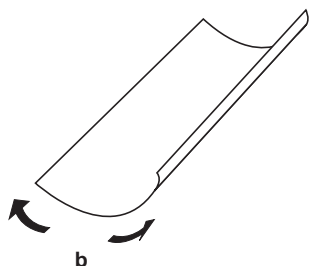
94. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。

95. 加圧ローラ下調整つまみ E1 を手前に引き、数字の大きい方向に 1 目盛り回す。

96. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。

97. 通紙を確認する。

98. 用紙のカールがなくなるまで、手順 94 ~ 97 を繰り返す。



**If the ejected paper is tightly curled face-up (b)**

99. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
100. Pull the pressure roller top adjusting knob E2 to your side and turn the knob by 1 scale in increasing order.

**101. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).**

102. Check the paper is fed.
103. Repeat steps 99 to 102 until the paper becomes straight.

**Si on enroule de façon serrée vers le haut les papiers sur la sortie (b)**

99. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
100. Tirer la molette de réglage supérieure du rouleau de pression E2 vers soi et faire tourner la molette pour l'augmenter d'un cran.

**101. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).**

102. S'assurer que le papier est fourni.
103. Répéter les étapes 99 à 102 jusqu'à ce que le papier soit plat.

**Si se el papel de la salida está apretado hacia arriba (b)**

99. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
100. Tire del control de ajuste superior del rodillo de presión E2 hacia donde está usted y gire el control 1 posición en el orden de aumento.

**101. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).**

102. Asegúrese de que avance el papel.
103. Repita los pasos 99 a 102 hasta que el papel quede derecho.

**Wenn der Papier auf dem Auslass straff nach oben aufgerollt wird (b)**

99. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
100. Ziehen Sie den oberen Andruckwalzenreglerknopf E2 gegen sich, und drehen Sie den Knopf um eine Stufe in aufsteigender Richtung.

**101. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).**

102. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
103. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 99 al punto 102 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

**Se la carta all'uscita è rivolta verso l'alto notevolmente arricciata (b)**

99. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
100. Tirare la manopola di regolazione superiore del rullo di pressione E2 verso di voi e ruotarla di una tacca in ordine crescente.

**101. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).**

102. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
103. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 99 al punto 102 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

**如果输出的纸张正面朝上且卷曲严重 (b)**

99. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
100. 将压辊顶部调节旋钮 E2 朝你所在的方向拉，并顺时针旋转旋钮 1 个刻度。

**101. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。**

102. 检查送纸。
103. 重复步骤 99 至 102，直至纸张不再卷曲。

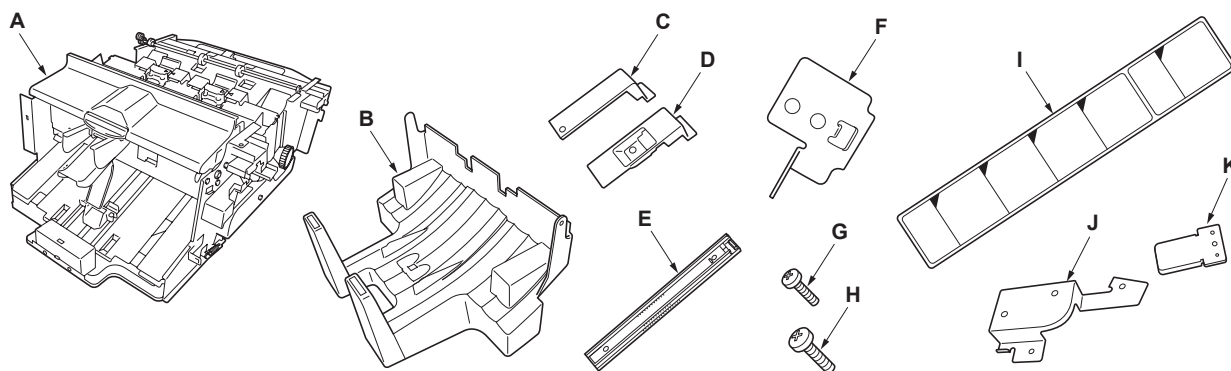
**排出された用紙のカールが上向きに大きい場合 (b)**

99. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。
100. 加圧ローラ上調整つまみ E2 を手前に引き、数字の大きい方向に 1 目盛り回す。

**101. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。**

102. 通紙を確認する。
103. 用紙のカールがなくなるまで、手順 99 ～ 102 を繰り返す。

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR CENTER-FOLDING UNIT**



## English

### Supplied parts

A Center-Folding unit .....	1
B Folding tray .....	1
C Rear cover .....	1
D Front cover .....	1
E Slider .....	2

F Douser .....	1
G M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw .....	2
H M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw .....	11
I Label .....	1
J Cover handle saddle .....	1
K Cover V .....	2

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Plieuse .....	1
B Bac de pliage .....	1
C Capot arrière .....	1
D Capot avant .....	1
E Règle .....	2

F Ombreur .....	1
G Vis P taraudées M3 × 8 .....	2
H Vis S taraudées M4 × 8 .....	11
I Etiquette .....	1
J Poignée de capot à cheval .....	1
K Capot V .....	2

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Unidad de plegado .....	1
B Bandeja de plegado .....	1
C Cubierta posterior .....	1
D Cubierta frontal .....	1
E Deslizador .....	2

F Pantalla paraluz .....	1
G Tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 .....	2
H Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 .....	11
I Etiqueta .....	1
J Placa de manilla de cubierta .....	1
K Cubierta V .....	2

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Mittenfalteinheit .....	1
B Faltfach .....	1
C Hintere Abdeckung .....	1
D Vordere Abdeckung .....	1
E Schieber .....	2

F Abschirmung .....	1
G M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	2
H M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	11
I Aufkleber .....	1
J Abdeckungsalter .....	1
K Abdeckung V .....	2

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

## Italiano

### Parti fornite

A Unità di piegatura centrale .....	1
B Vassoio di piegatura .....	1
C Pannello posteriore .....	1
D Pannello anteriore .....	1
E Scivolo .....	2

F Dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) .....	1
G Viti con testa a croce P M3 × 8 .....	2
H Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 .....	11
I Etichetta .....	1
J Slitta coprimanopola .....	1
K Pannello V .....	2

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

## 简体中文

### 附属部件

A 中缝装订—折页单元 .....	1
B 折叠托盘 .....	1
C 后盖板 .....	1
D 前盖板 .....	1
E 滑板 .....	2

F 探测器 .....	1
G M3 × 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉 .....	2
H M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 .....	11
I 标签 .....	1
J 盖板手柄鞍座 .....	1
K 盖板 V .....	2

如果同装品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

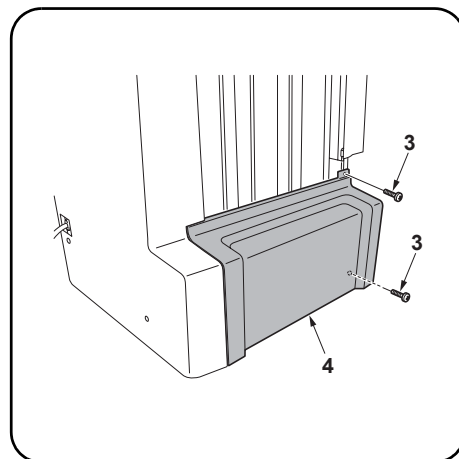
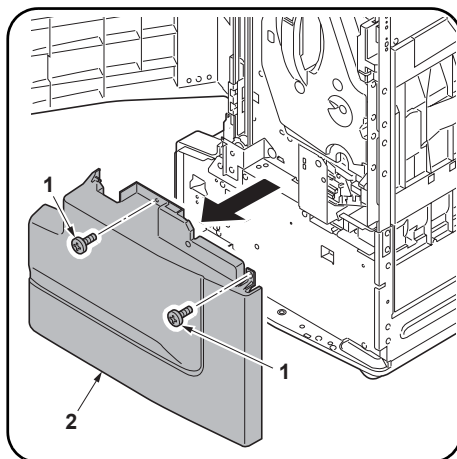
## 日本語

### 同梱品

A 中折りユニット .....	1
B 中折りトレイ .....	1
C カバー後 .....	1
D カバー前 .....	1
E スライダー .....	2

F 遮光板 .....	1
G ビス M3 × 8 タップタイト P .....	2
H ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S .....	11
I ラベル .....	1
J カバーハンドルサドル .....	1
K カバーV .....	2

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



### Procedure

Before installing the center-folding unit, turn the MFP's main power switch off and unplug the power cable from the power supply. Install the document finisher, and then install the center-folding unit.

### Removing the cover.

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher.
2. Remove two screws (1) and remove lower front cover (2).

3. Remove two screws (3) and remove lower left cover (4).

### Procédure

Avant d'installer la plieuse mettre l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP hors tension et débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise de courant. Installer le finisseur de document, puis installer la plieuse.

### Enlèvement du capot.

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer deux vis (1) et retirer le capot avant inférieur (2).

3. Retirer deux vis (3) et retirer le capot gauche inférieur (4).

### Procedimiento

Antes de instalar la unidad de plegado, desconecte el interruptor de alimentación principal de la MFP y desenchufe el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente. Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la unidad de plegado.

### Extracción de la cubierta.

1. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (1) y la cubierta frontal inferior (2).

3. Quite dos tornillos (3) y la cubierta inferior izquierda (4).

### Verfahren

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Mittenfalteinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Mittenfalteinheit an.

### Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (1) und danach die vordere untere Abdeckung (2).

3. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (3) und danach die linke untere Abdeckung (4).

### Procedura

Prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa. Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di piegatura centrale.

### Rimuovere il pannello.

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice.
2. Togliere due viti (1) e rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (2).

3. Togliere due viti (3) e rimuovere il pannello inferiore sinistro (4).

### 安装步骤

安装中缝装订一折页单元前, 请关闭 MFP 的主电源开关并从电源拔下电源线。  
安装文档整理器, 然后安装中缝装订一折页单元。

### 拆下盖板。

1. 打开文档整理器的前盖板。
2. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (1), 然后拆下前下盖板 (2)。

3. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (3), 然后拆下左下盖板 (4)。

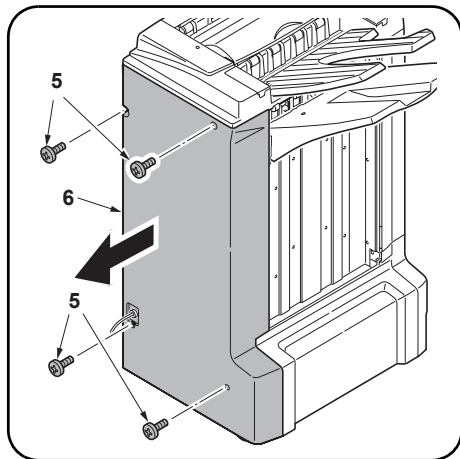
### 取付手順

中折りユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、中折りユニットを設置すること。

### カバーの取り外し

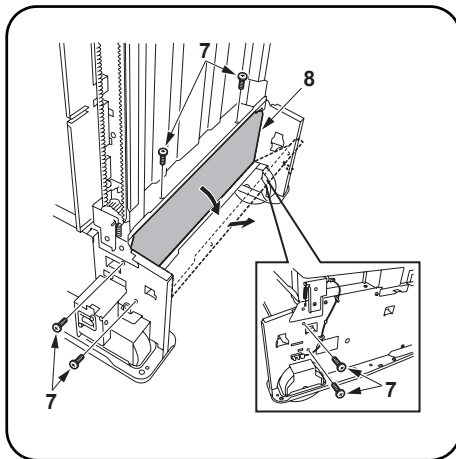
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開く。
2. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、前下カバー (2) を取り外す。

3. ビス (3) 2 本を外し、左下カバー (4) を取り外す。



#### Removing the back cover.

4. Remove the four screws (5) to remove the back cover (6) from the document finisher.



#### Removing the reinforcing plate.

5. Remove six screws (7) to remove the left reinforcing plate (8). Tilt the left reinforcing plate (8) to pull out upwards.

#### Installing the back cover.

6. Use the four screws (5) which was removed from the document finisher in step 4 and reinstall the back cover (6).

#### Enlèvement du capot arrière.

4. Retirer les quatre vis (5) pour retirer le capot arrière (6) du finisseur de document.

#### Enlèvement de la plaque de renfort.

5. Retirer six vis (7) pour retirer la plaque de renfort de gauche (8). Incliner la plaque de renfort de gauche (8) pour la faire ressortir vers le haut.

#### Installation du capot arrière.

6. Utiliser les quatre vis (5) retirées du finisseur de document à l'étape 4 et réinstaller le capot arrière (6).

#### Extracción de la cubierta posterior.

4. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) para quitar la cubierta posterior (6) del finalizador de documentos.

#### Extracción de la placa de refuerzo.

5. Quite seis tornillos (7) para quitar la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8). Incline la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8) para sacarla hacia arriba.

#### Instalación de la cubierta posterior.

6. Utilice los cuatro tornillos (5) que fueron quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 4 y vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (6).

#### Entfernen der hinteren Abdeckung.

4. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) vom Dokument-Finisher, um die hintere Abdeckung (6) zu entfernen.

#### Entfernen der Verstärkungsplatte.

5. Entfernen Sie die sechs Schrauben (7), um die linke Verstärkungsplatte (8) auszubauen. Neigen Sie die Verstärkungsplatte (8), um sie nach außen herauszuziehen.

#### Anbringen der hinteren Abdeckung.

6. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (5), welche im Schritt 4 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurden, und bringen Sie danach die hintere Abdeckung (6) wieder an.

#### Rimuovere il pannello posteriore.

4. Togliere le quattro viti (5) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (6) dalla finitrice.

#### Rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo.

5. Togliere sei viti (7) per rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8). Inclinare la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8) ed estrarla verso l'alto.

#### Installare il pannello posteriore.

6. Utilizzare le quattro viti (5) rimosse dalla finitrice nel passo 4 e reinstallare il pannello posteriore (6).

#### 拆下后盖板。

4. 从文档整理器上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (5) 以便拆下后盖板 (6)。

#### 拆下加强板。

5. 拆下 6 颗螺钉 (7) 以便拆下左加强板 (8)。将左加强板 (8) 倾斜向上拉出。

#### 安装后盖板。

6. 用在步骤 4 中从文档整理器上拆下的 4 颗螺钉 (5) 重新安装后盖板 (6)。

#### 後カバーの取り外し

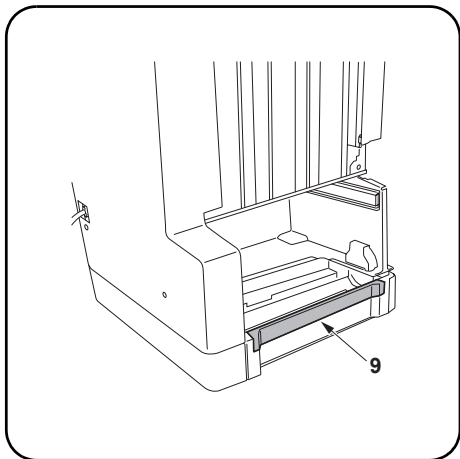
4. ビス (5) 4 本を外し、後カバー (6) を取り外す。

#### 補強板の取り外し

5. ビス (7) 6 本を外し、補強板左 (8) を取り外す。補強板左 (8) は斜めに傾け、上方向へ取り外すこと。

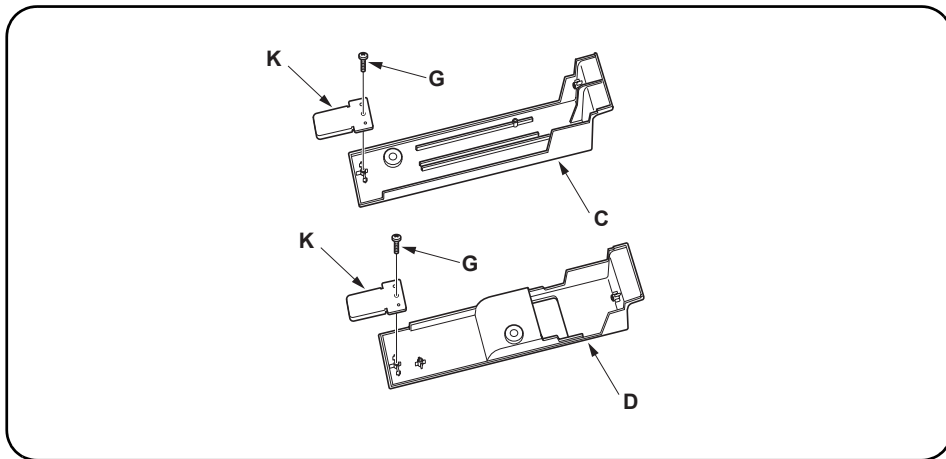
#### 後カバーの取り付け

6. 手順 4 で外した後カバー (6) をビス (5) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。



#### Removing the divided part.

7. Cut out the divided part (9).



#### Reassembling the covers.

8. Install cover V (K) onto each of rear cover (C) and front cover (D) respectively with a M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (G).

#### Enlèvement de la pièce divisée.

7. Découper la pièce divisée (9).

#### Remontage des capots.

8. Installer le capot V (K) sur le capot arrière (C) et sur le capot avant (D) à l'aide d'une vis P taraudée M3 × 8 chaque (G).

#### Extracción de la parte dividida.

7. Corte la parte dividida (9).

#### Reinstalación de las cubiertas.

8. Instale la cubierta V (K) en cada cubierta posterior (C) y cubierta frontal (D) respectivamente con un tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 (G).

#### Entfernen der Abtrennung.

7. Die Abtrennung (9) ausschneiden.

#### Anbringen der Abdeckungen.

8. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung V (K) auf jede hintere Abdeckung (C) bzw. vordere Abdeckung (D) mit einer M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (G) an.

#### Rimuovere la parte divisa.

7. Tagliare via la parte divisa (9).

#### Riassemblare i pannelli.

8. Installare il pannello V (K) su ognuno dei pannelli posteriore (C) e anteriore (D) rispettivamente con viti con testa a croce P M4 × 8 (G).

#### 取下分离部分。

7. 切割已被分开的部件 (9)。

#### 重新组装盖板。

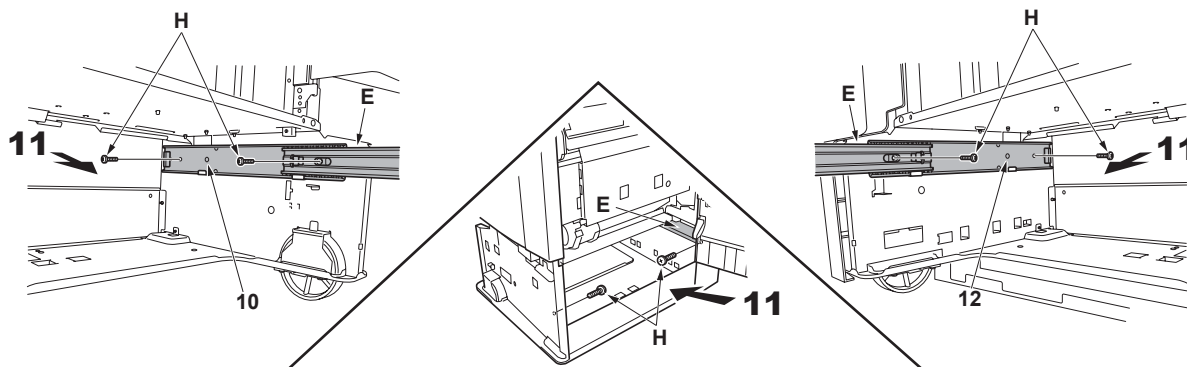
8. 分别用 1 颗 M3 × 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉 (G) 将盖板 V (K) 安装到每个后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D) 上。

#### 割部を取り除く

7. 割部 (9) を切り取る。

#### カバーの組み立て

8. カバー後 (C) とカバー前 (D) に、カバー V (K) をビス M3 × 8 タップタイト P (G) 1 本でそれぞれ取り付ける。



### Installing the slider.

9. Align slider (E) with projection (10) on the front-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.
10. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H). To tighten the screw at the rear side of slider (E) easily, open the right cover of the document finisher and secure the screw from the right side (11) of the document finisher.

11. Align slider (E) with projection (12) on the back-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.

12. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

### Installation de la règle.

9. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (10) de la plaque avant du finisseur de document et installer la règle.
10. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H). Pour pouvoir serrer facilement la vis à l'arrière de la règle (E), ouvrir le capot de droite du finisseur de document et fixer la vis depuis le côté droit (11) du finisseur de document.

11. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (12) à l'arrière de la plaque latérale du finisseur de document et installer la règle.

12. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

### Instalación del deslizador.

9. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (10) de la placa del lado frontal del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.
10. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H). Para apretar fácilmente el tornillo del lado posterior del deslizador (E), abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y asegure el tornillo desde el lado derecho (11) del finalizador de documentos.

11. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (12) de la placa del lado posterior del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.

12. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

### Anbringen des Schiebers.

9. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (10) auf der vorderen Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.
10. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H). Um die Schraube auf der Rückseite des Schiebers (E) ohne Problems festzuziehen, öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und ziehen Sie die Schraube von der rechten Seite (11) des Dokument-Finishers her an.

11. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (12) auf der hinteren Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.

12. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit zwei M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H).

### Installare lo scivolo.

9. Installare lo scivolo (E) allineandolo alla parte sporgente (10) sulla lastra anteriore della finitrice.
10. Fare uscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H). Per fissare con facilità la vite alla parte posteriore dello scivolo (E), aprire il pannello destro della finitrice e serrare la vite dal lato destro (11) della finitrice.

11. Allineare lo scivolo (E) alla parte sporgente (12) sulla lastra posteriore della finitrice e installarlo.

12. Far fuoriuscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

### 安裝滑板。

9. 將滑板 (E) 與文檔整理器前側板上的突出部 (10) 對齊並重新安裝滑板。
10. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 顆 M4 x 8 攻絲緊固型 S 螺釘 (H) 固定。  
若要輕鬆拧紧滑板 (E) 後部的螺釘，打開文檔整理器的右蓋板並從文檔整理器右側 (11) 固定螺釘。

11. 將滑板 (E) 與文檔整理器後側板上的突出部 (12) 對齊並重新安裝滑板。

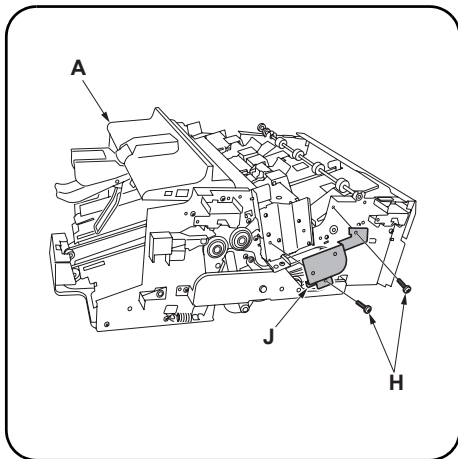
12. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 顆 M4 x 8 攻絲緊固型 S 螺釘 (H) 固定。

### スライダの取り付け

9. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャー前側板の突起 (10) に合わせて取り付け。
10. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で固定する。スライダ (E) 後側のビスは、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの右カバーを開き、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの右方向 (11) から作業すると締めやすい。

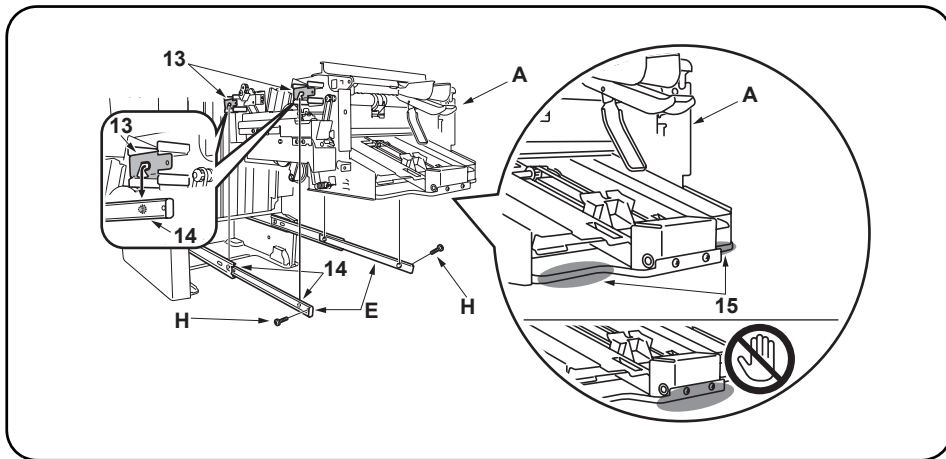
11. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャー後側板の突起 (12) に合わせて取り付け。

12. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で固定する。



#### Installing the cover handle saddle.

13. Install cover handle saddle (J) on the front side of center-folding unit (A) with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).



#### Installing the center-folding unit.

14. Pull out sliders (E) till they stop.
15. Align pawl (13) of center-folding unit (A) with projection (14) of slider (E) and place the center-folding unit onto the slider.  
**Be sure to hold both the rear bottom and front side (15) of center-folding unit (A) and place the unit onto slider (E).**
16. Secure center-folding unit (A) with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

#### Installation de la poignée de capot à cheval.

13. Installer la poignée de capot à cheval (J) sur l'avant de la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

#### Installation de la plieuse.

14. Faire ressortir les règles (E) jusqu'à ce qu'elles s'arrêtent.
15. Aligner le cliquet (13) de la plieuse (A) sur la saillie (14) de la règle (E) et mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle.  
**Veiller à tenir le fond arrière et l'avant (15) de la plieuse (A) et à mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle (E).**
16. Fixer la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

#### Instalación de la placa de manilla de cubierta.

13. Instale la placa de manilla de cubierta (J) en el lado frontal de la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

#### Instalación de la unidad de plegado.

14. Saque los deslizadores (E) hasta que se paren.
15. Alinee el trinquete (13) de la unidad de plegado (A) con el resalto (14) del deslizador (E) y coloque la unidad de plegado en el deslizador.  
**Asegúrese de sujetar el lado inferior posterior y el central (15) de la unidad de plegado (A) y colocar la unidad en el deslizador (E).**
16. Asegure la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

#### Anbringen des Abdeckungshalters.

13. Bringen Sie den Abdeckungshalter (J) auf der Vorderseite der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) an.

#### Anbringen der Mittenfalteinheit.

14. Ziehen Sie die Schieber (E) soweit heraus, bis Sie anschlagen.
15. Richten Sie die Sperrklinke (13) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit dem Vorsprung (14) des Schiebers (E) aus, und setzen Sie danach die Mittenfalteinheit auf den Schieber.  
**Halten Sie die untere Hinter- und Vorderseite (15) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) fest und setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit danach auf den Schieber (E).**
16. Ziehen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) fest.

#### Installare la slitta coprimanopola.

13. Installare la slitta coprimanopola (J) sul lato anteriore dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) per mezzo di due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

#### Installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.

14. Tirare in fuori gli scivolo (E) finché si bloccano.
15. Allineare il dentello (13) dell'unità centrale di piegatura (A) alla parte sporgente (14) dello scivolo (E) e posarvi sopra l'unità stessa.  
**Assicurarsi di reggere bene sia la parte posteriore bassa che quella anteriore (15) dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) e posare l'unità sullo scivolo (E).**
16. Fissare l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

#### 安装盖板手柄鞍座。

13. 用 2 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 将盖板手柄鞍座 (J) 安装到中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的前部。

#### 安装中缝装订一折页单元。

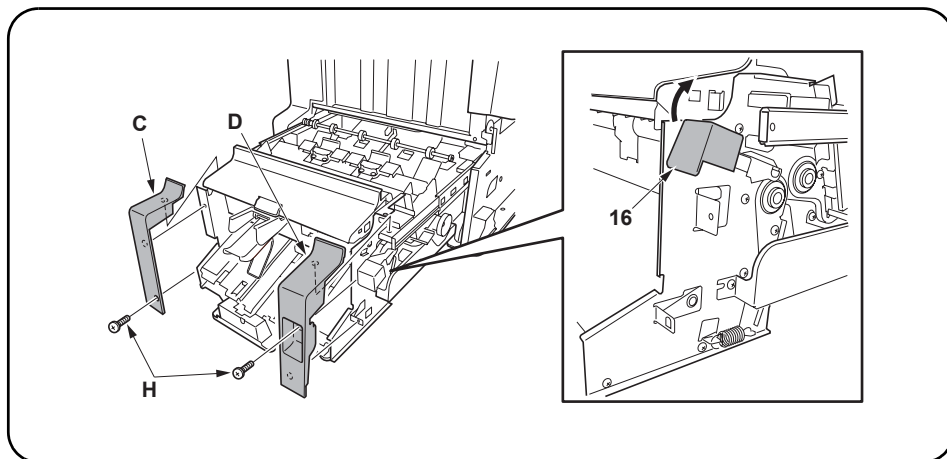
14. 拉出滑板 (E) 直到其停止下来。
15. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的卡爪 (13) 对准滑板 (E) 的突出部 (14), 并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板上。  
**请务必握住中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的后部和前部 (15), 并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板 (E) 上。**
16. 用 2 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定中缝装订一折页单元 (A)。

#### カバーハンドルサドルの取り付け

13. カバーハンドルサドル (J) を中折りユニット (A) 前側にビス M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で取り付け。

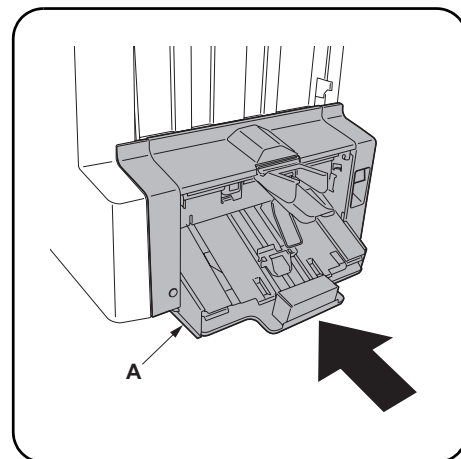
#### 中折りユニットの取り付け

14. スライダ (E) を最後まで引き出す。
15. 中折りユニット (A) のツメ (13) をスライダ (E) の突起 (14) に合わせて乗せる。  
**中折りユニット (A) は、必ず後側の底部と前側の (15) の部分を持ってスライダ (E) に乗せること。**
16. M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で中折りユニット (A) を固定する。



#### Installing covers.

17. Install the covers by fitting the projections on the rear side of the rear cover (C) and front cover (D) assembled in step 8 into the holes in the center-folding unit (A).  
It is easy to install front cover (D) by lifting center-folding unit releasing lever (16).
18. Use two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H) to secure rear cover (C) and front cover (D).



19. Store center-folding unit (A) into the document finisher.

If center-folding unit (A) is not stored completely inside the document finisher, the unit cannot be fixed in the document finisher and center-folding unit (A) won't operate properly.

#### Installation des capots.

17. Installer les capots en insérant les saillies côté arrière du capot arrière (C) et du capot avant (D) montés à l'étape 8 dans les trous de la plieuse (A).  
Il est facile d'installer le capot avant (D) en soulevant le levier de relâchement de la plieuse (16).
18. Utiliser deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H) pour fixer le capot arrière (C) et le capot avant (D).

19. Ranger la plieuse (A) dans le finisseur de document.

Si la plieuse (A) n'est pas complètement rangée à l'intérieur du finisseur de document, la plieuse ne peut pas être fixée dans le finisseur de document et la plieuse (A) ne fonctionne pas correctement.

#### Instalación de cubiertas.

17. Instale las cubiertas insertando las salientes en el lado posterior de la cubierta trasera (C) y la cubierta delantera (D), ensambladas en el paso 8, en los orificios de la bandeja de plegado (A).  
Es más fácil instalar la cubierta frontal (D) levantando la palanca de liberación de la unidad de plegado (16).
18. Utilice dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H) para asegurar la cubierta posterior (C) y la cubierta frontal (D).

19. Meta la unidad de plegado (A) en el finalizador de documentos.

Si la unidad de plegado (A) no se mete completamente en el finalizador de documentos, ésta no podrá fijarse en el finalizador de documentos y no funcionará correctamente.

#### Anbringen der Abdeckungen.

17. Die Abdeckungen montieren, indem man die Vorsprünge an der Rückseite der hinteren Abdeckung (C) und der vorderen Abdeckung (D), die in Schritt 8 angebracht wurden, in die Öffnungen der Mittenfalteinheit (A) einsetzt.  
Um den Einbau der vorderen Abdeckung (D) zu erleichtern, ist der Entriegelungshebel (16) der Mittenfalteinheit anzuheben.
18. Verwenden Sie die beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H), um die hintere Abdeckung (C) und die vordere Abdeckung (D) zu befestigen.

19. Setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) in den Dokument-Finisher ein.  
Wenn die Mittenfalteinheit (A) nicht vollständig in den Dokument-Finisher eingesetzt wurde, kann die Mittenfalteinheit nicht im Dokument-Finisher befestigt werden, und die Mittenfalteinheit (A) funktioniert dann nicht richtig.

#### Installare i pannelli.

17. Installare i pannelli inserendo le parti sporgenti poste sul retro del pannello posteriore (C) e del pannello anteriore (D), assemblati nel passo 8, nei fori nell'unità di piegatura centrale (A).  
È semplice installare il pannello anteriore (D) sollevando la leva di rilascio unità (16)
18. Utilizzare due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H) per fissare i pannelli posteriore (C) ed anteriore (D).

19. Inserire perfettamente l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) nella finitrice.  
Se l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non è del tutto inserita all'interno della finitrice, è impossibile fissarla alla finitrice stessa e l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non funzionerà correttamente.

#### 安装盖板。

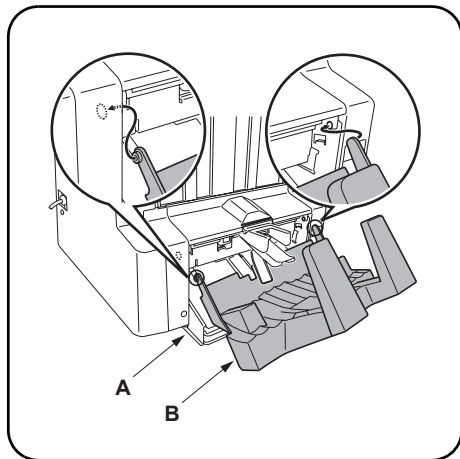
17. 通过将后盖板 (C) 后侧以及在步骤 8 中装配的前盖板 (D) 的突出部分卡入中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的孔内来安装盖板。  
将中缝装订一折页单元释放杆 (16) 抬起以便更容易安装前盖板 (D)。
18. 使用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D)。

19. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 保存到文档整理器中。  
如果中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 未完全保存到文档整理器中, 则无法在文档整理器中固定装置并且中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 无法正确工作。

#### カバーの取り付け

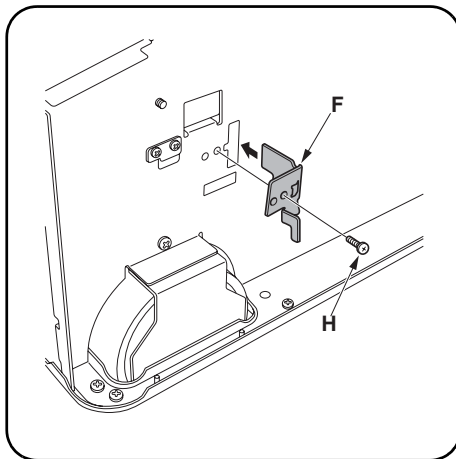
17. 手順 8 で組み立てたカバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を、裏側の突起を中折りユニット (A) の穴にはめ込み、取り付けする。  
カバー前 (D) は、中折りユニット解除レバー (16) を上げると取り付けやすい。
18. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本でカバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を固定する。

19. 中折りユニット (A) をドキュメントフィニッシャーに収納する。  
確実に収納されていない場合、中折りユニット (A) がドキュメントフィニッシャーに固定されず、中折りユニット (A) が正常に動作しない。



#### Installing the folding tray.

20. Fit the projection of folding tray (B) into the inside hole of center-folding unit (A).



#### Installing the douser.

- Before installing the douser (F), make sure that center-folding unit (A) is securely stored.  
21. Insert douser (F) into the lower front left of the document finisher and secure the douser with a M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw (H).

#### Reinstalling the cover.

22. Reinstall the lower front cover (2) that was removed in step 2 in place with two screws (1).  
23. Close the front cover of the document finisher.

#### Installation du bac de pliage.

20. Ajuster la saillie du bac de pliage (B) dans l'orifice intérieur de la plieuse (A).

#### Installation de l'ombreur.

- Avant d'installer l'ombreur (F), s'assurer que la plieuse (A) est bien rangée.  
21. Insérer l'ombreur (F) dans l'avant gauche inférieur du finisseur de document et fixer l'ombreur à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (H).

#### Remontage du capot.

22. Remonter le capot avant inférieur (2) retiré à l'étape 2 à l'aide de deux vis (1).  
23. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

#### Instalación de la bandeja plegable.

20. Coloque el resalto de la bandeja plegable (B) dentro del agujero de la unidad de plegado (A).

#### Instalación de la pantalla paraluz.

- Antes de instalar la pantalla paraluz (F), asegúrese de que la unidad de plegado (A) esté firmemente metida.  
21. Introduzca la pantalla paraluz (F) en la parte frontal inferior izquierda del finalizador de documentos y asegure la pantalla paraluz con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

#### Reinstalación de la cubierta.

22. Reinstale en su lugar con dos tornillos (1) la cubierta frontal inferior (2) que fue quitada en el paso 2.  
23. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

#### Anbringen des Faltfachs.

20. Führen Sie den Vorsprung des Faltfachs (B) in das innere Loch der Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein.

#### Anbringen der Abschirmung.

- Vor dem Anbringen der Abschirmung (F) ist sicherzustellen, dass die Mittenfalteinheit (A) sicher eingesetzt ist.  
21. Stecken Sie die Abschirmung (F) in die untere linke Vorderseite des Dokument-Finishers ein, und ziehen Sie die Abschirmung danach mit einer M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (H) fest.

#### Anbringen der Abdeckung.

22. Bringen Sie die in Schritt 2 entfernte vordere untere Abdeckung (2) wieder an und verwenden Sie hierfür die beiden Schrauben (1).  
23. Schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

#### Installare il vassoio di piegatura.

20. Inserire la parte sporgente del vassoio di piegatura (B) nel foro interno dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A).

#### Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser).

- Prima di procedere all'installazione del dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F), assicurarsi che l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) sia perfettamente inserita.  
21. Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F) nella facciata inferiore a sinistra della finitrice e fissarlo con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

#### Reinstallare il pannello.

22. Reinstallare nella sua posizione originale il pannello anteriore inferiore (2) rimosso nel passo 2 con due viti (1).  
23. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

#### 安装折叠托盘。

20. 将折叠托盘 (B) 的突出部固定在中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的内部孔。

#### 安装探测器。

- 安装探测器 (F) 前, 请确定中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 已牢固地保存。  
21. 将探测器 (F) 插入文档整理器的左前下侧, 并用 1 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定探测器。

#### 重新安装盖板。

22. 用 2 颗螺钉 (1) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的前下盖板 (2)。  
23. 关闭文档整理器的前盖板。

#### 中折りトレイの取り付け

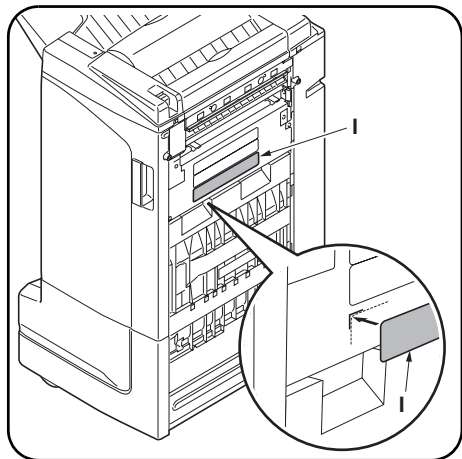
20. 中折りトレイ (B) の突起を中折りユニット (A) の内側の穴にはめ、取り付ける。

#### 遮光板の取り付け

- 遮光板 (F) を取り付ける前に、中折りユニット (A) が確実に収納されていることを確認すること。  
21. 遮光板 (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャー正面の左下へ差し込み、M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 1 本で固定する。

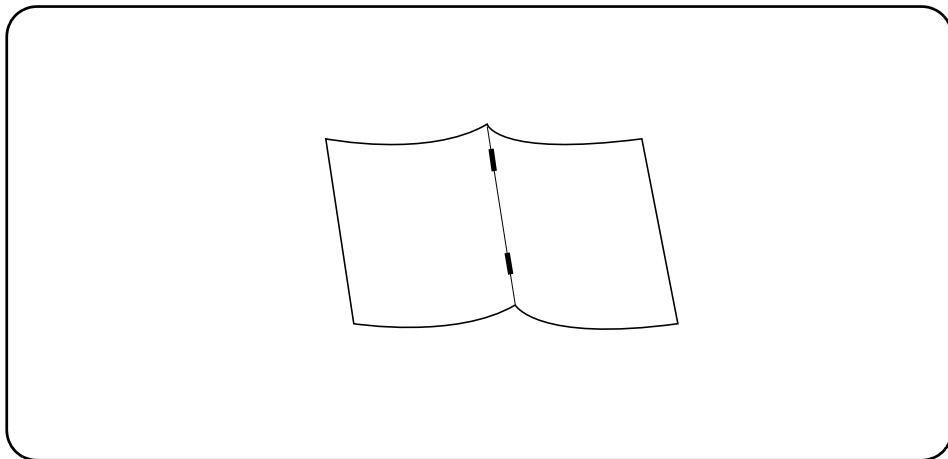
#### カバーの取り付け

22. 手順 2 で外した前下カバー (2) をビス (1) 2 本で元通り取り付け。  
23. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前カバーを閉じる。



#### Adhering the label.

24. Clean the area where the label is adhered on the right cover of the document finisher with alcohol and adhere label (I) aligning with making-off line.



#### [Checking staple position]

1. In the center-stapling mode, perform a test copy with the paper fed from the main tray. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Check the distance from the center of the paper to the staple position. If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.  
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

#### Collage de l'étiquette.

24. Nettoyer la zone où l'étiquette doit être collée sur le capot de droite du finisseur de document avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (I) en l'alignant, sur la ligne indiquée.

#### [Vérification de la position des agrafes]

1. Dans le mode d'agrafage central, effectuer une copie de test avec la papier alimenté depuis le plateau principal. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:  
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)
2. Vérifier la distance entre le centre du papier et l'emplacement de l'agrafe. Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

#### Para pegar la etiqueta.

24. Limpie con alcohol el área donde va a pegar la etiqueta (I) en la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y péguela alineándola con la línea de referencia.

#### [Comprobación de la posición de grapado]

1. En el modo de grapado central, realice una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja principal. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:  
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Compruebe la distancia desde el centro del papel a la posición de grapado. Si la distancia no está dentro del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

#### Anbringen des Aufklebers.

24. Reinigen Sie den Bereich auf der rechten Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers mit Alkohol, richten Sie den Aufkleber (I) aus und kleben Sie ihn dann fest.

#### [Überprüfen der Heftklammerposition]

1. Machen Sie im Mitten-Heftklammermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom Hauptfach aus zugeführt wird. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Prüfen Sie den Abstand von der Mitte des Papiers zur Heftklammerposition. Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist gemäß den folgenden Schritten vorzugehen, um die Position zu korrigieren.  
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

#### Incollare l'etichetta.

24. Pulire con alcool la zona dove si applica l'etichetta sul pannello destro della finitrice. Attaccare l'etichetta (I) allineandola alla linea di taglio.

#### [Controllare la posizione della pinzatrice]

1. In modalità "pinzatura centrale", eseguire una copia di prova con carta alimentata dal vassoio principale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei seguenti formati di carta:  
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Controllare la distanza tra il centro del foglio e la posizione della pinzatrice. Se la distanza non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire i seguenti passaggi per regolarne la posizione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

#### 粘貼标签。

24. 用酒精清洁在文档整理器右盖板上粘貼标签的区域并与脱离线对齐粘貼标签 (I)。

#### [检查装订位置]

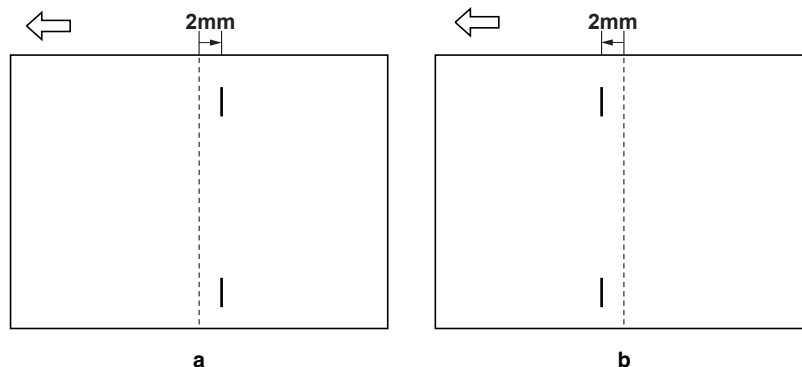
1. 在中央装订模式中，从主托盘进纸进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. 检查纸张中央到装订位置的距離。如果距離超出標準值範圍，按照下列步驟調整位置。  
<標準值> 距離中央的距離：±2mm 內

#### ラベルの貼り付け

24. ドキュメントフィニッシャの右カバーに貼られているラベルの下をアルコール清掃し、罫書き線に合わせてラベル (I) を貼り付ける。

#### [中とジステイブル位置確認]

1. 以下の用紙を使用し、中とジステイブルモード、メイントレイ排紙でテストコピーを行う。  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. ステイブル位置の中心からのずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> 中心からのずれ：± 2mm 以内



### Adjusting staple position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.  
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).  
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).  
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Adjust setting value.  
When staples are placed too far right copy example (a): Decrease the setting value.  
When staples are placed too far left copy example (b): Increase the setting value.  
Changing the value by 1 moves the stapling position by approximately 0.55 mm.
3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the staple position indicates the value within the reference range.  
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

### Ajustement de la position des agrafes

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.  
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).  
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).  
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.  
Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (a): diminuer la valeur de réglage.  
Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (b): augmenter la valeur de réglage.  
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position d'agrafage d'environ 0,55 mm.
3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position d'agrafage se trouve dans la gamme de référence.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

### Ajuste de la posición de grabado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y realice el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.  
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).  
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).  
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.  
Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (a): Disminuya el valor de configuración.  
Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (b): Aumente el valor de configuración.  
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de grabado 0,55 mm aproximadamente.
3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del centro a la posición de grapado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

### Einstellen der Heftklammerposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.  
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8,5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).  
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8,5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).  
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes.  
Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheinen (a): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.  
Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheinen (b): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.  
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1, verschiebt die Heftklammerposition um 0,55 mm.
3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Heftklammerposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.  
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

### Regolare la posizione della pinzatrice

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia di prova.  
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).  
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).  
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.  
Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a destra (esempio a): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.  
Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a sinistra (esempio b): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.  
La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di pinzatura di circa 0,55 mm.
3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione delle pinzatrici non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento. <Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

### 調整装订位置

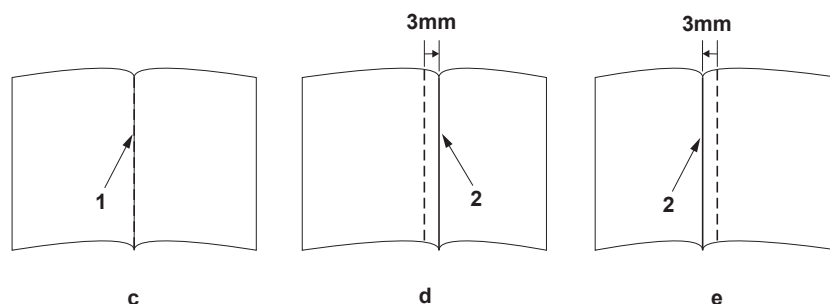
1. 进入维修模式 U246, 选择 BOOKLET FOLDER (小册子折叠) 并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。  
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR)。  
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR)。  
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD)。

2. 调整设定值。  
订书钉远离右侧复印样本 (a) 时: 减小设定值  
订书钉远离左侧复印样本 (b) 时: 增大设定值  
以 1 更改数值将装订位置移动大约 0.55mm
3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到装订位置的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。  
<标准值> 距离中央的距离: ±2mm 内

### 中とヒステイブル位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。  
A4R、LTR (8.5" × 11") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR) の調整を行う。  
B4、LGL (8.5" × 14") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR) の調整を行う。  
A3、LGR (11" × 17") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD) の調整を行う。

2. 設定値を調整する。  
ステイブル位置が右にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (a): 設定値を下げる  
ステイブル位置が左にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (b): 設定値を上げる  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.55mm
3. テストコピーを行う。
4. コピーサンプルのステイブル位置のずれが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 中心からのずれ: ±2mm 以内



### [Checking centerfold position]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. Perform a test copy in centerfold mode. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes. Draw a straight line (1) at the center of each paper (a).  
A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. If the distance from center line (1) on paper (c) to centerfold position (2) on the copy sample is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the distance.

<Reference value>

Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

### [Vérification de la page centrale dépliant]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Effectuer une copie de test dans le mode page centrale dépliant. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants. Tirer une ligne droite (1) au centre de chaque feuille de papier (a). Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:  
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)

3. Si la distance entre la ligne centrale (1) sur la feuille de papier (c) et la position de la page centrale dépliant (2) de l'exemple de copie se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la distance.

<Valeur de référence>

Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliant (2): ±3 mm

### [Comprobación de la posición de plegado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de plegado. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes. Trace una línea recta (1) en el centro de cada papel (a). Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:  
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Si la distancia de la línea central (1) del papel (c) a la posición de plegado (2) de la muestra de copia está fuera del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la distancia.

<Valor de referencia>

Distancia desde la posición de plegado (2): ±3 mm

### [Überprüfen der Mittenfaltposition]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Mittenfaltmodus eine Testkopie durch. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden: Ziehen Sie eine gerade Linie (1) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Papiers (a). Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Wenn der Abstand von der Mittellinie (1) am Papier (c) zur Mittenfaltposition (2) auf der Musterkopie außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, folgen Sie den nachfolgenden Schritten, um den Abstand einzustellen.

<Bezugswert>

Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

### [Controllare la posizione della piegatura centrale]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova in modalità piegatura centrale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei formati di carta indicati in seguito. Disegnare una linea retta (1) al centro di ogni foglio (a).  
Formati di carta su cui eseguire la copia di prova:  
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Se la distanza tra la linea centrale (1) del foglio (c) e la posizione della piegatura centrale (2) nella copia campione è al di fuori dell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire la seguente procedura per regolarla.

<Valore di riferimento>

Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

### [检查折叠位置]

1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源开关。
2. 在折叠模式中进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印。在每张纸 (a) 的中央划一条直线 (1)。  
下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 如果纸 (c) 上中线 (1) 距离复印样本上的折叠位置 (2) 超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整距离。

<标准值>

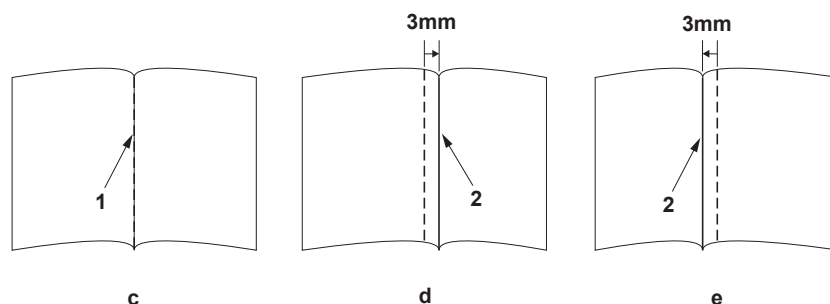
距离折叠位置 (2) 的距离：±3mm 内

### [中折り位置確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. 以下の用紙を使用し、中折りモードの2枚折りでテストコピーを行う。  
用紙は、中心に線 (1) を引いておくこと。(a)  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11")、B4, LGL (8.5" × 14")、A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 用紙 (c) の中心線 (1) と、コピーサンプルの中折り位置 (2) のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値> 中折り位置 (2) のずれ：±3mm 以内



### Adjusting centerfold position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.  
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).  
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).  
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Adjust the setting value.  
When the centerfold position too far right copy example (d): Increase the setting value.

When the centerfold position too far left copy example (e): Decrease the setting value.

Changing the value by 1 moves the centerfold position by approximately 0.55 mm.

3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the centerfold position indicates the value within the reference range.  
<Reference value>  
Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

### Ajustement de la position de la page centrale dépliant

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.  
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).  
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).  
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.  
Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliant est placée trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (d): augmenter la valeur de réglage.

Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliant est placée trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (e): diminuer la valeur de réglage.

Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position de la page centrale dépliant d'environ 0,55 mm.

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position de la page centrale dépliant se trouve dans la gamme de référence.  
<Valeur de référence>  
Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliant (2): ±3 mm

### Ajuste de la posición de plegado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y haga el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.  
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).  
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).  
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.  
Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (d): Aumente el valor de configuración.

Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (e): Disminuya el valor de configuración.

El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de plegado 0,55 mm aproximadamente.

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia de centro a la posición de plegado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde la posición (2): ±3 mm

### Einstellen der Mittenfaltposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.  
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8.5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).  
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8.5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).  
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes

Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheint (d): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.

Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheint (e): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.

Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1, verschiebt die Mittenfaltposition um ca. 0,55 mm.

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Mitte der Mittenfaltposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.  
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

### Regolare la posizione della piegatura centrale

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia campione.  
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).  
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).  
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.  
Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a destra (esempio d): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.

Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a sinistra (esempio e): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.

La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di piegatura di circa 0,55 mm.

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione della piegatura non rientra nel valore di riferimento.  
<Valore di riferimento>  
Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

### 調整折疊位置

1. 进入维修模式 U246, 选择 BOOKLET FOLDER (小册子折叠) 并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。  
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时, 请执行 SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR)。  
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时, 请执行 SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR)。  
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时, 请执行 SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD)。

2. 調整設定値。

折疊位置远离右侧复印样本 (d) 时: 增大设定值

折疊位置远离左侧复印样本 (e) 时: 减小设定值

以 1 更改数值将折疊位置移动大约 0.55mm

3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到折疊位置的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。  
<标准值>  
距离折疊位置 (2) 的距离: ±3mm 内

### 中折り位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。  
A4R、LTR (8.5" × 11") の場合、SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR) の調整を行う。  
B4、LGL (8.5" × 14") の場合、SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR) の調整を行う。  
A3、LGR (11" × 17") の場合、SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD) の調整を行う。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
中折り位置が右にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (d): 設定値を上げる

中折り位置が左にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (e): 設定値を下げる  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.55mm

3. テストコピーを行う。
4. 中折り位置のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 中折り位置のずれ: ±3mm 以内

**English****NOTICE**

This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine. Refer to the supplied guide to install the accessory in the field.

Model: DF-760

**Français****AVIS**

Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant. Se reporter au guide fourni pour installer l'accessoire dans le champ.

Modèle: DF-760

**Español****AVISO**

Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopiadoras de la lista de solicitantes. Consulte las instrucciones para la instalación de accesorios en el lugar del cliente.

Modelo: DF-760

**Deutsch****HINWEIS**

Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen. Installieren Sie das Zubehör gemäß der mitgelieferten Anleitung im Feld.

Modell: DF-760

**Italiano****NOTIFICA**

Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante. Consultare la guida fornita in dotazione per il montaggio in campo dell'accessorio.

Modello: DF-760

**简体中文****注意**

本产品（附属部件）适用于以下复印机。安装时，请参照附带的说明书。

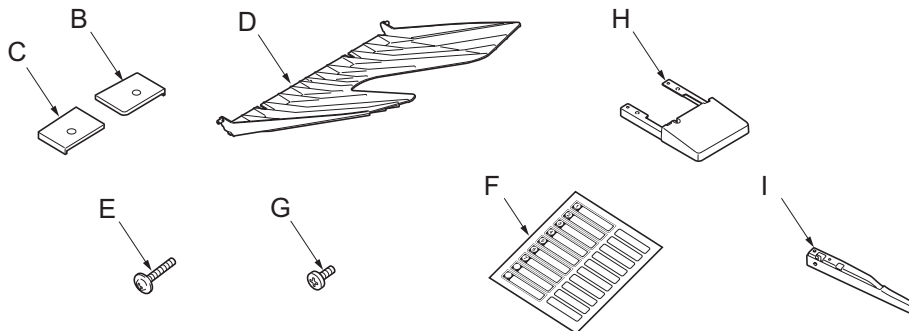
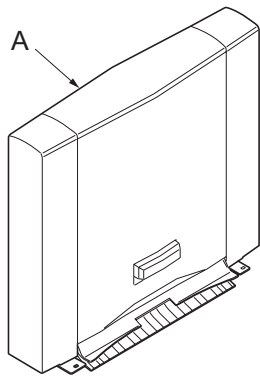
式样：DF-760

**日本語****注意**

本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。  
設置する際は、同梱の手順書を参照してください。

Model: DF-760

# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR MAILBOX



## English

### Supplied parts

A Mailbox .....	1
B Front mounting plate cover .....	1
C Rear mounting plate cover .....	1
D Copy eject bins .....	7
E TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14 .....	2

F Tray name label .....	1
G Taptite S binding screw M4 × 10 .....	4
H Plate foot V (for full-color machines) .....	2
I Plate foot F (for monochrome machines) .....	1

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

When installing the mailbox to a monochrome machine, 2 pieces of (G) are not used.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Boîte à lettres .....	1
B Couvercle de la plaque de montage avant .....	1
C Couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière .....	1
D Case d'éjection de copies .....	7
E Vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14 .....	2

F Étiquette de nom de plateau .....	1
G Borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 10 .....	4
H Pied de plateau V (pour les machines entièrement en couleurs) .....	2
I Pied de plateau F (pour les machines monochromes) .....	1

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine monochrome, 2 pièces de (G) ne sont pas utilisées.

## Español

### Partes provistas

A Buzón de correo .....	1
B Cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal .....	1
C Cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera .....	1
D Bandejas de expulsión de copias .....	7
E Tornillo TP Taptite S M4 × 14 .....	2

F Etiqueta de nombre de la bandeja .....	1
G Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 10 .....	4
H Pata de placa V (para máquinas a todo color) .....	2
I Pata de placa F (para máquinas monocromáticas) .....	1

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina monocromática, no se utilizan las 2 piezas de (G).

## Deutsch

### Mitgelieferte Teile

A Mailbox .....	1
B Vordere Abdeckung der Montageplatte .....	1
C Hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte .....	1
D Kopienausgabefächer .....	7
E TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 .....	2

F Fachnamenaufkleber .....	1
G Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 10 .....	4
H Plattenfuß V (für Vollfarbenmaschinen) .....	2
I Plattenfuß F (für Monochrommaschinen) .....	1

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Wenn die Mailbox an einer Monochrommaschine angebracht wird, werden die 2 Teile von (G) nicht benutzt.

## Italiano

### Parti comprese

A Casella postale .....	1
B Coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore .....	1
C Coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore .....	1
D Scomparti di espulsione delle copie .....	7
E Vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14 .....	2

F Etichetta di nome del vassoio .....	1
G Vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 10 .....	4
H Piedino della piastra V (per le macchine a colori) .....	2
I Piedino della piastra F (per macchine in bianco e nero) .....	1

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina in bianco e nero, 2 pezzi di (G) non sono utilizzati.

## 简体中文

### 附属品

A 邮箱 .....	1
B 支撑板前盖板 .....	1
C 支撑板后盖板 .....	1
D 接纸盘 .....	7
E 自攻紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 14TP .....	2

F 托盘名称标贴 .....	1
G 连接用螺纹紧固 S 螺丝 M4 × 10 .....	4
H 底板 V( 全彩色机用 ) .....	2
I 底板 F( 黑白机用 ) .....	1

如果同装品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

将邮箱安装至单色机器时，不会使用两个 (G)。

www.tonerplus.com.ua

## 日本語

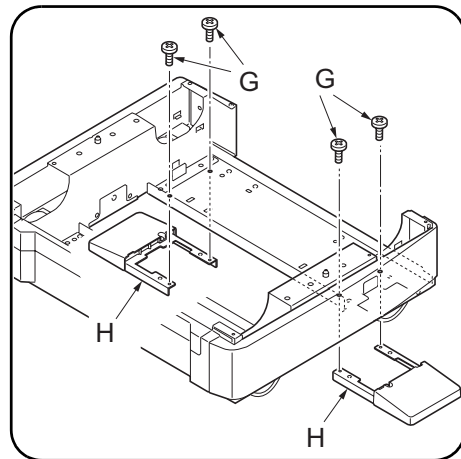
### 同梱品

A メールボックス .....	1
B 取付板カバー前 .....	1
C 取付板カバー後 .....	1
D 排出ビン .....	7
E ビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S .....	2

F トレイ名称シール .....	1
G ビス M4 × 10 バインドタップタイト S .....	4
H プレートフット V(フルカラー機用) .....	2
I プレートフット F(モノクロ機用) .....	1

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

モノクロ機に取り付ける場合は、(G) が 2 本余ります。



### Procedure

Be sure to turn the MFP main power switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the mailbox.

Before installing the finisher, carry out the following procedure.

### [Carry out steps 1 when installing the mailbox to a full-color machine.]

1. Fit the two plate feet V (H) and secure them using two M4 x 10TP screws (G) for each. Install the finisher referring to the installation guide for finisher.

When using a full-color machine: Proceed to step 4 on page 4

### Procédure

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position d'arrêt et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant d'entreprendre l'installation de la boîte à lettres.

Avant d'installer le retoucheur, effectuer la procédure suivante.

### [Effectuer les étapes 1 lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine entièrement en couleurs.]

1. Insérer les deux pieds de plaques V (H) et les fixer à l'aide de deux vis M4 x 10TP (G) pour chaque pièce. Installer le retoucheur en se reportant au guide d'installation du retoucheur.

Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs: passer à l'étape 4 de la page 4

### Procedimiento

Asegúrese de apagar el MFP con el interruptor principal y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación del MFP de la toma de corriente de la pared antes de empezar a instalar el buzón de correo.

Antes de instalar el finalizador, realice el siguiente procedimiento.

### [Realice los pasos 1 cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina a todo color.]

1. Coloque las dos patas de placa V (H) y asegúrelas por medio de dos tornillos M4 x 10TP (G) para cada una. Instale el finalizador consultando la guía de instalación para el finalizador.

Cuando utilice una máquina a todo color: Vaya al paso 4 de la página 4

### Verfahren

Schalten Sie vor der Installation der Mailbox unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Netzsteckdose.

Bevor Sie den Finisher installieren, führen Sie das folgende Verfahren aus.

### [Führen Sie die Schritte 1 aus, wenn Sie die Mailbox an einer Vollfarbenmaschine anbringen.]

1. Bringen Sie die beiden Plattenfüße V (H) an, und befestigen Sie sie jeweils mit zwei M4 x 10TP Schrauben (G). Installieren Sie den Finisher gemäß der Installationsanleitung des Finishers.

Bei Verwendung eines Vollfarbenkopierers: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 4 auf Seite 4 weiter

### Procedura

Non mancare di spegnere l'MFP utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP dalla presa della rete elettrica, prima di cominciare a installare la casella postale.

Prima di installare il finitore, eseguire le seguenti procedure.

### [Eseguiere il procedimento dei passi da 1 quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina a colori.]

1. Inserire i due piedini della piastra V (H) e fissare ciascuno di essi utilizzando due viti M4 x 10TP (G). Installare il finitore seguendo le istruzioni della guida all'installazione del finitore.

IN caso si utilizzi un macchinario a colori: Procedere con il punto 4 a pagina 4

### [ 安装步骤 ]

安装邮箱时，必须关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔下主装置的电源插头后进行安装。

安装装订器之前，先按以下步骤进行操作。

### [ 在全彩色机上安装时的步骤 1 ]

1. 将底板 V (H) 安装在 2 处后，分别用 2 个螺丝 M4 x 10TP (G) 进行固定。

参照装订器安装手册，进行安装装订器。  
使用全彩色机时：进行第 4 页上的第 4 步



### [ 取付手順 ]

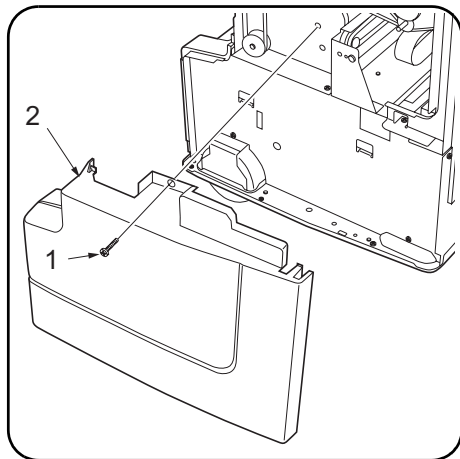
メールボックスを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなう。

フィニッシャの設置を行う前に、次の手順を行う。

### [ 手順 1 はフルカラー機に取り付ける場合 ]

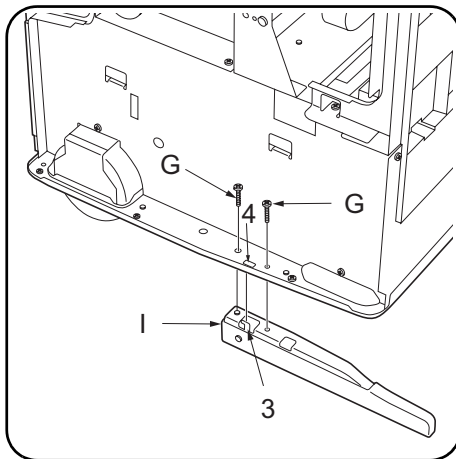
1. プレートフット V (H) を 2 箇所取り付け、ビス M4 x 10TP (G) 各 2 本で固定する。  
フィニッシャの設置手順書を参照して、フィニッシャの設置を行う。

フルカラー機の場合：4 ページ手順 4 へ進む。



**[Carry out steps 1 to 3 when installing the mailbox to a monochrome machine.]**

1. Open the front cover of the finisher, remove the screw (1), and remove the lower front cover (2).



2. Hang the hook sections (5) of plate foot F (I) on the finisher frame notches (6), and secure them using 2 Taptite S binding screws M4 x 10 (J).

3. Refit the lower front cover (2) to its original position, secure it using the screw (1), and close the front cover.

**[Effectuer les étapes 1 à 3 lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine monochrome.]**

1. Ouvrir le couvercle avant du retoucheur, retirer la vis (1), puis retirer le couvercle inférieur avant (2).

2. Accrocher les parties en crochet (5) du pied de plateau F (I) aux encoches du cadre du retoucheur (6) et les fixer à l'aide de 2 bornes de raccordement Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Remettre le couvercle inférieur avant (2) à sa position d'origine, le fixer à l'aide de la vis (1), puis refermer le couvercle avant.

**[Realice los pasos 1 a 3 cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina monocromática.]**

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador, quite el tornillo (1) y remueva la cubierta delantera inferior (2).

2. Cuelgue las secciones con gancho (5) de la pata de placa F (I) en las muescas de la carcasa del finalizador (6) y fíjelas por medio de 2 tornillos de sujeción Taptite S M4 X 10 (J).

3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta delantera inferior (2) a su posición original, asegúrela utilizando el tornillo (1) y cierre la cubierta delantera.

**[Führen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3 aus, wenn Sie die Mailbox an einer Monochrommaschine anbringen.]**

1. Öffnen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Finishers, entfernen Sie die Schraube (1), und nehmen Sie die untere Frontabdeckung (2) ab.

2. Hängen Sie die Hakenteile (5) des Plattenfußes F (I) in die Finisher-Rahmenöffnungen (6) und befestigen Sie sie mit den 2 Taptite S-Befestigungsschrauben M4 x 10 (J).

3. Bringen Sie die untere Frontabdeckung (2) wieder an ihrer ursprünglichen Position an, sichern Sie sie mit der Schraube (1), und schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung.

**[Eseguire il procedimento dei passi da 1 a 3 quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina in bianco e nero.]**

1. Aprire il coperchio anteriore del finitore, rimuovere la vite (1) e poi il coperchio anteriore inferiore (2).

2. Agganciare le sezioni dei ganci (5) del piedino della piastra F (I) sugli incavi (6) del telaio del finitore, e fissarle utilizzando 2 viti di seraggio Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Reinserire il coperchio anteriore inferiore (2) nella sua posizione iniziale, fissarlo utilizzando la vite (1) e chiuderlo.

**[ 在黑白机上安装时的步骤 1 ~ 3 ]**

1. 打开装订器的前盖板, 拆下 1 个螺丝 (1), 然后取下前下盖板 (2)。

2. 将底板 F (G) 的挂钩部 (3) 钩在装订器框架部的凹口 (4) 处, 并用 2 个连接用自攻紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 x 10 (G) 进行固定。

3. 按原样装好前下盖板 (2), 并用 1 个螺丝 (1) 进行固定, 关闭前盖板。

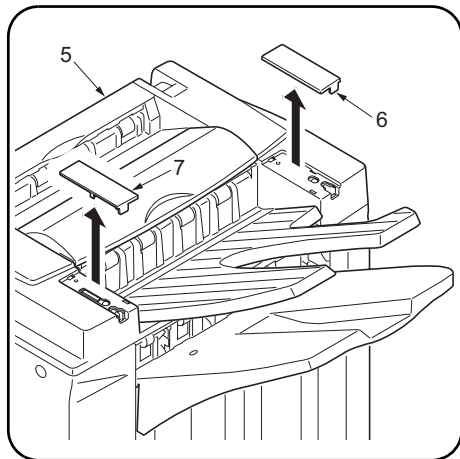


**[ 手順 1 ~ 3 はモノクロ機に取り付ける場合 ]**

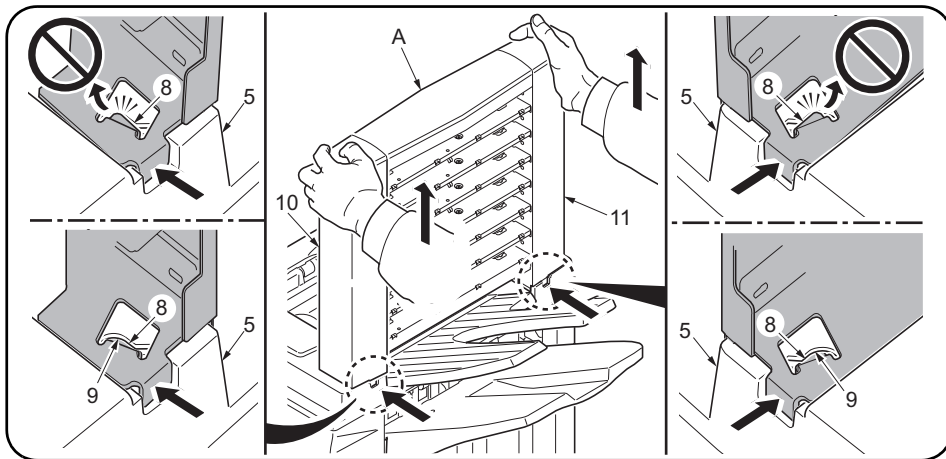
1. フィニッシャの前カバーを開け、ビス (1) 1 本を外し、前下カバー (2) を取り外す。

2. プレートフット F (G) のフック部 (3) をフィニッシャフレーム部の切り欠き (4) に引っ掛け、ビス M4 x 10 バインドタップタイト S (G) 2 本で固定する。

3. 前下カバー (2) を元通り取り付けビス (1) 1 本で固定し、前カバーを閉じる。



4. Remove the front top cover (6) and rear top cover (7) at the top of the finisher (5) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.



5. Fit the hooks (8) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (9) located at the front and rear of the top of the finisher (5) as shown in the illustration and attach the mailbox (A) to the finisher (5).

**Note:** Lift the front and rear of the mailbox (A) lightly upward to make sure that the mailbox (A) does not float. If it floats, fit it again so that the hooks (8) do not protrude from the notches (9) as shown in the illustration. (You can see the notches (9) if you remove the rear cover (10) and front cover (11).)

4. Retirer le couvercle supérieur avant (6) et le couvercle supérieur arrière (7) situés en haut du retoucheur (5) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate ou d'un outil équivalent.

5. Insérer les crochets (8) se trouvant à l'avant et à l'arrière au fond de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (9) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière en haut du retoucheur (5) comme illustré ici, puis fixer la boîte à lettres (A) au retoucheur (5).

**Note:** Lever légèrement l'avant et l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) de sorte que celle-ci ne bouge plus. Si la boîte à lettres (A) bouge, la réinsérer de sorte que les crochets (8) ne dépassent pas des encoches (9) comme illustré. (Les encoches (9) sont visibles quand le couvercle arrière (10) et le couvercle avant (11) sont enlevés.)

4. Remueva la cubierta superior delantera (6) y la cubierta superior trasera (7) en la parte superior del finalizador (5) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana o similar.

5. Coloque los ganchos (8) ubicados en la parte inferior frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) en las muescas (9) ubicadas en la parte superior frontal y trasera del finalizador (5), como se muestra en la ilustración, y coloque el buzón de correo (A) en el finalizador (5).

**Nota:** Levante ligeramente la parte frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) hacia arriba para asegurarse de que el buzón de correo (A) no queda suspendido. Si quedara suspendido, colóquelo de nuevo de forma tal que los ganchos (8) no sobresalgan de las muescas (9), como se muestra en la ilustración. (Puede ver las muescas (9) si quita la cubierta trasera (10) y la cubierta frontal (11).)

4. Entfernen Sie die vordere obere Abdeckung (6) und die hintere obere Abdeckung (7) an der Oberseite des Finishers (5) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

5. Setzen Sie die Haken (8) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) in die Öffnungen (9) vorne und hinten an der Oberseite des Finishers (5) ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, und bringen Sie die Mailbox (A) am Finisher (5) an.

**Hinweis:** Heben Sie die Mailbox (A) vorne und hinten etwas an, um sicher zu stellen, dass die Mailbox (A) nicht pendelt. Falls Sie pendelt, ist sie noch einmal so einzupassen, dass die Haken (8) nicht aus den Öffnungen (9) hervorsteht, wie abgebildet. (Die Öffnungen (9) sind sichtbar, wenn man die hintere Abdeckung (10) und die vordere Abdeckung (11) abnimmt.

4. Rimuovere il coperchio superiore anteriore (6) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (7) dalla parte superiore del finitore (5) utilizzando un cacciavite a punta piatta, o un attrezzo simile.

5. Inserire i ganci (8) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A), negli incavi (9) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte superiore del finitore (5) come mostrato nell'illustrazione, e fissare la casella postale (A) al finitore (5).

**Nota:** Sollevare leggermente la parte anteriore e posteriore (A) della casella postale verso l'alto per accertarsi che non si sposti. Nel caso in cui si sposta, inserirla di nuovo in modo che i ganci (8) non sporgano fuori dagli incavi (9), come mostrato nell'illustrazione. (È possibile vedere gli incavi (9) se si rimuove il pannello posteriore (10) e il pannello anteriore (11).)

4. 用一字形螺丝刀拆下装订器 (5) 上部的顶罩前盖板 (6) 和顶罩后盖板 (7)。

5. 如图所示, 将位于邮箱 (A) 底部前后侧的卡扣 (8) 嵌入位于装订器 (5) 顶部前后侧的凹口 (9), 并将邮箱 (A) 安装至装订器 (5)。

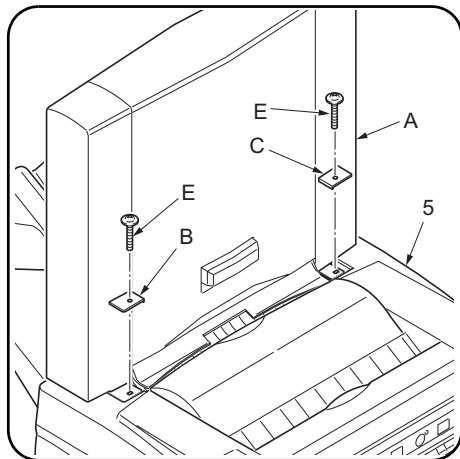
注:  
轻轻向上提升邮箱 (A) 的前后侧, 确保邮箱 (A) 未处于悬浮状态。  
如果处于悬浮状态, 请重新安装, 勿使卡扣 (8) 从凹口 (9) 中凸出, 如图所示。(拆下后盖板 (10) 和前盖板 (11) 之后可以看到凹口 (9)。)

TONER

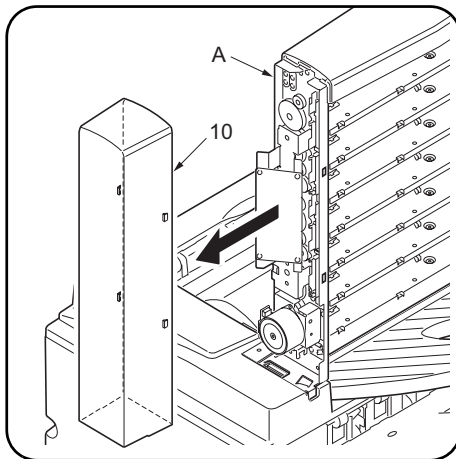
4. フィニッシャー (5) 上部の天カバー前フタ (6)、天カバー後フタ (7) をマイナスドライバーなどで取り外す。

5. メールボックス (A) 下部の前後にあるフック (8) をフィニッシャー (5) 上部の前後にある切り欠き部 (9) にイラストのように挿入し、メールボックス (A) をフィニッシャー (5) に取り付け。

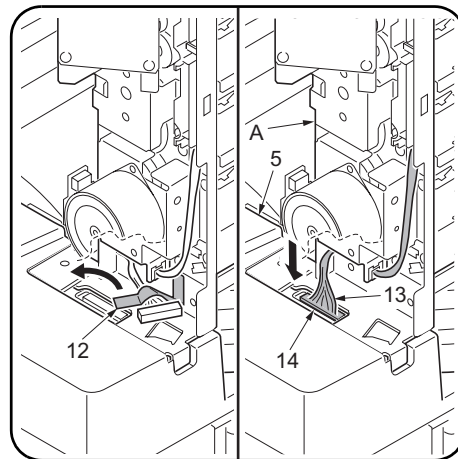
注意  
メールボックス (A) の前後をそれぞれ上方向に軽く持ち上げ、メールボックス (A) が浮かないことを確認する。  
浮く場合は、イラストのようにフック (8) が切り欠き部 (9) に乗り上げないように、再度取り付けすること。(後カバー (10)、前カバー (11) を外すと、切り欠き部 (9) が見えます)



6. Secure the front connection portion of the mailbox (A) and the finisher (1) with the front mounting plate cover (B) using a M4 x 14TP tap-tight S screw (E) and secure the rear connection portion with the rear mounting plate cover (C) using a M4 x 14TP tap-tight S screw (E).



7. Remove the rear cover (10) at the rear of the mailbox (A) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.



8. Remove the fixing tape (12).  
9. Connect the connector (13) of the mailbox (A) to the connector (14) of the finisher (5).  
10. Reinstall the rear cover (10).

6. Fixer la partie raccordement avant de la boîte aux lettres (A) et le retoucheur (1) avec le couvercle de la plaque de montage avant (B) en procédant à l'aide d'une vis autotaraudeuse S M4 x 14TP (E) et fixer la partie raccordement arrière avec le couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière (C) en procédant à l'aide d'une vis autotaraudeuse S M4 x 14TP (E).

7. Déposer le couvercle arrière (10) à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) en procédant à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame ou autre.

8. Enlever la bande adhésive de fixation (12).  
9. Raccorder le connecteur (13) de la boîte à lettres (A) au connecteur (14) du retoucheur (5).  
10. Reposer le couvercle arrière (10).

6. Asegure la parte de conexión frontal del buzón de correo (A) y el finalizador (1) con la cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal (B) por medio de un tornillo de ajuste M4 x 14TP (E) y asegure la parte de conexión trasera a la cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera (C) por medio de un tornillo de ajuste M4 x 14TP (E).

7. Quite la cubierta trasera (10) en la parte posterior del buzón de correo (A) utilizando un destornillador de pala plana o elemento similar.

8. Despegue la cinta de fijación (12).  
9. Conecte el conector (13) del buzón de correo (A) al conector (14) del finalizador (5).  
10. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta trasera (10).

6. Sichern Sie den vorderen Anschlussbereich der Mailbox (A) und des Finishers (1) mit der vorderen Abdeckung (B) der Montageplatte unter Verwendung einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 x 14 (E), und sichern Sie den hinteren Anschlussbereich mit der hinteren Abdeckung (C) der Montageplatte unter Verwendung einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 x 14 (E).

7. Entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (10) an der Rückseite der Mailbox (A) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

8. Entfernen Sie das Klebeband (12).  
9. Stecken Sie den Stecker (13) der Mailbox (A) in den Anschluss (14) des Finishers (5).  
10. Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (10) wieder an.

6. Fissare la porzione di collegamento anteriore della casella postale (A) e del finitore (1) con il coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore (B) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 x 14TP (E) e fissare la porzione di collegamento posteriore con il coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore (C) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 x 14TP (E).

7. Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (10) dietro la casella postale (A) utilizzando un giravite a punta piana o strumento simile.

8. Rimuovere il nastro adesivo (12).  
9. Collegare il connettore (13) della casella postale (A) al connettore (14) del finitore (5).  
10. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore (10).

6. 使用 M4 x 14TP 自攻紧固型 S 螺钉 (E) 将邮箱 (A) 的前连接部分和装订器 (1) 紧固在支撑板前盖板 (B) 上, 并使用 M4 x 14TP 自攻紧固型 S 螺钉 (E) 将后连接部分紧固在支撑板后盖板 (C) 上。

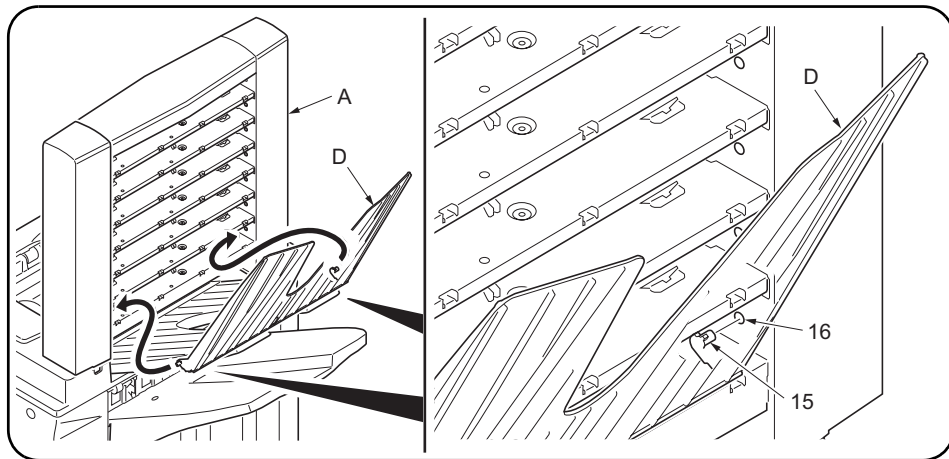
7. 使用一字型螺钉刀或类似工具拆下邮箱 (A) 后侧的后盖板 (10)。

8. 拆下固定胶带 (12)。  
9. 将邮箱 (A) 的接插件 (13) 连接至装订器 (5) 的接插件 (14)。  
10. 重新安装后盖板 (10)。

6. メールボックス (A) とフィニッシャー (1) の前側の接続部を取付板カバー前 (B) と共にビス M4 x 14TP タップタイト S (E) 1 本で、後側の接続部を取付板カバー後 (C) と共にビス M4 x 14TP タップタイト S (E) 1 本で固定する。

7. メールボックス (A) 後部の後カバー (10) をマイナスドライバなどで取り外す。

8. 固定テープ (12) を剥がす。  
9. メールボックス (A) のコネクタ (13) をフィニッシャー (5) のコネクタ (14) に接続する。  
10. 後カバー (10) を元通り取り付け。



- 11. Fit the seven copy eject bins (D) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.**  
While pressing both ends of each copy eject bin (D) to bend it a little, fit the bin at a nearly upright angle as shown in the illustration by inserting the front and rear pins (15) into the round holes (16) at the front and rear of the mailbox (A).

- 12. Insert the MFP power plug to the outlet and turn the MFP main power switch on to check the operation.**

- 11. Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (D) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut.**  
Tout en appuyant sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection de copies (D) de manière à la plier légèrement, fixer la case à un angle presque droit, comme indiqué sur l'illustration, en insérant les broches avant et arrière (15) dans les trous ronds (16) situés à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A).

- 12. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position de marche pour vérifier le fonctionnement.**

- 11. Fije las siete bandejas de expulsión de copias (D) en la sección de expulsión del buzón de correo (A) de la bandeja más baja a la más alta.**  
Mientras presiona ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (D) para doblarlo un poco, fije la bandeja en un ángulo casi vertical tal como en la figura, insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (15) en los orificios redondos (16) en los lados delantero y trasero del buzón de correo (A).

- 12. Enchufe el cable eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP para verificar el funcionamiento.**

- 11. Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (D) in den Ausgabeabschnitt der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten.**  
Drücken Sie bei jedem Kopienausgabefach (D) beide Enden zusammen, um es ein wenig zu biegen, und setzen Sie dabei das Fach in einem fast aufrechten Winkel ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, indem Sie den vorderen und hinteren Stift (15) in die Rundlöcher (16) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) einsetzen.

- 12. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Netzsteckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des MFP ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.**

- 11. Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (D) nella parte di espulsione della casella postale (A), cominciando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto.**  
Premendo alle due estremità di uno scomparto di emissione delle copie (D) in modo da piegarle un poco, installare lo scomparto come mostrato in illustrazione mantenendolo quasi ad angolo retto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (15) nei fori rotondi (16) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A).

- 12. Inserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa della rete elettrica e accenderla utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione in modo da controllare il funzionamento.**

- 11. 从邮箱 (A) 的排出部下面起按顺序安装 7 个接纸盘 (D)。**  
轻轻按下接纸盘 (D) 的左右使之前倾 ( 如图所示呈竖起状态的角度 ), 将前后销 (15) 插入邮箱 (A) 的前后圆孔 (16) 内。

- 12. 将 MFP 主机的电源插头插入插座, 然后按下主开关并确认是否接通。**

**TONER**

- 11. 排出ビン (D) 7 枚をメールボックス (A) の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。**  
排出ビン (D) の左右を押し少したわませながら、イラストのように立てた状態の角度で、前後のビン (15) をメールボックス (A) の前後の丸穴 (16) に挿入する。

- 12. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にして動作を確認する。**

**English****NOTICE**

This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine. Refer to the supplied guide to install the accessory in the field.

Model: DF-760/760(B)

**Français****AVIS**

Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant. Se reporter au guide fourni pour installer l'accessoire dans le champ.

Modèle: DF-760/760(B)

**Español****AVISO**

Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopadoras de la lista de solicitantes. Consulte las instrucciones para la instalación de accesorios en el lugar del cliente.

Modelo: DF-760/760(B)

**Deutsch****HINWEIS**

Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen. Installieren Sie das Zubehör gemäß der mitgelieferten Anleitung im Feld.

Modell: DF-760/760(B)

**Italiano****NOTIFICA**

Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante. Consultare la guida fornita in dotazione per il montaggio in campo dell'accessorio.

Modello: DF-760/760(B)

**简体中文****注意**

本产品适用于以下选购件。安装时，请参照附带的说明书。

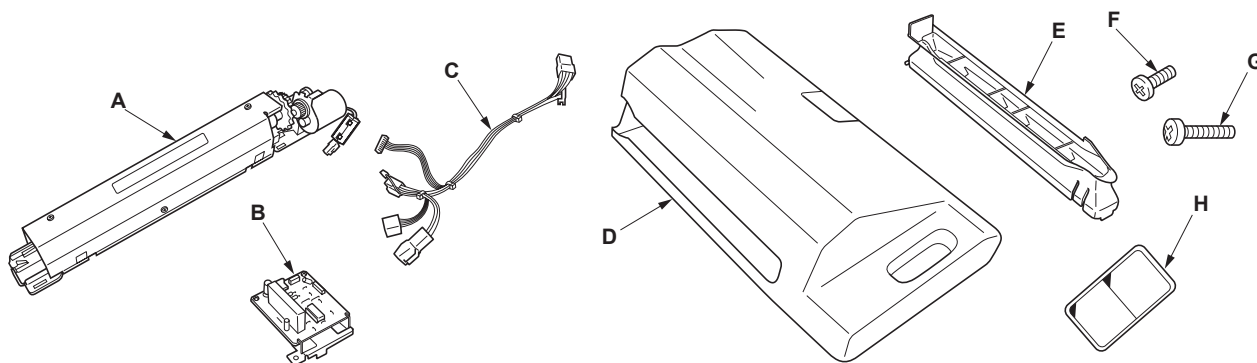
式样：DF-760/760(B)

**日本語****注意**

本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。  
設置する際は、同梱の手順書を参照してください。

Model: DF-760/760(B)

# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR HOLE PUNCH UNIT



## English

### Supplied parts

A Hole punch unit.....	1
B Punch PCB .....	1
C Power cord .....	1
D Waste hole punch box .....	1
E Guide .....	1

F M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw .....	1
G M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw .....	2
H Label .....	1

Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Perforatrice .....	1
B Carte de perforation .....	1
C Cordon d'alimentation .....	1
D Bac de récupération de la perforatrice .....	1
E Guide .....	1

F Vis S taraudée M4 × 8 .....	1
G Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 .....	2
H Etiquette .....	1

Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Perforadora .....	1
B PCB de perforación .....	1
C Cable de alimentación .....	1
D Caja para desechos de la perforación .....	1
E Guía .....	1

F Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 .....	1
G Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 .....	2
H Etiqueta .....	1

Asegúrese de quitar cualquier cinta de fijación o material de amortiguación colocado en las partes suministradas.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Lochereinheit .....	1
B Locherplatine .....	1
C Netzkabel .....	1
D Lochungsabfallbehälter .....	1
E Führung .....	1

F M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	1
G M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	2
H Aufkleber .....	1

Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

## Italiano

### Parti fornite

A Unità di perforazione .....	1
B Scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione .....	1
C Cavo di alimentazione .....	1
D Scarto perforazione .....	1
E Guida .....	1

F Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 .....	1
G Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 .....	2
H Etichetta .....	1

Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

## 简体中文

### 附属部件

A 打孔单元 .....	1
B 打孔单元电路板 .....	1
C 电源线 .....	1
D 打孔纸屑盒 .....	1
E 导向板 .....	1

F M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 .....	1
G M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 .....	2
H 标签 .....	1

请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

[www.tonerplus.com.ua](http://www.tonerplus.com.ua)

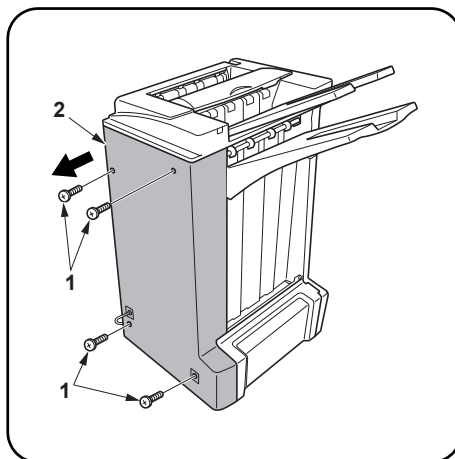
## 日本語

### 付属品

A パンチユニット .....	1
B パンチ基板 .....	1
C 電線 .....	1
D パンチくずボックス .....	1
E ガイド .....	1

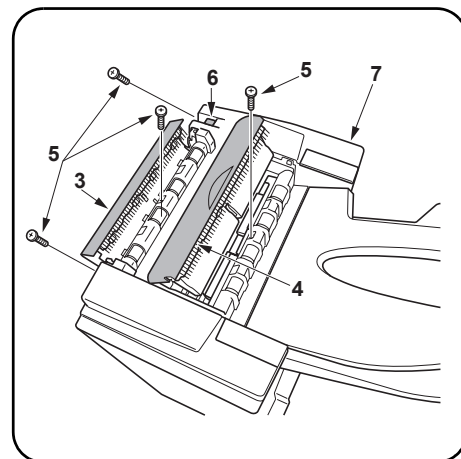
F ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S .....	1
G ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S .....	2
H ラベル .....	1

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



### Removing the cover

1. Remove the four screws (1) to remove the back cover (2) from the document finisher.



2. Open the upper cover (3) and tray C (4) on the document finisher.
3. Remove four screws (5) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) to remove the top cover (7).

### Installation Procedure

Before installing the hole punch unit, make sure the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.

Install the document finisher first and then install the hole punch unit.

### Procédure d'installation

Avant d'installer la perforuse s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le câble d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.

Installer d'abord le finisseur de document, puis installer la perforatrice.

### Enlèvement du capot.

1. Retirer les quatre vis (1) pour retirer le capot arrière (2) du finisseur de document.

2. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) du finisseur de document.
3. Retirer quatre vis (5) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (7).

### Procedimiento de instalación

Antes de instalar la perforadora, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que el cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente de la pared.

Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la perforadora.

### Extracción de la cubierta

1. Quite los cuatro tornillos (1) para quitar la cubierta posterior (2) del finalizador de documentos.

2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) del finalizador de documentos.
3. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para quitar la cubierta superior (7).

### Einbauverfahren

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Lochereinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Lochereinheit an.

### Entfernen der Abdeckung

1. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (1) und entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (2) vom Dokument-Finisher.

2. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) am Dokument-Finisher.
3. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), und die obere Abdeckung (7) zu entfernen.

### Procedura di installazione

Prima di installare l'unità di perforazione, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa. Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di perforazione.

### Rimuovere il coperchio

1. Togliere le quattro viti (1) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (2) dalla finitrice.

2. Aprire il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) della finitrice.
3. Togliere quattro viti (5) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per rimuovere il coperchio (7).

### 安裝步驟

安裝打孔單元前，請確定 MFP 的主電源開關已經關閉並且電源線已從電源插座上拔下。首先安裝裝訂器，然後安裝打孔單元。

### 拆下盖板

1. 從裝訂器上拆下 4 顆螺釘 (1) 以便拆下后盖板 (2)。

2. 打開裝訂器的上盖板 (3) 和托盤 C (4)。
3. 拆下 4 顆螺釘 (5) 并按住整理器釋放杆 (6) 以便拆下上盖板 (7)。

www.tonerplus.com.ua

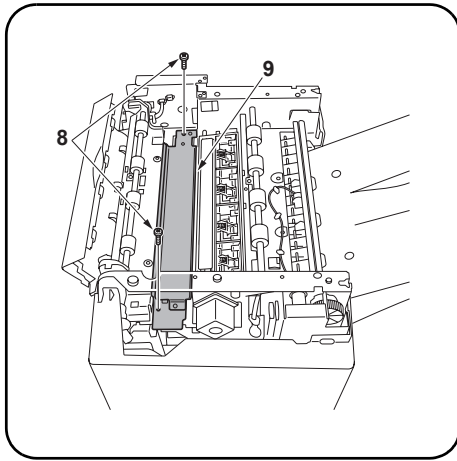
### 設置手順

パンチユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、パンチユニットを設置すること。

### カバーの取り外し

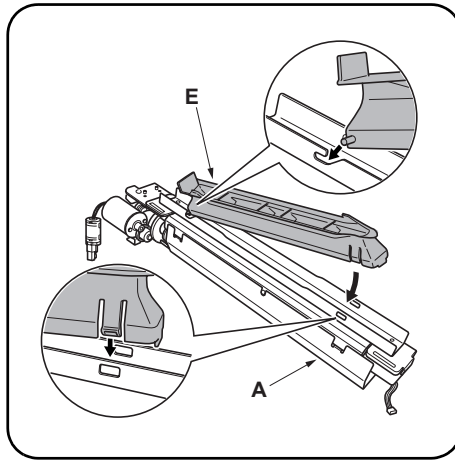
1. ビス (1) 4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャの後カバー (2) を取り外す。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャの上カバー (3) とトレイ C (4) を開く。
3. ビス (5) 4 本を外し、フィニッシャ解除レバー (6) を押しながら天カバー (7) を取り外す。



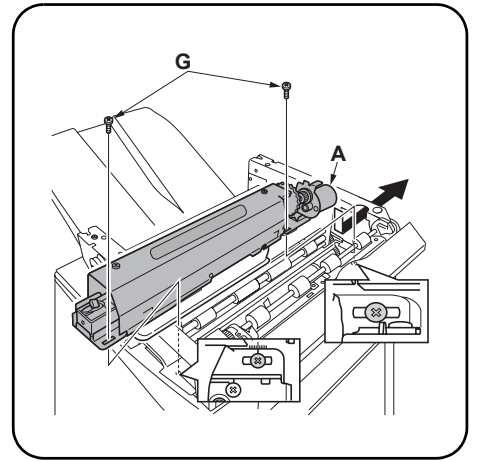
#### Removing the guide plate

4. Remove two screws (8) to remove the guide plate (9).



#### Installing the guide

5. Engage the projection and the pawl of the guide (E) with the hole punch unit (A) to install the guide.



#### Installing the hole punch unit

6. Tilt the hole punch unit (A) to place it through the hole in the upper side of the document finisher.
7. Fix the hole punch unit (A) with two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G). Install the hole punch unit so that M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (G) is placed at the center of each screw hole.

#### Enlèvement de la plaque de guidage.

4. Retirer deux vis (8) pour retirer la plaque de guidage (9).

#### Installation du guide

5. Engager la projection et le cliquet du guide (E) dans la perforatrice (A) pour installer le guide.

#### Installation de la perforatrice

6. Incliner la perforatrice (A) pour la faire passer par l'orifice de la partie supérieure du finisseur de document.
7. Fixer la perforatrice (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G). Installer la perforatrice pour que les vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) soit placées au centre de chaque orifice de vis.

#### Extracción de la placa guía

4. Quite los dos tornillos (8) para quitar la placa guía (9).

#### Instalación de la guía

5. Acople el resalto y el trinquete de la guía (E) con la perforadora (A) para instalar la guía.

#### Instalación de la perforadora

6. Incline la perforadora (A) para colocarla a través del agujero del lado superior del finalizador de documentos.
7. Fije la perforadora (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G). Instale la perforadora de forma que los tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) queden en el centro de cada agujero de tornillo.

#### Entfernen der Führungsplatte

4. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (8), um die Führungsplatte abzunehmen (9).

#### Anbringen der Führung

5. Bringen Sie den Vorsprung und die Sperrklinke der Führung (E) mit der Lochereinheit (A) in Eingriff, um die Führung einzubauen.

#### Anbringen der Lochereinheit

6. Kippen Sie die Lochereinheit (A), um sie durch das Loch an der oberen Seite des Dokument-Finishers einzuführen.
7. Nun die Lochereinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) befestigen. Stellen Sie sicher, dass die Lochereinheit so angebracht wird, dass sich die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (G) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Schraublochs befindet.

#### Rimuovere la piastra guida

4. Togliere due viti (8) per rimuovere la piastra guida (9).

#### Installare la guida

5. Agganciare la parte sporgente e il dentello della guida (E) all'unità di perforazione (A) per installare la guida.

#### Installare l'unità di perforazione

6. Inclinare l'unità di perforazione (A) in modo da inserirla dentro la cavità nella parte superiore della finitrice.
7. Fissare l'unità di perforazione (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G). Installare l'unità di perforazione in modo che la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) sia piazzata al centro di ogni apposito foro.

#### 拆下导向板

4. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (8) 以便拆下导向板 (9)。

#### 安装导向板

5. 将导向板 (E) 的突起部和卡爪与打孔单元 (A) 啮合, 安装导向板。

#### 安装打孔单元

6. 将打孔单元 (A) 倾斜, 从装订器上部的孔中穿过去。
7. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 固定打孔单元 (A)。  
安装打孔单元, 让 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 放在每个螺钉孔的中央。

#### ガイド板の取り外し

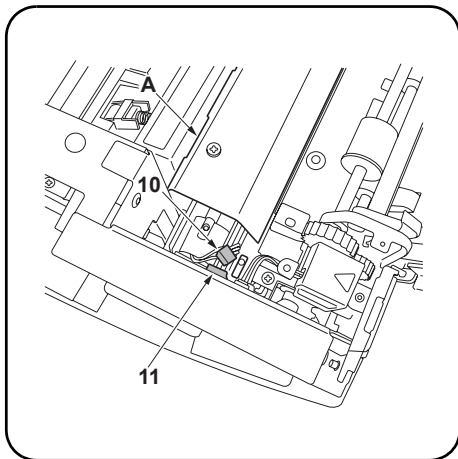
4. ビス (8) 2 本を外し、ガイド板 (9) を取り外す。

#### ガイドの取り付け

5. ガイド (E) の突起とツメをパンチユニット (A) に引っ掛け、取り付ける。

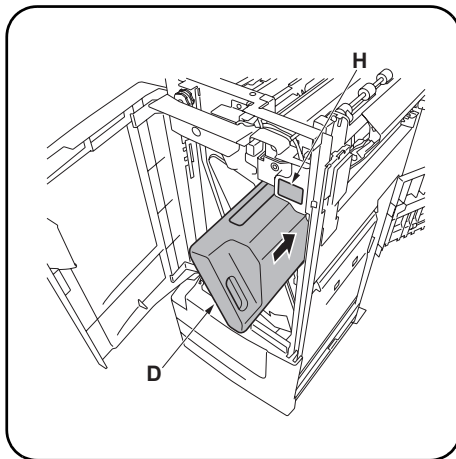
#### パンチユニットの取り付け

6. パンチユニット (A) を傾け、ドキュメントフィニッシャー上部の穴に通す。
7. ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本でパンチユニット (A) を固定する。  
ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) がビス穴の中心の位置になるように取り付けること。



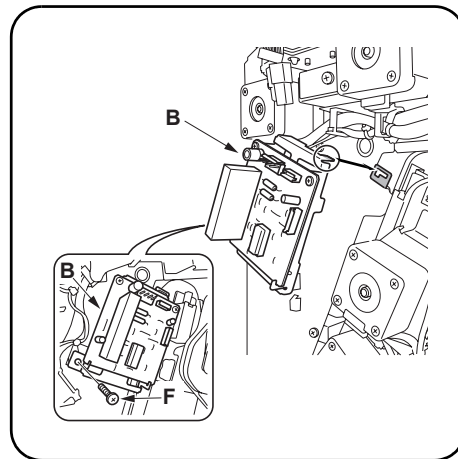
### Connecting the connector (120V/220V/230V/240V models only. Except for Swedish specification)

8. Connect the 3P-connector (10) on the hole punch unit (A) to the 3P-connector (11) inside the document finisher.



### Installing the waste hole punch box

9. Open the front cover of the document finisher and insert the waste hole punch box (D) along the guide (E) which was installed in step 5.
10. Clean the upper right cover of the waste hole punch box (D) with alcohol and adhere the label (H) on the concave section of the box.
11. Close the front cover of the document finisher.



### Installing the punch PCB

12. Engage the pawl on the upper side of the punch PCB (B) with the groove at the back of the document finisher.
13. Secure the punch PCB (B) with M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw (F).

### Connexion du connecteur (Modèles 120V/220V/230V/240V seulement. Sauf pour les spécifications suédoises)

8. Connecter le connecteur 3P (10) de la perforatrice (A) au connecteur 3P (11) à l'intérieur du finisseur de document.

### Installation du bac de récupération de la perforatrice

9. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) le long du guide (E) installé à l'étape 5.
10. Nettoyer le capot supérieur droit du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (H) sur la partie concave du bac.
11. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

### Installation de la carte de perforation

12. Engager le cliquet de la partie supérieure de la carte de perforation (B) dans la rainure à l'arrière du finisseur de document.
13. Fixer la carte de perforation (B) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (F).

### Conexión del conector (Modelos de 120 V/220 V/230 V/240 V solamente. Excepto para las especificaciones suecas)

8. Conecte el conector de 3 contactos (10) de la perforadora (A) en el conector de 3 contactos (11) del interior del finalizador de documentos.

### Instalación la caja para desechos de la perforación

9. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos e introduzca la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) a lo largo de la guía (E) que fue instalada en el paso 5.
10. Limpie la cubierta superior derecha de la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) con alcohol y pegue la etiqueta (H) en la sección cóncava de la caja.
11. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

### Instalación del PCB de perforación

12. Acople el trinquete del lado superior del PCB de perforación (B) con las ranuras de la parte posterior del finalizador de documentos.
13. Asegure el PCB de perforación (B) con el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (F).

### Anschließen des Steckers (nur bei 120 V-, 220 V-, 230 V- und 240 V-Modellen)

8. Stecken Sie den 3-poligen Stecker (10) der Lochereinheit (A) in die 3-polige Buchse (11) innerhalb des Dokument-Finishers ein.

### Anbringen des Lochungsabfallbehälters

9. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und bauen Sie dann den Lochabfallbehälter (D) entlang der in Schritt 5 installierten Führung (E) ein.
10. Reinigen Sie die rechte obere Abdeckung des Lochabfallbehälters (D) mit Alkohol und bringen Sie danach den Aufkleber (H) am konkaven Teil des Behälters an.
11. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

### Anbringen der Locherplatine

12. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke auf der oberen Seite der Locherplatine (B) in die Nut auf der Rückseite des Dokument-Finishers eingreifen.
13. Befestigen Sie die Locherplatine (B) mit der M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (F).

### Collegare il connettore (solo per i modelli 120V/220V/230V/240V. Eccetto per la specificazione svedese)

8. Collegare il connettore a 3 piedini (10) dell'unità di perforazione (A) al connettore a 3 piedini (11) all'interno della finitrice.

### Installare lo scarto perforazione (Contenitore degli scarti per la perforazione).

9. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice e inserire lo scarto perforazione (D) lungo la guida (E) installata nel passo 5.
10. Pulire il pannello superiore destro dello scarto perforazione (D) con alcool e incollare l'etichetta (H) nella sezione concava del contenitore.
11. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

### Installare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione

12. Agganciare il dentello che si trova nella parte superiore della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) nel foro sulla parte posteriore della finitrice.
13. Fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) con una viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (F).

### 连接插头 (仅适用于 120V/220V/230V/240V 型号。除瑞典规格)

8. 将打孔单元 (A) 上的 3P 插头 (10) 连接到装订器内的 3P 插头 (11)。

### 安装打孔纸屑盒

9. 打开装订器的前盖板并沿着在步骤 5 中安装的导向板 (E) 插入打孔纸屑盒 (D)。
10. 用酒精清洁打孔纸屑盒 (D) 的右上盖板, 并将标签 (H) 粘到盒的凹面。
11. 关闭装订器的前盖板。

### 安装打孔单元电路板

12. 将打孔单元电路板 (B) 的上部卡爪与装订器后部的沟槽啮合。
13. 用 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。

www.tonerplus.com.ua

### コネクタの接続 (120V/220V/230V/240V 仕様のみ。ただしスウェーデン仕様は除く)

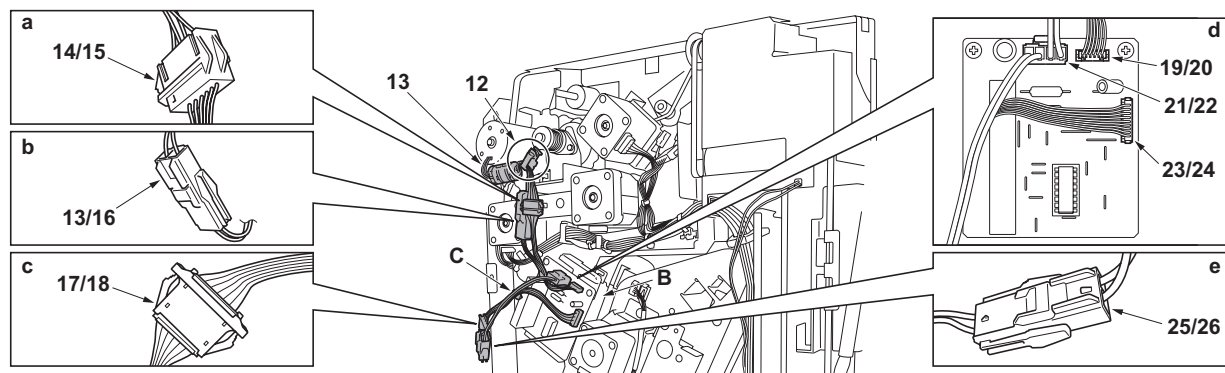
8. パンチユニット (A) の 3P コネクタ (10) をドキュメントフィニッシャの 3P コネクタ (11) に接続する。

### パンチくずボックスの取り付け

9. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開き、手順 5 で取り付けしたガイド (E) に沿ってパンチくずボックス (D) を挿入する。
10. パンチくずボックス (D) 右上のカバーをアルコール清掃し、凹部に合わせてラベル (H) を貼り付ける。
11. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを閉じる。

### パンチ基板の取り付け

12. パンチ基板 (B) の上部のツメをドキュメントフィニッシャ後側の溝に引っ掛ける。
13. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (F) 1 本でパンチ基板 (B) を固定する。



14. Open the wire saddle (12) and put the 2P-connector (13) on the motor through the wire saddle to fix the punch PCB (B).

15. Connect the power cord (C) to the punch PCB (B).

Figure (a): 6P-connector (14) of power cord (C) and 6P-connector (15) of sensor

Figure (b): 2P-connector (13) of power cord (C) and 2P-connector (16) of motor

Figure (c): 9P-connector (17) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (18) of document finisher power cord

Figure (d): 6P-connector (19) of power cord (C) and YC3 connector (20) of punch PCB (B)

Figure (d): 4P-connector (21) of power cord (C) and YC1 connector (22) of punch PCB (B)

Figure (d): 9P-connector (23) of power cord (C) and YC2 connector (24) of punch PCB (B)

Figure (e): 9P-connector (25) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (26) of document finisher power cord

14. Ouvrir la selle de câble (12) et faire passer le connecteur 2P (13) dans le moteur par la selle de câble pour fixer la carte de perforation (B).

15. Connecter le cordon d'alimentation (C) et la carte de perforation (B).

Figure (a): connecteur 6P (14) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 6P (15) du capteur

Figure (b): connecteur 2P (13) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 2P (16) du moteur

Figure (c): connecteur 9P (17) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (18) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

Figure (d): connecteur 6P (19) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC3 (20) de la carte de perforation (B)

Figure (d): connecteur 4P (21) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC1 (22) de la carte de perforation (B)

Figure (d): connecteur 9P (23) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC2 (24) de la carte de perforation (B)

Figure (e): connecteur 9P (25) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (26) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

14. Abra la placa de cable (12) y ponga el conector de 2 contactos (13) en el motor a través de la placa de cable para fijar el PCB de perforación (B).

15. Conecte el cable de alimentación (C) en el PCB de perforación (B).

Figura (a): Conector de 6 contactos (14) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 6 contactos (15) del sensor

Figura (b): Conector de 2 contactos (13) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 2 contactos (16) del motor

Figura (c): Conector de 9 contactos (17) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (18) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

Figura (d): Conector de 6 contactos (19) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC3 (20) del PCB de perforación (B)

Figura (d): Conector de 4 contactos (21) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC1 (22) del PCB de perforación (B)

Figura (d): Conector de 9 contactos (23) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC2 (24) del PCB de perforación (B)

Figura (e): Conector de 9 contactos (25) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (26) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

14. Öffnen Sie den Kabelhalter (12) und führen Sie den 2-poligen Stecker (13) durch den Kabelhalter am Motor, um die Locherplatine (B) zu befestigen.

15. Schließen Sie das Netzkabel (C) an der Locherplatine (B) an.

Abbildung (a): 6-poliger Stecker (14) des Netzkabels (C) und 6-poliger Stecker (15) des Sensors

Abbildung (b): 2-poliger Stecker (13) des Netzkabels (C) und 2-poliger Stecker (16) des Motors

Abbildung (c): 9-poliger Stecker (17) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (18) des Dokument-Finishers-Netzkabels

Abbildung (d): 6-poliger Stecker (19) des Netzkabels (C) und YC3-Stecker (20) der Locherplatine (B)

Abbildung (d): 4-poliger Stecker (21) des Netzkabels (C) und YC1-Stecker (22) der Locherplatine (B)

Abbildung (d): 9-poliger Stecker (23) des Netzkabels (C) und YC2-Stecker (24) der Locherplatine (B)

Abbildung (e): 9-poliger Stecker (25) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (26) des Dokument-Finisher-Netzkabels

14. Aprire la slitta del filo (12) e inserire il connettore a 2 piedini (13) sul motore attraverso la slitta in modo da fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).

15. Collegare il cavo di alimentazione (C) alla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).

Figura (a): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (14) e connettore sensore a 6 piedini (15)

Figura (b): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 2 piedini (13) e connettore motore a 2 piedini (16)

Figura (c): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (17) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (18)

Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (19) e connettore YC3 (20) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)

Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 4 piedini (21) e connettore YC1 (22) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)

Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (23) e connettore YC2 (24) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)

Figura (e): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (25) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (26)

14. 打开电线束线夹 (12) 并将电机上的 2P 插头 (13) 穿过电线束线夹, 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。

15. 将电源线 (C) 连接到打孔单元电路板 (B)。

图 (a): 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (14) 和传感器的 6P 插头 (15)

图 (b): 电源线 (C) 的 2P 插头 (13) 和电机的 2P 插头 (16)

图 (c): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (17) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (18)

图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (19) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC3 插头 (20)

图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 4P 插头 (21) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC1 插头 (22)

图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (23) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC2 插头 (24)

图 (e): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (25) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (26)

14. ワイヤースドル (12) を開き、モータの 2P コネクタ (13) をワイヤースドル (12) へ通して固定する。

15. 電線 (C) をパンチ基板 (B) と接続する。

図 (a): 電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (14) とセンサの 6P コネクタ (15)

図 (b): 電線 (C) の 2P コネクタ (13) とモータの 2P コネクタ (16)

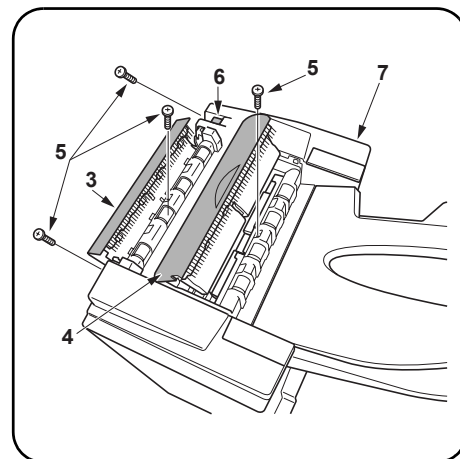
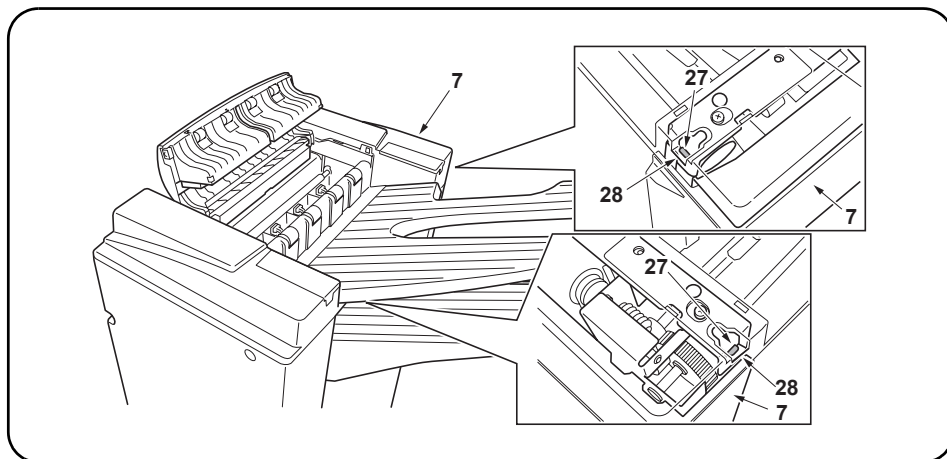
図 (c): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (17) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (18)

図 (d): 電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (19) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC3 コネクタ (20)

図 (d): 電線 (C) の 4P コネクタ (21) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC1 コネクタ (22)

図 (d): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (23) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC2 コネクタ (24)

図 (e): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (25) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (26)



### Installing the cover

16. Engage the pawl (27) of the document finisher with the concave section (28) at the back of the top cover (7) which was removed in step 3. After that, reinstall the top cover (7) by pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) with four screws (5).  
If the pawl (27) is not securely engaged with the concave section, the top cover (7) is loose, which may cause incorrect operation of the document finisher.
17. Close the upper cover (3) and the tray C (4) which were opened in step 2.

### Installation du capot

16. Engager le cliquet (27) du finisseur de document dans la partie concave (28) de l'arrière du capot supérieur (7) retiré à l'étape 3. Ensuite, réinstaller le capot supérieur (7) en serrant le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) à l'aide de quatre vis (5).  
Si le cliquet (27) n'est pas bien engagé dans la partie concave, le capot supérieur (7) est lâche, ce qui peut entraîner un fonctionnement incorrect du finisseur de document.
17. Refermer le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) ouverts à l'étape 2.

### Instalación de la cubierta

16. Acople el trinquete (27) del finalizador de documentos con la sección cóncava (28) de la parte posterior de la cubierta superior (7) que fue quitada en el paso 3. Después, presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (7) con cuatro tornillos (5).  
Si el trinquete (27) no está firmemente acoplado con la sección cóncava, la cubierta superior (7) quedará floja, lo que podrá causar un funcionamiento incorrecto del finalizador de documentos.
17. Cierre la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) que fueron abiertas en el paso 2.

### Anbringen der Abdeckung

16. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke (27) des Dokument-Finishers in den konkaven Teil (28) auf der Rückseite der oberen Abdeckung (7) eingreifen, die zuvor in Schritt 3 entfernt wurde. Drücken Sie danach den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), um die obere Abdeckung (7) mit den vier Schrauben (5) zu befestigen.  
Wenn die Sperrklinke (27) nicht gut in den konkaven Teil eingreift, ist die obere Abdeckung (7) locker. Dabei kann es zu einer Funktionsstörung im Dokument-Finisher kommen.
17. Schließen Sie die in Schritt 2 geöffnete obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) wieder.

### Installare il pannello

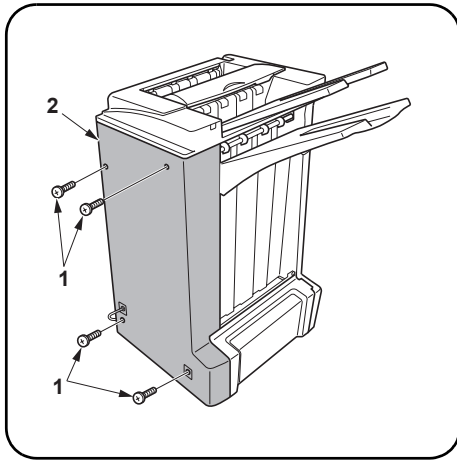
16. Agganciare il dentello (27) della finitrice alla sezione concava (28) sul retro del coperchio (7) rimosso al passo 3. In seguito, premi la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per reinstallare il coperchio (7) con quattro viti (5).  
Se il dentello (27) non è fermamente agganciato alla sezione concava, il coperchio (7) risulta allentato e ciò può causare il malfunzionamento della finitrice.
17. Chiudere il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) aperti nel passo 2.

### 安装盖板

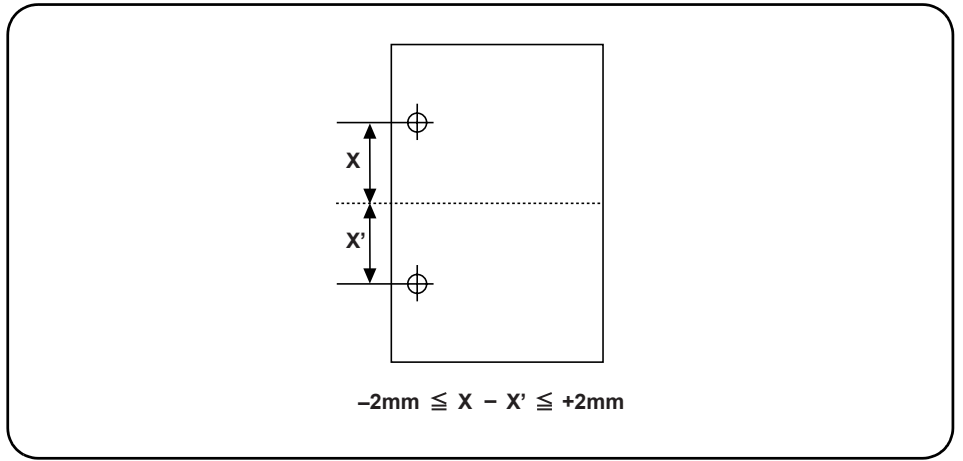
16. 将装订器的卡爪 (27) 与在步骤 3 中拆下的上盖板 (7) 后凹面 (28) 啮合。之后, 按下装订器释放杆 (6), 用 4 颗螺钉重新安装上部盖板 (7)。  
如果卡爪 (27) 未与凹面牢固地啮合, 上盖板 (7) 会松动, 可能会造成装订器的异常操作。
17. 关闭在步骤 2 中打开的上盖板 (3) 和托盘 C (4)。

### カバールの取り付け

16. ドキュメントフィニッシャのツメ (27) を、手順 3 で外した天カバー (7) 裏側の凹部 (28) に引っ掛け、フィニッシャ解除レバー (6) を押しながら天カバー (7) をはめ込み、ビス (5) 4 本で元通り取り付け。
- ツメ (27) が確実に引っ掛けられていない場合、天カバー (7) が浮いた状態になり、ドキュメントフィニッシャが正常に動作しない恐れがある。
17. 手順 2 で開いた上カバー (3) とトレイ C (4) を閉じる。



18. Use four screws (1) to reinstall the back cover (2) which was removed from the document finisher in step 1.



#### [Checking the center of the punch hole]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
3. Check for any off-centering in the punch holes. If any off-centering is observed, follow the procedure below to adjust the hole position.  
<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Utiliser quatre vis (1) pour réinstaller le capot arrière (2) retiré du finisseur de document à l'étape 1.

#### [Vérification du centre des perforations]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.
2. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
3. Vérifier tout décentrage des perforations. Si des décentrages se produisent, suivre la procédure ci-dessous pour ajuster la position de perforation.  
<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Utilice cuatro tornillos (1) para volver a instalar la cubierta posterior (2) que fue quitada del finalizador de documentos en el paso 1.

#### [Comprobación del centro del agujero perforado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
3. Compruebe que no haya ningún agujero perforado descentrado. Si lo hay, siga el procedimiento de abajo para ajustar la posición del agujero.  
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (1), um die hintere Abdeckung (2) zu befestigen, welche in Schritt 1 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurde.

#### [Überprüfen der Stanzlöcherzentrierung]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Lochungsmodus einen Test aus, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
3. Prüfen Sie auf nicht zentrierte Löcher. Sollte dies der Fall sein, folgen Sie dem nachfolgendem Verfahren, um die Lochposition zu korrigieren.  
<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Utilizzare quattro viti (1) per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (2) rimosso dalla finitrice nel passo 1.

#### [Verificare la centratura dei fori di perforazione]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
3. Verificare che i fori di perforazione siano correttamente centrati. Nel caso in cui non lo siano, eseguire la procedura indicata qui di seguito per regolarne la posizione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. 用 4 顆螺釘 (1) 重新安裝在步驟 1 中從裝訂器上拆下的後蓋板 (2)。

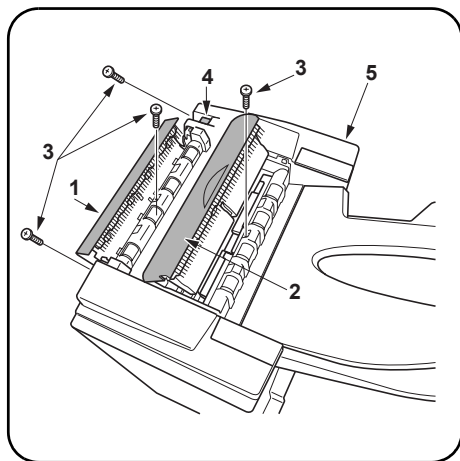
#### [检查打孔的中央]

1. 將 MFP 插入電源插座，打開主電源開關。
2. 在打孔模式中，從 MP 托盤進紙進行測試複印。
3. 檢查打孔是否偏离中央。如果觀察到有偏离中央的情況，按照下列步驟調整打孔位置。  
<標準值> 打孔的垂直間隙:  $\pm 2$ mm

18. 手順 1 で外したドキュメントフィニッシャーの後カバー (2) をビス (1) 4 本で元通り取り付け。

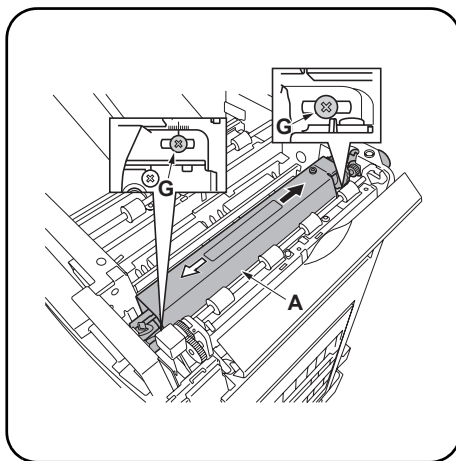
#### [パンチ穴のセンター位置確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
3. パンチ穴のセンター位置のずれを確認する。パンチ穴が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> パンチ穴のずれ:  $\pm 2$ mm



### Centering punch-holes

1. Open the upper cover (1) and the tray C (2) of the document finisher.
2. Remove four screws (3) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (4) to remove the top cover (5).

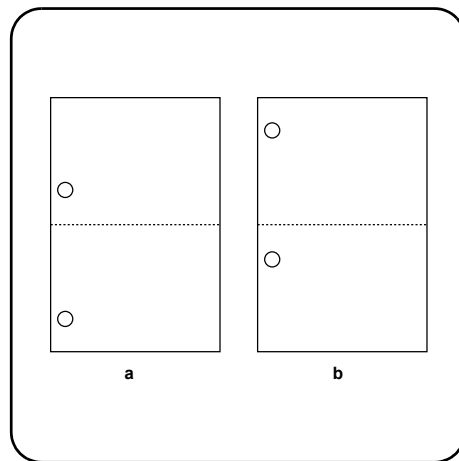


3. Loosen two M4 x 10 tap Tight S screws (G) of the hole punch unit (A).

4. Adjust the position of the hole punch unit (A).

When holes are punched too far lower copy example (a): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the black arrow.  
When holes are punched too far upper copy example (b): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the white arrow.

5. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.
6. Perform a test copy.



### Centrage des perforations

1. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (1) et le bac C (2) du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer quatre vis (3) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur (4) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (5).

3. Desserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (G) de la perforatrice (A).

4. Ajuster la position de la perforatrice (A).

Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop bas dans l'exemple de copie (a): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche noire.

Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop haut dans l'exemple de copie (b): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche blanche.

5. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.
6. Effectuer une copie de test.

### Centrado de los agujeros de perforación

1. Abra la cubierta superior (1) y la bandeja C (2) del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los cuatro tornillos (3) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (4) para quitar la cubierta superior (5).

3. Afloje dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (G) de la perforadora (A).

4. Ajuste la posición de la perforadora (A).

Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia abajo en el ejemplo de copia (a): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha negra.

Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia arriba en el ejemplo de copia (b): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha blanca.

5. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.
6. Haga una copia de prueba.

### Zentrieren der Stanzlöcher

1. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (1) sowie das Fach C (2) des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (3) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (4), um die obere Abdeckung (5) zu entfernen.

3. Lösen Sie die beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) der Lochereinheit (A).

4. Stellen Sie die Position der Lochereinheit (A) ein.

Wenn die Löcher zu weit unten durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (a): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils.

Wenn die Löcher zu weit oben durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (b): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des weißen Pfeils.

5. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.
6. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.

### Centratura dei fori di perforazione

1. Aprire il pannello superiore (1) e il vassoio C (2) della finitrice.
2. Togliere quattro viti (3) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (4) per rimuovere il coperchio (5).

3. Allentare due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (G) dell'unità di perforazione (A).

4. Regolare la posizione dell'unità di perforazione (A).

Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in basso (esempio a): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia nera.

Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in alto (esempio b): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia bianca.

5. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.
6. Eseguire una copia di prova.

### 将打孔调整居中

1. 打开装订器的上盖板 (1) 和托盘 C (2)。
2. 拆下 4 颗螺钉 (3) 并按住整理器释放杆 (4) 以便拆下上盖板 (5)。

3. 松开打孔单元 (A) 的 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。

4. 调整打孔单元 (A) 的位置。

打孔远离下部复印样本 (a) 时: 将打孔单元 (A) 滑向黑色箭头指示的方向。

打孔远离上部复印样本 (b) 时: 将打孔单元 (A) 滑向白色箭头指示的方向。

5. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息, 请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。
6. 进行测试复印。

### パンチ穴のセンター位置調整

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの上カバー (1) とトレイ C (2) を開く。
2. ビス (3) 4 本を外し、フィニッシャー解除レバー (4) 押しながら天カバー (5) を取り外す。

3. パンチユニット (A) のビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を緩める。

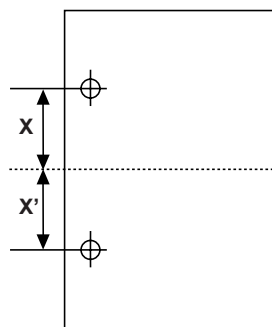
4. パンチユニット (A) の位置調整を行う。

パンチ穴が下にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (a): パンチユニット (A) を黒矢印の方向へずらす。

パンチ穴が上にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (b): パンチユニット (A) を白矢印の方向へずらす。

5. 手順 2 で外した天カバー (5) をビス (3) 4 本で元通り取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。

6. テストコピーを行う。



7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until the vertical gap of the punch holes on the copy sample are within the reference value.
8. After adjustment, tighten two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G) loosened in step 3.
9. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.

<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes: ±2 mm

7. Répéter les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que l'espace vertical des perforations de l'échantillon de copie se trouve à l'intérieur de la valeur de référence.
8. Après l'ajustement, resserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) desserrées à l'étape 3.
9. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.

<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations: ±2 mm

7. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la separación vertical de los agujeros perforados en la muestra de la copia cumplan con el valor de referencia.
8. Después de hacer el ajuste, apriete dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) aflojados en el paso 3.
9. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.

<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados: ±2 mm

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 6, bis der Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher auf der Testkopie innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
8. Nach der Einstellung sind die beiden in Schritt 3 gelösten M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) wieder festzuziehen.
9. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.

<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher: ±2 mm

7. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 finché la distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione nella copia campione non rientra nel valore di riferimento.
8. Dopo la regolazione, serrare le due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) allentate nel passo 3.
9. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.

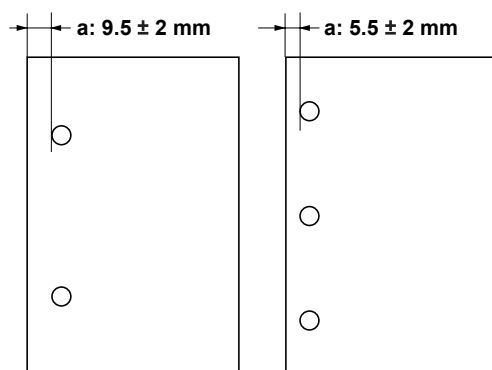
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione: ±2 mm

7. 重复步骤 1 至 6 直到复印样本上打孔垂直间隙在标准值范围之内。
8. 调整后，拧紧在步骤 3 中松开的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。
9. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息，请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。

<标准值> 打孔的垂直间隙: ±2mm

7. コピーサンプルのパンチ穴のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
8. 調整終了後、手順 3 で緩めたビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を締め付ける。
9. 手順 2 で外した天カバー (5) をビス (3) 4 本で元通り取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。

<基準値> パンチ穴のずれ: ± 2mm



#### [Checking distance from leading edge to the punch holes]

1. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
2. Check the distance from the paper leading edge to the punch holes (a). If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.  
<Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ± 2 mm  
Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ± 2 mm

#### Adjusting distance from leading edge to the punch holes

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select FINISHER 3000 and PUNCH POS ADJ mode.
2. Adjust the setting value.  
If (a) is shorter than the reference value, increase the setting value.  
If (a) is larger than the reference value, decrease the setting value.  
Changing the value by 1 moves the punching position by approximately 0.49 mm

#### [Vérification de la distance du bord d'entrée aux perforations]

1. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
2. Vérifier la distance entre le bord d'entrée du papier et les perforations (a). Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Ajustement de la distance entre le bord d'entrée et les perforations

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner FINISHER 3000 et le mode PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Ajuster la valeur de réglage.  
Si (a) est inférieur à la valeur de référence, augmenter la valeur de réglage.  
Si (a) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, diminuer la valeur de réglage.  
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position de perforation d'environ 0,49 mm.

#### [Comprobación de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados]

1. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
2. Compruebe la distancia del borde delantero del papel a los agujeros perforados (a). Si la distancia no se encuentra dentro del valor de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Distancia (a) en pulgadas: 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Ajuste de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione FINISHER 3000 y el modo PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.  
Si (a) es inferior al valor de referencia, aumente el valor de configuración.  
Si (a) es superior al valor de referencia, disminuya el valor de configuración.  
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de perforación 0,49 mm aproximadamente.

#### [Überprüfen des Abstands von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern]

1. Führen Sie im Lochermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
2. Überprüfen Sie den Abstand von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern (a). Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist die Einstellung gemäß den nachfolgenden Schritte durchzuführen.  
<Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Abstand in Zoll (a): 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Einstellen des Abstands von der Vorderkante zu den Stanzlöchern

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein und wählen Sie dann FINISHER 3000 und PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Regeln Sie den Einstellungswert.  
Wenn (a) kleiner als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu erhöhen.  
Wenn (a) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu reduzieren.  
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1 verschiebt die Lochstanzposition um 0,49 mm.

#### [Verificare la distanza distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione]

1. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
2. Controllare la distanza tra i fori di perforazione e il bordo anteriore del foglio (a). Se la distanza non è compresa tra gli intervalli di riferimento, eseguire i passaggi successivi per regolarne la posizione.  
<Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica: 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Impostazione della distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare le modalità FINISHER 3000 e PUNCH POS ADJ (regola posizione di cucitura).
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.  
Nel caso in cui (a) sia minore del valore di riferimento, aumentare il valore di impostazione.  
Se (a) è maggiore del valore previsto, ridurre il valore di impostazione.  
La modifica del valore 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di cucitura di circa 0,49 mm

#### [ 检查前边到打孔的距离 ]

1. 在打孔模式中，从 MP 托盘进纸进行测试复印。
2. 检查纸张前边到打孔 (a) 的距离。如果距离超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整位置。  
<标准值> 公制规格的距离 (a): 9.5 ± 2mm  
英制规格的距离 (a): 5.5 ± 2mm

#### 调整前边到打孔的距离

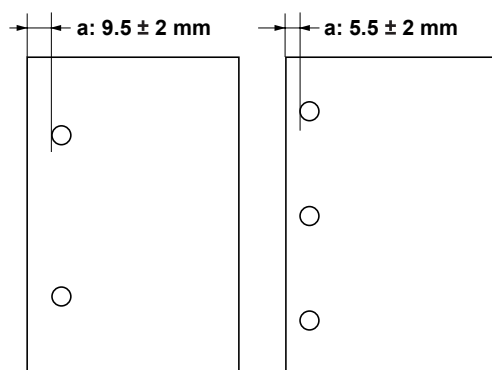
1. 进入维修模式 U246，选择 FINISHER 3000（整理器 3000）和 PUNCH POS ADJ（打孔位置调整）模式。
2. 调整设定值。  
如果 (a) 短于标准值，请增大设定值。  
如果 (a) 长于标准值，请减小设定值。  
以 1 更改数值将打孔位置移动大约 0.49mm

#### [パンチ穴の先端位置確認]

1. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
2. パンチ穴の用紙先端からの位置 (a) を確認する。位置のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> センチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 9.5 ± 2mm  
インチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 5.5 ± 2mm

#### パンチ穴の先端位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 にセットし、FINISHER 3000、PUNCH POS ADJ を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
(a) が基準値より短い場合: 設定値を上げる。  
(a) が基準値より長い場合: 設定値を下げる。  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.49mm



3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the leading edge to the punch hole indicates the value within the reference range.  
 <Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification:  $9.5 \pm 2$  mm  
 Distance (a) in inch specification:  $5.5 \pm 2$  mm

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la distance entre le bord d'entrée et la perforation indique une valeur se trouvant à l'intérieur de la gamme de référence.  
 <Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques:  $9,5 \pm 2$  mm  
 Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces:  $5,5 \pm 2$  mm

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del borde de entrada al agujero perforado indique una distancia comprendida dentro del valor de referencia.  
 <Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico:  $9,5 \pm 2$  mm  
 Distancia (a) en pulgadas:  $5,5 \pm 2$  mm

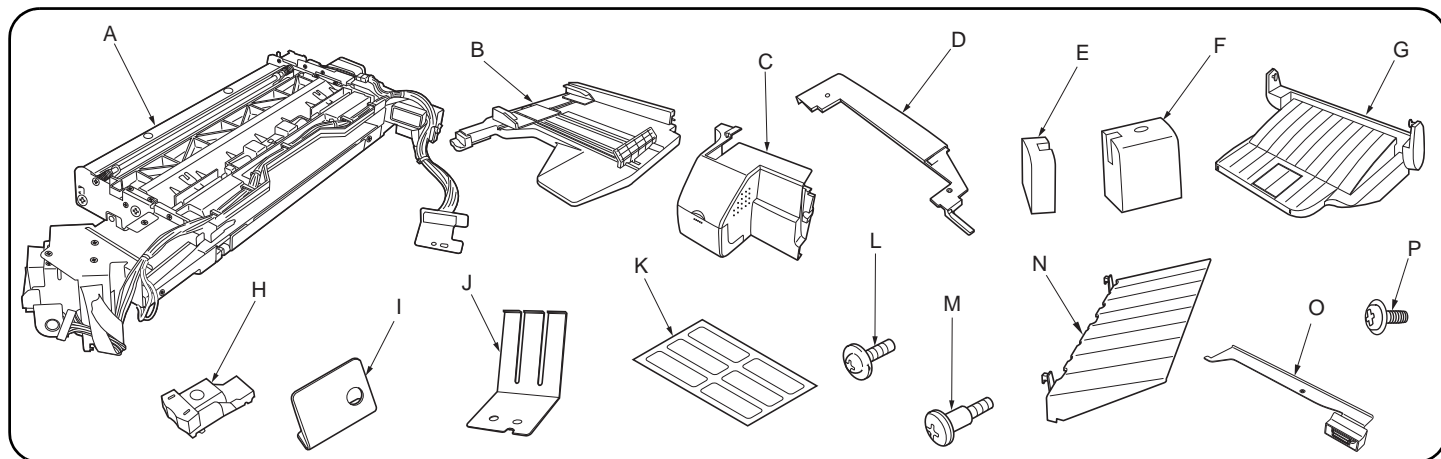
3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Vorderkante zur Lochung innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.  
 <Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a):  $9,5 \pm 2$  mm  
 Abstand in Zoll (a):  $5,5 \pm 2$  mm

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione non rientra negli intervalli di riferimento.  
 <Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica:  $9,5 \pm 2$  mm  
 Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici:  $5,5 \pm 2$  mm

3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到前边到打孔的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。  
 <标准值> 公制规格的距离 (a):  $9.5 \pm 2$ mm  
 英制规格的距离 (a):  $5.5 \pm 2$ mm

3. テストコピーを行う
4. パンチ穴の用紙先端までの位置が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。  
 <基準値> センチ仕様 (a) のずれ:  $9.5 \pm 2$ mm  
 インチ仕様 (a) のずれ:  $5.5 \pm 2$ mm

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR BUILT-IN FINISHER**



## English

### Supplied parts

A Transfer unit .....	1
B Intermediate tray .....	1
C Staple cover .....	1
D Large ejection cover .....	1

E Front ejection cover .....	1
F Rear ejection cover .....	1
G Copy tray .....	1
H Staple cartridge .....	1
I Flat spring ejection .....	1
J Ground plate .....	1
K Pull label .....	1
L TP screw M3 x 05 .....	7
M Operation section securing pin .....	1

N Sub tray .....	1
O Magnet assembly .....	1
P TP Screw M3 x 10 .....	1

### Precautions

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

## Français

### Pièces fournies

A Unité de transfert .....	1
B Plateau intermédiaire .....	1
C Couvercle d'agrafes .....	1
D Grand couvercle d'éjection .....	1

E Couvercle d'éjection avant .....	1
F Couvercle d'éjection arrière .....	1
G Plateau à copies .....	1
H Cartouche d'agrafes .....	1
I Dispositif d'éjection à ressort plat .....	1
J Plaque de masse .....	1
K Etiquette Tirer .....	1
L Vis TP M3 x 05 .....	7
M Broche de fixation de la section de commande .....	1

N Plateau secondaire .....	1
O Ensemble d'aimant .....	1
P Vis TP M3 x 10 .....	1

### Précautions

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

## Español

### Partes suministradas

A Unidad de transferencia .....	1
B Bandeja intermedia .....	1
C Cubierta de grapas .....	1
D Cubierta de expulsión grande .....	1

E Cubierta de expulsión frontal .....	1
F Cubierta de expulsión trasera .....	1
G Bandeja de copias .....	1
H Cartucho de grapas .....	1
I Expulsión por resorte plano .....	1
J Placa a tierra .....	1
K Etiqueta de tiro .....	1
L Tornillo TP M3 x 05 .....	7
M Pasador de fijación de la sección de funcionamiento .....	1

N Bandeja secundaria .....	1
O Conjunto del imán .....	1
P Tornillo TP M3 x 10 .....	1

### Precauciones

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Transferereinheit .....	1
B Zwischenablage .....	1
C Hefterabdeckung .....	1
D Große Auswurfabdeckung .....	1

E Vordere Auswurfabdeckung .....	1
F Hintere Auswurfabdeckung .....	1
G Kopienablage .....	1
H Heftklammerpatrone .....	1
I Blattfederauswurf .....	1
J Grundplatte .....	1
K Abziehaufkleber .....	1
L TP-Schraube M3 x 05 .....	7
M Bedienteil-Sicherungsstift .....	1

N Hilfsablage .....	1
O Magneteinheit .....	1
P TP-Schraube M3 x 10 .....	1

### Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

## Italiano

### Parti fornite

A Unità di trasferimento .....	1
B Vassoio intermedio .....	1
C Coperchio della graffatrice .....	1
D Coperchio grande di espulsione carta .....	1

E Coperchio frontale di espulsione carta .....	1
F Coperchio posteriore di espulsione carta .....	1
G Vassoio copie .....	1
H Cartuccia della graffatrice .....	1
I Molla piatta a espulsione .....	1
J Piastra di terra .....	1
K Etichetta staccabile .....	1
L Vite TP M3 x 05 .....	7
M Perno di fissaggio della sezione di comando .....	1

N Sottovassoio .....	1
O Unità magnete .....	1
P Vite TP M3 x 10 .....	1

### Precauzioni

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

## 简体中文

### 附属品

A 输送组件 .....	1
B 中间托盘 .....	1
C 装订盖板 .....	1
D 出纸盖板 (大) .....	1

E 出纸盖板 (前) .....	1
F 出纸盖板 (后) .....	1
G 出纸托盘 .....	1
H 订书钉盒 .....	1
I 出纸板簧 .....	1
J 地线板 .....	1
K PULL 标签 .....	1
L 螺丝 M3 x 05TP .....	7

M 操作部固定卡销 .....	1
N 辅助托盘 .....	1
O 磁铁组件 .....	1
P 螺丝 M3 x 10TP .....	1

### 注意事项

如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时必须揭下。

## 日本語

### 付属品

A 搬送ユニット .....	1
B 中間トレイ .....	1
C ステープルカバー .....	1
D 排出カバー大 .....	1

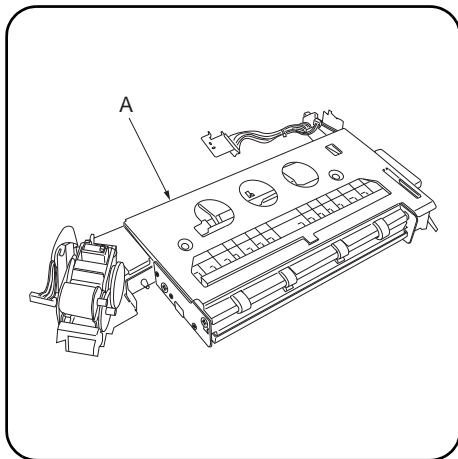
E 排出カバー前 .....	1
F 排出カバー後 .....	1
G 排出トレイ .....	1
H ステープルカートリッジ .....	1
I 板バネ排出 .....	1
J アース版 .....	1
K PULL ラベル .....	1
L ビス M3 x 05TP .....	7

M 操作部固定ピン .....	1
N サブトレイ .....	1
O 組立マグネット .....	1
P ビス M3 x 10TP .....	1

### 注意事項

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

www.tonerplus.com.ua



#### Note

When placing the transfer unit (A) on the floor or the like, be sure to place it upside down. If not, the stapler mounting plate may be deformed, resulting in a malfunction.

#### Remarque

Lorsqu'on place l'unité de transfert (A) sur le sol ou sur une surface équivalente, veiller à la placer sens dessus dessous. Sinon, la plaque de montage de l'agrafeuse risque d'être déformée, ce qui causera des anomalies de fonctionnement.

#### Nota

Cuando se coloca la unidad de transferencia (A) en el piso o similar, asegúrese de colocarlo al revés. de lo contrario, la placa de montaje del grapador puede deformarse, provocando un mal funcionamiento.

#### Hinweis

Wenn die Transfereinheit (A) auf den Boden oder dergleichen gestellt wird, muss sie auf den Kopf gestellt werden. Anderenfalls kann die Heftermontageplatte verformt werden, was zu einer Funktionsstörung führt.

#### Nota

Quando si posiziona l'unità di trasferimento (A) sul pavimento o in luoghi simili, occorre posizionarla rovesciata. In caso contrario, la piastra di montaggio della pinzatrice potrebbe venire deformata, provocando malfunzionamenti.

#### 【注意事項】

将输送组件 (A) 放在地板等上时, 务必翻过来放置。否则会使装订器安装板变形, 而发生故障。

#### Preparation

When installing a finisher, be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet.

#### Préparation

Lors de l'installation d'un finisseur, veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale.

#### Preparación

Cuando se instala un finalizador, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal del MFP y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

#### Vorbereitung

Schalten Sie vor der Installation des Fixierers unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab.

#### Preparazione

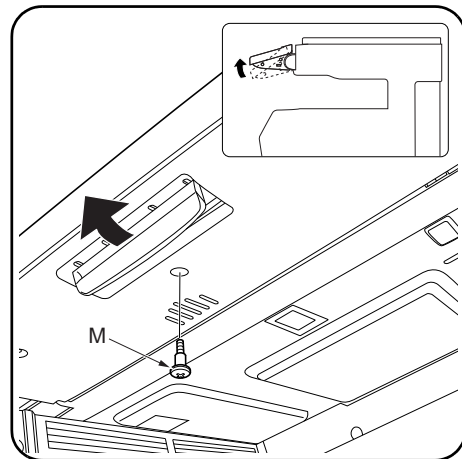
Al momento dell'installazione della finitrice, assicuratevi innanzitutto di spegnere l'MFP e scollegare il cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di rete.

#### 【安装步骤】

安装装订器时, 必须先切断 MFP 主机的主电源开关, 并拔下 MFP 主机上的电源插头后, 再进行安装作业。

#### 【取付手順】

フィニッシャを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを外して作業を行うこと。



1. Pull the lever toward the front side to raise the operation section, and secure it using the operation section securing pin (M).

#### Note

After the finisher is installed, the operation section is secured and the angle cannot be adjusted.

2. Open the left transfer cover and the front cover.

1. Tirer le levier vers l'avant pour élever la section de commande, et le fixer à l'aide de la broche de fixation de la section de commande (M).

#### Note

Une fois que le finisseur a été installé, la section de commande est fixée et il est impossible de régler l'angle.

2. Ouvrir le couvercle de transfert gauche et le couvercle avant.

1. Tira de la palanca hacia el lado delantero para que suba la sección de funcionamiento y asegure utilizando el pasador de fijación de la sección de funcionamiento (M).

#### Nota

Después de instalar el finalizador, la sección de funcionamiento queda fijada y no puede ajustar el ángulo.

2. Abra la cubierta de transferencia izquierda y la cubierta frontal.

1. Den Hebel zur Vorderseite ziehen, um den Bedienteil anzuheben, und diesen mit dem Bedienteil-Sicherungsstift (M) sichern.

#### Hinweis

Nach der Installation des Fixierers wird der Bedienteil gesichert, und der Winkel kann nicht mehr verändert werden.

2. Die linke Transferabdeckung und die Frontabdeckung öffnen.

1. Tirare la leva verso il lato frontale per sollevare la sezione di comando, e fissarla usando il perno di fissaggio della sezione di comando (M).

#### Nota

Dopo che avete installato il finitore, la sezione di comando è stata assicurata e l'angolo non può essere regolato.

2. Aprite il coperchio di trasferimento sinistro e quindi il coperchio frontale.

1. 将把柄向跟前拉, 使操作部推向上方, 然后用操作部固定卡销 (M) 进行固定。

#### 注意

装订器被安装后, 操作部将被固定, 不能进行角度调整。

2. 打开输送左盖板和前盖板。

1. レバーを手前に引いて、操作部を上方向に持ち上げ、操作部固定ピン (M) で固定する。

#### 注意

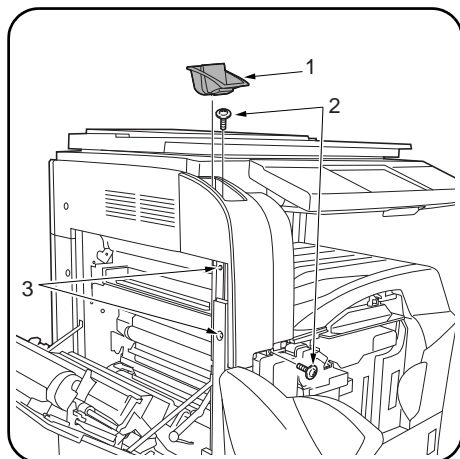
フィニッシャを取り付けると、操作部は固定となり、角度調整はできません。

2. 搬送左カバーおよび前カバーを開ける。

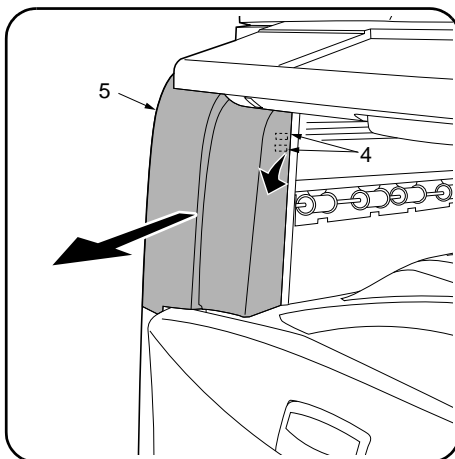


#### 【注意事項】

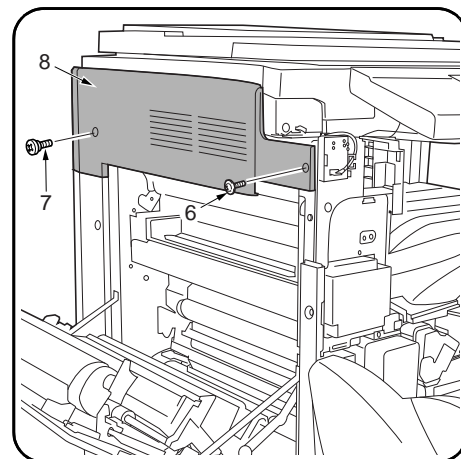
搬送ユニット (A) を床等に置く場合には、必ず裏返しにした状態で置く。そのまま置くとステープラ取付板が変形し、不具合の原因となる。



3. Remove the staple holder (1), remove the two screws (2) from the upper side and the front side, and loosen the two screws (3) on the left side.



4. Open the hook (4) on the right side and remove the left front cover (5).



5. Remove the screw (6) and the pin (7) to remove the upper left cover (8).

3. Retirer le support d'agrafes (1), retirer les deux vis (2) du côté supérieur et du côté avant, et desserrer les deux vis (3) du côté gauche.

4. Ouvrir le crochet (4) se trouvant sur le côté droit et retirer le couvercle avant gauche (5).

5. Retirer la vis (6) et la broche (7) pour enlever le couvercle supérieur gauche (8).

3. Desmonte el soporte de grapas (1), saque los dos tornillos (2) del lado superior y el lado delantero y afloje los dos tornillos (3) en el lado izquierdo.

4. Abra el gancho (4) en el lado derecho y desmonte la cubierta delantera izquierda (5).

5. Quite el tornillo (6) y el pasador (7) para desmontar la cubierta superior izquierda (8).

3. Den Heftklammerhalter (1) entfernen, die zwei Schrauben (2) an der Ober- und Vorderseite herausdrehen, und die zwei Schrauben (3) auf der linken Seite lösen.

4. Den Haken (4) auf der rechten Seite öffnen, und die linke Frontabdeckung (5) abnehmen.

5. Die Schraube (6) und den Stift (7) entfernen, um die obere linke Abdeckung (8) abzunehmen.

3. Rimuovete il vassoio graffette (1), rimuovete le due viti (2) dal lato superiore e dal lato frontale e allentate le due viti (3) sul lato sinistro.

4. Aprite il gancio (4) che si trova sul lato destro e rimuovete il coperchio frontale sinistro (5).

5. Rimuovere la vite (6) e il perno (7) per rimuovere il coperchio superiore sinistro (8).

3. 拆下装书钉盒(1), 卸下上侧和前侧的2个螺丝(2), 接着松开2个左侧螺丝(3)。

4. 打开右侧支架部(4), 取下左前盖板(5)。

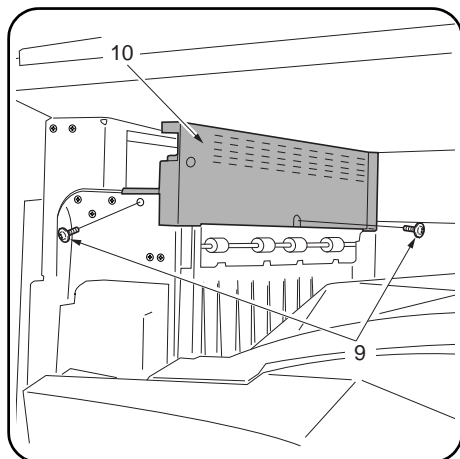
5. 拆下1个螺丝(6)和1个卡销(7)后, 取下左上盖板(8)。

**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

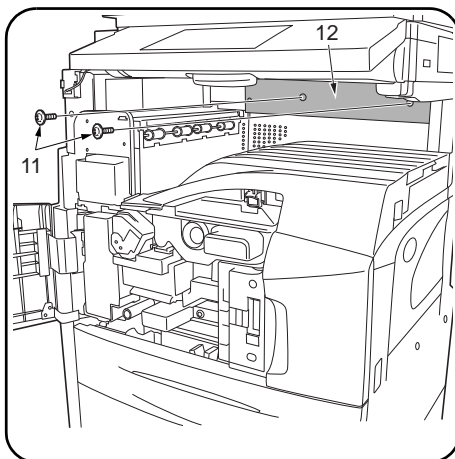
3. Стейплерхолдер (1) を取り外し、上側と前側のビス (2) 2本を外して、左側のビス (3) 2本をゆるめる。

4. 右側の引っ掛け部 (4) を開いて左前カバー (5) を取り外す。

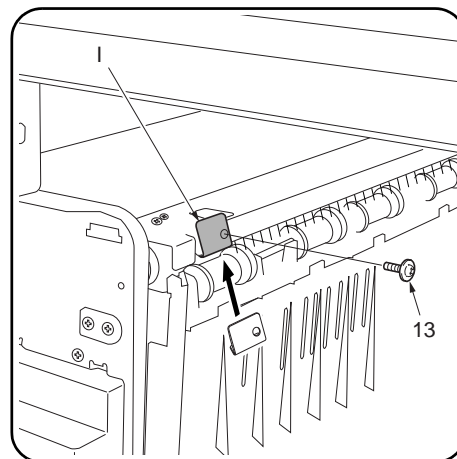
5. ビス (6) 1本およびピン (7) 1本を外して左上カバー (8) を取り外す。



6. Remove the two screws (9) and then remove the ejection cover (10) with the mounting plate.



7. Remove the two screws (11) and then remove the inner ejection cover (12).



8. Remove the screw (13) located at the front of the static charge eliminator of the MFP, fit the flat spring ejection (I) from the lower side, and secure it with the removed screw (13).

6. Enlever les deux vis (9), puis enlever le couvercle d'éjection (10) avec la plaque de montage.

7. Enlever les deux vis (11), puis enlever le couvercle d'éjection interne (12).

8. Retirer la vis (13) située à l'avant du dispositif d'élimination de charge statique du MFP, mettre en place le dispositif d'éjection à ressort plat (I) par le côté inférieur, puis le fixer à l'aide de la vis retirée (13).

6. Saque los dos tornillos (9) y desmonte la cubierta de expulsión (10) con la placa de montaje.

7. Saque los dos tornillos (11) y desmonte la cubierta de expulsión interior (12).

8. Quite el tornillo (13) ubicado en el frente del eliminador de carga estática del MFP, encaje la expulsión por resorte plano (I) del lado inferior y asegúrelo con el tornillo quitado (13).

6. Die zwei Schrauben (9) entfernen, und dann die Auswurfabdeckung (10) mit der Montageplatte abnehmen.

7. Die zwei Schrauben (11) entfernen, und dann die innere Auswurfabdeckung (12) abnehmen.

8. Die Schraube (13) an der Vorderseite des Entstörers für statische Aufladung des MFP entfernen, dann den Blattfederauswurf (I) von der Unterseite einpassen und mit der entfernten Schraube (13) befestigen.

6. Rimuovete ora le due viti (9) e quindi il coperchio di espulsione (10) con la piastra di montaggio.

7. Rimuovete le due viti (11) e quindi il coperchio interno di espulsione (12).

8. Rimuovere la vite (13) situata nella parte frontale dell'eliminatore di cariche statiche dell'MFP, montare la molla piatta a espulsione (I) nel lato inferiore e fissarla con la vite rimossa (13).

6. 卸下 2 个螺丝 (9)，然后将出纸盖板 (10) 的整个安装板拆下。

7. 卸下 2 个螺丝 (11)，然后拆下出纸内盖板 (12)。

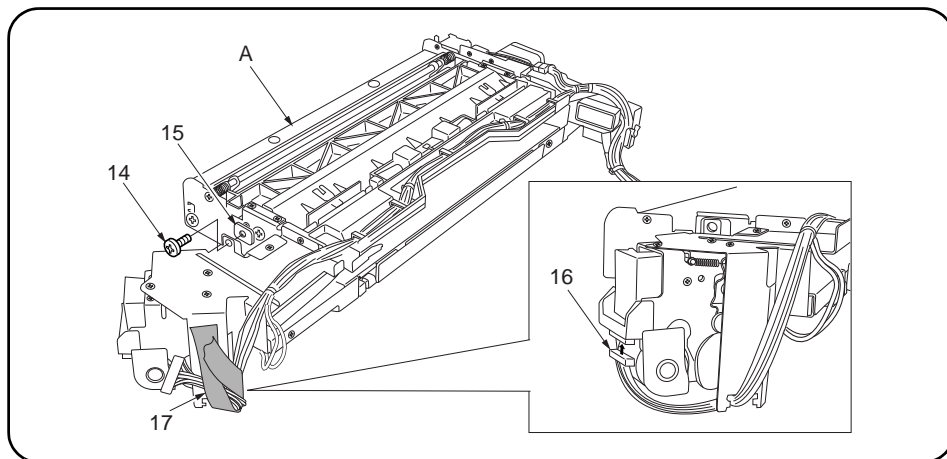
8. 拆下本体上除静电器前的 1 个固定螺丝 (13) 后，从下面嵌入出纸板簧 (I)，并用拆下的 1 个螺丝 (13) 加以固定。



6. ビス (9) 2 本を外し、排出カバー (10) を取付板ごと取り外す。

7. ビス (11) 2 本を外し、排出内カバー (12) を取り外す。

8. 本体の除電器手前の固定ビス (13) 1 本を取り外し、板パネ排出 (I) を下からはめ込み、取り外したビス (13) 1 本で取り付ける。



9. Remove the blue screw (14) from the transfer unit (A) and then remove the securing plate (15).
10. Remove the securing tape (17) from the 13-pin connector (16), pass the wire under the stapler motor, and connect the wire with the 13-pin connector (16).

- 
9. Retirer la vis bleue (14) de l'unité de transfert (A) puis enlever la plaque de fixation (15).
  10. Retirer la bande de fixation (17) du connecteur à treize broches (16), passer le fil au-dessous du moteur de l'agrafeuse, et connecter le fil à l'aide du connecteur à treize broches (16).

- 
9. Quite el tornillo azul (14) de la unidad de transferencia (A) y desmonte la placa de fijación (15).
  10. Despegue la cinta de fijación (17) del conector de 13 pasadores (16), pase el cable por debajo del motor del grapador y conecte el cable con el conector de 13 pasadores (16).

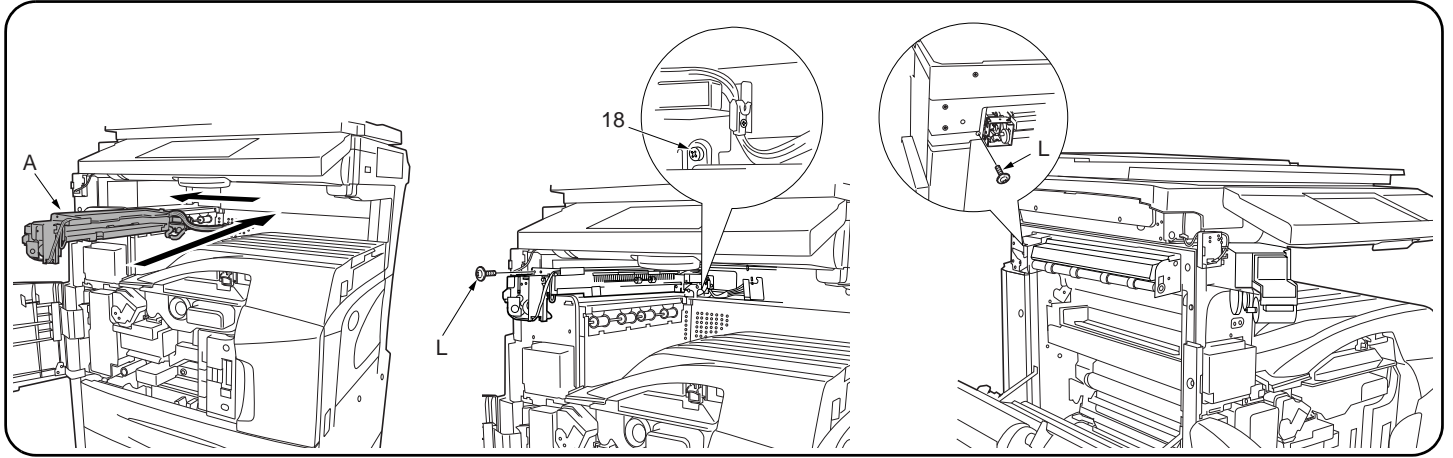
- 
9. Die blaue Schraube (14) von der Transfereinheit (A) entfernen, und dann die Halteplatte (15) abnehmen.
  10. Das Sicherungsband (17) vom 13-poligen Steckverbinder (16) entfernen, dann das Kabel unter dem Heftermotor hindurchführen und an den 13-poligen Steckverbinder (16) anschließen.

- 
9. Rimuovete la vite blu (14) dall'unità di trasferimento (A) e poi rimuovete la piastra di fissaggio (15).
  10. Rimuovere il nastri di sicurezza (17) dal connettore a 13 pin (16), far passare il filo sotto il motore della pinzatrice e collegare il filo con il connettore a 13 pin (16).

- 
9. 拆下输送组件 (A) 的 1 个蓝色螺丝 (14) 后, 取下固定板 (15)。
  10. 揭下 13 脚插头 (16) 的 1 条固定胶带 (17) 后, 将电线穿过装订器马达下面连接 13 脚插头 (16)。

**TONER**

- 
9. 搬送ユニット (A) の青ビス (14) 1 本を外して固定板 (15) を取り外す。
  10. 13P コネクタ (16) の固定テープ (17) 1 本を取り外し、ステープルモータの下に電線を通して 13P コネクタ (16) を接続する。



11. Insert the transfer unit (A) into the MFP from the front side and slide it to the left.  
Secure the unit using two TP screws M3 × 05 (L) and the pin (18) that has been fitted to the transfer unit (A).

11. Insérer l'unité de transfert (A) dans le MFP depuis l'avant et le faire glisser vers la gauche.  
Fixer l'unité avec deux vis TP M3 × 05 (L) et la goupille (18) qui a été ajustée dans l'unité de transfert (A).

11. Inserte la unidad de transferencia (A) en el MFP desde el lado delantero y deslice hacia la izquierda.  
Asegure la unidad utilizando dos tornillos TP M3 × 05 (L) y el pasador (18) colocado en la unidad de transferencia (A).

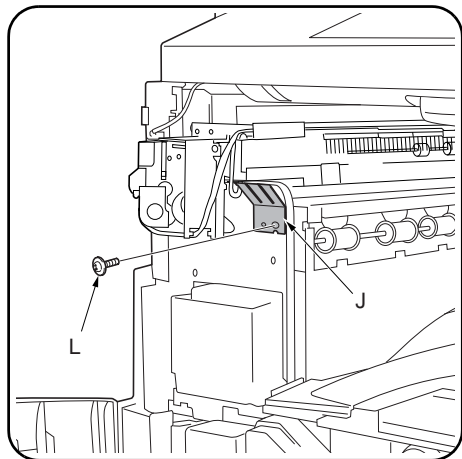
11. Die Transfereinheit (A) von vorn in den MFP einführen und nach links schieben.  
Die Einheit mit zwei TP-Schrauben M3 × 05 (L) und dem an der Transfereinheit (A) angebrachten Stift (18) sichern.

11. Inserite nell'MFP l'unità di trasferimento (A) dal lato frontale e quindi fatela scorrere a sinistra.  
Fissate l'unità usando due viti TP M3 × 05 (L) e il perno (18) che avete inserito nell'unità di trasferimento (A).

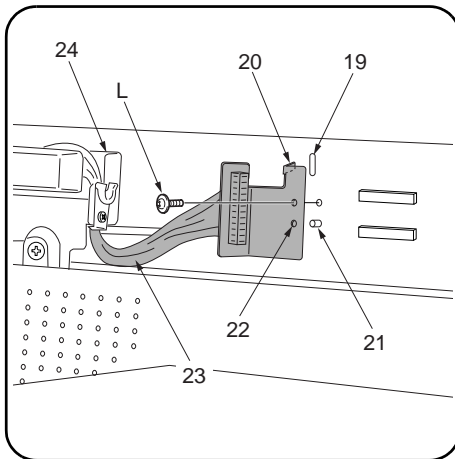
11. 从 MFP 主机的前面插入输送组件 (A)，并向左侧滑动。  
用 2 个螺丝 M3 × 05TP (L) 和安装在输送组件 (A) 上的 1 个卡销 (18) 进行固定。

**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

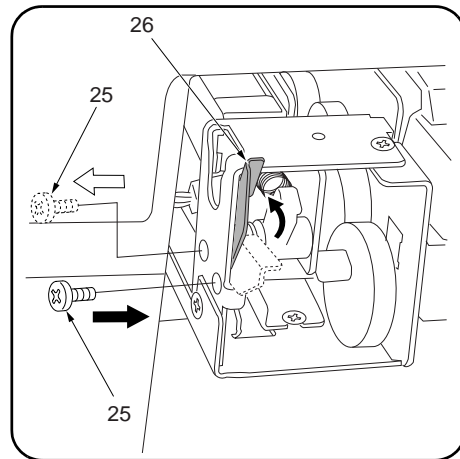
11. 搬送ユニット (A) を MFP 本体の機械前側より挿入し、左側にスライドする。  
ビス M3 × 05TP (L) 2 本と搬送ユニット (A) に取り付けられているピン (18) 1 本で固定する。



**12.** Fit the ground plate (J) using a TP screw M3 × 05 (L).



**13.** Fit the hook (20) and the hole (22) of the transfer unit (A) to the oblong hole (19) and the projection (21) of the frame of the MFP and secure the unit using a TP screw M3 × 05 (L).  
Arrange the cable (23) to position it under the metal fittings (24) .



**14.** Remove the screw (25) from the left rear side of the MFP, turn the lever (26) upward, and fit the screw (25) again to the lower hole.

**12.** Placer la plaque de masse (J) à l'aide d'une vis TP M3 × 05 (L).

**13.** Placer le crochet (20) et l'orifice (22) de l'unité de transfert (A) dans l'orifice oblong (19) et dans la saillie (21) du cadre du MFP, et fixer l'unité à l'aide d'une vis TP M3 × 05 (L).  
Arranger le câble (23) pour le mettre en place au-dessous des garnitures en métal (24) .

**14.** Enlever la vis (25) du côté arrière gauche du MFP, tourner le levier (26) vers le haut, et replacer la vis (25) dans l'orifice inférieur.

**12.** Encaje la placa de tierra (J) utilizando un tornillo TP M3 × 05 (L).

**13.** Encaje el gancho (20) y el orificio (22) de la unidad de transferencia (A) al orificio alargado (19) y la saliente (21) del armazón del MFP y asegure la unidad utilizando un tornillo TP M3 × 05 (L).  
Instale el cable (23) para ubicarlos debajo de los herrajes de metal (24).

**14.** Saque el tornillo (25) del lado trasero del MFP, mueva la palanca (26) hacia arriba, y fije el tornillo (25) de nuevo en el orificio inferior.

**12.** Die Grundplatte (J) mit einer TP-Schraube M3 × 05 (L) befestigen.

**13.** Den Haken (20) und das Loch (22) der Transfereinheit (A) in das Langloch (19) und den Vorsprung (21) des MFP-Rahmens einpassen, und die Einheit mit einer TP-Schraube M3 × 05 (L) sichern.  
Das Kabel (23) unter den Metallbeschlägen (24) hindurchführen.

**14.** Die Schraube (25) von der linken Rückseite des MFP entfernen, den Hebel (26) nach oben drehen, und die Schraube (25) wieder in das untere Loch einpassen.

**12.** Montate la piastra di terra (J) usando una vite TP M3 × 05 (L).

**13.** Inserite il gancio (20) e il foro (22) dell'unità di trasferimento (A) nel foro oblungo (19) e nella sporgenza (21) del telaio dell'MFP e assicurate l'unità usando una vite TP M3 × 05 (L).  
Disponete il cavo (23) in modo da farlo scorrere al di sotto del supporto metallico (24).

**14.** Rimuovete la vite (25) dal lato posteriore sinistro dell'MFP, girate la leva (26) verso l'alto e inserite di nuovo la vite (25) nel foro inferiore.

**12.** 用 1 个螺丝 M3 × 05TP (L) 装上地线板 (J)。

**13.** 将输送组件 (A) 的挂钩 (20) 和孔 (22) 对准 MFP 主机机架的长孔 (19) 和突起部 (21) 进行安装, 并用 1 个螺丝 M3 × 05TP (L) 进行固定。  
应使电线 (23) 配置在金属件 (24) 的下侧。

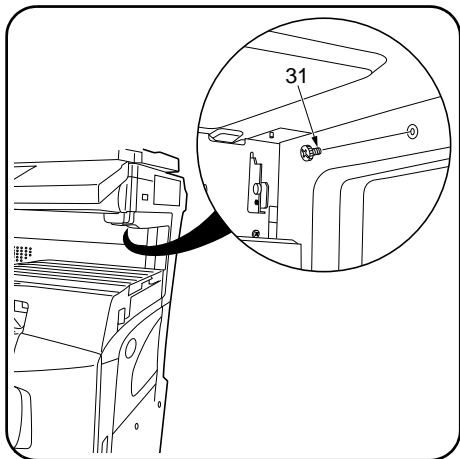
**14.** 拆下 MFP 主机左后侧的 1 个螺丝 (25), 将把柄 (26) 向上方转动, 再用螺丝 (25) 固定在下侧孔。

**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

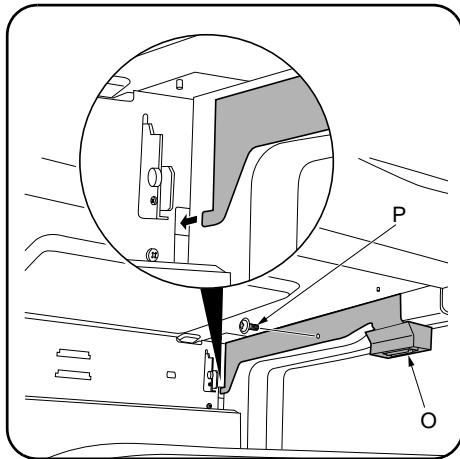
**12.** アース板 (J) をビス M3 × 05TP (L) 1 本で取り付ける。

**13.** 搬送ユニット (A) のフック (20) と穴 (22) を MFP 本体フレームの長穴 (19) と突起部 (21) に合わせて取り付け、ビス M3 × 05TP (L) 1 本で固定する。  
電線 (23) が金具 (24) の下側になるように配線する。

**14.** MFP 本体左後側のビス (25) 1 本を取り外し、レバー (26) を上方向に回転させ、下側の穴に再度ビス (25) を取り付け。



15. Remove the pin (31).



16. Position the magnet assembly (O) and secure it with the TP screw M3 × 10 (P).

15. Retirer la goupille (31).

16. Mettre en place l'ensemble d'aimant (O) et le fixer à l'aide de la vis TP M3 × 10 (P).

15. Retire el pasador (31).

16. Instale el conjunto del imán (O) y asegúrelo con el tornillo TP M3 × 10 (P).

15. Den Stift (31) entfernen.

16. Die Magneteinheit (O) anbringen und mit der TP-Schraube M3 × 10 (P) befestigen.

15. Rimuovete il perno (31).

16. Collocate l'unità magnete (O) e fissatela con la vite TP M3 × 10 (P).

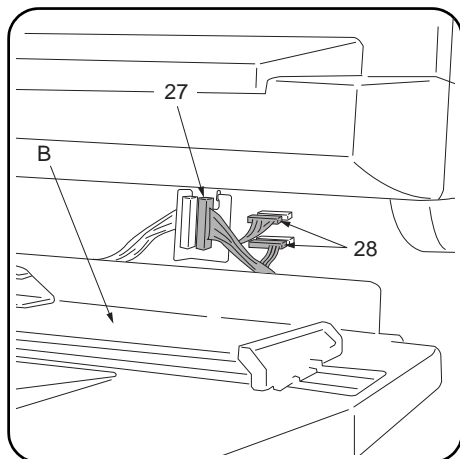
15. 拆开卡销 (31)。

16. 安装磁铁组件 (O)，用螺丝 M3 × 10TP (P) 固定。

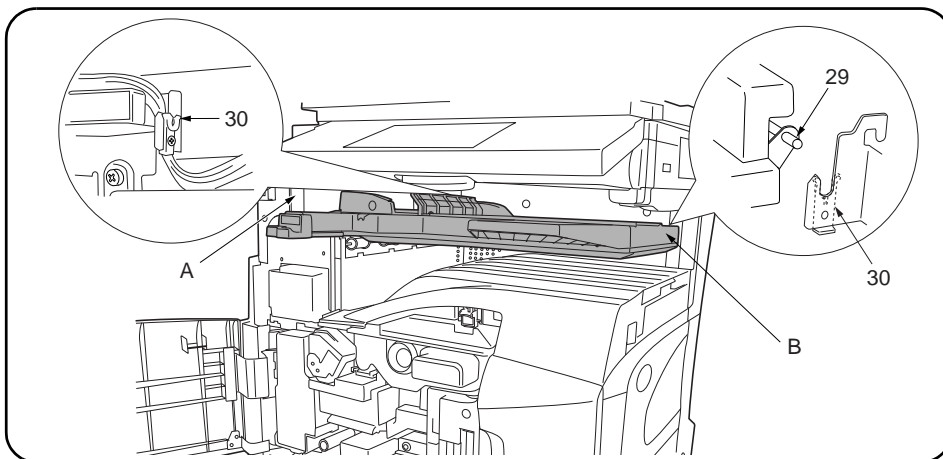


15. ピン(31)を取り外す。

16. 組立マグネット(O)を取り付け、ビス M3 × 10TP(P)で固定する。



- 17.** Insert the intermediate tray (B) and connect the connector (white) (27) of the intermediate tray (B) to the transfer unit. Connect the connectors (gray) (28) to the connectors of the MFP as shown in the illustration.  
Connect the gray connector (28) with more pins to the upper connector and the gray connector (28) with less pins to the lower connector.



- 18.** Hang the right and left pins (29) of the intermediate tray (B) on the recessed portions (30) of the MFP and the transfer unit (A).  
Raise the intermediate tray (B) and set it as shown in the illustration.

- 17.** Insérer le plateau intermédiaire (B) et connecter le connecteur (blanc) (27) du plateau intermédiaire (B) à l'unité de transfert. Connecter les connecteurs (gris) (28) aux connecteurs du MFP comme montré dans l'illustration.  
Connecter le connecteur (gris) (28) avec le plus grand nombre de broches au connecteur supérieur et le connecteur (gris) (28) avec le plus petit nombre de broches au connecteur inférieur.

- 18.** Accrocher les goupilles droite et gauche (29) du plateau intermédiaire (B) sur les parties en retrait (30) du MFP et de l'unité de transfert (A).  
Elever le plateau intermédiaire (B) et le placer comme indiqué sur l'illustration.

- 17.** Inserte la bandeja intermediaria (B) y conecte el conector (blanco) (27) de la bandeja intermediaria (B) en la unidad de transferencia. Conecte los conectores (grises) (28) en los conectores del MFP tal como aparece en las figuras.  
Conecte el conector (gris) (28) con más patillas en el conector superior y el conector (gris) (28) con menos patillas en el conector inferior.

- 18.** Cuelgue los pasadores derecho e izquierdo (29) de la bandeja intermediaria (B) en las partes entradas (30) del MFP y la unidad de transferencia (A).  
Suba la bandeja intermediaria (B) y fije tal como aparece en la figura.

- 17.** Die Zwischenablage (B) einführen, und den Steckverbinder (weiß) (27) der Zwischenablage (B) an die Transfereinheit anschließen. Die Steckverbinder (grau) (28) an die Steckverbinder des MFP anschließen, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.  
Schließen Sie den Steckverbinder (grau) (28) mit mehr Stiften an den oberen Steckverbinder, und den Steckverbinder (grau) (28) mit weniger Stiften an den unteren Steckverbinder an.

- 18.** Den rechten und linken Stift (29) der Zwischenablage (B) in die Aussparungen (30) des MFP und der Transfereinheit (A) einhängen.  
Die Zwischenablage (B) anheben und gemäß der Abbildung einstellen.

- 17.** Inserite il vassoio intermedio (B) e collegatene il connettore (bianco) (27) all'unità di trasferimento. Quindi collegate i connettori (grigio) (28) ai connettori dell'MFP, come illustrato in figura.  
Collegate il connettore (grigio) (28) con più contatti al connettore superiore e il connettore (grigio) (28) con meno contatti al connettore inferiore.

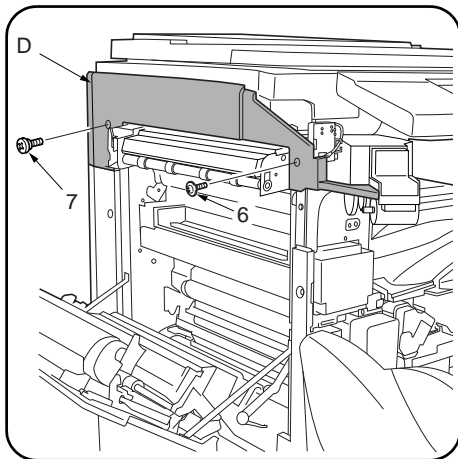
- 18.** Appendete i perni destro e sinistro (29) del vassoio intermedio (B) sulle parti rientranti (30) dell'MFP e dell'unità di trasferimento (A).  
Sollevate il vassoio intermedio (B) e regolatelo come illustrato in figura.

- 17.** 插入中间托盘 (B)，将中间托盘 (B) 的连接插头 (白) (27) 连接在输送组件的连接插座上。如图所示，将连接插头 (灰色) (28) 连接在本体的连接插座上。  
将连接插头 (灰色) (28) 的电线数多的一侧朝上，电线数少的一侧朝下进行连接。

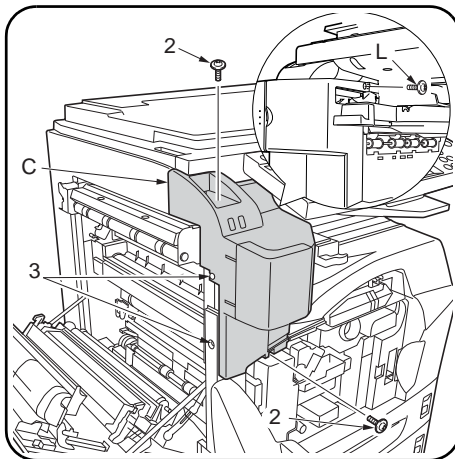
- 18.** 将中间托盘 (B) 的左右卡销 (29) 挂在本体和输送组件 (A) 的凹部 (30) 上。将中间托盘 (B) 向上提起，如图所示进行固定。

- 17.** 中間トレイ (B) を挿入し、中間トレイ (B) のコネクタ (白) (27) を搬送ユニットのコネクタに接続する。コネクタ (グレー) (28) を図のように本体のコネクタに接続する。  
コネクタ (グレー) (28) は電線数の多い方を上側に、少ない方を下側に接続する。

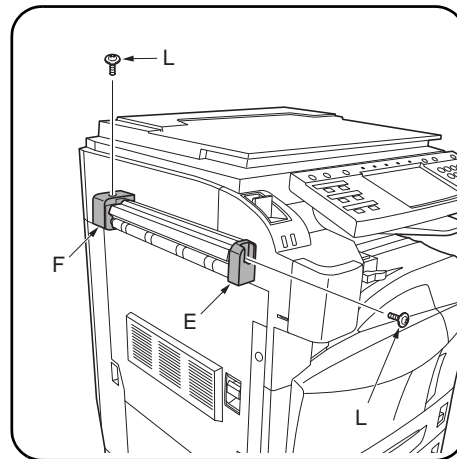
- 18.** 中間トレイ (B) の左右のピン (29) を本体および搬送ユニット (A) の凹部 (30) に引っ掛ける。  
中間トレイ (B) を持ち上げ、図のようにセットする。



**19.** Fit the large ejection cover (D) with the screw (6) that has fixed the upper left cover in step 5 and the screw (7) each.



**20.** Fit the staple cover (C) using the two screws (3) on the left side to secure and using the two screws (2) that have been removed in step 3 and a TP screw M3 × 05 (L).



**21.** Refit the staple holder that has been removed in step 3 to its original position and close the transfer left cover and the front cover.  
**22.** Attach the front ejection cover (E) and the rear ejection cover (F) using a TP screw M3 × 05 (L) each.

**19.** Fixer le grand couvercle d'éjection (D) à l'aide de la vis (6) qui fixait auparavant le couvercle supérieur gauche à l'étape 5 et la vis (7) respectivement.

**20.** Fixer le couvercle d'agrafes (C) à l'aide des deux vis (3) sur le côté gauche pour le fixer et à l'aide des deux vis (2) qui ont été enlevées dans l'étape 3 et une vis TP M3 × 05 (L).

**21.** Remettre le support d'agrafes retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 3 à sa position d'origine, et refermer le couvercle de transfert gauche et le couvercle avant.  
**22.** Fixer le couvercle d'éjection avant (E) et le couvercle d'éjection arrière (F) à l'aide d'une vis TP M3 × 05 (L).

**19.** Encaje la cubierta de expulsión grande (D) con el tornillo (6) que está fijado en la cubierta superior izquierda en el paso 5 y el tornillo (7) a cada una.

**20.** Encaje la cubierta de grapas (C) utilizando los dos tornillos (3) en el lado izquierdo para asegurar y utilizando los dos tornillos (2) que se retiraron en el paso 3 y un tornillo TP M3 × 05 (L).

**21.** Vuelva a colocar el soporte de grapas que fue desmontado en el paso 3 a su posición original y cierre la cubierta izquierda de transferencia y la cubierta delantera.  
**22.** Instale la cubierta de expulsión frontal (E) y la cubierta de expulsión trasera (F) utilizando un tornillo TP M3 × 05 (L) cada uno.

**19.** Die große Auswurfabdeckung (D) jeweils mit der Schraube (6), die in Schritt 5 an der oberen linken Abdeckung angebracht wurde, und der Schraube (7) befestigen.

**20.** Die Hefterabdeckung (C) zur Sicherung mit den zwei Schrauben (3) auf der linken Seite sowie mit den in Schritt 3 entfernten zwei Schrauben (2) und einer TP-Schraube M3 × 05 (L) befestigen.

**21.** Den in Schritt 3 entfernten Heftklammerhalter wieder an seiner ursprünglichen Stelle anbringen, und dann die linke Transferabdeckung und die Frontabdeckung schließen.  
**22.** Die vordere Auswurfabdeckung (E) und die hintere Auswurfabdeckung (F) mit je einer TP-Schraube M3 × 05 (L) befestigen.

**19.** Montate il coperchio grande di espulsione carta (D) con la vite (6) che fissa il coperchio superiore sinistro nel passo 5 e con una vite (7) per ciascuno.

**20.** Montate il coperchio della graffatrice (C) usando le due viti (3) sul lato sinistro per fissare e le due viti (2) che sono state rimosse nel passo 3 e una vite TP M3 × 05 (L).

**21.** Vuelva a colocar el soporte de grapas que fue desmontado en el paso 3 a su posición original y cierre la cubierta izquierda de transferencia y la cubierta delantera.  
**22.** Utilizzando una vite TP M3 × 05 (L) ciascuno, montate il coperchio frontale di espulsione carta (E) ed il coperchio posteriore di espulsione carta (F).

**19.** 用步骤 5 固定的左上盖板的螺丝 (6) 和卡销 (7) 各 1 个, 装上出纸盖板 (大) (D)。

**20.** 用左侧的 2 个螺丝 (3) 固定装订钉盖板 (C), 并用步骤 3 拆下的 2 个螺丝 (2) 和 1 个螺丝 M3 × 05TP (L) 进行固定。

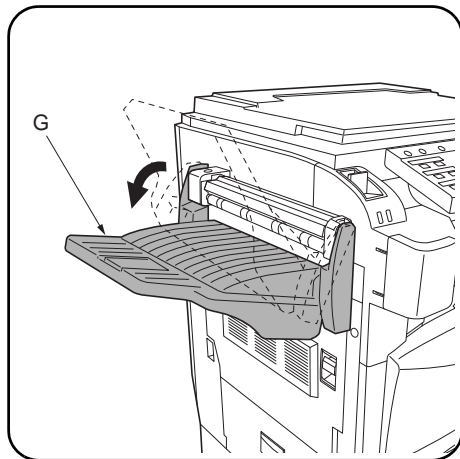
**21.** 按原样装好在步骤 3 卸下的装订钉盒, 关闭输送左盖板和前盖板。  
**22.** 分别用 1 个螺丝 M3 × 05TP (L) 装上出纸盖板 (前) (E) 和出纸盖板 (后) (F)。

**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

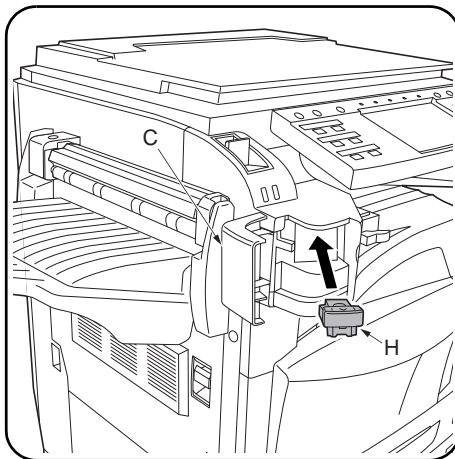
**19.** 手順 5 で左上カバーを固定していたビス (6) およびピン (7) 各 1 本で、排出カバー大 (D) を取り付ける。

**20.** ステープルカバー (C) を左側のビス (3) 2 本で固定し、手順 3 で外したビス (2) 2 本とビス M3 × 05TP (L) 1 本で取り付ける。

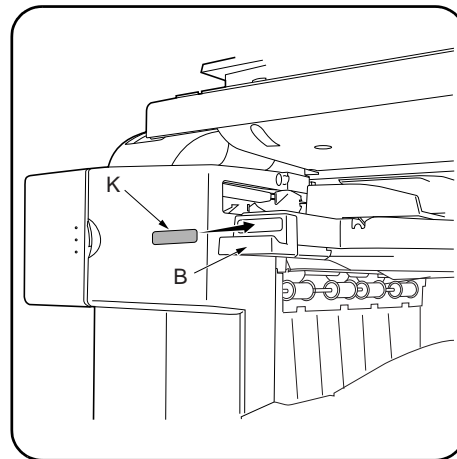
**21.** 手順 3 で取り外したステープルホルダを元どおり取り付け、搬送左カバーおよび前カバーを閉める。  
**22.** 排出カバー前 (E) および排出カバー後 (F) をビス M3 × 05TP (L) 各 1 本で取り付け。



23. Attach the copy tray (G).



24. Open the staple cover (C) and insert the staple cartridge (H) into the stapler.  
25. Close the staple cover (C).



26. After cleaning with alcohol, attach the Pull label (K) written in the adequate language onto the label on the intermediate tray (B) as required.

23. Fixer le plateau à copies (G).

24. Ouvrir le couvercle d'agrafes (C) et insérer la cartouche d'agrafes (H) dans l'agrafeuse.  
25. Refermer le couvercle d'agrafes (C).

26. Après avoir nettoyé avec de l'alcool, fixer l'étiquette Tirez (K) écrite dans la langue adéquate sur l'étiquette sur le plateau intermédiaire (B) comme nécessaire.

23. Instale la bandeja de copias (G).

24. Abra la cubierta de grapas (C) e inserte el cartucho de grapas (H) en el grapador.  
25. Cierre la cubierta de grapas (C).

26. Después de limpiar con alcohol, pegue la etiqueta de tiro (K) escrito en el idioma adecuado en la etiqueta en la bandeja intermedia (B) según sea necesario.

23. Die Kopienablage (G) anbringen.

24. Die Hefterabdeckung (C) öffnen, und die Heftklammerpatrone (H) in den Hefter einsetzen.  
25. Die Hefterabdeckung (C) schließen.

26. Je nach Bedarf den Abziehaufkleber (K) der entsprechenden Sprache nach der Reinigung mit Alkohol auf den Aufkleber an der Zwischenablage (B) anbringen.

23. Montate il vassoio delle copie (G).

24. Aprire il coperchio della graffatrice (C) e inserire la cartuccia della graffatrice (H).  
25. Chiudere il coperchio della graffatrice (C).

26. Dopo che avete pulito con alcol, fissate l'etichetta staccabile (K) scritta nella lingua appropriata sull'etichetta del vassoio intermedio (B) come richiesto.

23. 装上出纸托盘 (G)。

24. 打开装订盖板 (C) 后, 装订书钉盒 (H) 插入装订器里。  
25. 关上装订盖板 (C)。

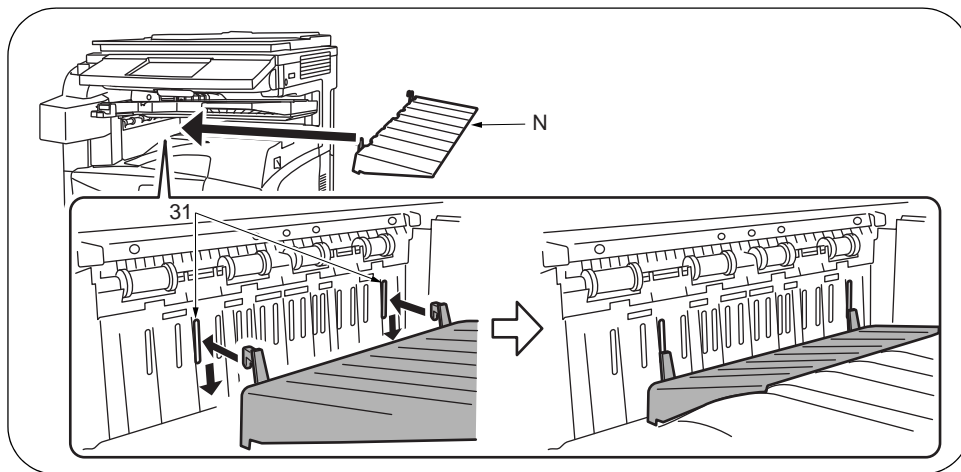
26. 根据需要, 用酒精将中间托盘 (B) 的标签处擦净后, 贴上使用语言的 PULL 标签 (K)。



23. 排出トレイ (G) を取り付ける。

24. ステープルカバー (C) を開き、ステープルカートリッジ (H) をステープルに挿入する。  
25. ステープルカバー (C) を開める。

26. 必要に応じて、中間トレイ (B) のラベルの上に、アルコール清掃後言語に合った PULL ラベル (K) を貼り付ける。



27. Insert the two hooks of the sub tray (N) into the two slits (31) of the MFP eject section to attach the sub tray.

#### Operation check

1. Insert the power plug of the MFP into an outlet and turn the main switch on.
2. Select the staple mode and make a stapled copy to check that stapling is performed properly.

27. Insérer les deux crochets du plateau secondaire (N) dans les deux fentes (31) de la section d'éjection du MFP pour fixer le plateau secondaire.

#### Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans une prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Sélectionner le mode d'agrafeuse et effectuer une copie agrafée pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'agrafeuse.

27. Inserte los dos ganchos en la bandeja secundaria (N) en las dos ranuras (31) en la sección de expulsión de MFP para instalar la bandeja secundaria.

#### Verificación del funcionamiento

1. Enchufe el cable eléctrico del MFP en un tomacorriente y conecte el interruptor principal.
2. Seleccione el modo de grapas y haga una copia grapada para comprobar que el grapado se hace correctamente.

27. Die zwei Haken der Hilfsablage (N) in die zwei Schlitz (31) des MFP-Auswerfabchnitts einführen, um die Hilfsablage anzubringen.

#### Betriebsprüfung

1. Den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Netzsteckdose einstecken, und den Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Den Heftmodus wählen und eine geheftete Kopie anfertigen, um zu prüfen, ob die Heftung korrekt durchgeführt wird.

27. Inserite i due ganci del sottovassoio (N) nelle due fessure (31) della sezione di espulsione dell'MFP per montare il sottovassoio.

#### Verifica di funzionamento

1. Inserite il cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa di rete e quindi accendetela.
2. Selezionate il modo graffatrice e quindi eseguite una copia graffata, in modo da verificare che la graffatrice funzioni correttamente.

27. 将辅助托盘 (N) 上的挂钩 (2 处) 挂在 MFP 本体出纸部的 2 处切口 (31) 上。

#### [ 确认操作情况 ]

1. 将 MFP 主机的电源插头插入插座后, 接通主电源开关。
2. 选择装订模式后, 进行装订复印, 确认是否可以装订。

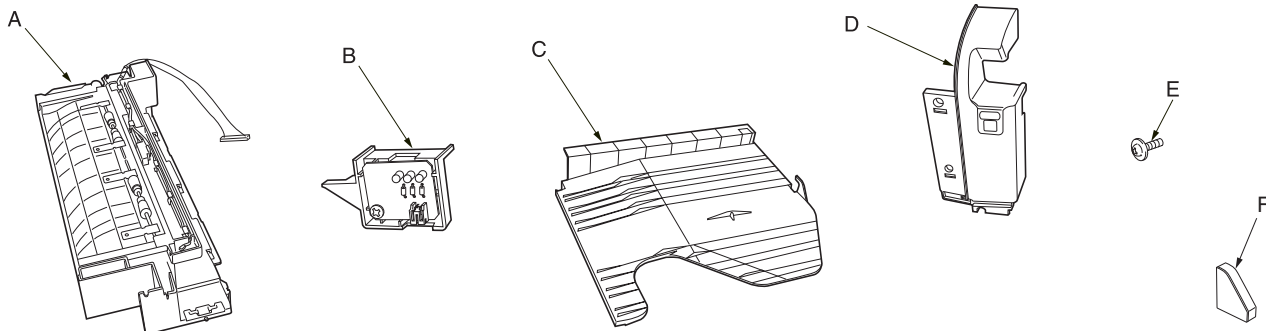


27. サブトレイ (N) のフック部 2 箇所を MFP 本体排出部のスリット (31) 2 箇所に引っ掛けて取り付ける。

#### [動作確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. ステープルモードを選択して、ステープルコピーを行い、ステープルされるか確認する。

# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR JOB SEPARATOR



## English

### Supplied part

A Job separator.....	1
B LED PWB .....	1
C Job separator tray.....	1
D Left front cover JS.....	1

E TP screw M3 x 05.....	1
F Eject stopper A3.....	1

### Precautions

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

### Procedure

When installing a job separator, be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet.

## Français

### Pièce fournie

A Séparateur de travaux .....	1
B LED PWB .....	1
C Plateau du séparateur de travaux .....	1
D Couverture avant gauche JS.....	1

E Vis TP M3 x 05 .....	1
F Butée d'éjection A3.....	1

### Précautions

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

### Procédure

Lors de l'installation d'un séparateur de travaux, veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale.

## Español

### Parte provista

A Separador de trabajos .....	1
B PWB en LED .....	1
C Bandeja del separador de trabajos.....	1
D Cubierta delantera izquierda JS .....	1

E Tornillo TP M3 x 05.....	1
F Tope de expulsión de A3 .....	1

### Precauciones

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

### Procedimiento

Cuando se instala un separador de trabajos, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal del MFP y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

## Deutsch

### Gelieferte Teile

A Jobtrenner .....	1
B LED-Leiterplatte.....	1
C Jobtrennerablage.....	1
D Linke Frontabdeckung JS.....	1

E TP-Schraube M3 x 05 .....	1
F Auswerfanschlag A3.....	1

### Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

### Vorgang

Schalten Sie vor der Installation des Jobtrenners unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab.

## Italiano

### Parte fornita

A Separatore .....	1
B Scheda LED .....	1
C Vassoio del separatore .....	1
D Coperchio frontale sinistro JS.....	1

E Vite TP M3 x 05.....	1
F Fermo di espulsione A3.....	1

### Precauzioni

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

### Procedura

Al momento dell'installazione del separatore, assicuratevi innanzitutto di spegnere l'MFP e scollegare il cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di rete.

## 简体中文

### 附属品

A 作业分离器.....	1
B LED 电路板.....	1
C 作业分离器出纸托盘.....	1
D 左前盖板 JS.....	1

E 螺丝 M3 x 05TP.....	1
F 出纸挡块 A3.....	1

### 注意事项

如果附属品上带有固定胶带,缓冲材料时务必揭下。

### [ 安装步骤 ]

安装作业分离器时,必须先切断 MFP 主机的主电源开关,并拔下 MFP 主机上的电源插头后,再进行安装作业。

www.tonerplus.com.ua

## 日本語

### 付属品

A ジョブセパレータ .....	1
B LED 基板 .....	1
C ジョブセパレータ排出トレイ .....	1
D 左前カバー JS.....	1

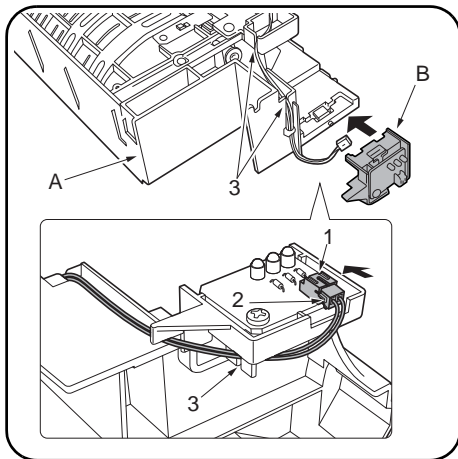
E ビス M3 x 05TP .....	1
F 排出ストップバ A3 .....	1

### 注意事項

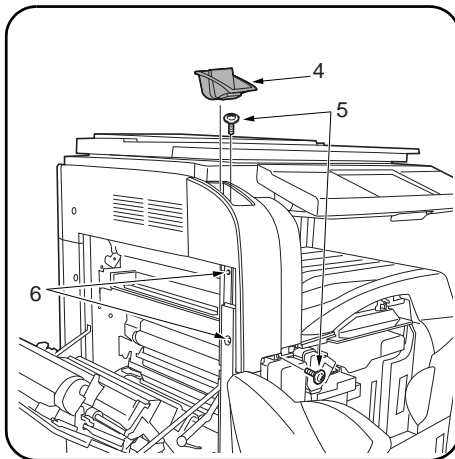
同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

### [ 取付手順 ]

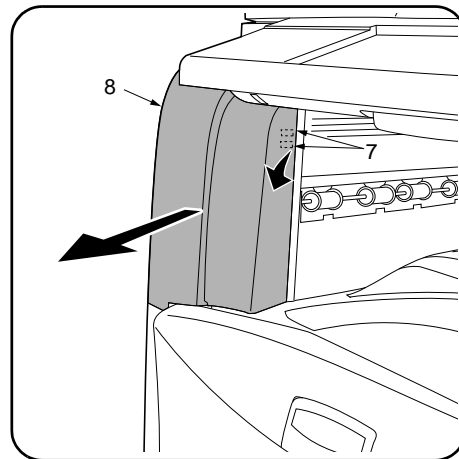
ジョブセパレータを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを外して作業を行うこと。



1. Insert the LED PWB (B) into the job separator (A).  
Connect the 2-pin connector (2) of the job separator (A) into the 2-pin connector (1) of the LED PWB (B) by arranging the wire into the three grooves (3) of the job separator (A).



2. Open the left transfer cover and the front cover.
3. Remove the staple holder (4), remove the two screws (5) from the upper side and the front side, and loosen the two screws (6) on the left side.



4. Open the hook (7) on the right side and remove the left front cover (8).

1. Insérer le LED PWB (B) dans le séparateur de travaux (A).  
Brancher le connecteur à deux broches (2) du séparateur de travaux (A) dans le connecteur à deux broches (1) du LED PWB (B) en plaçant le fil dans les trois rainures (3) du séparateur de travaux (A).

2. Ouvrir le couvercle de transfert gauche et le couvercle avant.
3. Retirer le support d'agrafes (4), retirer les deux vis (5) du côté supérieur et du côté avant, et desserrer les deux vis (6) du côté gauche.

4. Ouvrir le crochet (7) se trouvant sur le côté droit et retirer le couvercle avant gauche (8).

1. Inserte el PWB en LED (B) en el separador de trabajos (A).  
Conecte el conector de 2 patillas (2) del separador de trabajos (A) en el conector de 2 patillas (1) del PWB en LED (B) colocando el cable en las tres ranuras (3) del separador de trabajos (A).

2. Abra la cubierta de transferencia izquierda y la cubierta frontal.
3. Desmonte el soporte de grapas (4), saque los dos tornillos (5) del lado superior y el lado delantero y afloje los dos tornillos (6) en el lado izquierdo.

4. Abra el gancho (7) en el lado derecho y desmonte la cubierta delantera izquierda (8).

1. Die LED-Leiterplatte (B) in den Jobtrenner (A) einführen.  
Den 2-poligen Steckverbinder (2) des Jobtrenners (A) mit dem 2-poligen Steckverbinder (1) der LED-Leiterplatte (B) verbinden, indem das Kabel in den drei Nuten (3) des Jobtrenners (A) angeordnet wird.

2. Die linke Transferabdeckung und die Frontabdeckung öffnen.
3. Den Heftklammerhalter (4) entfernen, die zwei Schrauben (5) an der Ober- und Vorderseite herausdrehen, und die zwei Schrauben (6) auf der linken Seite lösen.

4. Den Haken (7) auf der rechten Seite öffnen, und die linke Frontabdeckung (8) abnehmen.

1. Inserite la scheda LED (B) nel separatore (A).  
Collegate il connettore a 2 pin (2) del separatore (A) nel connettore a 2 pin (1) della scheda LED (B) disponendo il cavo all'interno delle tre scanalature (3) del separatore (A).

2. Aprite il coperchio di trasferimento sinistro e quindi il coperchio frontale.
3. Rimuovete il vassoio graffette (4), rimuovete le due viti (5) dal lato superiore e dal lato frontale e allentate le due viti (6) sul lato sinistro.

4. Aprite il gancio (7) che si trova sul lato destro e rimuovete il coperchio frontale sinistro (8).

1. 在作业分离器 (A) 上插入 LED 印刷电路板 (B)。  
将作业分离器 (A) 的 2 脚插头 (2) 连在作业分离器的 3 处槽 (3) 电线上, 然后连接在 LED 印刷电路板 (B) 的 2 脚插头 (1) 上。

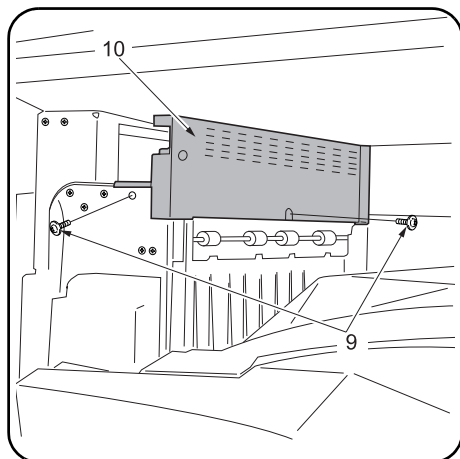
2. 打开输送左盖板和前盖板。
3. 拆下装书钉盒 (4), 卸下上侧和前侧的 2 个螺丝 (5), 接着松弛 2 个左侧螺丝 (6)。

4. 打开右侧支架部 (7), 取下左前盖板 (8)。

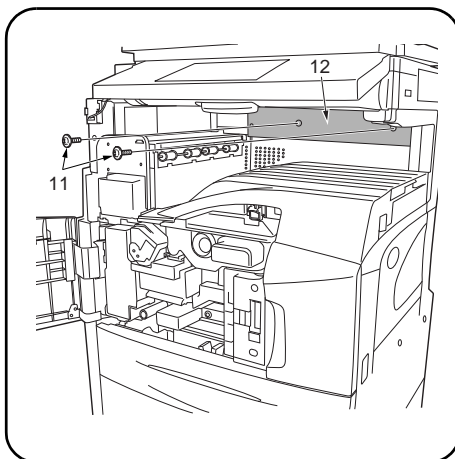
1. ジョブセパレータ (A) に LED 基板 (B) を挿入する。  
ジョブセパレータ (A) の 2P コネクタ (2) を、ジョブセパレータの溝 (3) 3ヶ所に電線を配線して、LED 基板 (B) の 2P コネクタ (1) に接続する。

2. 搬送左カバーおよび前カバーを開ける。
3. ステーブルホルダ (4) を取り外し、上側と前側のビス (5) 2本を外して、左側のビス (6) 2本をゆるめる。

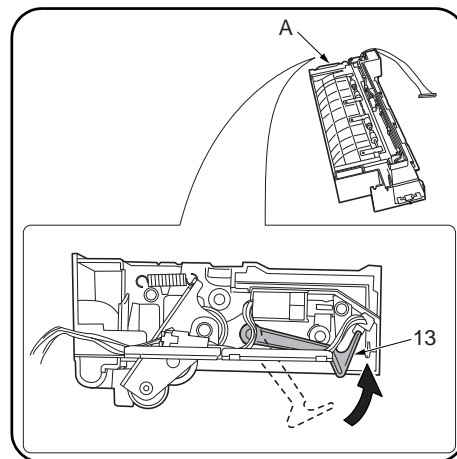
4. 右側の引っ掛け部 (7) を開いて左前カバー (8) を取り外す。



5. Remove the two screws (9) and remove the ejection cover (10) with the mounting plate.



6. Remove the two screws (11) and then remove the inner ejection cover (12).



7. If the branch pressure lever (13) on the rear side of the job separator (A) has lowered, raise it.

5. Enlever les deux vis (9) et enlever le couvercle d'éjection (10) avec la plaque de montage.

6. Enlever les deux vis (11), puis enlever le couvercle d'éjection interne (12).

7. Si le levier de pression fourchu (13) situé sur le côté arrière du séparateur de travaux (A) est abaissé, le relever.

5. Saque los dos tornillos (9) y desmonte la cubierta de expulsión (10) con la placa de montaje.

6. Saque los dos tornillos (11) y desmonte la cubierta de expulsión interior (12).

7. Si bajó la palanca de presión de ramal (13) en el lado trasero del separador de trabajos (A) levántela.

5. Die zwei Schrauben (9) entfernen, und dann die Auswurfabdeckung (10) mit der Montageplatte abnehmen.

6. Die zwei Schrauben (11) entfernen, und dann die innere Auswurfabdeckung (12) abnehmen.

7. Falls der Zweigdruckhebel (13) auf der Rückseite des Jobtrenners (A) abgesenkt ist, muss er angehoben werden.

5. Rimuovete ora le due viti (9) e quindi il coperchio di espulsione (10) con la piastra di montaggio.

6. Rimuovete le due viti (11) e quindi il coperchio interno di espulsione (12).

7. Se la leva a pressione del braccio (13) situata sul lato posteriore del separatore (A) è abbassata, sollevatela.

5. 卸下 2 个螺丝 (9)，然后将出纸盖板 (10) 的整个安装板拆下。

6. 卸下 2 个螺丝 (11)，然后拆下出纸内盖板 (12)。

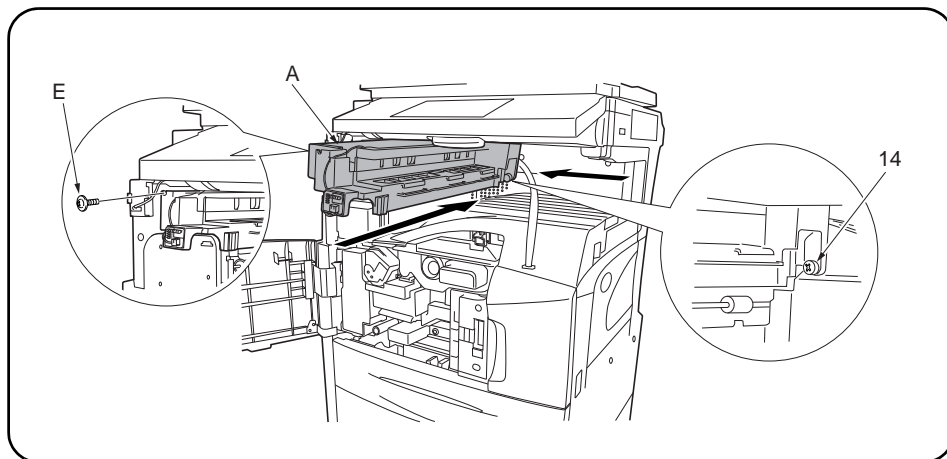
7. 如果作业分离器 (A) 后侧的分歧按压把柄 (13) 朝下方状态时，把它向上提起。

**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

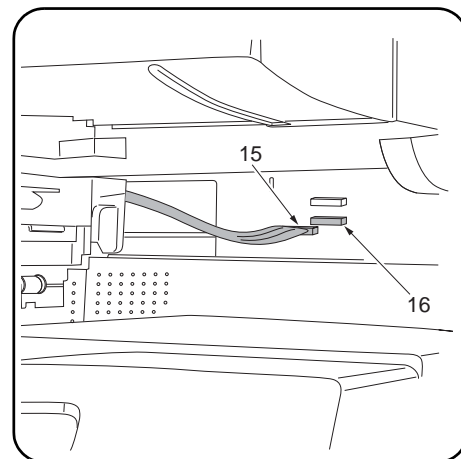
5. ビス (9) 2 本を外し、排出カバー (10) を取付板ごと取り外す。

6. ビス (11) 2 本を外し、排出内カバー (12) を取り外す。

7. ジョブセパレータ (A) 後側の分歧押圧レバー (13) が下方向に下がっている場合は上げる。



**8.** Insert the job separator (A) into the MFP from the front side and slide it to the left. Secure the rear side using a pin (14) and the front side using a TP screw M3 × 05 (E).



**9.** Connect the connector (15) of the job separator to the lower connector (16) of the MFP.

**8.** Insérer le séparateur de travaux (A) dans le MFP depuis le côté avant et le faire glisser vers la gauche. Fixer l'arrière à l'aide d'une goupille (14) et l'avant à l'aide d'une vis TP M3 × 05 (E).

**9.** Connecter le connecteur (15) du séparateur de travaux au connecteur inférieur (16) du MFP.

**8.** Inserte el separador de trabajos (A) en el MFP del lado delantero y deslice hacia la izquierda. Asegure el lado trasero utilizando un pasador (14) y el lado delantero utilizando un tornillo TP M3 × 05 (E).

**9.** Conecte el conector (15) del separador de trabajos en el conector inferior (16) del MFP.

**8.** Den Jobtrenner (A) von der Vorderseite in den MFP einführen und nach links schieben. Die Rückseite mit einem Stift (14), und die Vorderseite mit einer TP-Schraube M3 × 05 (E) sichern.

**9.** Den Steckverbinder (15) des Jobtrenners an den unteren Steckverbinder (16) des MFP anschließen.

**8.** Inserite il separatore (A) nell'MFP dal lato frontale e fatelo scorrere a sinistra. Assicurate il lato posteriore usando un pernetto (14) e il lato frontale usando una vite TP M3 × 05 (E).

**9.** Collegate il connettore (15) del separatore al connettore inferiore (16) dell'MFP.

**8.** 从 MFP 主机的前侧插入作业分离器 (A) 后, 向左侧滑动。用 1 个卡销 (14) 固定后侧, 然后再用 1 个螺丝 M3 × 05TP (E) 固定前侧。

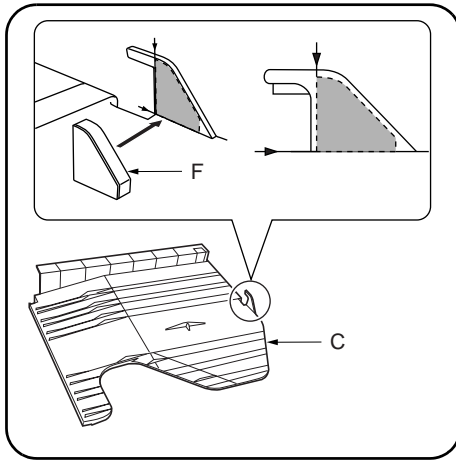
**9.** 将作业分离器的连接插头 (15) 连接在本体的连接插座 (下侧) (16) 上。

**TONER**

[www.tonerplus.com.ua](http://www.tonerplus.com.ua)

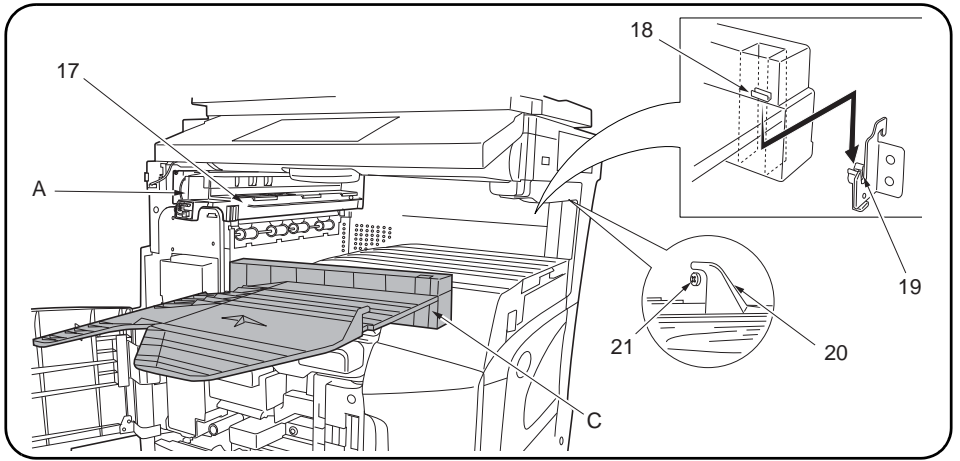
**8.** ジョブセパレータ (A) を MFP 本体の機械前側より挿入し、左側にスライドする。後側をピン (14) 1 本で固定してから前側をビス M3 × 05TP (E) 1 本で固定する。

**9.** ジョブセパレータのコネクタ (15) を本体のコネクタ (下側) (16) に接続する。



#### 10. [Metric specifications only]

After using alcohol to clean the portion of the job separator tray (C) shown in the figure, adhere the eject stopper A3 (F) along the reference lines.



#### 11. Attach the job separator tray (C) to the rail (17) of the job separator (A) by sliding it from the front side.

Insert the fitting section (18) on the right side of the job separator tray (C) into the recessed portion (19) of the MFP.

Put the hook (20) on the right side onto the pin (21) located inside the MFP.

#### 10. [Pour spécifications métriques seulement]

Après avoir utilisé de l'alcool pour nettoyer le plateau du séparateur de travaux (C) montré dans la figure, faire adhérer la butée d'éjection A3 (F) le long des lignes de référence.

#### 11. Fixer le plateau du séparateur de travaux (C) au rail (17) du séparateur de travaux (A) en le faisant glisser depuis l'avant.

Insérer la section de la garniture (18) sur le côté droit du séparateur de travaux (C) dans la partie en retrait (19) du MFP.

Mettre le crochet (20) sur le côté droit sur la goupille (21) située dans le MFP.

#### 10. [Sólo para las especificaciones métricas]

Después de utilizar alcohol para limpiar la parte de la bandeja del separador de trabajos (C) que aparece en la figura, pegue el tope de expulsión de A3 (F) por las líneas de referencia.

#### 11. Instale la bandeja del separador de trabajos (C) en el carril (17) del separador de trabajos (A) deslizándolo por el lado delantero.

Inserte la sección de fijación (18) en el lado derecho de la bandeja del separador de trabajos (C) en la parte entrada (19) del MFP.

Ponga el gancho (20) en el lado derecho del pasador (21) ubicado dentro del MFP.

#### 10. [Nur metrische Spezifikationen]

Den in der Abbildung gezeigten Abschnitt der Jobtrennerablage (C) mit Alkohol reinigen, dann den Auswerfanschlag A3 (F) innerhalb der Bezugslinien ankleben.

#### 11. Die Jobtrennerablage (C) von der Vorderseite auf die Schiene (17) des Jobtrenners (A) schieben.

Die Passkante (18) auf der rechten Seite der Jobtrennerablage (C) in die Aussparung (19) des MFP einführen.

Den Haken (20) auf der rechten Seite auf den Stift (21) im Inneren des MFP setzen.

#### 10. [Solo per le specifiche metriche]

Dopo avere usato l'alcol per pulire la parte del vassoio del separatore (C) illustrata in figura, fare aderire il fermo di espulsione A3 (F) lungo le linee di riferimento.

#### 11. Montate il vassoio del separatore (C) sulla rotaia (17) del separatore stesso, facendolo scorrere dal lato frontale.

Inserite la sezione di montaggio (18) situata sul lato destro del vassoio del separatore (C) nella posizione rientrante (19) dell'MFP.

Mettete il gancio (20) situato sul lato destro sul perno (21) che si trova all'interno dell'MFP.

#### 10. [仅限英寸规格产品]

用酒精擦净作业分离器出纸托盘 (C) (图示位置) 后, 沿着基准线贴出纸挡块 A3 (F)。

#### 11. 将作业分离器托盘 (C) 从前侧滑动装入作业分离器 (A) 的导板 (17) 上。

将作业分离器出纸托盘 (C) 的右侧安装部 (18) 插入本体的凹部 (19)。

将右侧的挂钩 (20) 放在 MFP 主机内侧的卡销 (21) 上。

**TONER**  
www.tonerplus.com.ua

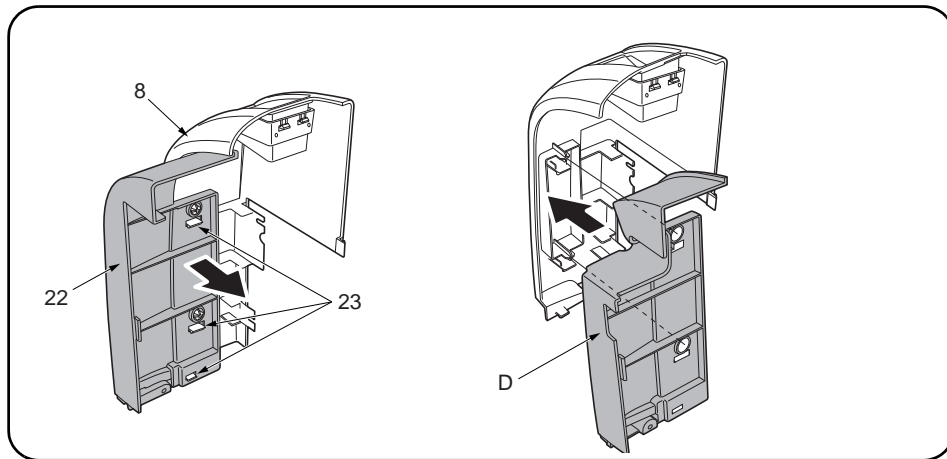
#### 10. [センチ仕様のみ]

ジョブセパレータ排出トレイ (C) の図の位置をアルコール清掃後、排出ストップ A3 (F) を基準に沿って貼り付ける

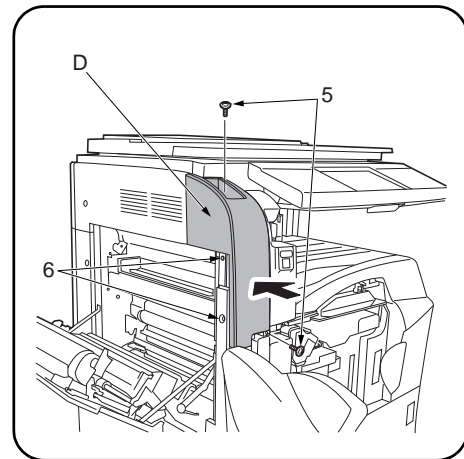
#### 11. ジョブセパレータ (A) のレール (17) にジョブセパレータ排出トレイ (C) を前側よりスライドさせて取り付け。

ジョブセパレータ排出トレイ (C) 右側の取付部 (18) を本体の凹部 (19) に挿入する。

右側面のフック (20) を MFP 本体内部のピン (21) の上に乗せる。



**12.** Release the three tabs (23) of the left front cover (8) that has been removed in step 4 to remove the white right side section (22), and fit the left front cover JS (D).



**13.** Fit the left front cover JS (D) using the two screws (6) on the left side to secure and using the two screws (5) that have been removed in step 3.

**12.** Libérer les trois languettes (23) du couvercle avant gauche (8) retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 4 pour retirer la section blanche du côté droit (22), et placer le couvercle avant gauche JS (D).

**13.** Placer le couvercle avant gauche JS (D) à l'aide des deux vis (6) sur le côté gauche pour le fixer et en utilisant les deux vis (5) retirées auparavant lors de l'étape 3.

**12.** Suelte las tres lengüetas (23) de la cubierta delantera izquierda (8) que fue desmontada en el paso 4 para desmontar la sección del lado derecho blanca (22), y encaje la cubierta delantera izquierda JS (D).

**13.** Encaje la cubierta delantera izquierda JS (D) utilizando los dos tornillos (6) en el lado izquierdo y utilizando los dos tornillos (5) que fueron desmontados en el paso 3.

**12.** Die drei Laschen (23) der in Schritt 4 entfernten linken Frontabdeckung (8) lösen, um den weißen rechten Seitenteil (22) abzunehmen, und die linke Frontabdeckung JS (D) anbringen.

**13.** Die linke Frontabdeckung JS (D) mit den zwei Schrauben (6) auf der linken Seite und mit den in Schritt 3 entfernten zwei Schrauben (5) befestigen.

**12.** Rilasciate le tre linguette (23) situate sul coperchio frontale sinistro (8), che avete rimosso nel passo 4, per rimuovere la sezione laterale bianca destra (22) e montate il coperchio frontale sinistro JS (D).

**13.** Montate il coperchio frontale sinistro JS (D) usando le due viti (6) sul lato sinistro per fissarlo e usando le due viti (5) che sono state rimosse nel passo 3.

**12.** 松开在步骤 4 拆下的左前盖板 (8) 的 3 处卡爪 (23)，取下右侧部 (白色) (22) 后，装上左前盖板 JS (D)。

**13.** 用 2 个左侧螺丝 (6) 固定左前盖板 JS (D)，用步骤 3 拆下的 2 个螺丝 (5) 进行固定。

**TONER**

**12.** 手順 4 で取り外した左前カバー (8) のツメ (23) 3ヶ所を解除して、右側部 (白) (22) を外し、左前カバー JS (D) を取り付け。

**13.** 左前カバー JS (D) を左側のビス (6) 2 本で固定し、手順 3 で外したビス (5) 2 本で取り付け。

14. Refit the staple holder that has been removed in step 3 to its original position and close the transfer left cover and the front cover.

#### Operation check

1. Insert the power plug of the MFP into an outlet and turn the main switch on.
2. Press "Org./Paper/Finishing" and "Output Tray" on the touch panel in this order to select "Job separator Tray".

3. Make a test copy to check that a copy is ejected to the job separator tray (C).

14. Remettre le support d'agrafes retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 3 à sa position d'origine, et refermer le couvercle de transfert gauche et le couvercle avant.

#### Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans une prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Presser "Org./Papier/Finition" et "Bac de sortie" sur l'écran tactile dans cet ordre pour sélectionner "Plateau du sépar. trav."

3. Effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier que la copie est éjectée dans le plateau du séparateur de travaux (C).

14. Vuelva a colocar el soporte de grapas que fue desmontado en el paso 3 a su posición original y cierre la cubierta izquierda de transferencia y la cubierta delantera.

#### Verificación del funcionamiento

1. Enchufe el cable eléctrico del MFP en un tomacorriente y conecte el interruptor principal.
2. Presione "Org./papel/Finalizando" y "Bandeja de salida" en el panel de toque para seleccionar "Band. de separad. trab."

3. Haga una copia de prueba para verificar que la copia sale a la bandeja del separador de trabajos (C).

14. Den in Schritt 3 entfernten Heftklammerhalter wieder an seiner ursprünglichen Stelle anbringen, und dann die linke Transferabdeckung und die Frontabdeckung schließen.

#### Betriebsprüfung

1. Den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Netzsteckdose einstecken, und den Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Die Tasten "Org./Papier/Endbearbeitung" und "Druckablage" auf dem Sensorbildschirm in dieser Reihenfolge drücken, um "Job Separator-Fach" zu wählen.

3. Eine Probekopie anfertigen, um zu prüfen, ob die Kopie in die Jobtrennerablage (C) ausgeworfen wird.

14. Montate nuovamente il vassoio graffette che è stato rimosso nel passo 3 nella sua posizione originale e chiudete il coperchio di trasferimento sinistro e quindi il coperchio frontale.

#### Verifica di funzionamento

1. Inserite il cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa di rete e quindi accendetela.
2. Premete "Org./Carta/Finitura" e "Vassoia di uscita" sul pannello a sfioramento in questo ordine per selezionare "Vass. separat. Lavori".

3. Effettuate una copia di prova per verificare che essa venga espulsa sul vassoio del separatore (C).

14. 按原样装好在步骤 3 卸下的装书钉盒, 关闭输送左盖板和前盖板。

#### [ 确认操作情况 ]

1. 将 MFP 主机的电源插头插入插座后, 接通主电源开关。
2. 在触摸屏上按顺序按下“原稿 / 纸张 / 装订”、“出纸口”后选择“作业分离器”。

3. 进行测试复印, 确认纸张是否从作业分离器的出纸托盘上输出。



14. 手順 3 で取り外したステーブルホルダを元どおり取り付け、搬送左カバーおよび前カバーを閉める。

#### [ 動作確認 ]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. タッチパネルで「原稿 / 用紙 / 仕上げ」、「排紙先」を順に押し「ジョブセパレータ」を選択する。

3. テストコピーを行い、用紙がジョブセパレータ排出トレイ (C) に排出されたことを確認する。

# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR FAX System

## English

To install the FAX circuit board, see page 1.  
To install the FAX circuit board as Dual FAX, see page 11.

---

## Français

Pour installer la carte à circuits FAX, se reporter à la page 1.  
Pour installer la carte à circuits FAX comme FAX double, se reporter à la page 11.

---

## Español

Para instalar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX, vea la página 1.  
Para instalar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en el FAX dual, vea la página 11.

---

## Deutsch

Angaben zur Installation der FAX-Leiterplatte finden Sie auf Seite 1.  
Angaben zur Installation der FAX-Leiterplatte als Dual FAX finden Sie auf Seite 11.

---

## Italiano

Per installare la scheda a circuiti FAX, vedere pagina 1.  
Per installare la scheda a circuiti FAX come Dual FAX, vedere pagina 11.

---

## 简体中文

安装传真组件时...从第 1 页开始  
安装多插口组件时...从第 11 页开始

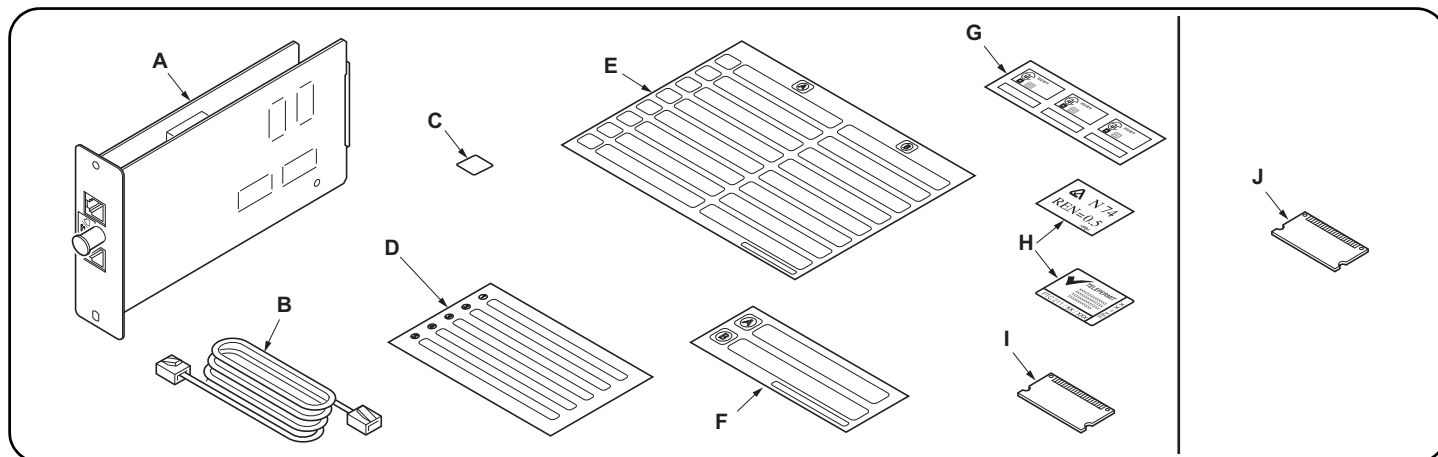


---

## 日本語

ファクスシステムを設置する場合...1 ページから始める  
マルチポートを設置する場合...11 ページから始める

---



### Supplied parts

A	FAX circuit board	1
B	Modular connector cable (120 V/Australian model only) PJJWC0016Z (UL Listed.HUAN HSIN Type TL:120 V only)	1
C	Terminal seal	1
D	Alphabet label	1

E	FAX operation section label	1
H	Approval label (Australian/New Zealand models only)	2
I	Memory DIMM	1

### Option

J	Memory DIMM (128 MB)	1
---	----------------------	---

(F) and (G) are not bundled.

When installing the Dual FAX, (A), (B), (C) are required.

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

### Pièces fournies

A	Carte à circuits FAX	1
B	Câble du connecteur modulaire (modèles pour l'Australie/120 V seulement)	1
C	Joint de borne	1
D	Étiquette de l'alphabet	1
E	Étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX	1

I	Mémoire DIMM	1
---	--------------	---

### Option

J	Mémoire DIMM (128 MB)	1
---	-----------------------	---

(F), (G) et (H) ne sont pas fournis.

L'installation du Dual FAX requiert l'installation des pièces (A), (B), (C).

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

### Piezas suministradas

A	Tarjeta de circuitos de fax	1
B	Cable conector modular (sólo para modelos de 120 V/Australianos)	1
C	Sello del terminal	1
D	Etiqueta de alfabeto	1
E	Etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX	1

I	Memoria DIMM	1
---	--------------	---

### Opción

J	Memoria DIMM (128 MB)	1
---	-----------------------	---

(F), (G) y (H) no se suministran.

Cuando instale el fax Dual se necesitan (A), (B), (C).

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

### Gelieferte Teile

A	FAX-Leiterplatte	1
C	Verschlusskappe	1
D	Alphabetaufkleber	1
E	Aufkleber für FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt	1
I	Speicher-DIMM	1

### Option

J	Speicher-DIMM (128 MB)	1
---	------------------------	---

(B), (F), (G) und (H) liegen nicht bei.

Für die Installation von Dual FAX sind (A), (C) erforderlich.

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

### Parti di fornitura

A	Scheda a circuiti FAX	1
C	Guarnizione terminale	1
D	Etichetta alfabetica	1
E	Etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX	1
I	Memoria DIMM	1

### Opzioni

J	Memoria DIMM (128 MB)	1
---	-----------------------	---

(B),(F),(G) e (H) non sono in dotazione.

Quando si installa il Dual FAX, sono necessari (A), (C).

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

### 附属品

A	传真电路板	1
B	电话线	1
C	端子密封	1
D	英文字母标签	1
E	传真操作部标签	1
I	内存模组 DIMM	1

### 选购件

J	内存模组 DIMM (128MB)	1
---	-------------------	---

(F)、(G) 和 (H) 并非附属品。

安装多插口组件时，需要 (A)、(B)、(C)。

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

### 同梱品

A	FAX 基板	1
B	モジュラコード	1
C	端子シール	1
F	FAX 操作部ラベル	1
G	JATE ラベル	1
I	メモリ DIMM	1

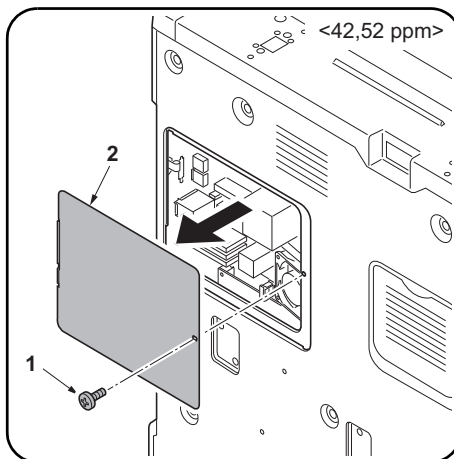
### オプション

J	メモリ DIMM(128MB)	1
---	-----------------	---

(D), (E), (H) は、同梱されておりません。

マルチポート設置時は (A), (B), (C) のみが必要となる。

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



### Precautions

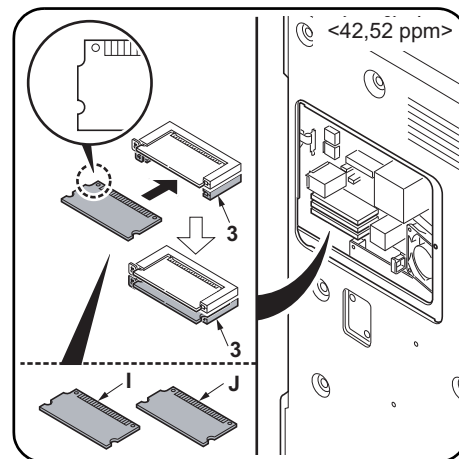
Be sure to turn the MFP switch OFF and unplug the MFP from the power supply before installing the fax system.  
The illustration of the MFP body in the Installation Guide is the 42,52 ppm model.

### Procedure

#### Installing the memory DIMM

##### <42,52 ppm (Monochrome machines)>

1. Remove 1 screw (1), and then remove the cover (2).



2. Install the memory DIMM (I) or the optional memory DIMM (J) into the memory slot (3) on the lower level (FLS).  
Install it with the IC side facing down.  
Insert it in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.
3. Replace the cover (2) using 1 screw (1).

Proceed to step 4 on page 5.

### Précautions

Veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher le MFP de la prise secteur avant d'installer le système fax.  
L'illustration du corps du MFP dans le guide d'installation correspond au modèle 42,52 ppm.

### Procédure

#### Installation de la mémoire DIMM

##### <42,52 ppm (Machines monochromes)>

1. Déposer 1 vis (1) puis enlever le couvercle (2).

2. Installer la mémoire DIMM (I) ou la mémoire DIMM en option (J) dans la fente mémoire (3) se trouvant au niveau inférieur (FLS).  
L'installer avec le côté IC en bas.  
L'insérer dans la direction de la flèche jusqu'au clic.
3. Reposer le couvercle (2) à l'aide de 1 vis (1).

Passer à l'étape 4 de la page 5.

### Precauciones

Asegúrese de apagar el MFP colocando el interruptor principal a OFF y desenchufe el MFP del suministro de red eléctrica antes de instalar el sistema de fax.  
La ilustración del cuerpo del MFP en la Guía de instalación corresponde al modelo de 42,52 ppm.

### Procedimiento

#### Instalación de la memoria DIMM

##### <42,52 ppm (Maquinas monocromaticas)>

1. Quite 1 tornillo (1) y, después, desmonte la cubierta (2).

2. Instale la memoria DIMM (I), o la memoria DIMM opcional (J), en la ranura para la memoria (3) en el nivel inferior (FLS).  
Instálelo con el lado IC hacia abajo.  
Insértela en la dirección que indica la flecha hasta que escuche un clic.
3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (2) utilizando 1 tornillo (1).

Vaya al paso 4 de la página 5.

### Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

Schalten Sie den Netzschalter des MFP aus und trennen Sie den MFP vom Netz, bevor Sie das Faxsystem installieren.  
Die Abbildung des MFP-Geräts in der Installationsanleitung stellt das 42,52 ppm Modell dar.

### Verfahren

#### Installation der DIMM-Speichermodule

##### <42,52 ppm (Monochrommaschinen)>

1. Entfernen Sie 1 Schraube (1) und nehmen Sie dann die Abdeckung (2) ab.

2. Setzen Sie die DIMM-Speichermodule (I) oder das optionale DIMM-Speichermodule (J) in die untere Position (FLS) der Speicherbank (3) ein.  
Mit der IC-Seite nach unten weisend installieren. Schieben Sie das Modul in Pfeilrichtung, bis es hörbar einrastet.
3. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (2) wieder mit 1 Schraube (1) an.

Gehen Sie zum Schritt 4 auf Seite 5 weiter.

### Precauzioni

Assicurarsi di aver spento l'interruttore dell'MFP e di aver sfilato la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il sistema fax.  
L'illustrazione del corpo MFP nella Guida all'installazione è del modello da 42,52 ppm.

### Procedura

#### Installazione della memoria DIMM

##### <42,52 ppm (solo per le macchine)>

1. Rimuovere 1 vite (1), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio (2).

2. Installare la memoria DIMM (I) o la memoria DIMM opzionale (J) nello slot della memoria (3) al livello inferiore (FLS). Installare con il lato IC rivolto verso il basso. Inserirli nella direzione della freccia finché non scatta in posizione.
3. Sostituire il coperchio (2) utilizzando 1 vite (1).

Procedere con il punto 4 a pagina 5.

### 注意事項

请务必关闭 MFP 的开关并拔下电源插头再安装传真组件。  
安装手册中插图所示多功能数码复合机主机为 42,52 张机型。

### 安裝步驟

#### 安裝内存模組 DIMM

##### <42, 52 張机型 (黑白機器)>

1. 拆下 1 顆螺絲 (1)，然後拆下蓋板 (2)。

2. 將内存模組 DIMM (I) 或者選購件 DIMM (J) 安裝至下層 (FLS) 的内存插槽 (3)。安裝時，將 IC 側正面朝下。沿箭頭方向將其插入到底直至發出喀喀聲。
3. 使用 1 顆螺釘 (1) 更換蓋板 (2)。

進行第 5 頁上的第 4 步

### 注意事項

ファクスシステムを設置する場合は、MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。  
設置手順書に記載している MFP 本体のイラストは、42,52 枚機です。

### 取付手順

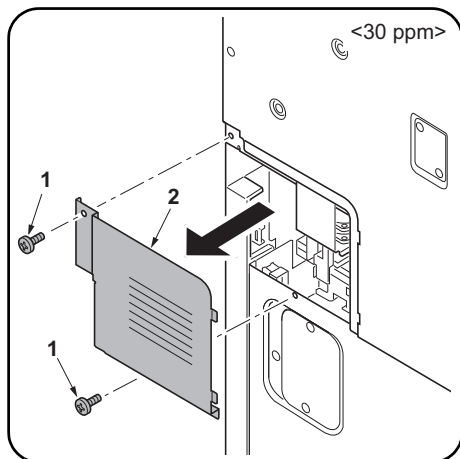
#### メモリ DIMM の取り付け

##### <42, 52 枚機 (モノクロ機)>

1. ビス (1) 1 本を外し、カバー (2) を取り外す。

2. メモリ DIMM (I) または、オプションのメモリ DIMM (J) を下段 (FLS) のメモリスロット (3) に取り付ける。  
IC 面を下向きに取り付けること。  
カチッと音がするまで矢印方向に挿入する。
3. ビス (1) 1 本で、カバー (2) を元通り取り付けする。

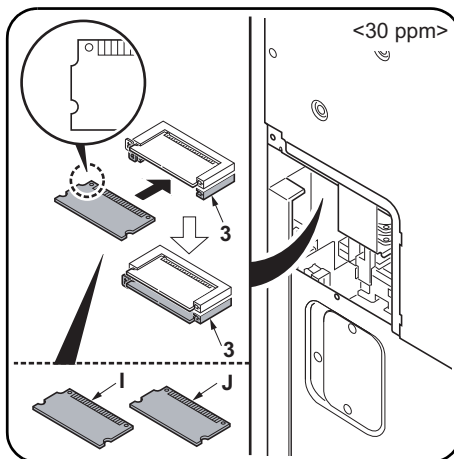
5 ページ手順 4 へ進む。



#### Installing the memory DIMM

##### <30 ppm (Monochrome machine)>

1. Remove 2 screws (1), and then remove the cover (2).



2. Install the memory DIMM (I) or the optional memory DIMM (J) into the memory slot (3) on the lower level (FLS). Install it with the IC side facing down. Insert it in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.
3. Replace the cover (2) using the 2 screws (1).

Proceed to step 4 on page 5.

#### Installation de la mémoire DIMM

##### <30 ppm (Machines monochromes)>

1. Déposez les 2 vis (1) puis enlevez le couvercle (2).

2. Installer la mémoire DIMM (I) ou la mémoire DIMM en option (J) dans la fente mémoire (3) se trouvant au niveau inférieur (FLS). L'installer avec le côté IC en bas. L'insérer dans la direction de la flèche jusqu'au clic.
3. Reposez le couvercle (2) à l'aide des 2 vis (1).

Passer à l'étape 4 de la page 5.

#### Instalación de la memoria DIMM

##### <30 ppm (Maquinas monocromaticas)>

1. Quite 2 tornillos (1) y, después, desmonte la cubierta (2).

2. Instale la memoria DIMM (I), o la memoria DIMM opcional (J), en la ranura para la memoria (3) en el nivel inferior (FLS). Instálelo con el lado IC hacia abajo. Insértela en la dirección que indica la flecha hasta que escuche un clic.
3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (2) utilizando los 2 tornillos (1).

Vaya al paso 4 de la página 5.

#### Installation der DIMM-Speichermodule

##### <30 ppm (Monochrommaschinen)>

1. Entfernen Sie 2 Schrauben (1) und nehmen Sie dann die Abdeckung (2) ab.

2. Setzen Sie die DIMM-Speichermodule (I) oder das optionale DIMM-Speichermodul (J) in die untere Position (FLS) der Speicherbank (3) ein. Mit der IC-Seite nach unten weisend installieren. Schieben Sie das Modul in Pfeilrichtung, bis es hörbar einrastet.
3. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (2) wieder mit den 2 Schrauben (1) an.

Gehen Sie zum Schritt 4 auf Seite 5 weiter.

#### Installazione della memoria DIMM

##### <30 ppm (solo per le macchine)>

1. Rimuovere 2 viti (1), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio (2).

2. Installare la memoria DIMM (I) o la memoria DIMM opzionale (J) nello slot della memoria (3) al livello inferiore (FLS). Installare con il lato IC rivolto verso il basso. Inserirla nella direzione della freccia finché non scatta in posizione.
3. Ricollocare il coperchio (2) utilizzando le 2 viti (1).

Procedere con il punto 4 a pagina 5.

#### 安装内存模组 DIMM

##### <30 张机型 (黑白机器)>

1. 取下 2 个螺丝 (1), 然后取下盖板 (2)。

2. 将内存模组 DIMM (I) 或者选配件 DIMM (J) 安装至下层 (FLS) 的内存插槽 (3)。安装时, 将 IC 侧正面朝下。沿箭头方向将其插入到底直至发出喀喀声。
3. 使用 2 个螺丝 (1) 重新安装盖板 (2)。

进行第 5 页上的第 4 步



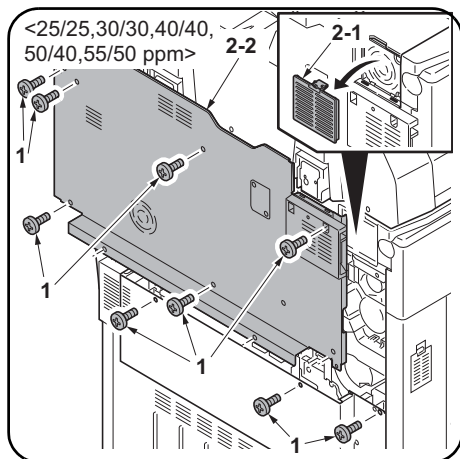
#### メモリ DIMM の取り付け

##### <30 枚機 (モノクロ機)>

1. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、カバー (2) を取り外す。

2. メモリ DIMM (I) または、オプションのメモリ DIMM (J) を下段 (FLS) のメモリスロット (3) に取り付けます。IC 面を下向きに取り付けること。カチッと音がするまで矢印方向に挿入する。
3. ビス (1) 2 本で、カバー (2) を元通り取り付けます。

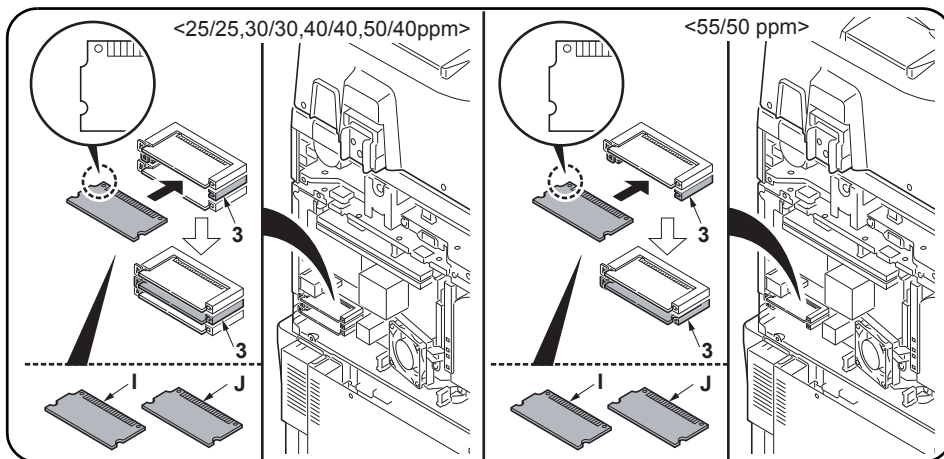
5 ページ手順 4 へ進む。



#### Installing the memory DIMM

<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 ppm  
(Full-color machines)>

1. Remove the filter cover (2-1). Then remove 9 screws (1) and remove the upper rear cover (2-2).



2. Install the memory DIMM (I) or the optional memory DIMM (J) into the memory slot (3) on the middle level (FLS) <25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 ppm>.  
the lower level (FLS) <55/50 ppm>.  
Install it with the IC side facing down. Insert it in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.
3. Replace the upper rear cover (2-2) using 9 screws (1) and then replace the filter cover (2-1).  
Proceed to step 4 on page 5.

#### Installation de la mémoire DIMM

<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 ppm  
(Machines entièrement en couleurs)>

1. Déposer le couvercle du filtre (2-1). Puis déposer les 9 vis (1) et le couvercle arrière supérieur (2-2).

2. Installer la mémoire DIMM (I) ou la mémoire DIMM en option (J) dans la fente mémoire (3) se trouvant  
au milieu (FLS) <25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 ppm>.  
au niveau inférieur (FLS) <55/50 ppm>.  
L'installer avec le côté IC en bas. L'insérer dans la direction de la flèche jusqu'au clic.
3. Reposer le couvercle arrière supérieur (2-2) à l'aide des 9 vis (1), puis le couvercle du filtre (2-1).  
Passer à l'étape 4 de la page 5.

#### Instalación de la memoria DIMM

<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 ppm  
(Maquinas a todo color)>

1. Quite la cubierta del filtro (2-1). Luego quite los 9 tornillos (1) y retire la cubierta trasera superior (2-2).

2. Instale la memoria DIMM (I), o la memoria DIMM opcional (J), en la ranura para la memoria (3) en el nivel medio (FLS) <25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 ppm>.  
el nivel inferior (FLS) <55/50 ppm>.  
Instálelo con el lado IC hacia abajo. Insértela en la dirección que indica la flecha hasta que escuche un clic.
3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior (2-2) utilizando los 9 tornillos (1) y luego reinstale la cubierta del filtro (2-1).  
Vaya al paso 4 de la página 5.

#### Installation der DIMM-Speichermodule

<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 ppm  
(Vollfarbenkopierer)>

1. Entfernen Sie die Filterabdeckung (2-1). Entfernen Sie danach die 9 Schrauben (1) und nehmen Sie dann die obere hintere Abdeckung (2-2) ab.

2. Setzen Sie die DIMM-Speichermodule (I) oder das optionale DIMM-Speichermodule (J) in die mittlere Position (FLS) <25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 ppm> die untere Position (FLS) <55/50 ppm> der Speicherbank (3) ein.  
Mit der IC-Seite nach unten weisend installieren. Schieben Sie das Modul in Pfeilrichtung, bis es hörbar einrastet.
3. Bringen Sie die obere hintere Abdeckung (2-2) wieder mit den 9 Schrauben (1) an und bringen Sie die Filterabdeckung (2-1) an.  
Gehen Sie zum Schritt 4 auf Seite 5 weiter.

#### Installazione della memoria DIMM

<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 ppm  
(un macchinario a colori)>

1. Rimuovere il coperchio del filtro (2-1). Quindi rimuovere le 9 viti (1) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (2-2).

2. Installare la memoria DIMM (I) o la memoria DIMM opzionale (J) nello slot della memoria (3) al livello centrale (FLS) <25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 ppm>.  
livello inferiore (FLS) <55/50 ppm>.  
Installare con il lato IC rivolto verso il basso. Inserirla nella direzione della freccia finché non scatta in posizione.
3. Ricollocare il coperchio superiore posteriore (2-2) utilizzando le 9 viti (1), e quindi ricollocare il coperchio del filtro (2-1).  
Procedere con il punto 4 a pagina 5.

#### 安装内存模组 DIMM

<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 张机型  
(彩色机器)>

1. 取下过滤板盖板 (2-1) 后, 拆下 9 颗螺丝 (1), 然后拆下后上盖板 (2-2)。

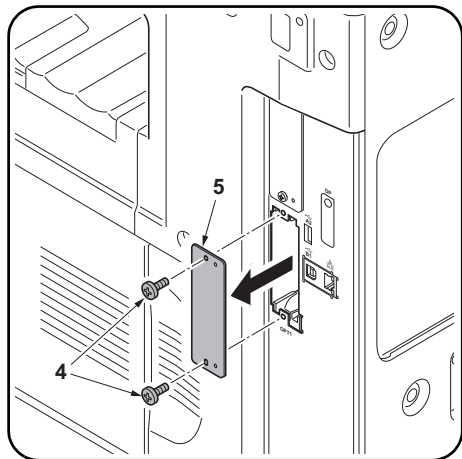
2. 将内存模组 DIMM (I) 或者选购件 DIMM (J) 安装至  
中层 (FLS) < 25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 张机型>  
下层 (FLS) < 55/50 张机型>  
的内存插槽 (3)。安装时, 将 IC 侧正面朝下。沿箭头方向将其插入到底直至发出喀嗒声。
3. 使用 9 颗螺丝 (1) 把后上盖板 (2-2) 按原样装回, 然后重新安装过滤器盖板 (2-1)。  
进行第 5 页上的第 4 步

#### メモリ DIMM の取り付け

<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 枚機  
(フルカラー機)>

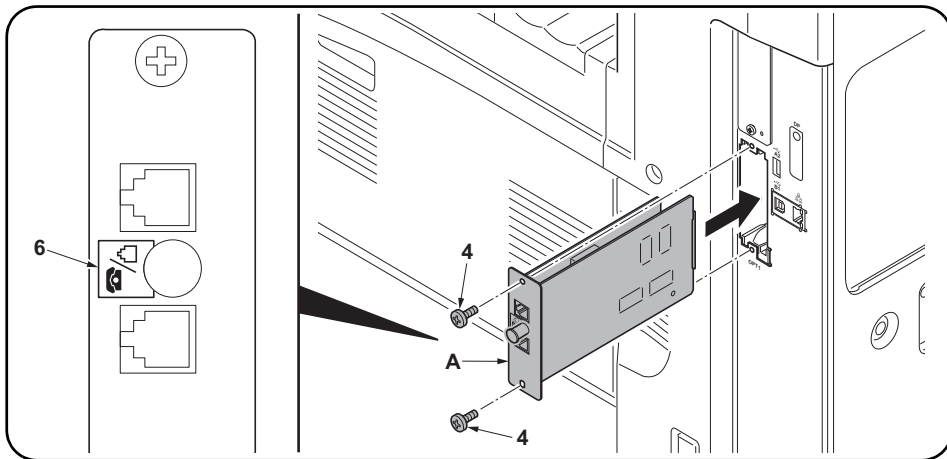
1. フィルタカバー (2-1) を取り外した後、ビス (1) 9 本を外し、後上カバー (2-2) を取り外す。

2. メモリ DIMM (I) または、オプションのメモリ DIMM (J) を  
中段 (FLS) < 25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 枚機>  
下段 (FLS) < 55/50 枚機>  
のメモリスロット (3) に取り付ける。  
IC 面を下向きに取り付けること。  
カチッと音がするまで矢印方向に挿入する。
  3. ビス (1) 9 本で、後上カバー (2-2) を元通り取り付けした後、フィルタカバー (2-1) を元通り取り付け。
- 5 ページ手順 4 へ進む。



#### Remove the cover.

4. Remove two screws (4) and then remove OPT1 cover (5).



#### Install the FAX circuit board.

5. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT1 and secure the board with two screws (4) that have been removed in step 4.  
Do not directly touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal. Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).  
Direct the label (6) on to the FAX circuit board (A) as indicated in the illustration and insert the board along the groove.

#### Retirer le couvercle.

4. Retirer les deux vis (4), puis le couvercle OPT1 (5).

#### Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

5. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT1 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (4) retirées à l'étape 4.  
Ne pas toucher directement la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A). Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).  
Orienter l'étiquette (6) de la carte à circuits FAX (A) comme illustré et insérer la plaquette le long de la rainure.

#### Desmonte la cubierta.

4. Quite dos tornillos (4) y desmonte la cubierta OPT1 (5).

#### Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de fax.

5. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT1 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (4) que ha quitado en el paso 4.  
No toque directamente el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos del fax (A). Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A).  
Oriente la etiqueta (6) en la tarjeta de circuitos del FAX (A) como se indica en la ilustración e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

#### Entfernen der Abdeckung.

4. Die beiden Schrauben (4) herausdrehen und Abdeckung OPT1 (5) abnehmen.

#### Einbauen der FAX-Leiterplatte.

5. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT1 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 4 ausgebauten Schrauben (4) befestigen.  
Berühren Sie die Anschlüsse der FAX-Platine (A) nicht mit den Fingern. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) beim Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.  
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (6) wie abgebildet zur Leiterplatte zeigt.

#### Rimuovere il coperchio.

4. Rimuovere le due viti (4), quindi rimuovere il coperchio OPT1 (5).

#### Montaggio della scheda a circuiti FAX.

5. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT1 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (4) rimosse nell'operazione 4.  
Non toccare direttamente il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A). Per inserire il circuito FAX (A), tenere l'estremità superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX.  
Orientare l'etichetta (6) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) come indicato nell'illustrazione e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

#### 拆下盖板

4. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (4), 然后拆下 OPT1 盖板 (5)。

#### 安装传真电路板

5. 沿着 OPT1 的沟槽插入传真电路板 (A) 并用步骤 4 中拆下的两颗螺钉 (4) 固定电路板。  
请勿直接触摸传真电路板 (A) 端子。按住传真电路板的顶部和底部, 或者按住电路板的突出部将传真电路板 (A) 插入。  
将传真电路板 (A) 上的标签 (6) 保持图示中的方向, 将电路板沿着沟槽方向插入。

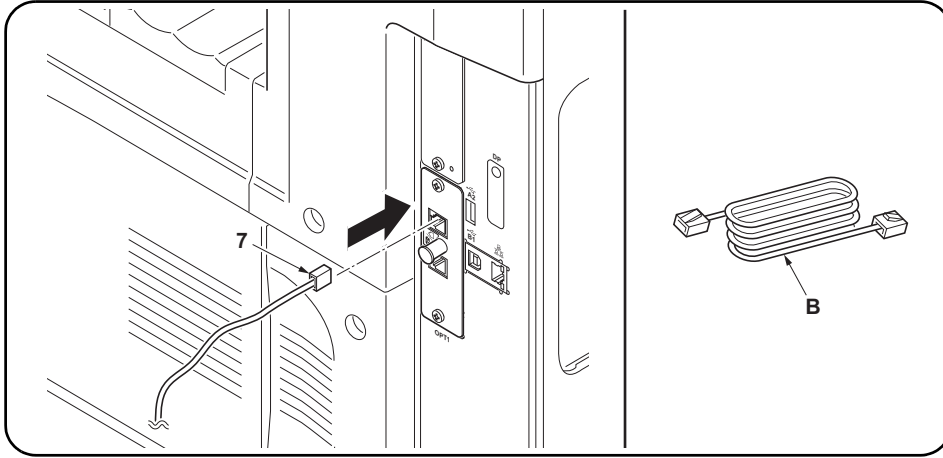


#### カバーの取り外し

4. ビス (4) 2 本を外し、OPT1 のカバー (5) を取り外す。

#### FAX 基板の取り付け

5. OPT1 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 4 で外したビス (4) 2 本で固定する。  
FAX 基板 (A) の端子に直接触れないこと。FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下が突起を持つこと。  
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (6) が図に示す方向になるように、挿入すること。



**Connect the MFP to the telephone line.**

6. Plug the modular connector cable (7) into the line terminal, and then connect the other end to the telephone line.

For 100 V/120 V/Australian or Chinese models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).

**Connecter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.**

6. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (7) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter l'autre extrémité à la ligne de téléphone.

Pour les modèles 100 V/120 V/Australie ou Chine, utilisez le câble à connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

**Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.**

6. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (7) en el terminal de línea y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo a la línea telefónica.

Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano o Chino, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

**Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.**

6. Telefonmodulkabel (7) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Telefondose anschließen.

Das mitgelieferte Modularstecker (B) für die 100-V/120-V/Australien- oder China-Modelle verwenden.

**Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.**

6. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (7) nel terminale della linea, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale alla linea del telefono.

Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia o Cina, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

**将 MFP 连接到电话线**

6. 将模块接插件电缆 (7) 插入电话线端子，然后将另一端与电话线连接。

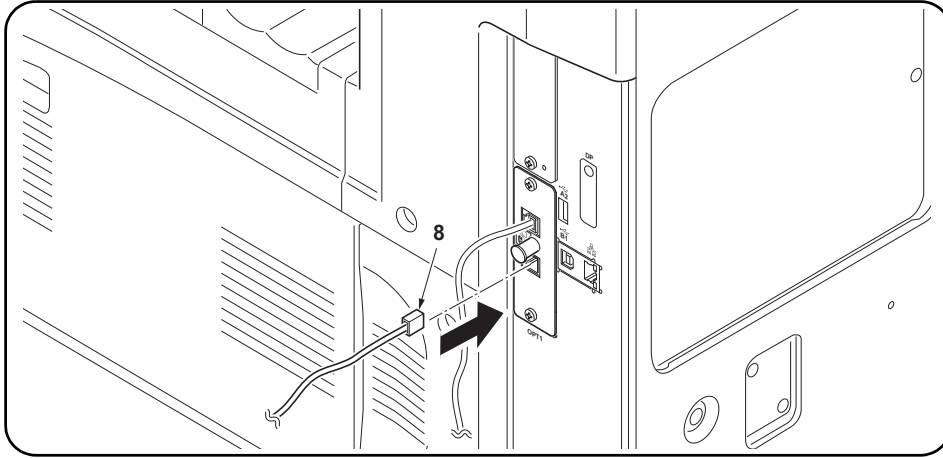
对于 100 V/120 V / 澳大利亚或中国机型，请使用随附的模块接插件电缆 (B)。



**電話回線との接続**

6. モジュラコード (7) をライン端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、電話回線へ接続する。

100V/120V/ オーストラリア仕様 / 中国仕様は付属のモジュラコード (B) を使用すること。



**Connect the MFP to the separate phone (except for New Zealand model).**

7. Plug the modular connector cable (8) into the telephone terminal, and then connect the other end to the separate phone.

If you don't connect the MFP to the separate phone, wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C) upon the customer's request.

**Connecter le MFP au téléphone séparé .**

7. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (8) à la borne du téléphone, puis connecter l'autre extrémité au téléphone séparé.

Si le MFP n'est pas connecté au téléphone séparé à la demande du client, nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool et apposer le joint de borne (C).

**Conecte el MFP al teléfono separado .**

7. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (8) en el terminal del teléfono y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo al teléfono separado.

Si no conecta el MFP a un teléfono separado, limpie la superficie del terminal del teléfono con alcohol y pegue el sello del terminal (C), a solicitud del cliente.

**Anschließen des MFP an das separate Telefon .**

7. Das Telefonmodulkabel (8) in die Telefonbuchse einstecken und das andere Ende an das separate Telefon anschließen.

Wenn der MFP nicht an das separate Telefon angeschlossen wird, die Oberfläche der Telefonbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und Verschlusskappe (C) einsetzen, falls vom Kunden gewünscht.

**Collegamento dell'MFP al telefono separado .**

7. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (8) nel terminale del telefono, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale al telefono separado.

Nel caso in cui non si colleghi l'MFP al telefono separado, pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con dell'alcol e applicare la guarnizione terminale (C) a richiesta del cliente.

**将 MFP 连接到其它电话**

7. 将模块接插件电缆 (8) 插入电话端子, 然后将另一端与其他电话连接。

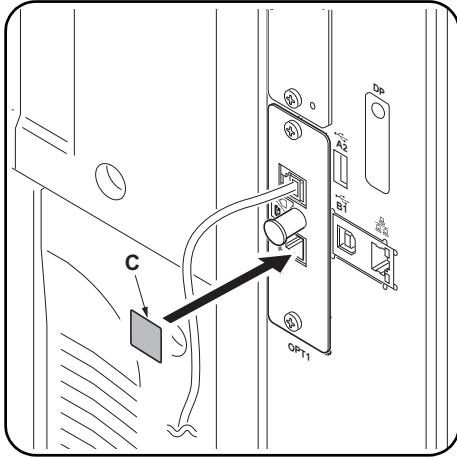
如果您没有将 MFP 连接至其他电话, 请用酒精擦拭电话端子表面, 并按照客户要求粘上端子密封 (C)。



**外付け電話との接続**

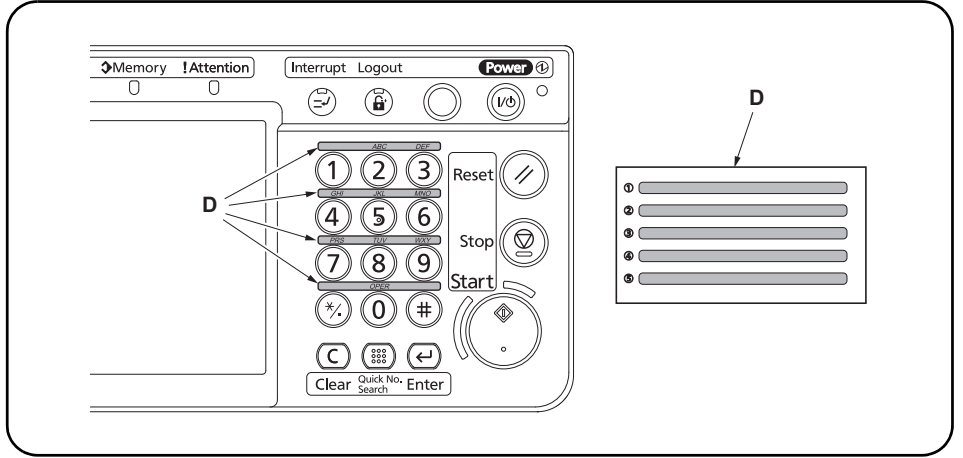
7. モジュラコード (8) を TEL 端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、外付け電話と接続する。

(外付け電話と接続しない場合、お客様の要望により、TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。)



#### Seal the terminal (for New Zealand model).

8. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).  
Perform this procedure for New Zealand model only.



#### Attach the alphabet labels.

9. Wipe the area above the numeric keys at the right side of the operation panel with alcohol and adhere the alphabet labels (D) here.  
In Asia and Oceania, use PQRS TUV WXYZ label, and do not use PRS TUV WXY and OPER labels.

#### Fermer hermétiquement la borne (modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande).

8. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande seulement.

#### Fixer les étiquettes de l'alphabet.

9. Nettoyer la surface au-dessus des touches numériques à droite du panneau de commande et y coller les étiquettes de l'alphabet (D).  
En Asie et Océanie, utiliser l'étiquette PQRS TUV WXYZ et pas les étiquettes PRS TUV WXY et OPER.

#### Selle el terminal (para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés).

8. Realice este procedimiento sólo para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés.

#### Fije las etiquetas de alfabeto.

9. Limpie la zona situada encima de las teclas numéricas, en el lado derecho del panel de trabajo, y pegue aquí las etiquetas de alfabeto (D).  
En Asia y Oceanía, utilice la etiqueta PQRS TUV WXYZ y no use las PRS TUV WXY ni las OPER.

#### Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse (für Neuseeland-Modell).

8. Dieses Verfahren nur für das Neuseeland-Modell anwenden.

#### Anbringen der Alphabetaufkleber.

9. Den Bereich über den Zifferntasten auf der rechten Seite des Bedienfeldes abwischen und die Alphabetaufkleber (D) hier anbringen.  
In Asien und Ozeanien den Aufkleber PQRS TUV WXYZ verwenden; nicht die Aufkleber PRS TUV WXY und OPER verwenden.

#### Sigillare il terminale (per il modello Nuova Zelanda).

8. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello Nuova Zelanda.

#### Applicazione delle etichette alfabetiche.

9. Pulire l'area sopra i tasti numerici sul lato destro del pannello operativo e attaccare qui le etichette alfabetiche (D).  
In Asia ed Oceania, utilizzare l'etichetta PQRS TUV WXYZ e non utilizzare le etichette PRS TUV WXY e OPER.

#### 安装端子密封（仅适用于新西兰型号）

8. 该操作步骤仅适用于新西兰型号。

#### 安装英文字母标签

9. 擦拭操作面板右侧数字键上的区域，然后将英文字母标签 (D) 粘在此处。  
在亚洲和大洋州，请使用 PQRS TUV WXYZ 标签，而不要使用 PRS TUV WXY 和 OPER 标签。

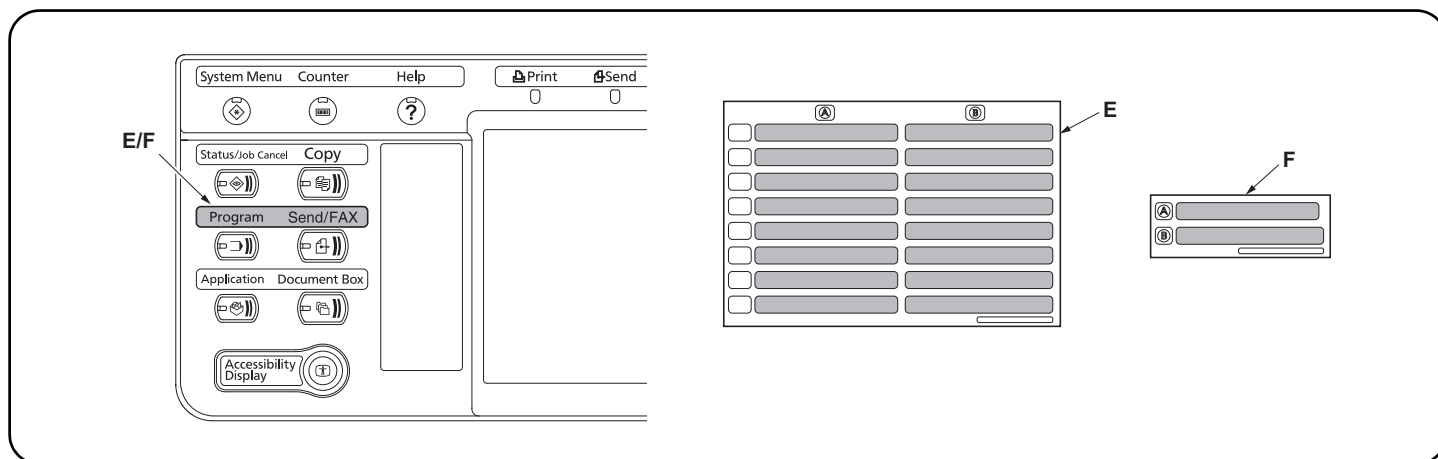


#### 端子シールの貼り付け（ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

8. この手順はニュージーランド仕様のみおこなう。

#### アルファベットラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様以外）

9. この作業は、不要です。



#### Attach the FAX operation section label.

10. Wipe the label surface shown in the figure with alcohol and adhere the FAX operation section label (E) of the corresponding language.

<When installing in 42,52 ppm (Monochrome machines)>

Adhere the FAX operation section label (E) that A is shown.

<When installing in 30 ppm (Monochrome machines)>

Adhere the FAX operation section label (E) that B is shown.

<When installing in 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 ppm (Full-color machines)>

Adhere the FAX operation section label (E) that A is shown.

#### Fixer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX.

10. Essuyer avec de l'alcool la surface de l'étiquette montrée sur l'illustration, et apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (E) de la langue correspondante.

<Installation sur les modèles 42,52 ppm (Machines monochromes)>

Apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (E) de manière que A soit montré.

<Installation sur les modèles 30 ppm (Machines monochromes)>

Apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (E) de manière que B soit montré.

<Installation sur les modèles 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 ppm (Machines entièrement en couleurs)>

Apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (E) de manière que A soit montré.

#### Coloque la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX.

10. Limpie la superficie de la etiqueta que aparece en la figura con alcohol y pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (E) del correspondiente idioma.

<Cuando instale en 42,52 ppm (Maquinas monocromaticas)>

Pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (E) indicada en A.

<Cuando instale en 30 ppm (Maquinas monocromaticas)>

Pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (E) indicada en B.

<Cuando instale en 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 ppm (Maquinas a todo color)>

Pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (E) indicada en A.

#### Anbringen des Aufklebers für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt.

10. Die in der Abbildung gezeigte Klebefläche des Aufklebers mit Alkohol reinigen, und den Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (E) der entsprechenden Sprache anbringen.

<Bei Einbau in 42,52 ppm (Monochrommaschinen)>

Den bei A gezeigten Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (E) anbringen.

<Bei Einbau in 30 ppm (Monochrommaschinen)>

Den bei B gezeigten Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (E) anbringen.

<Bei Einbau in 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 ppm (Vollfarbenkopierers)>

Den bei A gezeigten Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (E) anbringen.

#### Fissare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX.

10. Pulire con alcol la superficie dell'etichetta indicata nella figura e applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (E) della lingua corrispondente.

<Quando si installa nel 42,52 ppm (solo per le macchine)>

Applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (E) indicata da A.

<Quando si installa nel 30 ppm (solo per le macchine)>

Applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (E) indicata da B.

<Quando si installa nel 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 ppm (un macchinario a colori)>

Applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (E) indicata da A.

#### 粘贴传真操作部标签

10. 用酒精擦拭图示位置的标签贴面后，粘贴相应语言的传真操作部标签 (E)。

<安装在 42, 52 张机型号 (黑白机器) 上时>

将印刷的 A 的传真操作部标签 (E) 粘在此处。

<安装在 30 张机型号 (黑白机器) 上时>

将印刷的 B 的传真操作部标签 (E) 粘在此处。

<安装在 25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 张机型号 (彩色机器) 上时>

将印刷的 A 的传真操作部标签 (E) 粘在此处。

#### FAX 操作部ラベルの貼り付け

10. イラストの位置のラベル上面をアルコール清掃後、該当する言語の FAX 操作部ラベル (F) を貼り付ける。

< 42, 52 枚機 (モノクロ機) に設置する場合>

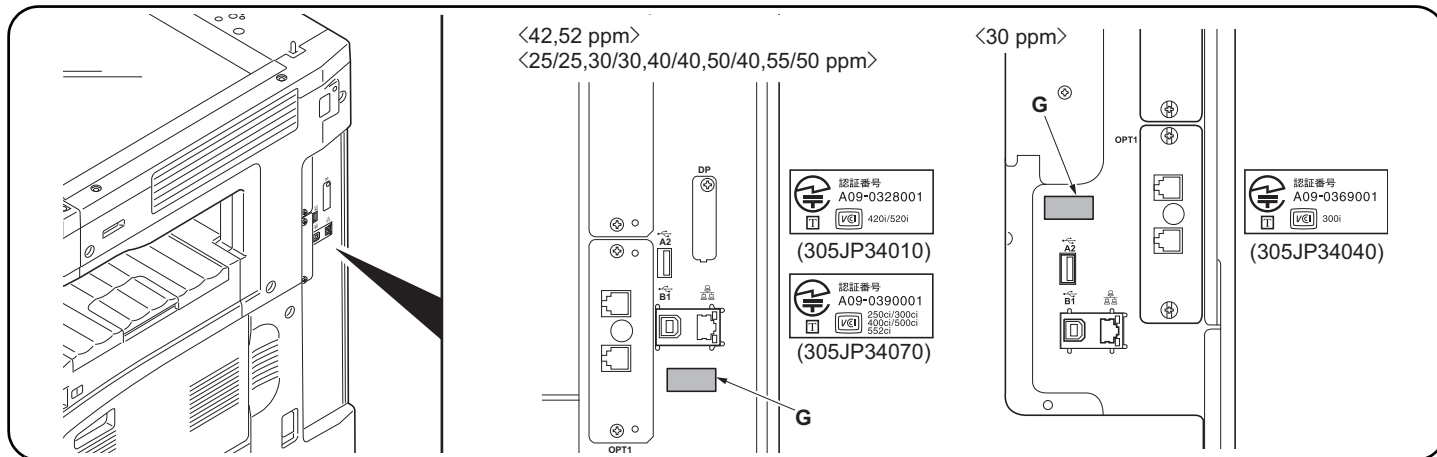
A と印刷されている FAX 操作部ラベル (F) を貼り付ける。

< 30 枚機 (モノクロ機) に設置する場合>

B と印刷されている FAX 操作部ラベル (F) を貼り付ける。

< 25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 枚機 (フルカラー機) に設置する場合>

A と印刷されている FAX 操作部ラベル (F) を貼り付ける。



**Attach the JATE label (for 100 V model only).**

**11.** Perform this procedure for 100 V model only.

**Fixer l'étiquette JATE (modèle 100 V seulement).**

**11.** Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle 100 V seulement.

**Coloque la etiqueta JATE (sólo para el modelo de 100 V).**

**11.** Realice el procedimiento sólo para el modelo de 100 V.

**Den JATE-Aufkleber anbringen (nur für 100-V-Modell).**

**11.** Dieses Verfahren nur für das 100-V-Modell anwenden.

**Applicare l'etichetta JATE (solo per il modello da 100 V).**

**11.** Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello da 100 V.

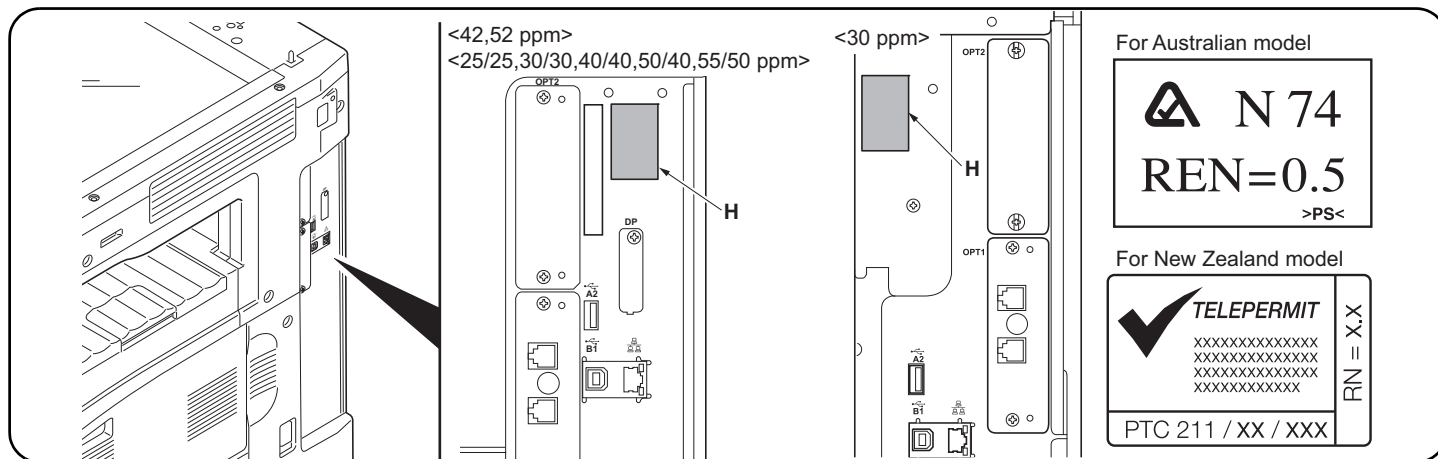
粘貼 JATE 标签（仅适用于 100V 型号）

11. 该步骤仅适用于 100V 型号时操作。

**TONER**

JATE ラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様のみ）

11. アルコール清掃後、JATE ラベル (G) を貼り付ける。
  - < 42, 52 枚機（モノクロ機）に設置する場合 >  
305JP34010 と印刷されている JATE ラベル (G) を貼り付ける。
  - < 30 枚機（モノクロ機）に設置する場合 >  
305JP34040 と印刷されている JATE ラベル (G) を貼り付ける。
  - < 25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 枚機（フルカラー機）に設置する場合 >  
305JP34070 と印刷されている JATE ラベル (G) を貼り付ける。



#### Attach the approval label (for Australian/New Zealand model only).

12. Attach the approval label (H) after wiping with alcohol.  
Perform this procedure for Australian/New Zealand model only.

When installing the optional Dual FAX (when adding the FAX circuit board to OPT2), proceed to the following procedures.

When not installing, proceed to page 14.

#### Install the Dual FAX

Refer to page 1 for the supplied parts.  
When installing the optional Dual FAX, the approval label (H) is not required. Bring back and discard it.

#### Fixer l'étiquette d'approbation (modèle pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement).

12. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement.

Lorsqu'on installe le FAX double en option (lorsqu'on ajoute la carte à circuits FAX à l'OPT2), effectuer les procédures suivantes.  
Si on ne l'installe pas, passer à la page 14.

#### Installer le FAX double.

Pour plus de détails concernant les pièces fournies, se reporter à la page 1.

#### Coloque la etiqueta de aprobación (sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés)

12. Realice este procedimiento sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés.

Cuando instale el FAX dual opcional (cuando agrega la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX a OPT2), vaya a los siguientes procedimientos.  
Cuando no lo instala, vaya a la página 14.

#### Instale el FAX dual

Consulte la página 1 de las piezas suministradas.

#### Den Genehmigungsaufkleber anbringen (nur für Australien/Neuseeland-Modell).

12. Dieses Verfahren nur für das Australien/Neuseeland-Modell anwenden.

Wenn das optionale Dual FAX installiert wird (Hinzufügen der FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2), mit den folgenden Verfahren fortfahren.  
Erfolgt diese Installation nicht, mit Seite 14 fortfahren.

#### Installieren des Dual FAX

Die mitgelieferten Teile sind auf Seite 1 aufgelistet.

#### Applicare l'etichetta di approvazione (solo per il modello Australia/Nuova Zelanda).

12. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello Australia/Nuova Zelanda.

Quando si installa il Dual FAX opzionale (quando si aggiunge la scheda a circuiti FAX all'OPT2), continuare con la seguente procedura.  
Se non si esegue l'installazione passare alla pagina 14.

#### Installare il Dual FAX

Fare riferimento alla pagina 1 per le parti in dotazione.

#### 粘貼規格标签（仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号）

12. 该步骤仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号时操作。

安装选购件的多插口组件时（将传真电路板安装在 OPT2 上时），请按以下步骤进行。  
不安装时，按第 14 页的要求进行操作。

#### 安装多插口组件

附属品时，参照第 1 页。

**TONER**

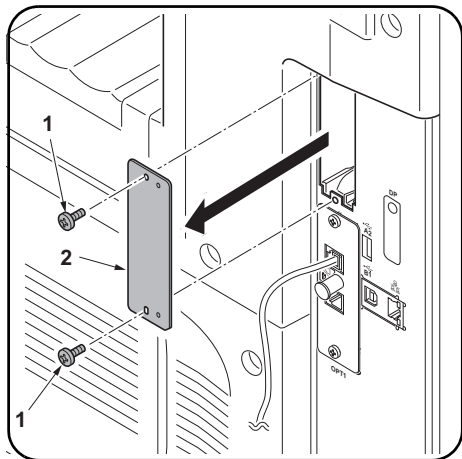
#### 規格ラベルの貼り付け（オーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

12. この手順はオーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様のみおこなう。

オプションのマルチポートを設置する場合（FAX 基板を OPT2 に増設する場合）は、次の手順に進む。  
設置しない場合は、14 ページへ進む。

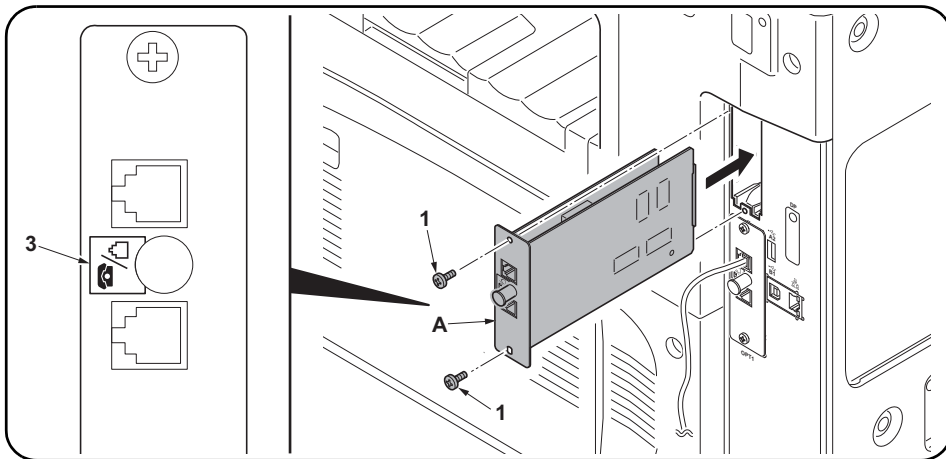
#### マルチポートの設置

同梱品は 1 ページを参照する。  
マルチポート設置の場合、JATE ラベル (G) は不要のため、持ち帰り廃棄すること。



#### Remove the cover.

1. Remove two screws (1) and then remove OPT2 cover (2).



#### Install the FAX circuit board.

2. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT2 and secure the board with two screws (1) that have been removed in step 1.

Do not directly touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal. Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A). Direct the label (3) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward left side and insert the board along the groove.

#### Retirer le couvercle.

1. Retirer les deux vis (1), puis le couvercle OPT2 (2).

#### Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

2. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT2 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (1) retirées à l'étape 1.

Ne pas toucher directement la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A). Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A). Orienter l'étiquette (3) de la carte à circuits FAX (A) comme illustré et insérer la plaquette le long de la rainure.

#### Desmonte la cubierta.

1. Quite dos tornillos (1) y desmonte la cubierta OPT2 (2).

#### Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de fax.

2. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT2 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (1) que ha quitado en el paso 1.

No toque directamente el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos del fax (A). Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A). Oriente la etiqueta (3) en la tarjeta de circuitos del FAX (A) como se indica en la ilustración e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

#### Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Die beiden Schrauben (1) herausdrehen und Abdeckung OPT2 (2) abnehmen.

#### Installieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

2. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT2 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 1 ausgebauten Schrauben (1) befestigen.

Berühren Sie die Anschlüsse der FAX-Platine (A) nicht mit den Fingern. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) beim Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (3) wie abgebildet zur Leiterplatte zeigt.

#### Rimuovere il coperchio.

1. Rimuovere le due viti (1), quindi rimuovere il coperchio OPT2 (2).

#### Installare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

2. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT2 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (1) rimosse nell'operazione 1.

Non toccare direttamente il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A), tenere l'estremità superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX. Orientare l'etichetta (3) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) come indicato nell'illustrazione e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

#### 拆下盖板

1. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (1)，然后拆下 OPT2 盖板 (2)。

#### 安装传真电路板

2. 沿着 OPT2 的沟槽插入传真电路板 (A) 并用步骤 1 中拆下的两颗螺钉 (1) 固定电路板。

不要触碰传真电路板 (A) 端子。按住传真电路板的顶部和底部，或者按住电路板的突出部将传真电路板 (A) 插入。将标签 (3) 放在传真电路板 (A) 上，朝向左侧，然后沿着沟槽插入电路板。



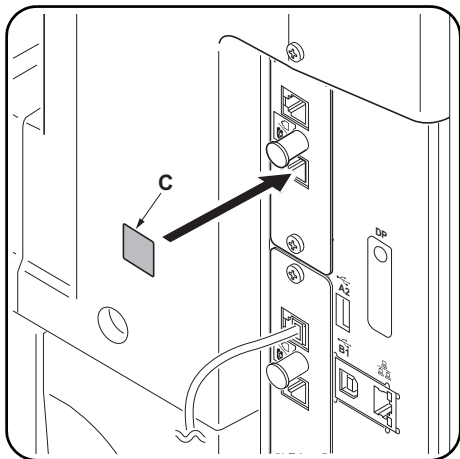
#### カバーの取り外し

1. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、OPT2 のカバー (2) を取り外す。

#### FAX 基板の取り付け

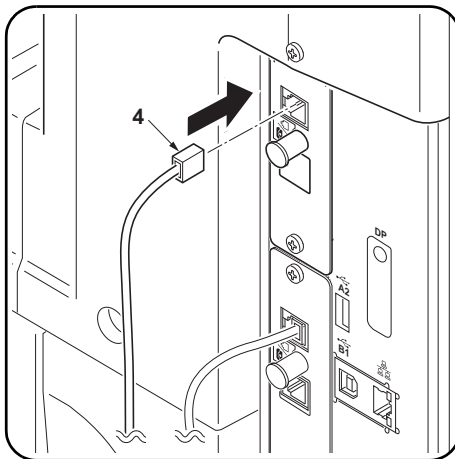
2. OPT2 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 1 で外したビス (1) 2 本で固定する。

FAX 基板 (A) の端子に直接触れないこと。FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下か突起を持つこと。FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (3) が図に示す方向になるように、挿入すること。



#### Seal the terminal.

3. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).  
The telephone terminal on the FAX circuit board installed to OPT2 is unavailable (invalid). Seal the terminal securely to prevent a user from connecting a separate phone.



#### Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

4. Plug the modular connector cable (4) into the line terminal, and then connect the other end to the telephone line.  
For 100 V/120 V/Australian or Chinese models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).

#### Fermer hermétiquement la borne.

3. Nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool, et apposer le joint de borne (C).  
La borne de téléphone de la carte à circuits FAX installée sur l'OPT2 n'est pas utilisable (invalid). Fermer hermétiquement la borne pour empêcher tout utilisateur de connecter un téléphone séparé.

#### Connecter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

4. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (4) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter l'autre extrémité à la ligne de téléphone.  
Pour les modèles 100 V/120 V/Australie ou Chine, utilisez le câble à connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

#### Selle el terminal.

3. Limpie la superficie del terminal de teléfono con alcohol y pegue el sello de terminal (C).  
El terminal de teléfono de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX instalado en el OPT2 no está disponible (inválido). Selle firmemente el terminal para evitar que un usuario conecte un teléfono por separado.

#### Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

4. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (4) en el terminal de línea y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo a la línea telefónica.  
Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano o Chino, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

#### Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse.

3. Die Oberfläche der Telefonanschlussbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und die Verschlusskappe (C) anbringen.  
Die Telefonanschlussbuchse der in OPT2 installierten FAX-Leiterplatte ist nicht verfügbar (ungültig). Die Anschlussbuchse vollkommen versiegeln, um den Anschluss eines separaten Telefons zu verhindern.

#### Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

4. Telefonmodulkabel (4) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Telefondose anschließen.  
Das mitgelieferte Modularsteckermodul (B) für die 100-V/120-V/Australien- oder China-Modelle verwenden.

#### Sigillare il terminale.

3. Pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con alcol e fare aderire la guarnizione terminale (C).  
Il terminale del telefono sulla scheda a circuiti FAX installata su OPT2 non è disponibile (invalido). Sigillare il terminale saldamente per prevenire a un utente di collegare un telefono separato.

#### Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

4. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (4) nel terminale della linea, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale alla linea del telefono.  
Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia o Cina, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

#### 安装端子密封

3. 用酒精擦拭电话端子表面并粘上端子密封 (C)。  
安装在 OPT2 上的传真电路板的电话端子不可使用 (无效)。为了避免用户错误与其它电话连接, 必须确实粘贴好端子密封。

#### 将 MFP 连接到电话线

4. 将模块接插件电缆 (4) 插入电话线端子, 然后将另一端与电话线连接。  
对于 100 V/120 V / 澳大利亚或中国机型, 请使用随附的模块接插件电缆 (B)。

#### 端子シールの貼り付け

3. TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。  
OPT2 に取り付けした FAX 基板の TEL 端子は使用不可 (無効) となる。ユーザが誤って外付け電話を接続しないよう確実に貼り付けること。

#### 電話回線との接続

4. モジュラコード (4) をライン端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、電話回線へ接続する。  
100V/120V/ オーストラリア仕様 / 中国仕様は付属のモジュラコード (B) を使用すること。

### Initialize the FAX circuit board.

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on the main power.
2. If the FAX circuit board has been installed only in OPT1 or installed both in OPT1 and OPT2 (to initialize all FAX circuit boards) Perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the fax control assembly.

3. If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX circuit board in OPT2) Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT2], and the Start key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600.

If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized.  
For details, see the service manual.  
Refer to the operation guide to create a FAX Box.

### Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.

1. Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.
2. Si la carte à circuits FAX a été installée dans l'OPT1 seulement, ou a été installée dans l'OPT1 et dans l'OPT2 (pour initialiser toutes les cartes à circuits FAX) Exécuter le mode de maintenance U600 pour initialiser l'ensemble de commande de fax.

3. Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2) Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT2] et la touche Départ dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600.

Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2 sont tous deux initialisés.  
Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.  
Se reporter au manuel d'utilisation pour créer une Boîte de FAX.

### Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.

1. Conecte el MFP a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se instaló solo en OPT1 o se instaló tanto en OPT1 como OPT2 (para inicializar todas las tarjetas de circuito de FAX) Ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar el conjunto de control de fax.

3. Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2) Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT2] y la tecla de Inicio en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600.

Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2.  
Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.  
Consulte la guía de uso para crear un Buzón de FAX.

### Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

1. Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte nur in OPT1 oder sowohl in OPT1 als auch in OPT2 installiert worden ist (um alle FAX-Leiterplatten zu initialisieren) Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen, um die Faxsteuerbaugruppe zu initialisieren.

3. Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leiterplatte in OPT2 zu initialisieren) OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT2] und die Start-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen.

Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert.  
Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.  
Schlagen Sie zur Erzeugung einer FAX-Box in der Einführung nach.

### Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

1. Collegare l'MFP ad una presa di corrente e portare l'interruttore principale su On.
2. Se la scheda a circuiti FAX è stata installata solo nell'OPT1 o in entrambi l'OPT1 e l'OPT2 (per inizializzare tutte le schede di circuito FAX) Eseguire il modo di manutenzione U600 per inizializzare il gruppo di controllo fax.

3. Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2) Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT2] e il tasto Avvio in questo ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 ed eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600.

Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati.  
Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.  
Leggere la guida alle funzioni per creare una Casella FAX.

### 传真电话板的初始化

1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源。
2. 仅限于在 OPT1 或 OPT1 和 OPT2 上同时安装传真电路板时（全部的传真电路板初始化）执行维修保养模式 U600，初始化传真控制组件。

3. 在 OPT2 上增设时（OPT2 的传真电路板初始化）只进行 OPT2 初始化时，在维修保养模式 U698 状态下，按顺序按下“PORT2”、开始键，执行维修保养模式 U600。

在 U698 状态下设定“ALL”时，会使 OPT1 和 OPT2 均初始化。  
有关详细信息，请参见维修手册。  
参照操作手册，作成传真盒。

### FAX 基板の初期化

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. OPT1 のみまたは OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合（すべての FAX 基板を初期化）メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。

3. OPT2 に増設した場合（OPT2 の FAX 基板を初期化）メンテナンスモード U698 で「PORT2」、スタートキーの順に押す。メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。

U698 で「ALL」を設定すると OPT1 と OPT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。  
詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。  
使用説明書を参照し、ファクスボックスを作成する。

## KYOCERA MITA EUROPE B.V.

Hoeksteen 40, 2132 MS Hoofddorp,  
The Netherlands  
Phone: +31.20.654.0000  
Home page: <http://www.kyoceramita-europe.com>  
Email: [info@kyoceramita-europe.com](mailto:info@kyoceramita-europe.com)

KYOCERA MITA NEDERLAND B.V.  
Beechavenue 25, 1119RA Schiphol-Rijk  
The Netherlands  
Phone: +31.20.58.77.200

KYOCERA MITA (UK) LTD  
8 Beacontree Plaza  
Gillette Way Reading Berks RG2 0BS,  
U.K.  
Phone: +44.1189.311.500

KYOCERA MITA ITALIA S.p.A.  
Via G. Verdi, 89 / 91, 20063 Cernusco s/N  
Milano, Italy  
Phone: +39.02.92179.1

S.A. KYOCERA MITA BELGIUM N.V.  
Hermesstraat 8A, 1930 Zaventem,  
Belgium  
Phone: +32.2.720.9270

KYOCERA MITA FRANCE S.A.  
Parc Les Algorithmes Saint Aubin  
91194 GIF-SUR-YVETTE,  
France  
Phone: +33.1.6985.2600

KYOCERA MITA ESPAÑA S.A.  
Edificio Kyocera, Avda de Manacor No. 2,  
28290 Las Matas (Madrid),  
Spain  
Phone: +34.91.631.8392

KYOCERA MITA FINLAND OY  
Kirvesmiehenkatu 4, 00880 Helsinki,  
Finland  
Phone: +358.9.4780.5200

KYOCERA MITA (SCHWEIZ)  
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich  
Switzerland  
Phone: +41.1.908.4949

KYOCERA MITA DEUTSCHLAND GMBH  
Otto-Hahn-Str. 12 D-40670 Meerbusch,  
Germany  
Phone: +49.2159.918.0

KYOCERA MITA GMBH AUSTRIA  
Eduard-Kittenberger-Gasse 95,  
1230 Wien,  
Austria  
Phone: +43.1.86338.210

KYOCERA MITA SVENSKA AB  
Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista,  
Sweden  
Phone: +46.8.546.55000

KYOCERA MITA NORGE  
Postboks 150 Oppsal, NO 0619 Oslo  
Olaf Helsetsvet 6, NO 0694 Oslo,  
Norway  
Phone: +47.22.62.73.00

KYOCERA MITA DANMARK A/S  
Ejby Industrivej 1, DK-2600 Glostrup,  
Denmark  
Phone: +45.5687.1100

KYOCERA MITA PORTUGAL LDA.  
Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisbon,  
Portugal  
Phone: +351.21.842.9100

KYOCERA MITA SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD.  
527 Kyalami Boulevard,  
Kyalami Business Park Midrand,  
South Africa  
Phone: +27.(0)11.540.2600

## KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:  
225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008,  
U.S.A.  
Phone: (973) 808-8444

KYOCERA MITA AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.  
Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road, North Ryde,  
N.S.W. 2113 Australia  
Phone: (02) 9888-9999

KYOCERA MITA NEW ZEALAND LTD.  
1-3 Parkhead Place, Albany  
P.O. Box 302 125 NHPC, Auckland,  
New Zealand  
Phone: (09) 415-4517

KYOCERA MITA (THAILAND) CORP., LTD.  
9/209 Ratchada-Prachachem Road,  
Bang Sue, Bangkok 10800, Thailand  
Phone: (02) 586-0320

KYOCERA MITA SINGAPORE PTE LTD.  
121 Genting Lane, 3rd Level,  
Singapore 349572  
Phone: 67418733

KYOCERA MITA HONG KONG LIMITED  
11/F., Mita Centre,  
552-566, Castle Peak Road,  
Tsuen Wan, New Territories,  
Hong Kong  
Phone: 24297422

KYOCERA MITA TAIWAN Corporation.  
7F-1~2, No.41, Lane 221, Gangchi Rd.  
Neihu District, Taipei, Taiwan, 114. R.O.C.  
Phone: (02) 87511560

## KYOCERA MITA Corporation

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku  
Osaka 540-8585, Japan  
Phone: (06) 6764-3555  
<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

## KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

### **Headquarters:**

225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008  
TEL : (973) 808-8444  
FAX : (973) 882-6000

### **New York Branch:**

1410 Broadway 23rd floor  
New York, NY 10018  
TEL : (917) 286-5400  
FAX : (917) 286-5402

### **Northeastern Region:**

225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008  
TEL : (973) 808-8444  
FAX : (973) 882-4401

### **Midwestern Region:**

201 Hansen Court Suite 119  
Wood Dale, Illinois 60191  
TEL : (630) 238-9982  
FAX : (630) 238-9487

### **Western Region:**

14101 Alton Parkway,  
Irvine, California 92618-7006  
TEL : (949) 457-9000  
FAX : (949) 457-9119

### **Southeastern Region:**

1500 Oakbrook Drive,  
Norcross, Georgia 30093  
TEL : (770) 729-9786  
FAX : (770) 729-9873

### **Southwestern Region:**

2825 West Story Road,  
Irving, Texas 75038-5299  
TEL : (972) 550-8987  
FAX : (972) 252-9786

### **National Operation Center & National Training Center:**

2825 West Story Road,  
Irving, Texas 75038-5299  
TEL : (972) 659-0055  
FAX : (972) 570-5816

### **Latin America Division:**

8240 N.W. 52nd. Terrace Dawson Building,  
Suite 108 Miami, Florida 33166  
TEL : (305) 421-6640  
FAX : (305) 421-6666

## KYOCERA MITA CANADA, LTD.

6120 Kestrel Road, Mississauga,  
Ontario L5T 1S8, Canada  
TEL : (905) 670-4425  
FAX : (905) 670-8116

## KYOCERA MITA MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V.

Av. 16 de Septiembre #407  
Col. Santa Inés,  
Azcapotzalco México,  
D.F. 02130, México  
TEL : (55) 5383-2741  
FAX : (55) 5383-7804



©2010 KYOCERA MITA Corporation

<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

 **KYOCERA** is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation

Printed in U.S.A.